

**MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND SCIENCE OF UKRAINE  
UZHHOROD NATIONAL UNIVERSITY**

**Myshko S.A., Vovkanych I.I.,  
Liashina A.G., Lizak K.M.**

# **AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND**



**МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ  
УЖГОРОДСЬКИЙ НАЦІОНАЛЬНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ**

**Мишко С.А., Вовканич І.І.,  
Ляшина А.Г., Лізак К.М.**

# **АВСТРАЛІЯ ТА НОВА ЗЕЛАНДІЯ**

**ПІДРУЧНИК  
з лінгвокраїнознавства англійською мовою  
для студентів спеціальностей  
міжнародні відносини, суспільні комунікації та регіональні студії,  
міжнародні економічні відносини, туризмознавство**



УДК 811.111:81'1:94(931):94(94)

ББК 75.8+74.268.1АНГЛ

В 41

AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND  
АВСТРАЛІЯ ТА НОВА ЗЕЛАНДІЯ

Підручник з лінгвокраїнознавства англійською мовою містить оригінальні джерела інформації, присвячені проблемам історичного, політичного, економічного та культурного розвитку Австралії та Нової Зеландії. Тексти супроводжуються комплексами вправ, спрямованих на розвиток усіх видів мовленнєвої діяльності. Особлива увага приділяється перекладу.

Підручник рекомендується для викладачів та студентів фахових факультетів вищих навчальних закладів України, а також для тих, хто хоче поглибити свої знання в галузі іноземних мов та країнознавства.

Автори:

**Мишко С.А.** – кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент, зав. каф. полікультурної освіти та перекладу УжНУ

**Вовканич І.І.** – доктор історичних наук, професор, декан факультету Міжнародної політики, менеджменту та бізнесу УжНУ

**Ляшина А.Г.** – ст.викладач кафедри полікультурної освіти та перекладу УжНУ

**Лізак К.М.** – ст. викладач кафедри філології Закарпатського угорського інституту ім. Ференца Ракоці ІІ

Рецензенти:

**Гудманян А.Г.** – доктор філологічних наук, професор, директор Гуманітарного інституту Національного авіаційного університету

**Тодоров І.Я.** – доктор історичних наук, професор кафедри країнознавства факультету міжнародної політики, менеджменту та бізнесу УжНУ

*Затверджено на засіданні Вченої ради УжНУ  
(протокол № 6 від 16 червня 2016 р.)*

© Мишко С. А., Вовканич І. І.,  
Ляшина А. Г., Лізак К. М., 2016  
© Видавництво «Гражда», 2016

# CONTENTS

<b>ПЕРЕДМОВА</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>PART I. AUSTRALIA</b>	
<b>I. ETYMOLOGY AND SYMBOLISM</b>	<b>9</b>
TASKS	15
<b>II. HISTORY AND ETHNIC RELATIONS</b>	<b>21</b>
1. A New Nation	21
2. The Impact of War	25
3. Post-War Prosperity and Changing Society	25
TASKS	27
<b>III. LOCATION AND GEOGRAPHY</b>	<b>33</b>
TASKS	35
<b>IV. CLIMATE</b>	<b>40</b>
1. Australian Weather and Seasons – a Variety of Climates	40
2. Indigenous Seasonal Calendars	42
3. Cyclones, Snow and Floods	43
TASKS	45
<b>V. FLORA AND FAUNA</b>	<b>51</b>
1. Flora	51
2. Fauna	53
3. Environmental Challenges	58
TASKS	59
<b>VI. DEMOGRAPHY AND LINGUISTIC AFFILIATION</b>	<b>65</b>
TASKS	71
<b>VII. CANBERRA</b>	<b>77</b>
TASKS	85
<b>VIII. ECONOMY</b>	<b>92</b>
1. Basic Economy	92
2. Land Tenure and Property	94
3. Commercial Activities	95
4. Trade	95
6. Australia's Economic Outlook and Economic Forecast	96
7. Currency	98
TASKS	100
<b>IX. POLITICAL LIFE</b>	<b>107</b>
1. Constitution	107
2. The Federal Government and Parliament	110
3. State and Local Government	113
4. Legal System	114
5. Military Activity	119
TASKS	124

<b>X. NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANISATIONS</b>	<b>130</b>
TASKS	134
<b>XI. EDUCATION</b>	<b>141</b>
TASKS	144
<b>XII. RELIGION</b>	<b>151</b>
1. History	151
2. Constitutional Status	154
3. Indigenous Australian Traditions	155
4. Abrahamic	156
5. Indian Religions	163
6. Paganism	164
7. Irreligion	164
TASKS	165
<b>XIII. CULTURE</b>	<b>172</b>
1. Development of Australian Culture	173
2. Literature	176
3. Folklore	177
4. Music	178
5. Visual arts	181
6. Theatre	183
7. Cinema	184
9. Cuisine	185
10. Clothing and Apparel	187
11. Attitudes, Beliefs and Stereotypes	189
TASKS	191
<b>XIV. PUBLIC HOLIDAYS</b>	<b>198</b>
1. Anzac Day	198
2. Australia Day	200
3. Christmas	201
4. New Year's Day	203
5. Boxing Day	203
6. Easter	205
7. Labour Day	206
8. Queen's Birthday	206
TASKS	208
<b>XV. SPORT</b>	<b>213</b>
TASKS	218

## **PART II. NEW ZEALAND**

<b>I. ETYMOLOGY AND SYMBOLISM</b>	<b>224</b>
1. Etymology	224
2. National Symbols	224
TASKS	230

<b>II. HISTORY AND ETHNIC RELATIONS</b>	<b>237</b>
1. History	237
2. Ethnicity and Immigration	239
3. Language	242
TASKS	242
<b>III. LOCATION AND GEOGRAPHY</b>	<b>248</b>
TASKS	251
<b>IV. CLIMATE</b>	<b>258</b>
TASKS	261
<b>V. FLORA AND FAUNA</b>	<b>267</b>
1. Biodiversity	267
2. Plants	268
3. Animals and Birds	270
4. Sea Life	271
TASKS	272
<b>VI. DEMOGRAPHY</b>	<b>278</b>
TASKS	281
<b>VII. WELLINGTON</b>	<b>287</b>
TASKS	303
<b>VIII. ECONOMY</b>	<b>310</b>
1. Trade	311
2. Taxation	312
3. Regional Economies	313
4. Unemployment	314
5. Housing Affordability	315
6. Growing Inequality	316
7. Superannuation	318
TASKS	318
<b>IX. POLITICAL LIFE</b>	<b>327</b>
1. Government	327
2. Foreign Relations and the Military	328
3. Local Government and External Territories	330
4. New Zealand Constitution: Its Main Features	331
5. Real Power and Legal Form	333
6. New Zealand Army	336
6.1 History	337
6.2 Commemorations	341
6.3 Current Deployments	342
TASKS	347
<b>X. NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANISATIONS</b>	<b>353</b>
TASKS	357
<b>XI. EDUCATION</b>	<b>362</b>
TASKS	366

<b>XII. RELIGION</b>	<b>373</b>
1. History	373
2. Demographics	374
3. Significant Trends	377
4. Religion in Politics	381
TASKS	383
<b>XIII. CULTURE</b>	<b>389</b>
TASKS	392
<b>XIV. PUBLIC HOLIDAYS</b>	<b>398</b>
TASKS	402
<b>XV. SPORT</b>	<b>408</b>
TASKS	410
<b>SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL</b>	<b>417</b>
<b>1. Comprehension Tests</b>	<b>417</b>
Australia	417
New Zealand	431
<b>2. Unique and Interesting Facts</b>	<b>445</b>
Australia	445
New Zealand	465
<b>3. Some Etiquette Tips</b>	<b>470</b>
Australia	470
New Zealand	473
<b>4. Slang Words and Phrases</b>	<b>480</b>
Australia	480
New Zealand	484
<b>SOURCE MATERIAL</b>	<b>488</b>
Australia	489
New Zealand	490

## ПЕРЕДМОВА

В останні роки все більшого значення надається міжкультурному підходу в процесі викладання іноземних мов. Отже, долучення сучасного студента до світової культури, підвищення його освітнього рівня, вільне володіння не тільки іноземними мовами, а й іншомовною культурою ставиться на перший план, адже саме засвоєння культурно-історичних цінностей включає усвідомлення гармонії інтернаціонального і національного, тобто вимагає розкриття і оволодіння культурними досягненнями інших народів.

На нашу думку, при вивченні іноземної мови особливого значення набуває метод порівняння елементів, одиниць і структур не тільки своєї та іноземної мов, але й порівняння елементів, одиниць і структур рідної та іноземної культур. З метою досконалішого вивчення англійської мови вважаємо за доцільне ознайомити студентів з історією, економікою, культурою, політичним життям Австралії та Нової Зеландії.

Австралія займає перші позиції у різноманітних рейтингах країн, таких як якість життя, охорона здоров'я, освіта, тривалість життя, економічна свобода і захист громадських та політичних прав. Австралія — член міжнародних організацій ООН, Співдружності Націй, Тихоокеанського пакту безпеки (ANZUS), Організації економічного співробітництва та розвитку, Азійсько-тихоокеанського економічного співробітництва, Форуму Тихоокеанських островів та Світової організації торгівлі.

Нова Зеландія є членом і/або учасником таких міжнародних організацій: АБР, АНЗЮС, АСЕАН, АТЕС, ВМО, ВООЗ, ВОІВ, СОТ, ВФП, ВПС, ГЯП, Рух неприєднання, ЄБРР, ЮНКТАД, МАР, МКВП, ІМО, Інтерпол, ІКАО, МОМ, ІСО, МОП, МТП, МФК, МАГАТЕ, МЕА, МБРР, МВФ, МГО, МКЧХ, МКС, МТС, МФСР, ООН, ЮНІДО, План Коломбо, ФАО, СПС, УВКБ, ФТО, СПАРТЕКА, Британська Співдружність.

Підручник складається з двох частин, кожна з яких включає п'ятнадцять основних розділів, комплекси вправ, спрямованих на розвиток основних мовленнєвих навичок. Значна увага приділяється розвитку навичок перекладу. В кожному розділі пропонуються завдання на переклад для студентів, рідною мовою яких є угорська. В додатку пропонуються тести для перевірки рівня засвоєння матеріалу, цікаві факти з лінгвокраїнознавства, особливості культури та словнички австралійських та новозеландських термінів з тлумаченням англійською мовою.

Джерелами інформації послужили оригінальні матеріали з сайтів мережі Інтернет, присвячені проблемам історичного, політичного, економічного та культурного розвитку Австралії та Нової Зеландії.

Підручник адаптований до вимог навчальної програми у системі вищої освіти і, безумовно, сприятиме глибшому оволодінню матеріалом та систематизації знань.

Підручник призначений для студентів вищих навчальних закладів, які спеціалізуються у галузі міжнародних відносин, суспільних комунікацій та регіональних студій, міжнародних економічних відносин, туризмознавства, мають певний рівень володіння англійською мовою та потребують його подальшого вдосконалення. Підручник рекомендується також для всіх тих, хто хоче поглибити свої знання в галузі англійської мови та країнознавства.



## I. ETYMOLOGY AND SYMBOLISM

**Australia**, officially the **Commonwealth of Australia**, is the country comprising the mainland of Australian continent, the island of Tasmania, and numerous smaller islands. It is the world's sixth-largest country by total area. The neighboring countries include Indonesia, East Timor and Papua New Guinea – to the north; the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu – to the north-east; and New Zealand – to the south-east.

The name *Australia* is derived from the Latin *australis*, meaning "southern". The country has been referred to colloquially as *Oz* since the early 20th century. *Aussie* is a common colloquial term for "Australian". In neighbouring New Zealand, and less commonly in Australia itself, the noun "Aussie" is also used to refer to the nation, as distinct from its residents. The sporting anthem C'mon Aussie C'mon is an example of local use of Aussie as synonym for Australia.

Legends of *Terra Australis Incognita*—an "unknown land of the South"—date back to the Roman times and were commonplace in medieval geography, although not based on any documented knowledge of the continent. Following the European discovery, names for the Australian landmass were often references to the famed *Terra Australis*.

The earliest recorded use of the word *Australia* in English was in 1625 in "A note of Australia del Espíritu Santo, written by Sir Richard Hakluyt", published by Samuel Purchas in *Hakluytus Posthumus*, a corruption of the original Spanish name "Tierra Austral del Espíritu Santo" (Southern Land of the Holy Spirit) for an island in Vanuatu. The Dutch adjectival form *Australische* was used in a Dutch book in Batavia (Jakarta) in 1638, to refer to the newly discovered lands to the south. *Australia* was later used in a 1693 translation of *Les Aventures de Jacques Sadeur dans la Découverte et le Voyage de la Terre Australe*, a 1676 French novel by Gabriel de Foigny, under the pen-name Jacques Sadeur. Referring to the entire South Pacific region, Alexander Dalrymple used it in *An Historical Collection of Voyages and Discoveries in the South Pacific Ocean* in 1771. By the end of the 18th century, the name was being used to refer specifically to Australia, with the botanists George Shaw and Sir James Smith writing of "the vast island, or rather continent, of Australia, Australasia or New Holland" in their 1793 *Zoology and Botany of New Holland*, and James Wilson including it on a 1799 chart.

The name *Australia* was popularized by the explorer Matthew Flinders, who pushed for it to be formally adopted as early as 1804. When preparing his manuscript and charts for his 1814 *A Voyage to Terra Australis*, he was persuaded by his patron, Sir Joseph Banks, to use the term *Terra Australis* as this was the name most familiar to the public. Flinders did so, and published the following rationale:

There is no probability, that any other detached body of land, of nearly equal extent, will ever be found in a more southern latitude; the name Terra Australis will, therefore, remain descriptive of the geographical importance of

this country, and of its situation on the globe: it has antiquity to recommend it; and, having no reference to either of the two claiming nations, appears to be less objectionable than any other which could have been selected.

In the footnote Flinders wrote:

- Had I permitted myself any innovation on the original term, it would have been to convert it to AUSTRALIA; as being more agreeable to the ear, and assimilation to the names of the other great portions of the earth.

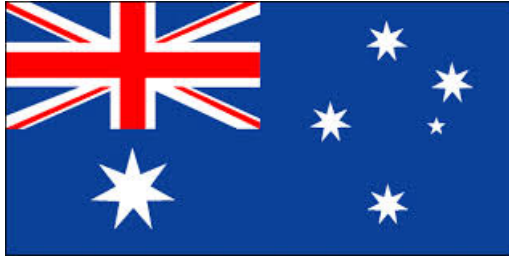
This is the only occurrence of the word *Australia* in that text; but in Appendix III, Robert Brown's *General remarks, geographical and systematical, on the botany of Terra Australis*, Brown makes use of the adjectival form *Australian* throughout,—the first known use of that form. Despite popular conception, the book was not instrumental in the adoption of the name: the name came gradually to be accepted over the following ten years.

The first time that the name Australia appears to have been officially used was in a dispatch to Lord Bathurst of 4 April 1817 in which Governor Lachlan Macquarie acknowledges the receipt of Capt. Flinders' charts of Australia. On 12 December 1817, Macquarie recommended to the Colonial Office that it be formally adopted. In 1824, the Admiralty agreed that the continent should be known officially as *Australia*. Since its days as a British colony Australia has developed a complex national culture with immigrants from many parts of the world as well as an indigenous Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander population. The strong sense of societal and historical distinctiveness among the different states and territories has not developed into major subcultural diversity based on geographic regions.

For much of the nation's history, there has been a focus on assimilating different cultural groups into the dominant British Australian traditions; however, in the early 1970s a more pluralist policy of multiculturalism came to prominence. In 1988, bicentennial events were promoted officially as the "celebration of a nation." A commitment was made to the idea that Australia is a collectivity of diverse peoples living in a relatively young society. However, the divisions within the nation continue to find expression in public life, arising from social differences in race, ethnicity, social class, and gender.

"Aussie" is a colloquialism that was used during World War I to refer to the Australian-born people of British or Irish ancestry. Initially used to describe a happy-go-lucky character capable of battling through hard times, the term was employed after World War II to distinguish those born domestically from "new" immigrants from western and southern Europe. The term continues to have this meaning as a label for the Australians representing their country. Among some sectors of society, "Aussie" is regarded as Eurocentric and anachronistic in a nation officially committed to ethnic and racial inclusiveness.

## ***Symbolism***



The Australian National Flag was first flown on September 3, 1901 over the Royal Exhibition Building in Melbourne. The date is still celebrated as 'Australian National Flag Day'. Today, the National Flag is a symbol of the Australian identity and serves as an important part of almost all our national events.

The National Flag is most often flown by the general public on celebrated days of Australian history such as Australia Day (January 26) or on days of remembrance such as ANZAC Day (April 25). On these days flags can be seen in the streets attached to cars, in shop windows and on an endless array of T-shirts, bumper stickers, badges, fake and real tattoos and even face painted flags are commonplace. The Flag also flows at international sporting events where Australia competes and it demonstrates the national pride and support of our competitors and sporting ambassadors.

The colours and symbols within the Australian Flag have great significance, there are three primary elements.

### ***The Union Jack***

The presence of the Union Jack in the upper hoist quadrant of Australia's Flag is an acknowledgment of Australia's connection in history with the United Kingdom.

### ***The Southern Cross***

Located in the second and fourth quarter (right hand side), the Southern Cross is a constellation of five stars that is a prominent feature of the night sky and only visible in the southern hemisphere. It is a significant navigational feature and intended to represent Australia's geographical location.

### ***The Commonwealth Star***

This large seven pointed star is placed centrally in the third quarter of the flag. The seven points denote the six states of Australia and the combined territories of the Commonwealth. The seventh point was an addition eight years after the original in 1909.

The Flags Act of 1953 proclaimed the Australian National Flag.

### ***Other National Flags***

There are a number of other officially recognised flags in Australia, that include the Australian Aboriginal Flag, the Torres Strait Islander Flag and the

ensigns of the Australian Defence Forces which include the Australian Red Ensign (Merchant ships) which is the official flag to be flown at sea, the Royal Australian Air Force Ensign (RAAF) and the Australian White Ensign for the Royal Australian Navy.



*Australian Aboriginal Flag*



*Australian Red Ensign*



*Torres Strait Island Flag*



*Australian White Ensign*



*Australian Defense Force Ensign*



*Australian RAAF Ensign*

### ***Australian Coat of Arms***



Australia's current Coat of Arms was granted by King George V in September 1912 and is the second Commonwealth Coat of Arms. The first version appeared in 1908 and although similar, it did not include any specific references to the Australian States. Recommendations of the Commonwealth Government by King George V led to a number of changes which resulted in the design we see today.

The Australian Government uses the coat of arms to authenticate documents and for other official purposes. Its uses range from embellishing the Australian passport to forming part of all Australian government departmental insignias.

The shield in the centre of the coat of arms is a symbol for the federation of the states and it depicts the badges of the six Australian states enclosed by an ermine border. The shield is supported by two native Australian animals, the red kangaroo and the emu.

Above the shield is the seven pointed gold Commonwealth Star, six of the points represent each of the six states and the seventh represents the territories.

Australia has never adopted any official motto or faunal emblem. By popular tradition, however, the kangaroo and emu are widely accepted as such.

Australia's floral emblem, the golden wattle, frames the shield and supporters. A scroll contains the word 'Australia'.

### ***Australia's national colours***

Australia's national colours, green and gold, were popular and loved by the Australians long before they were officially proclaimed by the Governor-General on 19 April 1984.

At international sporting events before Federation, and of course at many since it, the colours have been associated with the achievements of many great Australian sportsmen.

As well as instilling national pride on the field, spectators often also don the official colours and cheer their team waving green and gold boxing kangaroo flags. Back home in Australia, the green triangle and gold kangaroo of the Australian Made logo is the most recognised country of original symbol on Australian shop shelves.

Prior to its proclamation, Australia had no official colours and different combinations vied for the honour: red, white and blue; blue and gold; and green and gold. The colours red, white and blue were featured in the first Coat of Arms of the Commonwealth in 1908 and are the colours of the Australian National Flag. Blue and gold have heraldic significance, as the colours of the crest in the 1912 (present) Commonwealth Coat of Arms.

But it was the green and gold of Australia's landscape, principally of many species of wattle, which won the day. Green and gold are also represented on the Commonwealth Coat of Arms by the wattle which is an ornamental accessory to the shield.

### ***Australia's Floral Emblem***



*Golden Wattle*

Australia's national floral emblem is the golden wattle (*Acacia pycnantha* Benth.). It encapsulates the spirit of the Australian bush. The shrub or a small tree grows in the understorey of open forest, woodland and in open scrub in South Australia, Victoria, New South Wales and the Australian Capital Territory.

Like all the emblems and symbols, the golden wattle captures an essence of Australia that brings the colours, smells and textures of the Australian bush alive.

The flower has long been recognised as Australia's premier floral symbol and was officially proclaimed in 1988. In 1912, on the recommendation of the Prime Minister Andrew Fisher, wattle was included as the decoration surrounding the Commonwealth Coat of Arms and it has also been used in the design of Australian stamps and many awards in the Australian honours system.

National Wattle Day is the first day of September and was introduced in 1913 by the association called the Wattle Day League and formally recognised on 23 June 1992. The Australians can celebrate Wattle Day by planting wattles and wearing the wattle blossom on September 1st.

### ***Australian National Anthem***

Advance Australia Fair was one of many Australian national songs written in the late-nineteenth century as debates about the creation of the new nation were taking place in different colonies.

Although it is thought to have been first performed in 1878 by Mr Andrew Fairfax in Sydney, possibly the most significant early performance of Advance Australia Fair was at the inauguration of the Commonwealth of Australia in 1901, where it was sung by a choir of 10,000. Advance Australia Fair was not considered the national anthem, however, with this role going to the British anthem God Save the Queen (or King) for most of the twentieth century.

A determined search for a truly Australian national anthem did not begin until the Melbourne Olympic Games in 1956. The Australian Bureau of Statistics conducted a national opinion poll of 60,000 people in 1974 and in 1977 the Australian Electoral Office ran a poll for a tune for a national song in conjunction with the referendum.

In the 1977 plebiscite, four songs were in contention for the official title:

- Advance Australia Fair
- God save the Queen (or King) (the British anthem)
- Waltzing Matilda (one of Australia's best-known national songs), and
- Song of Australia (a popular national song written in 1859)

The results of the plebiscite were conclusive with 43.2 per cent (or 2,940,854 votes) going to Advance Australia Fair. Next most popular was Waltzing Matilda with 28.3 per cent, despite its arguable status as the best-known, best-loved and most iconic national song.

In 1984 the government announced that the tune of Advance Australia Fair together with modifications to two verses of the lyrics would become the Australian National Anthem.

### ***Australia's national gemstone***

The opal is a rare and beautiful precious stone.

A very special series of geographical and climatic phenomena need to coincide for the opal to form. The great desert regions of central Australia provide such conditions and Australia produces over 90 per cent of the world's precious opal.

Australia's precious opals include the black opal (produced in Lightning Ridge, New South Wales), white opal (majority of the world's production occurs in Coober Pedy, South Australia), crystal opal and boulder opal (mined in Central Queensland). The precious stone was proclaimed Australia's national gemstone on 28 July 1993.

According to the Aboriginal legend, the mesmerizing opal was a gift from the sky, from a rainbow that had touched the earth and created the colours of the opal.

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

1) main area of land that forms a country, as compared to islands near it that are also part of that country;

2) connected with the Middle Ages (=the period between about AD 1100 and 1500);

3) study of the origins, history, and changing meanings of words;

4) book or document written by hand before printing was invented;

5) someone who supports the activities of an organisation, for example by giving money;

6) note at the bottom of a page that gives extra information about something in the text on that page;

7) someone who enters another country to live there permanently;

8) people or things that have always been in the place where they are, rather than being brought there from somewhere else;

9) expression or word used in informal conversation;

10) large group of people who have the same national, racial, or cultural origins, or the state of belonging to such a group;

11) who a person is, or the qualities of a person or group that make them different from others;

12) someone who represents a particular sport, business etc because they behave in a way that people admire;

13) quarter of an area;

14) special shield or shield-shaped pattern that is the sign of a family, university, or city;

15) in the past, a large, flat object made of metal or leather that soldiers held in front of their bodies to protect themselves.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Australia, officially the Commonwealth of Australia, is the country comprising the mainland of the Australian continent, the island of Ceylon, and numerous smaller islands.

2. Legends of *Terra Australis Incognita*—an "unknown land of the East"—date back to Roman times and were commonplace in medieval geography, although not based on any documented knowledge of the continent.

3. In 1824, the Admiralty agreed that the continent should be known officially as *Australia*. Since its days as a British colony Australia has developed a complex national culture with immigrants from many parts of the world as well as an indigenous Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander population.

4. For much of the nation's history, there has been a focus on assimilating different cultural groups into the dominant British Australian traditions; however, in the early 1970s a more pluralist policy of multiculturalism came to prominence.

5. "Aussie" is a colloquialism that was used during World War I to refer to Australian-born people of British or Irish ancestry. Initially used to describe a hard working character capable of battling through hard times, the term was employed after World War II to distinguish those born domestically from "new" immigrants from western and southern Europe.

6. The Australian National Flag was first flown on September 3, 1901 over the Royal Exchange Building in Melbourne. The date is still celebrated as 'Australian National Flag Day'. Today, the National Flag is a symbol of the Australian identity and serves as an important part of almost all our national events.

7. Australia's current Coat of Arms was granted by King George I in September of 1912 and is the second Commonwealth Coat of Arms.

8. The shield at the centre of the coat of arms is a symbol for the federation of the states and it depicts the badges of the nine Australian states enclosed by an ermine border.

9. Australia's national colours, green and yellow, were popular and well loved by Australians long before they were officially proclaimed by the Governor-General on 19 April 1984.

10. Prior to proclamation, Australia had no official colours and different combinations vied for the honour: red, white and blue; blue and gold; and green and gold.

11. Australia's national floral emblem is the yellow wattle (*Acacia pycnantha* Benth.). It encapsulates the spirit of the Australian bush.

12. National Wattle Day is the first day of September and was introduced in 1913 by an association called the Wattle Day League and formally recognized on 23 June 1992. Australians can celebrate Wattle Day by planting wattles and wearing the wattle blossom on September 1st.

13. Forward Australia Fair was one of many Australian nationalistic songs written in the late-nineteenth century as debates about the creation of the new nation were taking place in the different colonies.

14. In 1984 the government announced that the tune of Forward Australia Fair together with modifications to two verses of the lyrics would become the Australian National Anthem.

15. In Aboriginal legend, the mesmerising pearl was a gift from the sky, from a rainbow that had touched the earth and created the colours of the opal.



**III. Read the text about the slouch hat. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

### The Slouch Hat



Since its inception more than a century ago, the slouch hat has become 1 \_\_\_\_\_ and defining items of Australian clothing. It is made with rabbit-fur or wool felt and 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the brim pinned to the side. It has been suggested the pinning made it easier 3 \_\_\_\_\_ over the soldier. While that may 4 \_\_\_\_\_, other countries never felt 5 \_\_\_\_\_ one side of their hats to the side in order to sling a rifle over the shoulder. Although the need to sling a rifle over a shoulder 6 \_\_\_\_\_ to Australia, no other countries decided to have their soldiers wearing the hat in such a way.

Perhaps the Australian soldiers 7 \_\_\_\_\_ because they put pragmatism over style. Alternatively, military commanders might have encouraged the hat to be pinned because it distinguished Australian soldiers 8 \_\_\_\_\_ in British allied forces. It helped to build a unique social identity of the Australian soldiers, which was good for morale.

In addition to the pinning, the slouch hat 9 \_\_\_\_\_ via the addition of native bird feathers. Emu plumes were often 10 \_\_\_\_\_ or to again signal some kind of Australian characteristic.

- |                              |                                |                       |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| A) was definitely not unique | E) the need to pin             | I) gained uniqueness  |
| B) from other soldiers       | F) to sling a rifle            | J) pinned the hat     |
| C) has one side of           | G) raised the hat              | K) have been the case |
| D) added for decoration      | H) one of the most distinctive |                       |

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**



### The Aboriginal Flag

In Aboriginal protest marches in 1960s and early 1970s, Aborigines were outnumbered by non-Aborigines wanting as to show their support. Being outnumbered by whites was a concern to Aboriginal artist *Harold Thomas*, so in 1971 he was designed the Aboriginal flag. Thomas that hoped it would be a rallying symbol to get more Aborigines to come along, and also for signal Aborigines as a distinct group. The black is has said to represent the Aboriginal people, the red the earth and their spiritual relationship to the land, and the yellow the sun moon, the giver of life. Thomas said he deliberately put black on top of the red to make the flag appear more disturbing and reflect its protest peace function.

The Aboriginal flag was first part raised in Victoria Square in Adelaide on National Aboriginal Day in 1971. It was adopted nationally by Aborigines after it was flown above the Aboriginal "Tent Embassy" outside of the old Parliament House in Canberra. Ironically, many governments now fly the Aboriginal flag aside the official flag. A further irony is that many non-Aborigines want to be represented by the flag as well. So much so, they have called for the flag to replace the Union Jack on local Australia's official flag. This is unlikely to occur as Harold Thomas has been declared his desire for it to remain separate. It was, after all, his chief reason for designing it.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Протокол**

Правила використання прапора Австралії викладені в законі «Про прапор» 1953 року та в інструкції «Австралійський національний прапор» (*The Australian National Flag*), яка час від часу публікується австралійським урядом. Згідно з існуючими правилами австралійський національний прапор дозволено вивішувати в будь-який день року. Національний прапор при використанні на території Австралії повинен розташовуватися на більшій висоті, ніж будь-який інший прапор або стяг. Він повинен вивішуватися на всіх урядових будівлях та виборчих дільницях під час національних виборів або референдумів.

Департамент прем'єр-міністра та кабінету (*Department of the Prime Minister and Cabinet*) також рекомендують вивішувати прапор лише в денний час, якщо не використовується штучне освітлення. Крім того, два різних прапори не повинні розташовуватися на одному флагштоку. Якщо прапор приспущено, то він повинен знаходитися на відстані 1/3 довжини флагштока від його верхньої частини. У нічний час прапор Австралії не повинен знаходитися в приспущеному положенні. Прапор приспукається на урядових будівлях в декількох випадках:

- у випадку смерті монарха Австралії: з дня оголошення про його смерть і аж до його поховання (включаючи день поховання). У день вступу на трон нового монарха прапор Австралії прийнято піднімати до самого верху флагштоку об 11 годині дня;

- у випадку смерті члена королівської родини;

- у випадку смерті чинного або колишнього генерал-губернатора;

- у випадку смерті відомого громадянина Австралії. В окремих населених пунктах прапор Австралії може бути приспущений у випадку смерті важливого місцевого жителя, а також в день його похорону;

- у випадку смерті глави іншої держави, з якою Австралія має дипломатичні відносини (в цьому випадку прапор буде приспущено в день похорону);

- у день АНЗАК (у цьому випадку прапор знаходиться в приспущеному положенні до полудня);

- у день пам'яті загиблих у роки Першої та Другої світових воєн (*Remembrance Day*) австралійський прапор знаходиться у верхній частині флагштоку до 10.30 ранку, в приспущеному вигляді — з 10.30 до 11.03 ранку, потім знову у верхній частині флагштоку до кінця дня.

Департамент прем'єр-міністра та кабінет міністрів підтримують систему електронних поштових розсилок для своїх передплатників («*Commonwealth Flag Network*»), в яких жителів Австралії інформують про день, коли прапор повинен бути приспущений, а також про національні дні прапора.

В історії країни було здійснено кілька спроб прирівняти до злочину наругу над прапором Австралії.

У 1996 році генерал-губернатор Австралії Вільям Дін виступив з декларацією про заснування щорічного Дня австралійського національного прапора (*Australian National Flag Day*), днем проведення якого стало 3 вересня. Однак, в Сідней День прапора святкується ще з 1985 року. В День прапора в декількох великих центрах країни, як правило, проводяться різні урочисті заходи, однак сам день не є вихідним.

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **A múlt visszaköszön**

Alapvetően egy országnak a legfontosabb nemzeti jelképe a zászlaja és a himnusza, és így van ez Ausztrália esetében is. A zászlót 30 ezer pályázat közül választották ki 1901-ben, de kisebb módosításokat eszközöltek rajta még, míg elnyerte mai alakját 1954-ben. Az alapszín kék, amelyen három jelkép található:

A Union Jack, vagyis az Egyesült Királyság zászlajának méretarányosan kicsinyített változata. Ez a jelkép a gyarmati történelem fontosságának és a brit uralkodó elismerése miatt jelenik meg a zászlón, annak ellenére, hogy az ország gyakorlatilag teljesen független a koronától.

A Commonwealth (vagy Federation) Star. Ez egy hétágú csillag, az ország földrajzi elhelyezkedésével áll kapcsolatban, ugyanis a 6 ausztrál államra és az országhoz tartozó (vagy a jövőben hozzá kerülő) egyéb területekre utal.

Southern Cross, magyarul a Dél Keresztje. Ez a déli égbolt legkisebb, ugyanakkor egyik leghíresebb csillagképe. Ausztrália történetében régóta nagy jelentőséggel bír, az őslakosok csillagászatában is feltűnt.

1996 óta szeptember 3-án évente ünneplik meg a zászló napját. Ezen a napon szerte az országban ünnepeket rendeznek, gyakran magánházakra is kikerül ez a nemzeti jelkép.



Melbourne Herald  
competition winning  
design



Blue version of winning  
design



As approved by King  
Edward VII

Ami Ausztrália himnuszát illeti, az országban 1984 óta használják a skót költő, Peter Dodds McCormick 1878-as versét, az Advance Australia Fair nemzeti himnuszaként, miután 1977-ben népszavazáson döntöttek emellett. Így az ausztrálok a "Fejlődj szép Ausztrália", azaz "Advance Australia fair" szövegét használják, mai napig, ami következőképp hangzik angolul és magyarul:

Australians all let us rejoice,  
for we are young and free,  
We've golden soil and wealth for toil  
Australians all let us rejoice,  
for we are young and free,  
We've golden soil and wealth for toil  
our home is girt by sea.  
Our land abounds in nature's gifts  
of beauty reach and rare  
In history's page let every stage  
Advance Australia fair,  
In joyful strains then let us sing  
Advance Australia fair.  
Australia.

Most minden Ausztrál ünnepel,  
az ifjú és a vén,  
Földünk arany, országunk szép,  
Most minden Ausztrál ünnepel,  
az ifjú és a vén,  
Földünk arany, országunk szép,  
tengerrel övezvén.  
Minden kinccsel meg van áldva  
békén növekedvén  
Napról napra ezután is  
fejlődj Ausztrália,  
Erősödjél még sokáig,  
hazánk.  
Ausztrália.

Az 1986-os év fordulópontnak számít Ausztrália történetében, mert egy elfogadott alkotmányerejű törvénynek köszönhetően az ország felszámolta függőségét a brit parlamenttől, csupán néhány szimbolikus elemet hagyva, amelyek emlékeztethetik a lakókat az egykori Brit Birodalomban betöltött szerepükre, egykori gyarmati státuszukra.

A harmadik, szimbolikus kapocs, amely összeköti az országot az Egyesült Királysággal, nem más, mint az államfő személye. Az Egyesült Királyság államfője az ország feje, azaz a mindenkori brit uralkodó, jelen esetben II. Erzsébet királynő, akit a főkormányzó képvisel. A főkormányzót az ország miniszterelnökének ajánlása alapján a mindenkori uralkodó nevezi ki – ez az uralkodó egyetlen közvetlen beavatkozása Ausztrália életébe. A főkormányzó szerepe az országban lényegében reprezentatív, de ugyanakkor megtartotta némi hatalmát és mind a mai napig például ő nevezi ki a miniszterelnököt, sőt ő is tudja lemondani, ha az elvesztette a parlament bizalmát vagy törvénytelenül jár el. Emellett elutasíthatja a kormányfőnek az alsóház feloszlatásáról szóló kérését.

Azonban Ausztráliában többen érzik úgy, hogy a brit befolyás minden jelét el kellene tüntetni azzal, hogy az ausztrál államfő ne brit, hanem ausztrál legyen és így a királynőt és a főkormányzót egy választott államfőre cserélnék.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the symbols of Australia.***

***VIII. Compare the symbols of Australia with those of your country***

## II. HISTORY AND ETHNIC RELATIONS

### 1. A New Nation



Australia's Aboriginal people were thought to have arrived here by boat from South East Asia during the last Ice Age, at least 50,000 years ago. At the time of the European discovery and settlement, up to one million Aboriginal people lived across the continent as hunters and gatherers. They were scattered in 300 clans and spoke 250 languages and 700 dialects. Each clan had a spiritual connection with a specific piece of land. However, they also travelled widely to trade, find water and seasonal produce, and for ritual and totemic gatherings.

Despite the diversity of their homelands – from outback deserts and tropical rainforests to snow-capped mountains – all Aboriginal people share a belief in the timeless, magical realm of the Dreamtime. According to the Aboriginal myth, totemic spirit ancestors forged all aspects of life during the Dreamtime of the world's creation. These spirit ancestors continue to connect natural phenomena, as well as past, present and future through every aspect of Aboriginal culture.

Asian and Oceanic mariners and traders were in contact with the Indigenous Australians for many centuries before the European expansion into the Eastern Hemisphere. Some formed substantial relationships with communities in northern Australia.

The first recorded European contact with Australia was in March 1606, when the Dutch explorer Willem Janszoon (1570 – 1630) charted the west coast of Cape York Peninsula, Queensland. Later that year, the Spanish explorer Luis Vaez de Torres sailed through the strait separating Australia and Papua New Guinea. Over the next two centuries, the European explorers and traders continued to chart the coastline of Australia, then known as New Holland. In 1688, William Dampier became the first British explorer to land on the Australian coast.



It was not until 1770 that another Englishman, Captain James Cook, aboard the Endeavour, extended a scientific voyage to the South Pacific in order to further chart the east coast of Australia and claim it for the British Crown. His party had spent four months in exploration along eastern Australia, from south to north. Unlike the Dutch explorers, who deemed the land of doubtful value and preferred to focus on the rich Indies to the north, Cook and Joseph Banks of the Royal Society, who accompanied Cook for scientific

observations, reported that the land was more fertile. Cook's fame in Britain helped to fix the attention of the British government on the area, which had some strategic significance in the European wars of the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries.

In 1779 Joseph Banks recommended Botany Bay, named after the profusion of new plants found there, as a site for a penal settlement. A new outlet was needed for convicts to be transported overseas in continuance of British penal policy after the loss of the 13 North American colonies. In 1786 the British government decided to adopt Bank's recommendation. Considerations other than the pressing need to reduce the convict population may have influenced Lord Sydney, the Home minister, in his action. There was, for example, some expression of interest in supplies for the Royal Navy and in the prospects for trade in the future. The first fleet in the series that transported convicts arrived in January 1788, bringing 1,500 people, nearly half of them convicts. On January 26, Captain Arthur Phillip of the Royal Navy raised the British flag at Sydney Cove, which he decided was preferable to Botany Bay, slightly to the south, as a settlement site, and it is on this day every year that Australia Day is celebrated. The colony of New South Wales was formally proclaimed on February 7, 1788.

In all, about 160 000 men and women were brought to Australia as convicts from 1788 until penal transportation ended in 1868. The convicts were joined by free immigrants from the early 1790s. The wool industry and the gold rushes of the 1850s provided an impetus for free settlers to come to Australia.

Scarcity of labour, vastness of the land and new wealth based on farming, mining and trade made Australia a land of opportunity. Yet during this period, the Indigenous Australians suffered enormously. Death, illness, displacement and dispossession disrupted traditional lifestyles and practices.

The major continuing problems of the colonies arose from the efforts to carry out the British policy designed for a penitentiary when other interests—fishing, sealing, farming, and trade—were developing. The economic development begun in the convict phase of settlement included the expansion of agriculture where conditions were favourable, as in Van Diemen's Land, which started in 1815 to export grain to New South Wales. Roads, bridges, and other transportation facilities necessary for commerce were built by convict labour, as were government buildings. In the early nineteenth century, enterprising colonists successfully introduced merino sheep as a source of the fine wool increasingly demanded by the expanding British textile industry.

Individual immigrants to Australia increased in number in the 1820s. They were mostly people of some means with which to acquire land, which was in general granted only to those of substance. This land policy, favouring the so-called exclusives, or individuals of established position, over the freed convicts, or emancipists, who sought to advance themselves, facilitated the pastoral expansion of the 1820s. The colonies already established—New South Wales and Van Diemen's Land—got most of the early immigrants, but some

immigrants went to the newer colonies, Western Australia and South Australia. In the 1830s, the southern part of New South Wales, which later became the colony of Victoria (1851), was occupied by sheepmen from farther north and from Van Diemen's Land. Thus, this portion of Australia was originally settled by migration within Australia.

In 1829, 19 counties around Sydney in the southeast, comprising 8.9 million hectares, were officially designated as the only area of settlement in New South Wales. But sheepmen had already established stations (ranches) and sheep runs beyond the official boundaries before they were so designated. Such individuals were legally trespassers on the crown land and, like their counterparts in the United States who occupied land without a title or permit, they became known as squatters. Unlike the squatters in the United States, however, those in Australia were for the most part men of substance from the middle and upper classes of the British society. The term squatter did not carry any invidious meaning. In fact, squatters became the landed gentry of Australia—the so-called squattocracy—and their wealth made them the most powerful economic segment of the population. Sheep were the basis of their wealth, and by 1850 there were more than 15 million head in Australia. Squatting was legitimised in 1836, after the British government recognised the impossibility of enforcing the original settlement restrictions. The expansion of the pastoral industry did not result in new urban centers; the hundreds of sheep stations in New South Wales had an average of only 10 to 12 people each. The established seaport cities continued to be the main centers of population, making relative urbanisation a feature of the Australian settlement pattern in the colonial period.

The Australian colonies became self-governing while undergoing great changes caused by the discovery of gold in 1851. Gold was, in fact, a cause for the change in attitude of the British government, which considered that the increasing wealth as well as the growing population of the colonies justified their assumption of political responsibility. The discovery of gold, first in New South Wales and soon afterward in the new colony of Victoria, led to an influx of newcomers, including professional and skilled people. In the 1850s, Victoria produced more than one-third of the world's gold. Between 1852 and 1870, gold's export value was greater than that of wool. Most Australian gold was exported to Britain, which used it to maintain a gold standard for the pound.

Agriculture, transportation, and industry developed from the 1850s to meet the demands of the increasing population. South Australia, largely through its own capital resources, increased wheat output sharply, started the manufacture of agricultural machinery, and pioneered river transport to ship grain to Victoria. The colonial governments of New South Wales and Victoria undertook to build railroads, but the selection of different gauges was the origin of an eventual major problem in transportation. Industries of all sorts—processing, manufacturing, and engineering, including foundries and shipyards—were established in Sydney and Melbourne. Western Australia and Tasmania, however, did not experience similar development.

The pastoral industry adapted in part to changing conditions by greatly increasing cattle breeding for both beef and dairy products, which required less labor than sheep, and by slaughtering sheep for mutton. Where capital was available—chiefly in Victoria—station owners started to fence their sheep runs as a means of reducing their need for shepherds. Wool shippers benefited greatly from improved ocean shipping, which increased the frequency and decreased the cost and elapsed time of voyages to and from Britain.

The suddenly increased pressure on the land resources of New South Wales and Victoria that began in the 1850s resulted in a popular movement against squatting and squatters; the slogan was “Unlock the Lands” to permit the formation of new wheat and dairy farms. The colonial governments were powerless to resolve the conflict until 1856, when their newly acquired constitutions gave them certain control of the disposition of public lands. Land reform laws were finally enacted in the 1860s after bitter political struggles. The elaborate provisions of the laws proved in many cases to be of more benefit to squatters than to would-be settlers.

The 1870s and 1880s were decades of great economic development in the Australian colonies. Farming expanded as railroads penetrated the coastal ranges of the southeast and more land became accessible. Irrigation works were extended and improved, specialised machinery was invented (for example, the so-called jump-stump plow), and improved seeds and farming methods contributed to higher yields. By the late 1880s, the volume of investment had led to spiraling speculation, especially in Victoria, where the boom reached its greatest height and where the subsequent collapse was eventually the greatest. Low wool prices and a severe drought brought about a depression in the 1890s.

The Commonwealth of Australia was formed in 1901 through the federation of six states under a single constitution. The number of the non-Indigenous population at the time of Federation was 3.8 million. Half of these lived in cities, three-quarters were born in Australia, and the majority was of English, Scottish or Irish descent.

The founders of the new nation believed they were creating something new and were concerned to avoid the pitfalls of the old world. They wanted Australia to be harmonious, united and egalitarian, and had progressive ideas about the human rights, the observance of democratic procedures and the value of a secret ballot.

While one of the first acts of the new Commonwealth Parliament was to pass the Immigration Restriction Act 1901, which restricted migration to people of primarily European origin, this was dismantled after the Second World War. Today Australia has a global, non-discriminatory policy and is home to people from more than 200 countries.

From 1900 to 1914 great progress was made in developing Australia’s agricultural and manufacturing capacities, and in setting up institutions for government and social services.



## **2. The Impact of War**

The First World War had a devastating impact on Australia. In 1914 the male population of Australia was less than 3 million, yet almost 400 000 of them volunteered to fight in the war. As many as 60 000 died and tens of thousands were wounded.

Out of this experience was born one of Australia's most enduring values: the 'Anzac' ethos of courage and spirit. Every year on 25 April, Australia commemorates the brave but devastating battle fought by the Australia and New Zealand Army Corps—Anzacs—at Gallipoli, Turkey, in 1915. The day also commemorates all Australian soldiers who have fought in wars since then.

'In the end ANZAC stood and still stands for reckless valour in a good cause, for enterprise, resourcefulness, fidelity, comradeship and endurance that will never admit defeat.'- Charles Bean, a historian of the First World War wrote.

In reaction to the grief, the 1920s was a whirlwind of new cars and cinemas, American jazz and movies and fervour for the British Empire. When the Great Depression hit in 1929, social and economic divisions widened and many Australian financial institutions failed. Sport was the national distraction and sporting heroes such as the racehorse Phar Lap and cricketer Donald Bradman gained near-mythical status.

The period between the two World Wars was marked by instability. Social and economic divisions widened during the Depression years when many Australian financial institutions failed.

In World War II, the reaction was the same as that of 1914; Australia was automatically at war without further formality when Britain declared war on Germany on September 3, 1939. Again forces were sent to the Middle East. The Royal Australian Air Force was rapidly expanded, and some of its units took part in the Battle of Britain in 1940. In the difficult military campaigns that finally succeeded in eliminating or neutralising Japanese military forces on the islands to the north and northeast of Australia, Australian army, navy, and air force units played a major role. Australia proper was not invaded but was subjected to 96 attacks by air, which included severe damage to Darwin. Some 691,400 men and women served in Australia's armed forces during six years of war. Casualties numbered about 71,000, of whom more than 29,000 were killed and almost 2,500 were missing; 30,000 were taken prisoner, of whom 8,000 died in captivity.

During the Second World War Australian forces made a significant contribution to the Allied victory in Europe, in Asia and in the Pacific. The generation that fought in the war and survived came out of the war with a sense of pride in Australia's capabilities.

## **3. Post-War Prosperity and Changing Society**

After the war Australia entered a boom period. Millions of refugees and migrants arrived in Australia, many of them young people happy to embrace their new lives with energy and vigour. The number of Australians employed in

the manufacturing industry had grown steadily since the beginning of the century. Many women who had taken over factory work while men were away at war were able to continue working in peacetime.

The economy developed rapidly in the 1950s with major nation-building projects such as the Snowy Mountains Scheme, a hydro-electric power scheme located in Australia's Southern Alps. Suburban Australia also prospered. The rate of home ownership rose dramatically from barely 40 per cent in 1947 to more than 70 per cent by 1960.

Other developments included the expansion of the social security net and the development of television. Melbourne hosted the Olympic Games of 1956, shining the international spotlight on Australia. (In 2000, the Olympic Games came to Australia a second time, hosted by Sydney.)

The 1960s were a period of change for Australia. The ethnic diversity produced by post-war immigration, the decline of the United Kingdom and the Vietnam War (to which Australia sent troops) all contributed to the atmosphere of political, economic and social change.

In 1967 the Australian people voted overwhelmingly in a national referendum to give the federal government the power to pass legislation on behalf of the Indigenous Australians and to include the Indigenous Australians in future censuses. The referendum result was the culmination of a strong campaign by both Indigenous and Non-Indigenous Australians. It was widely seen as a strong affirmation of the Australian people's wish to see its government take direct action to improve the living conditions of the Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples.

The long post-war domination of national politics by the coalition of the Liberal and Country (now National) parties ended in 1972, when the Australian Labor Party was elected. The next three years saw major changes in Australia's social and economic policy agenda and a legislative program of reforms in health, education, foreign affairs, social security and industrial relations. However, in 1975 a constitutional crisis resulted in Labor Prime Minister Gough Whitlam being dismissed by the Governor-General. In the subsequent general election the Labor Party suffered a major defeat and the Liberal-National Coalition ruled until 1983, when the Labor Party again won office.

The Hawke-Keating Labor governments were in office from 1983 till 1996. They introduced a number of economic reforms, such as deregulating the banking system and floating the Australian dollar. In 1996 a Coalition Government led by John Howard won the general election and was re-elected in 1998, 2001 and 2004. The Liberal-National Coalition Government enacted several reforms, including changes in the taxation and industrial relations systems.

In 2007 Mr. Kevin Rudd led the Australian Labor Party to government with policies designed to build modern Australia equipped to meet the challenges of the future - including tackling climate change, reforming Australia's health and

hospital system, investing in education and skills training and reforming Australia's workplace laws.

Today Australia is one of the most cosmopolitan and dynamic societies in the world. Over 200 languages are spoken, with English the common language. The nation has thriving ethnic media, an international business reputation, an innovative artistic community, diverse religious and cultural activities and variety in foods, restaurants, fashion and architecture.

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) act of finding something that had not been known before;
- 2) form of a language that is spoken in a particular part of a country or by a particular group of people and that contains some words, grammar, or pronunciations ( the ways in which words are said) that are different from the forms used in other parts or by other groups;
- 3) object that is respected by a group of people, especially for religious reasons;
- 4) large area of land where it is always very hot and dry, and there is a lot of sand;
- 5) tropical forest with tall trees that are very close together, growing in an area where it rains a lot;
- 6) member of your family who lived a long time ago;
- 7) half of the earth, especially one of the halves above and below the equator;
- 8) part of the sea that is partly enclosed by a curve in the land;
- 9) someone who has been proved to be guilty of a crime and sent to prison;
- 10) prison – used especially in the names of prisons;
- 11) when large numbers of people go to live in another area or country, especially in order to find work;
- 12) people who belong to a high social class;
- 13) group of people who have the same interests, religion, race etc.;
- 14) to show by marking a paper, raising your hand etc which person you want to elect or whether you support a particular plan;
- 15) extreme sadness, especially because someone you love has died.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Australia's Aboriginal people were thought to have arrived here by boat from South East Africa during the last Ice Age, at least 50,000 years ago.
2. Despite the diversity of their homelands – from outback deserts and tropical rainforests to snow-capped mountains – all Aboriginal people share a belief in the timeless, magical realm of the Future.

3. Asian and Oceanic mariners and traders were in contact with Indigenous Australians for many centuries before the European expansion into the Western Hemisphere.

4. It was not until 1770 that another Englishman, Captain James Cook, aboard the Endeavour, extended a scientific voyage to the South Pacific in order to further chart the east coast of Australia and claim it for the British Crown.

5. The major continuing problems of the colonies arose from efforts to carry out French policy designed for a penitentiary when other interests—fishing, sealing, farming, and trade—were developing.

6. In the early nineteenth century, enterprising colonists successfully introduced merino sheep as a source of the fine cotton increasingly demanded by the expanding British textile industry.

7. The term squatter did not carry any invidious meaning. In fact, squatters became the landed gentry of Australia—the so-called squattocracy—and their wealth made them the most powerful economic segment of the population.

8. The Australian colonies became self-governing while undergoing great changes caused by the development of mines in 1851.

9. Agriculture, transportation, and industry developed from the 1850s to meet the demands of the increasing population. South Australia, largely through its own capital resources, increased wheat output sharply, started the manufacture of agricultural machinery, and pioneered river transport to ship bananas to Victoria.

10. The 1870s and 1880s were decades of great economic development in the Australian colonies. Farming expanded as railroads penetrated the coastal ranges of the southeast and more land became accessible.

11. The Commonwealth of Australia was formed in 1901 through the federation of six states under a single king. The non-Indigenous population at the time of Federation was 3.8 million. Half of these lived in cities, three-quarters were born in Australia, and the majority was of English, Scottish or Irish descent.

12. The period between the two world wars was marked by stability. Social and economic divisions widened during the Depression years when many Australian financial institutions failed.

13. The 1960s was a period of change for Australia. The ethnic diversity produced by post-war immigration, the decline of the United Kingdom and the Korean War (to which Australia sent troops) all contributed to an atmosphere of political, economic and social change.

14. The Hawke-Keating Labor governments were in office from 1983 till 1996. They introduced a number of economic reforms, such as deregulating the government system and floating the Australian dollar.

15. Today Australia is one of the most cosmopolitan and dynamic societies in the world. Over 200 languages are spoken, with English the common language.

**III. Read the text about racism in Australia. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use**

For around 50,000 years, 1 \_\_\_\_ of British settlers in 1788, Australia was occupied exclusively by Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples. Paleo-archeological evidence supplemented by recent DNA testing shows that 2 \_\_\_\_ of aboriginal people arrived from 50,000 until approximately 2,000 BC. Post-1788, the British Empire applied 3 \_\_\_\_ of Terra Nullius to the Australian continent and imposed political and economic control of it in the lead up to the 1901 foundation of the independent Commonwealth of Australia. Despite 4 \_\_\_\_ contained within British law, Government policy and public opinion in colonial times and 5 \_\_\_\_ Federation often treated Aboriginal people as inferior.

Initially, indigenous Australians were in most states 6 \_\_\_\_ of full citizenship of the new nation on grounds of their race and restrictive immigration laws were introduced to preference "white" European immigrants to Australia. 7 \_\_\_\_ against indigenous people and multiethnic immigration were dismantled in the early decades of the Post War period. A 1967 Referendum regarding Aboriginal rights was carried with over 90% approval by the electorate. 8 \_\_\_\_ have re-established Aboriginal Land Rights under Australian law and in the early 21st century, indigenous Australians account for around 2.5% of the population, owning outright around 20% of all land. Intense focus 9 \_\_\_\_ like the removal of mixed ethnicity Aboriginal children from their Aboriginal parent resulted in a bipartisan Parliamentary apology to Aborigines carried in 2008. Aboriginal 10 \_\_\_\_ remain lower than other ethnic groups within Australia and again are the subject of political debate

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| A) deprived of the rights               | G) Discriminatory laws             |
| B) prior to the arrival                 | H) the early decades of            |
| C) Legal reforms                        | I) the European legal precept      |
| D) on the impact of historical policies | J) granted the rights              |
| E) several different waves              | K) theoretical notions of equality |
| F) health indicators                    |                                    |

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

**Historical relations**

The British navigator by James Cook claimed the east coast of Australia for Britain in 1770, without conducting any negotiations with the existing inhabitants. The first Governor of the New South Wales, Arthur Phillip, was instructed explicitly to establish friendship and good relations with the Aborigines and interactions between the early settlers and the indigenous people varied considerably between throughout the colonial period — from the mutual curiosity displayed by the early interlocutors Bennelong and Bungaree of Sydney, to the outright from hostility of Pemulwuy and Windradyne of the

Sydney region, and Yagan around Perth. Bennelong and a companion became the first Australians to sail to Europe, where they met the King George III. Bungaree was accompanied the explorer Matthew Flinders on the first circumnavigation of Australia. Pemulwuy was accused of the first killing of a white settler in 1790, and Windradyne resisted early a British expansion beyond the Blue Mountains.

With the establishment of European settlement and their subsequent expansion, the indigenous populations were progressively forced into neighbouring territories, or subsumed into the new political entities of the Australian colonies. Violent conflict between Indigenous Australians and European settlers, had described by some historians as frontier wars, arose out of this expansion: by the late 19th century, many populations had been forcibly relocated to land reserves and missions. The nature of many of these their land reserves and missions enabled disease to spread quickly and many were closed as resident numbers dropped, with the remaining residents being moved to other land reserves and missions into the 20th century.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Із історії Австралії**

Корінні жителі Австралії, відомі як австралійські аборигени, мають найдавнішу культурну історію в світі, яка почалася ще під час останнього льодовикового періоду. Хоча вчені до цих пір так і не зійшлися в думках, але вважається, що перші люди прибули до Австралії з Індонезії приблизно 70000 років тому. Перших переселенців, яких археологи пізніше назвали "робустами" через їхню ширококосту статуру, через 20000 років змінили предки австралійських аборигенів.

Європейці почали освоювати Австралію в 16 столітті. За португальськими мореплавцями пішли данці, яких змінили англійці на чолі з піратом Увільямом Дампьерою. Капітан Джеймс Кук здійснив подорож уздовж всього східного узбережжя в 1770 році, зробивши зупинку в Ботанічній затоці. Обігнувши Мис Йорк, він оголосив Австралію володінням Великобританії і назвав її Новий Південний Уельс.

У 1779 році Джозеф Бенкс (натураліст з команди Кука) запропонував уряду Великобританії вирішити проблему переповненості в'язниць переправляючи ув'язнених до Нового Південного Уельсу. У 1787 році в Ботанічній затоці кинув якір Перший Флот під командуванням Капітана Артура Філіпа, який і став першим губернатором колонії. На 11 кораблях флоту було 750 переселенців, чоловіків і жінок, чотири команди моряків і запас продовольства на два роки. Філіп прибув у Ботанічну затоку 26 січня, але незабаром він переніс колонію в Сідней, де вода і земля були кращими. Для новоприбулих Новий Південний Уельс був жахливим місцем і загроза голоду висіла над колонією протягом 16 років.

У наступні десятиліття в Австралії почали з'являтися вільні поселенці, а у 1850 році в країні були відкриті золоті родовища. Величезний потік емігрантів і різке піднесення економіки безповоротно змінили колоніальну соціальну структуру. Аборигени були вижиті із земель, необхідних колоністам для сільського господарства і видобутку корисних копалин. Промислова революція в Англії потребувала велику кількість сировини, тому австралійські сільськогосподарські і природні ресурси безконтрольно витрачалися.

Австралія стала державою, коли 1 січня 1901 року окремі колонії утворили федерацію (хоча через це перервалося багато культурних і торгових зв'язків з Англією).

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Részletek Ausztrália történelméből**

Az ausztrál őslakosok érkezését 40-70 ezer évvel ezelőttre datálják. E területtel foglalkozó szakemberek úgy vélik, hogy az őslakosok Afrikából származnak, és az elsők voltak, akik elhagyták ezt a kontinenst, hogy Ázsia felé vándoroljanak. Az első Afrikán kívüli modern emberi leletet is az ausztrál őslakosoknak köszönhetjük, a Mungo tónál fedezték fel három test maradványait. Habár az őshonos lakosságot egységesen Aboriginal Australians-nek nevezik, valójában sokszínű a népesség, körülbelül 400 különböző csoportot sikerült azonosítani, akiket elválaszt a különböző nyelv vagy a különböző kultúra és hagyományok.

Ausztrália elválasztja az India-óceánt a Csendes-óceántól. 1498-ban Vasco da Gama eljutott Indiába Afrika megkerülésével, az európai hajósoknak ezért addig nem volt sejtésük arról, hogy hol ér véget az India alatt hullámzó hatalmas vízterület. A Csendes-óceán „felfedezése” Magellán nevéhez fűződik, ám ő is tengernek (Déli-tenger) nevezte el Dél-Amerikát Ausztráliától és Ázsiától elválasztó óceánt, de az ő útja – bár tragikus véget ért – közelebb vitte a későbbi felfedezőket Ausztrália eléréséhez. A Fülöp-szigetek, ahol Magellán a halálát lelte, később Spanyolország fontos kereskedelmi állomása lett, így a hosszú úttól elfáradt hajósok felfrissíthették készleteiket. A spanyol konkviztádorok az inkák regéiből hallottak egy mesés szigetről, amely dúskál az aranyban, ezt próbálták beazonosítani egy olyan hellyel, mely létezése vitatott volt, de a tudósok meggyőződése szerint léteznie kellett. Ezt az ismeretlen földet Terra Australis Incognitának (ismeretlen déli föld) nevezték el.

Az európai hajósok számára a XVI. századig rejtély maradt ez a terület, köszönhetően az öreg kontinenstől való távolságának, és az akkor frissen felfedezett Amerika elfoglalásának.

Az első ismert, európai kultúrkörből származó ember, aki bizonyíthatóan az ausztrál kontinensre lépett, a holland navigátor, Willem Janszoon volt. Ettől fogva megszorodtak a kontinensre érkező, különféle nemzetiségű európai

felfedezők. Létezik egy elmélet egy 1520-as portugál felfedezésről, de ez nem kellően megalapozott. Viszont érkeztek spanyol, francia és holland kalandorok, akik folyamatosan térképezték fel az új területeket. Ekkor a holland érdeklődés volt a legintenzívebb, de ők csak egy részét fedezték fel a kontinensnek, és úgy látták, hogy nem hajt elég hasznot az új területek meghódítása, ezért nem kezdtek átfogó kolonizálásba. A gyarmatosítók versenyéből az angolok emelkedtek ki, s tekintették a kontinenst közbenső állomásnak Amerika és Anglia között.

A felfedezés James Cookra várt, aki a XVIII század második felében a brit korona megbízásából feltérképezte Ausztráliát, majd 1769-ben körbehajózta Új-Zélandot, és kiköt Ausztrália nyugati partjainál. 1770. április 19-én pillantotta meg Cook kapitány Ausztrália délkeleti partjait. Ezt tekintik Ausztrália hivatalos felfedezésének. Ezzel megkezdődött a kontinens birtokba vétele.

A brit birodalom elveszítette amerikai gyarmatait, ezért figyelme az új ázsiai lehetőségek felé fordult, így vált egyre fontosabbá a nemrég felfedezett Ausztrália. A brit fennhatóság dominánssá vált a kontinensen és az azt körülvevő szigeteken, így viszonylag rövid időn belül az összes ausztráliai terület brit uralom alá került.

Ausztrália őslakosai – aboriginok – kezdetben békés viszonyt folytattak a betelepülőkkel, de később a természeti kincsek kihasználása miatt ez a viszony megromlott. A területek felfedezése következtében rengeteg bennszülöttet mészároltak le és mire megszületett a védelmükre szóló törvény, addigra már csak alig ötven ezren éltek a kontinensen. Később törvény született a földek felosztásáról, de a brit gyarmatosítás következtében nem lettek teljesen elismerve az aboriginok jogai semmilyen tekintetben, csak a 60-as években kaptak állampolgári jogokat, tehát évszázadokon keresztül hányattatott sors jutott nekik. A brit igények bejelentése után Ausztrália fokozatosan az Egyesült Királyság fennhatósága alá került és a fegyenctelepen kívül létrehozták a szabad államokat is. A XX. század elejére az ausztráliai államok egyesültek, így jött létre a mai formájában is ismert ország.

Végül 1901-ben a Brit Nemzetközösség tagja lett, mint szabad államok közössége. Az új állam fokozatosan gyengítette a brit befolyást, bár a viszony sohasem vált ellenségessé, mind a mai napig kiváló viszonyt ápol egymással a két fél.

***VI. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the history of Australia.***

***VII. Compare the ethnic relations in Australia with those in your country.***



### III. LOCATION AND GEOGRAPHY



Australia is an island continent in Southern Hemisphere, lying between Antarctica and Asia. It is surrounded by the Indian Ocean to the west; the Timor, Arafura, and Coral Seas to the north; the Pacific Ocean to the east; and the Tasman Sea and Southern Ocean to the south.

The continent of Australia shares marine territorial boundaries with its nearest neighbouring countries. The nearest of these countries include Indonesia, East Timor, Papua New Guinea, New Zealand, New Caledonia, the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu, which are all island nations or territories in the South-East Asian and Asia-Pacific regions. Australia also shares a contested overland border in the Australian Antarctic Territory which adjoins territories claimed by several nations.

Indonesia is Australia's largest near-neighbouring country and belongs to both the Asia-Pacific and South-East Asian regions. Australia's second- and third-largest neighbours, Papua New Guinea and New Zealand, are referred to as belonging to the Oceania region. This region is divided into three island groups of Melanesia, Micronesia and Polynesia. The north-east of these islands is part of Melanesia and the larger of these are called continental islands as distinct from the much smaller islands of Micronesia and Polynesia.

Australia comprises a land area of almost 7.7 million square kilometres. The bulk of the Australian land mass lies between latitudes 10 degrees 41 minutes (10° 41') south (Cape York, Queensland) and 43° 38' south (South East Cape, Tasmania) and between longitudes 113° 09' east (Steep Point, Western

Australia) and 153° 38' east (Cape Byron, New South Wales). The most southerly point on the mainland is South Point (Wilson's Promontory, Victoria) 39° 08' south. The latitudinal distance between Cape York and South Point is about 3,180 kilometres (km), while the latitudinal distance between Cape York and South East Cape is 3,680 km. The longitudinal distance between Steep Point and Cape Byron is about 4,000 km. In a jurisdictional and economic sense, however, Australia extends far beyond this land mass.

The state of Tasmania includes numerous small islands and extends to Macquarie Island which lies approximately 1,470 km south east of the main island. The territories of Australia include the Australian Antarctic Territory, Christmas Island, the Cocos Islands, Heard Island, the McDonald Islands, Norfolk Island, the Coral Sea Islands, Ashmore Island, and Cartier Island. In total there are some 12,000 islands. While most of these islands are small, the United Nations Convention on the Law of the Sea allows Australia jurisdiction over large tracts of the ocean and seafloor that surround them.

Australia has an Exclusive Economic Zone that is 200 nautical miles wide (370.4 km). This is measured from the lowest astronomical tide – the lowest level that sea level can be predicted to fall to, under normal meteorological conditions. The Exclusive Economic Zone gives Australia jurisdiction over a marine area of some 10 million sq km.

The land area of Australia is almost as great as that of the United States of America (excluding Alaska), about 50% greater than Europe (excluding the former USSR) and 32 times greater than the United Kingdom.

Australia is the lowest, flattest and, apart from Antarctica, the driest of the continents. Unlike Europe and North America, where some landscapes date back to around 20,000 years ago, when great ice sheets retreated, the age of landforms in Australia is generally measured in many millions of years. This gives Australia a very distinctive physical geography.

Much of the centre of Australia is flat, but there are numerous ranges (e.g. Macdonnells, Musgrave) and some individual mountains of which Uluru (Ayers Rock) is probably the best known. Faulting and folding in this area took place long ago. The area was worn to a plain, and the plain was uplifted and then eroded to form the modern ranges on today's plain. In looking at Uluru, one remarkable thing is not so much how it got there, but that so much has been eroded from all around to leave it there.

The Australian landforms of today are thus seen to result from long continued processes in a unique setting, giving rise to typical Australian landscapes, which in turn provide the physical basis for the distribution and nature of biological and human activity in Australia.

Although it is a large country, its topography is not too varied and most of it consists of low desert plateau. There are however fertile plains in the southeast. Although most of Australia is arid desert, it supports a wide range of diverse habitats, thus making it incredibly biodiverse. Alpine forests, tropical rainforests and a wide variety of plants and animals thrive there because of its

geographic isolation from the rest of the world. As such, 85% of its plants, 84% of its mammals and 45% of its birds are endemic to Australia. It also has the greatest number of reptile species in the world as well as some of the most venomous snakes and other dangerous creatures like the crocodile. Australia is most famous for its marsupial species, which include the kangaroo, koala and wombat.

In its waters, around 89% of Australia's fish species both inland and offshore are endemic. In addition, endangered coral reefs are common on Australia's coast – the most famous of these is the Great Barrier Reef. The Great Barrier Reef is the world's largest coral reef system and it stretches over an area of 133,000 square miles (344,400 sq km). It is made up of over 2,900 individual reefs and supports many different species, many of which are endangered.

Although the impact of environmental variation is highly evident in the traditional cultures of indigenous Australians, it has not been as strong a factor in immigrant cultures. The most significant lifestyle differences are affected primarily by variations in climate.

Australia consists of six states, two major mainland territories, and other minor territories. The states are New South Wales, Queensland, South Australia, Tasmania, Victoria and Western Australia. The two major mainland territories are the Northern Territory and the Australian Capital Territory. Western Australia is the largest state covering just under one third of the Australian landmass, followed by Queensland and New South Wales.

Australia also has several minor territories; the federal government administers a separate area within New South Wales, the Jervis Bay Territory, as a naval base and sea port for the national capital. In addition Australia has the following, inhabited, external territories: Norfolk Island, Christmas Island, Cocos (Keeling) Islands, and several largely uninhabited external territories: Ashmore and Cartier Islands, Coral Sea Islands, Heard Island and McDonald Islands and the Australian Antarctic Territory.

The capital city, Canberra, is located in the Australian Capital Territory (ACT). The ACT was created in 1909, and the city of Canberra was designed by an American landscape architect in 1912. The Commonwealth Parliament relocated there from Melbourne in 1927. Canberra has a population of over 300,000 and is the largest inland city.

## **TASKS**

### ***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) real or imaginary line that marks the edge of a state, country etc, or the edge of an area of land that belongs to someone;
- 2) distance north or south of the equator (=the imaginary line around the middle of the world), measured in degrees;
- 3) whole amount;
- 4) right to use an official power to make legal decisions, or the area where this right exists;
- 5) regular rising and falling of the level of the sea;

- 6) area of countryside or land of a particular type, used especially when talking about its appearance;
- 7) group of mountains or hills, usually in a line;
- 8) large area of flat dry land;
- 9) to weaken or damage something by taking away parts of it gradually, or to become weaker in this way;
- 10) shape of an area of land, including its hills, valleys etc.;
- 11) large, flat area of land that is higher than the land around it;
- 12) (of land or weather) having little rain; very dry;
- 13) natural home of a plant or animal;
- 14) to become very successful or very strong and healthy;
- 15) someone whose job is to design buildings.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Australia is an island continent in the Southern Hemisphere, lying between Antarctica and Europe.

2. Indonesia is Australia's largest near-neighbouring country and belongs to both the Asia-Pacific and South-East Asian regions.

3. The state of Tasmania includes numerous small islands and extends to the Solomon Islands which lies approximately 1,470 km south east of the main island.

4. The United Nations Convention on the Preservation Law allows Australia jurisdiction over large tracts of the ocean and seafloor that surround them.

5. In total there are some 12,000 islands. While most of these islands are small, Australia has an Exclusive Economic Zone that is 200 nautical miles wide (370.4 km). The Exclusive Economic Zone gives Australia obligation over a marine area of some 10 million sq km.

6. The land area of Australia is almost as great as that of Russia (excluding Alaska), about 50% greater than Europe and 32 times greater than the United Kingdom.

7. Australia is the lowest, flattest and, apart from Antarctica, the driest of the continents. Unlike Europe and South America, where some landscapes date back to around 20,000 years ago, when great ice sheets retreated, the age of landforms in Australia is generally measured in many millions of years.

8. The Australian landforms of today are thus seen to result from long continued processes in a unique setting, giving rise to typical Australian landscapes, which in turn provide the physical basis for the distribution and nature of biological and human activity in Australia.

9. Although it is a large country, its topography is not too varied and most of it consists of high desert plateau. There are however fertile plains in the southeast.

10. Australia's climate is mostly arid to semiarid, but the south and east are temperate and the north is cold.

11. Alpine forests, tropical rainforests and a wide variety of plants and animals thrive there because of its geographic nearness to the rest of the world.

12. Australia is most famous for its marsupial species, which include the kangaroo, koala and lion.

13. It also has the greatest number of reptile species in the world as well as some of the most venomous snakes and other dangerous creatures like the crocodile.

14. Although the impact of environmental variation is highly evident in the traditional cultures of the British Australians, it has not been as strong a factor in immigrant cultures.

15. The ACT was created in 1909, and the city of Sydney was designed by an American landscape architect in 1912.

**III. Read the text about the geographic features of Australia. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

The Australian mainland is in fact 1 \_\_\_\_ and is often referred to as an island continent. Australia is also surrounded by thousands of smaller islands ranging in size from 2 \_\_\_\_ to some more than twice the size of the Australian Capital Territory. The largest of these is Melville Island in the Northern Territory with an area of 5,786 square km.

Fraser Island off the Queensland coast is Australia's fifth largest island and 3 \_\_\_\_.

Australia also has a number of large islands in the Pacific, Indian and Southern Oceans and the Coral and Timor Seas as part of its 4 \_\_\_\_ as well as several closer to the mainland which are larger than 1000 square kilometres..

Despite 5 \_\_\_\_ to Australia at the bottom of the world in the Southern Hemisphere. Australia is in fact 6 \_\_\_\_ in the world in terms of its elevation with an average elevation of only 330 m. The highest points on the other continents are all more than 7 \_\_\_\_ of Australia's highest peak, Mount Kosciuszko.

Apart from 8 \_\_\_\_, Australia is the driest continent in the world. About 35 per cent of the continent receives so little rain, it can be classified as desert.

The largest Australian desert is the 9 \_\_\_\_ desert at 348,750 square kilometres., spanning Western and South Australia. The runner up is the Great Sandy desert in Western Australia at 267,250 square kilometres.

The total desert area equates to 18 per cent of 10 \_\_\_\_ of Australia.

A) the World's largest sand island

B) the lowest continent

C) the popular references

D) Antarctica

E) rocky outcrops

F) Great Victoria

G) the total mainland area

H) External Territories

I) Arctica

J) twice the height

K) the world's largest island

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

#### **Australia's location: a regional perspective**

The continent of the Australia shares marine and territorial boundaries with its nearest the neighbouring countries. The nearest of these countries

include Indonesia, East Timor, Papua New Guinea, New Zealand, New Caledonia, the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu, which are all island nations or territories in the South-East Asian and Asia-Pacific regions. Australia also shares a contested overland border in the Australian Antarctic Territory which adjoins territories claimed by several nations.

The Indonesia is Australia's the largest near-neighbouring country and belongs to both the Asia-Pacific and South-East Asian regions. Australia's second- and third-largest of neighbours, Papua New Guinea and New Zealand, are referred to as belonging to the Oceania region. This region is divided into the three of island groups of Melanesia, Micronesia and Polynesia. The north-east of these islands is part of Melanesia and the larger of these are been called continental islands as distinct from the much smaller islands of Micronesia and Polynesia.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Рельєф**

Австралія – найменший материк Землі. Його площа становить 7,6 млн. км<sup>2</sup>. Південний тропік перетинає Австралію майже посередині. Крайньою північною точкою є мис Йорк, південною – мис Південно-Східний, західною – мис Стіп-Пойнт, східною – мис Байрон.



Австралія – компактний материк: його центральні області майже однаково віддалені від океанів. Він омивається з заходу і з півдня Індійським океаном, зі сходу і півночі – Тасмановим, Кораловим, Тиморським і Арафурським морями Тихого океану. Береги розчленовані слабо, великі затоки – Карпентарія на півночі і Велика Австралійська на півдні; єдиний великий півострів – Кейп-Йорк.

У рельєфі Австралії переважають рівнини. Близько 95% поверхні не перевищує 600 м над рівнем моря. Головні географічні одиниці:

1. Західно-Австралійське плоскогір'я – середні висоти 400-500 м, з піднятими краями: на сході – хребет Масгрейв (г. Вудрофф, 1440 м) і Макдоннелл (г. Зіл, 1510 м), на півночі – масив Кімберлі (висота до 936 м), на заході – плосковершинний пісковиковий хребет Хамерслі висотою до 1226 м, на південному заході – хребет Дарлінг висотою близько 582 м.

2. Центральна низовина з переважанням висот до 100 м над рівнем моря. У районі озера Ейр найнижча точка Австралії – 12 м нижче рівня моря. На південному заході – хребет Фліндерсі Маунт-Лофті.

3. Великий Вододільний хребет, середньовисотний, з плоскими вершинами, крутим, сильно розчленованим східним схилом і порожньо-східчастим західним, що переходить у горбкуваті передгір'я (даунси). На півдні, в Австралійських Альпах, найвища точка Австралії – гора Косцюшко, 2230 м.

**VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.**

### Ausztrália földrajza



Ausztrália a Földön egyedülálló módon egyszerre kontinens és ország, pontosabban mondva az ausztrál állam magában foglalja a legkisebb kontinenst, és ez a hatodik legnagyobb országgá teszi. A kontinens fekvése a legkedvezőtlenebb a földrészek között. A déli féltekén távol fekszik a kontinensektől. Neve a latin *Australis incognita* szavakból ered, melynek jelentése ismeretlen déli föld, ugyanis így hivatkoztak rá az európai hajósok és felfedezők a kontinens széleskörű feltérképezése előtt. A kontinens nem csak „kis” mérete miatt tűnik ki a többi közül, hanem megdöbbentő földrajzi tulajdonságaival is: 18%-a sivatag, 40%-a dúnékkal tűzdelt, 70%-a rendkívül száraz, évente kevesebb, mint 600 mm eső esik, ez a bizonyos híres **Outback**, a világ legősibb tája. Vörös sziklák, vörös por, okker síkságok, bibor színben úszó hegyek, ragyogó kék ég és magányos házikók jellemzik a végeérhetetlen sivatagi tájat. Kiváló felfedezési lehetősége az Outback tájainak az, ahogyan régen a felfedezők is tették: teveháton. Az egynapos kiránduláson eljuthatunk az északi területen lévő Rainbow-völgy ősi szurdokaiba.

A kontinens mintegy 300 m-rel emelkedik a tengerszint fölé, s teljes területének mindössze 6%-a haladja meg a 610 m-t.

Ausztrália a világ legszárazabb lakott földrésze. A kontinens belsejében esik a világon a legkevesebb eső, s a terület háromnegyede sivatagos-félsivatagos terület, mely a kontinens belsejében található nagy kiterjedésű sivatagoktól egészen a nyugati partvidékig húzódik. A talaj igen terméketlen, lényegesen terméketlenebb, mint a világ más hasonló szárazságú sivatagos területei.

A különleges körülmények különleges képességeket követelnek és követelnek meg az életben maradáshoz, ezért igazán sokszínű az állat- és növényvilág. Nem ritka, hogy veszélyes ragadozók vendégeskednek a lakott településeken, vagy éppen cápák bukkannak fel a strandok környékén.

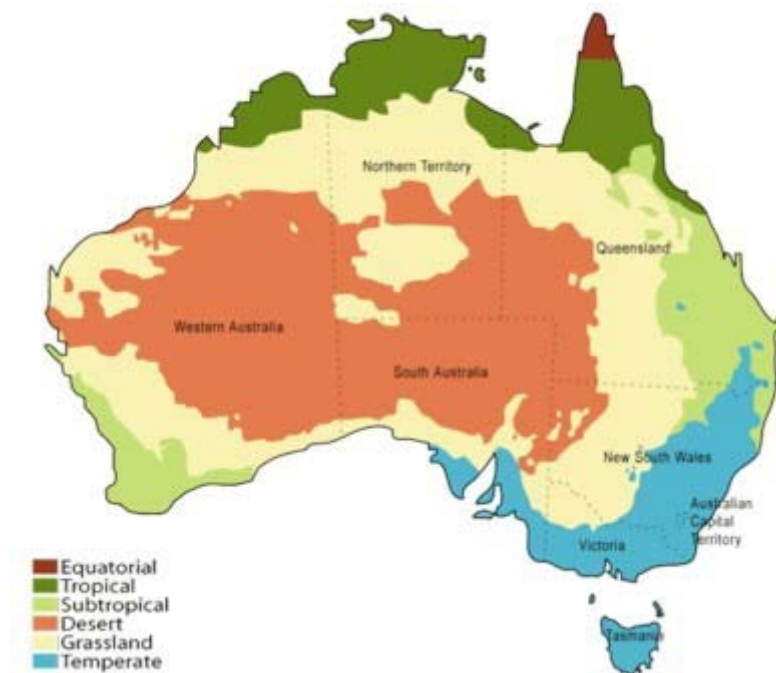
**VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the location of Australia.**

**VIII. Compare the geography of Australia with that of your country.**

## IV. CLIMATE

### 1. Australian Weather and Seasons – a Variety of Climates

The climate of Australia can vary a great deal from place to place, although in summer it's basically hot everywhere in varying degrees (little weather joke there) Australia is an essentially arid continent, with 80% of the land having a rainfall less than 600 millimetres per year and 50% having even less than 300 millimetres per year. Australia is in the south hemisphere so the seasons are opposite to the north hemisphere; this means that Christmas in Australia is in summer when it's hot, and summers can get quite a bit hotter than they do in the north hemisphere.



Due to the size of the continent, there is not one single seasonal calendar for the entire continent. Instead there are six climatic zones and two main seasonal patterns. There is a Summer / Autumn / Winter / Spring pattern in the Temperate zone, also affecting the Desert and the Grassland climatic zones and, a Wet / Dry pattern in the tropical north which includes the Equatorial, Tropical and sub-tropical zones.

Depending upon where you are each month, the season will vary on whether the weather is defined by the Temperate zone seasons or the tropical seasons.

**The temperate zone:** Summer / Autumn / Winter / Spring pattern

The Temperate zone occupies the coastal hinterland of New South Wales, much of Victoria, Tasmania, the south-eastern corner of South Australia and the south-west of Western Australia

The seasons in the temperate zone are described in terms of European seasons applied to the southern hemisphere in the following sequence:

- **Summer:** December to February
- **Autumn:** March to May



- **Winter:** June to August
- **Spring:** September to November

This means that Australian Christmas takes place at the height of summer. It also means that the mid-year break for students happens in winter. The long end of a year break for students is commonly known as the 'summer holidays', or the 'Christmas holidays'.



*Natural temperate grasslands, Queanbeyan Nature Reserve, New South Wales*

The two other zones affected by the temperate seasons are:

- **Grasslands (or savanna)** – essentially a belt surrounding the arid and semi-arid desert areas in the centre and seeping into the area north of Alice Springs in the Northern Territory.

- **Desert – arid and semiarid areas** of the centre of the continent, stretching across the vast amount of South Australia and Western Australia, far south western Queensland and far north western corner of New South Wales, and not quite half of the Northern Territory.

***The tropical zones: a Wet / Dry pattern***

There are three climatic zones in the tropical areas of Australia:

- **Equatorial** – the tip of Cape York and Bathurst and Melville Islands north of Darwin.

- **Tropical** – across northern Australia including Cape York, the Top End of the Northern Territory, land south of the Gulf of Carpentaria, and the Kimberley region.

- **Sub-tropical** – the coastal and inland fringe from Cairns along the Queensland coast and hinterland to the northern areas of New South Wales and the coastal fringe north of Perth to Geraldton in Western Australia.



*Approaching cyclonic storm east of the Serpentine Lakes, Great Victoria Desert, on the border of South Australia and Western Australia.*

***The wet and dry seasons***

The tropical regions of Australia, in the north of the country, including the equatorial and sub-tropical zones have high temperatures and high humidity and distinct wet and dry seasons.

In the Australian tropics the **wet season**, called the **monsoon season**, lasts about six months, between November and March. It is hotter than the dry season, with temperatures between 30 and 50 degrees Celsius. This is because of high humidity during the wet, which is caused by large amounts of water in the air. During the wet there is a lot of rain, which frequently causes flooding.

The **dry season** lasts about six months, usually between April and October. Temperatures are lower and the skies are generally clearer during the dry season. The average temperature is around 20 degrees Celsius

The 'build up' is the humid time of the year between the wet and dry seasons. It usually lasts for three or four months. Things become quite tense during the 'build up' as people sit and swelter in the humidity while waiting and hoping for the first rains to come. The humidity continues day and night with no respite, so when the rains finally do come everyone enjoys their cooling relief.

## Temperature



### *Bureau of Meteorology, Maximum temperature*

In the southern capital cities: Sydney, Canberra, Melbourne, Hobart, Adelaide and Perth, defined by the temperate zone, the average temperatures are: summer minimum 16 and summer maximum 26 and winter minimum 6 and winter maximum 14, all in degrees Celsius.

In the sub-tropic and tropical cities the average minimum temperatures are: Brisbane 16 and Darwin 23 with the average maximums: Brisbane 25 and Darwin 32. In the inland city of Alice Springs, surrounded by desert and grassland, the average minimum is 20 and the average maximum is 32.

Since the 1950s, Australian temperatures have, on average, risen by about 1°C with an increase in the frequency of heat waves and a decrease in the numbers of frosts and cold days, except in the regions close to the west and north-west of Sydney. Since 1900 the sea temperatures have been two degrees warmer.

## 2. Indigenous Seasonal Calendars

Indigenous people's knowledge about the weather and their descriptions of the seasons and climatic conditions are recognised today by scientists and the Australian Bureau of Meteorology (BOM).

For the Jawoyn people, from around Katherine near south east Arnhem Land in the Northern Territory, six seasons are described in the tropical zone in which they live. These descriptions can be useful as they are more detailed in their description and therefore more informative about what weather to be experienced.



*Mataranka tropical pool, Northern Territory*

- January: Summer (temperate zone), Wet (tropical zone), Jiorrk, the wet season
- February: Summer (temperate zone), Wet (tropical zone) Jiorrk, the wet season
- March: Autumn (temperate zone), Wet (tropical zone) Bungarung, the end of the rains
- April: Autumn(temperate zone), Dry (tropical zone) Bungarung, the end of the rains
- May: Autumn (temperate zone), Dry (tropical zone) Jungalk, the hot start of the dry

Wet (tropical zone) Bungarung, the end of the rains

- June: Winter (temperate zone), Dry (tropical zone) Jungalk, the hot start of the dry

- July: Winter(temperate zone), Dry (tropical zone), Malaparr, the cooler, dry

- August: Winter (temperate zone), Dry (tropical zone), Malaparr, the cooler, dry

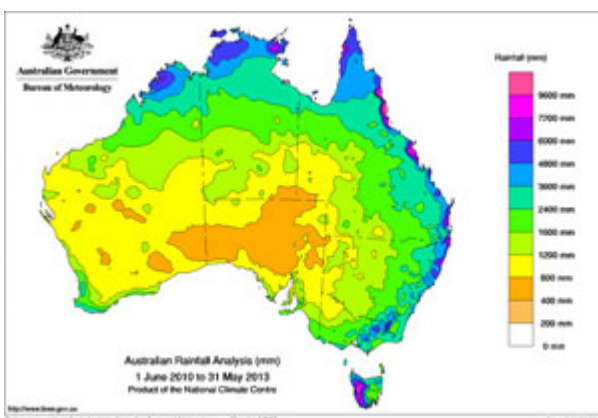
- September: Spring (temperate zone), Dry (tropical zone), Worrwopmi, the humid time

- October: Spring (temperate zone), Dry (tropical zone), Worrwopmi, the humid time

- November: Spring (temperate zone), Wet (tropical zone), Wakaringding, the first rains

- December: Summer (temperate zone), Wet (tropical zone), Wakaringding, the first rains

## **Rainfall**



*Bureau of Meteorology, Australian Rainfall Analysis June 2010-May 2013*

### **3. Cyclones, Snow and Floods**

The tropics are affected by the extremes of cyclones in the wet season and the inland deserts can remain totally dry for years whilst rains can produce floods. The wettest months in the southern capitals are from May to July.

Along the Great Dividing Range the mountain range that passes through New South Wales and Victoria, there are regular winter snowfalls. The snow season in the Alps in south-eastern Australia is from June to September.

The tradition of observational practice and high quality records have contributed to the vast amount of data now held and shared by the Bureau of

Meteorology (BOM). Based on over 200 years of data, the Bureau has observed that Australia's climate is changing, and observes the following trends:

- Since 1900, there have been many disastrous floods, with 2011, the year of the Queensland, Brisbane and Victorian floods, recorded as the second wettest year on record.

- Overall, rainfall patterns have also changed – the northwest has seen an increase in rainfall over the last 50 years while much of eastern Australia and the far southwest have experienced a decline.

### ***Cyclones***



*Cyclone Yassi hits Townsville, 2011, Climate Commission*

Cyclones are a tropical weather phenomenon. They are usually encountered in Australia between November and April, and they mostly take place in the north of the country. The Western Australian and Northern

Territory coasts, as well as the Queensland coast, are the usual places where the cyclones occur.

About six cyclones happen in Australia every year. By far the most famous cyclone in Australia is Cyclone Tracy, which hit Darwin in the Northern Territory on Christmas Eve 1974. Forty-nine people died as a result, and over 600 people were injured. Darwin had to be evacuated because over eighty per cent of the city was destroyed. But Tracy is not the worst cyclone that has ever visited Australia. In 1899, Cyclone Mahina killed over 400 people when it destroyed an entire pearl-fishing fleet at Bathurst Bay in Queensland.

### ***The dry regions***



*Trees shaped by the weather along a track near Margaret River crossing,*

The driest regions of Australia are found mostly in central Australia, in the arid and semi-arid desert regions with high daytime temperatures and low amounts of rain.

The dry desert regions of Australia are characterised by intense heat during the day and intense cold at night. Temperatures range from around 40 degrees Celsius in summer to between 16 and 24 degrees Celsius in winter. At night the temperature can vary from 19 degrees Celsius to zero degrees Celsius.

Desert conditions are different from drought. A drought is an unusually long period of time when there is not enough water for people to use in the way they normally would.

There have been many serious droughts in Australia in the last 200 years. The 1895–1903 drought lasted eight years and caused the death of half of Australia's sheep and forty per cent of its cattle. The 1963–68 drought caused a forty per cent reduction in wheat crops across Australia. In central Australia that same drought actually lasted eight years, from 1958 to 1967.

### ***Predicting climate and weather patterns***

Climate predictions and long range weather forecasting have improved the ability and capacity to respond to natural disasters in Australia: droughts, bushfires, cyclones, floods and severe storms experienced in Australia. Today, weekly, monthly, seasonal and annual updates on the national, territory and climatic zones are provided with data presented as trends since 1900.



*Storm cloud near Millthorpe.*

The ability to provide accurate forecasts and warnings for rainfall, floods and tropical cyclones has helped to mitigate and lessen the loss of lives in natural disasters. This was seen in the response to Cyclone Yasi in 2011, very different to the response to Cyclone Larry in 2009 and Cyclone Tracy in 1974, where forty-nine people died, and over 600 people were injured.

### ***El Niño-Southern Oscillation index***

The great Australian droughts of the twentieth century have mostly been closely linked with the major swings in the Southern Oscillation Index (SOI) with droughts in eastern Australia coinciding with the El Niño (warm central and eastern Pacific Ocean) phase of the El Niño-La Niña cycle.

## **TASKS**

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) amount of rain that falls on an area in a particular period of time;
- 2) area of land that is far from the coast, large rivers, or the places where people live;
- 3) large, flat area of land covered with grass, usually with few trees, that is found in hot countries, especially in Africa;
- 4) amount of water contained in the air;
- 5) season, from about April to October, when it rains a lot in India and other southern Asian countries;
- 6) to feel extremely hot and uncomfortable;
- 7) number of times that something happens within a particular period of time or within a particular group of people;

- 8) occasion when snow falls from the sky, or the amount that falls in a particular period of time;
- 9) decrease in the quality, quantity, or importance of something;
- 10) causing great harm, damage, or suffering;
- 11) land next to or close to the sea;
- 12) violent and often destructive storm in which the wind moves very fast in a circular direction;
- 13) very large amount of water that covers an area that is usually dry;
- 14) statement of what is likely to happen in the future;
- 15) long period of dry weather when there is not enough water for plants and animals to live.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. The climate of Australia can vary a great deal from place to place, although in summer it's basically cool everywhere.
2. Due to the size of the continent, there is not one single seasonal calendar for the entire continent. Instead there are ten climatic zones.
3. The Temperate zone occupies the coastal hinterland of New South Wales, much of Victoria, Tasmania, the south-eastern corner of South Australia and the south-west of Western Australia
4. The long end of year break for students is commonly known as the 'winter holidays', or the 'Christmas holidays'.
5. The tropical regions of Australia, in the north of the country, including the equatorial and sub-tropical zones have high temperatures and high humidity and distinct wet and dry seasons.
6. In the Australian tropics the wet season, called the monsoon season, lasts about six months, between April and September. It is hotter than the dry season, with temperatures between 30 and 50 degrees Celsius.
7. The dry season lasts about six months, usually between June and August. Temperatures are lower and the skies are generally clearer during the dry. The average temperature is around 20 degrees Celsius
8. The 'build up' is the humid time of year between the wet and dry seasons. It usually lasts for three or four months. Things become quite tense during the 'build up' as people sit and swelter in the humidity while waiting and hoping for the first snowstorms to come.
9. The humidity continues day and night with no respite, so when the rains finally do come everyone enjoys their warming relief.
10. Since the 1950s, Australian temperatures have, on average, fallen by about 1°C with an increase in the frequency of heat waves and a decrease in the numbers of frosts and cold days, except in the regions immediately to the west and north-west of Sydney.

11. Indigenous people's knowledge about the weather and their descriptions of the seasons and climatic conditions is recognised today in work with scientists and the Australian Bureau of Meteorology (BOM).

12. The tropics are affected by the extremes of cyclones in the dry season and the inland deserts can remain totally dry for years whilst rains can produce floods. The wettest months in the southern capitals are from May to July.

13. Along the Great Dividing Range the mountain range that passes through New South Wales and Victoria, there are regular winter floods. The snow season in the Alps in south-eastern Australia is June to September.

14. Overall, rainfall patterns have also changed – the northwest has seen an increase in rainfall over the last 50 years while much of eastern Australia and the far southwest have experienced an increase in rainfall too.

15. The ability to provide accurate forecasts and warnings for rainfall, floods and tropical cyclones has helped mitigate and lessen the loss of lives in natural disasters.

**III. Read the text about the climate of Australia. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

Due to 1 \_\_\_\_ of the continent, Australia has several different climatic zones. The northern section of Australia has a more 2 \_\_\_\_, hot and humid in the summer, and quite warm and dry in the winter, while the southern parts are cooler with mild summers and cool, 3 \_\_\_\_.

The seasons are 4 \_\_\_\_ in the Northern Hemisphere – when it's summer in the north – it's winter 5 \_\_\_\_\_. December and January are the hottest months in Australia, July and August – the coldest.

The southern areas of Australian Continent are generally more temperate, with summer daytime temperatures usually between 25 and 30°C and winter temperatures between 5 and 10°C. The Tasmanian Mountains and the "Australian Alps" in the southeast of Australia have 6 \_\_\_\_; the winter can be very harsh there, and the highest peaks are usually covered by snow year-round.

Another extreme, but completely different are the conditions in the 7 \_\_\_\_ in central Australia; the temperature reaches sometimes 50°C and more, and rain may not fall for years. Most rain falls 8 \_\_\_\_ of Australia (Darwin), with an annual average of 100 inches and more. Sometimes 9 \_\_\_\_ can occur in the northern coastal areas, causing 10 \_\_\_\_; these storms usually occur in the Southern summer months between November and April.

- A) the opposite to those
- B) in the northeastern coastal parts
- C) tropically influenced climate
- D) a typical mountain climate
- E) south of the equator
- F) tropical cyclones

- G) heavy wind and rainstorms
- H) the huge size
- I) tropical floods
- J) desert and bush ("outback") areas
- K) sometimes rainy winters

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

Australia is a continent that had experiences a variety of climates due to its size. The weather can range from below zero of temperatures in the Snowy Mountains to intolerable heat in the north-west. It is considered that to be one of the driest continents on earth.

The temperate south has cool, wet winters and warm, dry their summers. In the north, a tropical climate prevails over. The extreme north-west experiences the ends of the monsoon systems, while the mountains of the south-east attract seasonal snow to form out the Alpine snowfields. The temperatures must vary from an average 30 degrees C in midsummer in the Red Centre, to an average of 6 degrees C in the highlands in winter.

The inland deserts can remain totally dry for years whilst rains can produce floods. Being in the Southern Hemisphere its seasons are in reverse to Europe and America. The ideal time to visit the north, particularly the Northern Territory's Kakadu National Park is early in the dry season (around May.) The Dry Season, April – October, is also a good time to visit for northern Queensland's beaches and rain forests. You can swim off the coast without fear of dangerous stinging box jellyfish, which infest ocean waters between November and March. In the rain forests, heat and humidity are lower than later in the year and crocodile viewing away is at its prime, as the creatures tend to bask on the riverbanks rather than submerge in the colder water.

**Translate the text into Ukrainian.**

**V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.**

**Клімат Австралії**

Завдяки великим розмірам та унікальному географічному положенню у країні існує велике різноманіття кліматичних умов. Значна частина Австралії розташована у тропіках, північ – у субекваторіальних широтах, південь – у субтропічних. Сумарна сонячна радіація постійно висока: на півночі і півдні – близько 590 кДж/см кв на рік, у внутрішніх районах – 750 кДж/см кв; радіаційний баланс на більшій частині території – 250-290 кДж/см<sup>2</sup>, на півночі і північному сході – 335 кДж/см кв. За невисокого розташування рівнин Австралії це зумовлює постійно високі температури на всьому материку. Австралія майже повністю розташована у межах літніх ізотерм 20, 28, зимових 12, 20°C. Сезонні коливання температур спостерігаються головним чином у внутрішніх районах тропічного пояса і в субтропіках. Спекотний район із січевими температурами вище 40°C – на північному заході (Марбл-Бар). Абсолютний максимум температур 53,1°C спостерігався у Клонкаррі (Квінсленд). Температура у внутрішніх районах Австралії знижується до -4, -6°C. Морози стійкі тільки в Австралійських Альпах, де зафіксовані температури до -22 °C.



Розташування більшої частини Австралії у континентальному секторі тропічного пояса обумовлює сухість клімату, що посилюється розтягнутістю материка із заходу на схід, слабкою розчленованістю берегів та бар'єром Великого Вододільного хребта на шляхах вологих вітрів з океанів.

38% площі Австралії отримує менше 250 мм опадів на рік. Однак, тривалих посух не буває, тому що рівнинність материка і невелика довжина з півночі на південь сприяють проникненню всередину вологих вітрів як з півночі, так і з півдня. Влітку (грудень-лютий) над сильно нагрітою Австралією встановлюється австралійський мінімум тиску, в який з північного заходу і півночі втягується вологий екваторіальний мусон, що приносить опади на узбережжя (понад 1500 мм на рік при 6-7 вологих місяцях). На південь від 22° пд.ш. вони скорочуються до 300 мм на рік з 4-5 дощовими місяцями, на західному узбережжі – до 250 мм. На півдні материка проходить серія антициклонів, які обумовлюють літню сухість південно-західної частини Австралії, рівнини Налларбор і Вікторіанських гір. На рівнинах Муррею і Дарлінгу літні посухи пом'якшуються опадами. На сході вітри з Тихого океану несуть прогріте над теплою Східно-Австралійською течією вологе повітря. Його підняття схилами гір зумовлює орографічні опади, особливо значні між 16 і 19° пд.ш. У Кернсі випадає найбільша кількість опадів в Австралії – 2243 мм. Літній максимум опадів спостерігається на півночі від лінії Сідней – мис Північно-Західний.

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### Éghajlat



Az ország nagy kiterjedése miatt az éghajlat is nagy változatosságot mutat: A déli része mérsékelt, az északi pedig trópusi. A belső területek éghajlati viszonyait viszont alaposan felkavarja a kontinentális hatás, nem ritkák a szélsőséges hőmérsékleti értékek. Hozzánk hasonlóan négy évszak váltja egymást, de az évszakok pont fordítva köszöntenek be, amikor nálunk nyár van, ott tél.

Ausztrália időjárása igen szélsőséges, északi területeit trópusi forróság, déli részét a mérsékelt óceáni éghajlat jellemzi. Az óceán közepén fekvő kontinens belső területei érdekes módon nagyon szárazak. Mivel magas hegyek nem szabdadják a légköri képződményeket, gyakoriak a szélsőséges időjárási jelenségek. A belsejében nincsenek magas hegyek, amik a légtömegeket felszállásra kényszerítenék, és partvidékének nincsenek mélyen benyúló öblei, amik a páradús légtömegek bejutását segítenék.

Ausztrália földrajzi fekvése alapján a forró és a mérsékelt övezetbe tartozik. Nyáron a tenger felől érkező északnyugati monszun öntözi a partvidéket, ekkor köszönt be a Wet, a "Nedves" időszak. Ez Ausztrália a legcsapadékosabb területe, a trópusi monszun vidéke. Télen a Dry, a "Száras" időszaké az uralom, ilyenkor a kontinens belseje felől érkeznek a száraz, tikkasztó légtömegek. A hosszú hónapok, vagy akár évek pusztító szárazsága után jellemzőek a hirtelen jött esőzések, e következtében pedig az áradások.



De a szélsőséges körülmények nem merülnek ki ennyiben: gyakran pusztítanak hurrikánok, és az északi partvidéken monszunok is. A hirtelen jött nagy esőzéseknek azonban vannak meglepő és nem várt veszélyei is – akár egy krokodilt is hozhat magával az ár!

Találkozhatunk aszályal, bozóttüzekkel. Annak ellenére, hogy ez utóbbi nagyon veszélyes, mégis sok hasznos bozóttűz van. Hogyan lehetséges ez? Bent a kontinensen az

egyik fajta eukaliptusz fának olyan magtermése van, amely csak a hő hatására pattan szét és ezáltal tud meggyökerezni.

De nem mindenhol ilyen nehéz a helyzet, a tengerparti települések sokkal élhetőbbek, nem véletlenül itt koncentrálódik a lakosság majdnem egésze. Az óceán közelsége kiegyenlíti a hőmérséklet ingadozását, és az eső mennyiségére sem lehet panasz. Viszonylagos védettségük ellenére néha ezeket a városokat is meglepi az időjárás, előfordulnak hatalmas zivatarok, hóesések, porfúvások és még jégeső is nehezítette már az ott élők életét.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the cyclones and floods.***

***VIII. Compare the climate of Australia with that of your country***

## V. FLORA AND FAUNA

Australia is a land like no other, with about one million different native species. More than 80 per cent of the country's flowering plants, mammals, reptiles and frogs are unique to Australia, along with most of its freshwater fish and almost half of its birds.

Australia's marine environment is home to 4000 fish species, 1700 coral species, 50 types of marine mammal and a wide range of seabirds. Most marine species found in southern Australian waters occur nowhere else.

Australia's geographic isolation means that much of its flora and fauna is very different from the species in other parts of the world. Most are found nowhere else. However, some closely related species are found on the continents which once made up the ancient southern super continent Gondwana.

Covered in rainforest and ferns 300 million years ago, Gondwana included South America, Africa, India and Antarctica. Most of Australia's flora and fauna have their origins in Gondwana, which broke up about 140 million years ago.

Australia separated from Antarctica 50 million years ago. As it drifted away from the southern polar region, its climate became warmer and drier and new species of plants and animals evolved and came to dominate the landscape.

### 1. Flora

About 80 percent of Australian plant species are only found on, or endemic to, Australian continent. These native plants include plants such as eucalypts, acacias, casuarinas, hummock grasses and flowering plants, including banksias and kangaroo paw.

Most of the Gondwanan forests were replaced by tough-leaved open forests of eucalypts and acacias. Some isolated remnants of the ancient Gondwanan forests remain. These include the cool and warm temperate rainforests of Tasmania and eastern Australia and the dry rainforests or scrub forests of northern Australia. These forests have high conservation values.

In 1994, the Wollemi Pine was found in a remote valley in the Blue Mountains of New South Wales. It is believed to be representative of a now extinct group of trees that existed at the time of the dinosaurs, making it a species that has been around for 65 million years.

There are now an estimated 20 000 vascular and 7700 non-vascular plants, and 250 000 species of fungi in Australia. Plants include living fossils such as the cycad palm and the grass tree, and brilliant wildflowers such as the waratah, Sturt's desert pea, banksia and kangaroo paws.

Australia has over 1000 species of acacia, which Australians call 'wattle', and around 2800 species in the Myrtaceae family, which includes eucalypts (or gum trees) and melaleucas.

## *Acacia*



*Golden wattle (Acacia pycnantha), the floral emblem of Australia. Image courtesy of the Australian National Botanic Gardens.*

Acacia is a genus of around 1200 species; 954 are currently recognised as occurring in Australia – from coastal zones and mountains to the dry inland. Collectively the Australian species are known as 'wattles'.

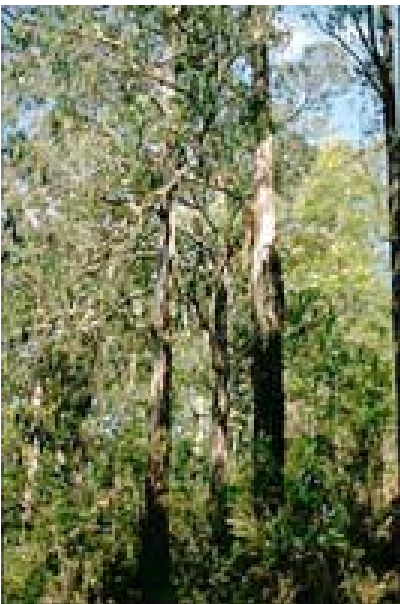
One of them, golden wattle, *Acacia pycnantha*, was first collected by the Surveyor-General of New South Wales, Thomas Mitchell, in 1836.

As Australians became more patriotic towards the end of the 1800s, they began to appreciate Australian native plants more, and started a search for a floral symbol of the country. In 1912, the wattle was incorporated into the design of the Australian Coat of Arms.

In spring, beginning in September in Australia, the golden wattle comes into flower with large fluffy, yellow, sweet smelling flower heads. Each flower head is a bunch of many tiny flowers.

Acacias tend to dominate in drier inland parts of Australia, while eucalypts dominate in wetter parts. Australia's unique flora includes the Proteaceae family of Banksia, Dryandra, Grevillea, Hakea and Telopea (waratah).

## *Eucalyptus*



*Mountain ash (eucalyptus regnans) – the second tallest tree in the world. Image courtesy of the Australian National Botanic Gardens*

Gum trees (eucalypts) are a vital part of the Australian natural environment. The only major environment where eucalypts are absent is rainforest. There are about 12 species which occur naturally outside of Australia but around 700 are native to Australia. Eucalypts serve as shelter for many species of native Australian animals and birds. A few varieties of gum leaves are the only food eaten by koalas.

Since early settlement, eucalypts have been a vital source of timber and firewood for the Australians and they have been a key part of the hardwood timber industry. Soldiers returning by ship from the First and Second World Wars were able to smell the aroma of the eucalypt before land was visible on the horizon. A common use for eucalypts is eucalyptus oil.

Of the 700 eucalypt species found in Australia, only twelve are not endemic. These trees have thin, sickle-shaped leaves that are arranged alternately on a branch. They reproduce by flowering. No other part of the world is as dominated by the same type of vegetation as Australia is dominated by eucalypts.

Eucalypts, along with other Australian trees like acacias (also called wattles) and tea trees, are sclerophylls, which means that they have hard, woody leaves as an adaptation to low-nutrient soils and dry conditions. Sclerophyll forests are the most common type of forest in Australia and they can be separated into two main types: wet sclerophyll forests and dry sclerophyll forests. Wet sclerophyll forests are common in areas with high rainfall. They are characterised by rapidly growing trees and a closed canopy, which means that not much light reaches the forest floor. Dry sclerophyll forests are found in areas with lower rainfall and they have a broken canopy, which means that light reaches the forest floor at some points. These types of forest are all adapted to regenerate after fires. Some even require fire as part of their seed germination processes. Other trees found in Australia include casuarinas, which grow on riverbanks, and mulgas, which are found in areas that have unreliable rainfall.

Australia also has a number of other native and endemic plants. Endemic grassland plants that grow in arid and semi-arid places include hummock grasses such as spinifex and porcupine grasses. These plants can grow on their own, or they can help form an understorey where sclerophyll trees grow. Flowering plants native to Australia include the Geraldton waxflower, the kangaroo paw and the banksia.

The most common vegetation types today are those that have adapted to arid conditions, where the land has not been cleared for agriculture. The dominant type of vegetation in Australia—23 per cent—is the hummock grasslands in Western Australia, South Australia and the Northern Territory. In the east eucalypt woodlands are prevalent, and in the west there are Acacia forests, woodlands and shrublands. Tussock grasslands are found largely in Queensland.

## **2. Fauna**

Early in geological history, Australia was cut off from the rest of the world's land masses. This allowed a range of animals to establish successful populations in Australia – animals that were unable to do so in other parts of the world. In Australia there are more than 378 species of mammals, 828 species of birds, 300 species of lizards, 140 species of snakes and two species of crocodiles.

Almost all of Australia's native mammals are marsupials. Marsupials give birth to their young and then carry them in a pouch near their belly until the infant is old enough to survive on its own.

Another unusual type of mammal is the monotreme. Monotremes lay eggs instead of giving birth to live young. There are only two types of monotreme in the world – the platypus and the echidna – and both of them are found in Australia.

## ***Platypuses***



*Platypus leaving the water.*

Platypuses are found all along the eastern coast of Australia, from Tasmania to far north Queensland. They are small dark-brown furry mammals with webbed paws and a duck-like beak.

Platypuses live in burrows that they dig in the banks of rivers. They are diving animals, and can stay under water for up to fifteen minutes.

Unlike a duck's beak, the platypus' beak is rubbery and flexible. It has hundreds of electroreceptor cells inside it, which can detect the electrical currents that are caused by its prey swimming through the water.

Platypuses give birth by laying eggs. The eggs are incubated by the mother in special nesting burrows. When it hatches, the baby platypus feeds on milk secreted from two patches of skin midway along the mother's belly.

## ***Echidnas***



*Echidna (Tachyglossus Aculeatus).*

Echidnas can be found all over Australia. They are small, round animals with large clawed feet, a long snout and a coat covered with sharp, flexible spines. Their diet consists almost exclusively of termites, that is why they are also known as spiny anteaters.

Echidnas also lay eggs. A single egg is laid in the female echidna's pouch and hatches in about ten days. The baby echidna (or puggle) lives in its mother's pouch until it begins to develop spines.

The echidna's spines are used mainly as a defence mechanism. When threatened, an echidna will either roll itself into a spiky ball or dig itself into the ground until only its spines are exposed.

Australia has more than 140 species of marsupials, including kangaroos, wallabies, koalas, wombats and the Tasmanian Devil, which is now found only in Tasmania.

## ***Kangaroos***



*White kangaroo.*

The kangaroo is Australia's largest marsupial. Kangaroos travel by hopping on their long hind legs, using their tail for balance. They can reach speeds of up to 60 kilometres per hour and can jump distances of eight metres and heights of around three metres.

Kangaroos live in large packs (or mobs) of around 100. Their diet consists of grass, leaves and other plants. They thrive wherever a regular water source is

available. The introduction of European farming methods has established regular water supplies and allowed the kangaroo population to grow dramatically. It is estimated that there are around fifty million kangaroos in Australia.

A baby kangaroo is called a joey. Joeys are raised in their mother's pouch, suckling from the teats inside, until they are about one year old. Within a few days of giving birth, female kangaroos enter into heat and will mate again and, if they successfully conceive, after one week's development the microscopic embryo enters a dormant state that will last until the previous young leaves the pouch. The development of the second embryo then resumes and proceeds to birth after a gestation period of about 30 days.

In many rural areas where their populations are high, kangaroos are regarded as pests because they compete with sheep and cattle for scarce pasture and water. Kangaroo harvesting contributes to the sustainability of the Australian environment.

### ***Tasmanian devils***



*A Tasmanian devil – this unique Australian mammal is found only in the island state of Tasmania.*

The Tasmanian devil is the world's largest carnivorous marsupial. It is roughly the size of a dog, and thick-set with a muscular build, a large, wide head and a short, thick tail. The devil's fur is black and usually has patches of white on its chest and rump.

Tasmanian devils are only found in Tasmania, though fossil evidence shows that there were devils on Australian mainland 600 years ago. They have powerful jaws and long, sharp teeth. They are primarily nocturnal, coming out at night to forage for food. Devils are scavengers, sometimes eating small mammals as prey, but mainly living on the remains of dead animals. When feeding, a Tasmanian devil will eat everything, including bones and fur. Generally speaking Tasmanian devils are solitary animals, but packs of devils will feed communally on larger dead animals they find, like cattle and sheep.



***The koala*** is a well-known and popular animal, endemic to Australia but recognised around the world. It is a tree-dwelling marsupial with large furry ears, a prominent black nose, long sharp claws adapted for climbing and no tail. Fur colour varies from pale grey in north Australia to grey-brown in the south.

Koalas also vary in size across their range. Adult males weigh between 4 to 14 kg and adult females weigh between 4 to 10 kg.

Despite being called 'koala bears' for many years, koalas are actually marsupials. While bears give birth to well-developed young, newborn koalas are tiny enough to fit on your thumbnail, and are raised in their mother's pouch.

The closest relative of the koala is the wombat – both animals have pouches which open towards the rear. This is fine for the wombat, but koalas need strong muscles ringing the pouch to keep their young from falling out.



**The wombat** is the world's largest burrowing herbivorous mammal. They average one metre in length and 35 centimetres in height. Wombats have four powerful legs that they use for digging, and large heads with small eyes, pointed ears and prominent snouts. Wombats are found mainly on the east coast of Australia, from Tasmania to southern Queensland.

Wombats are nocturnal animals. Nocturnal animals are active by night and sleep during the day. Wombats spend almost eighty per cent of their time underground in their long, complex burrows. They mainly leave their burrows at night when the air temperature is cooler, but in colder weather they can be seen out during the day as well.

Wombats are grazing animals, eating mainly grass and other plants, like shrubs, roots, bark and moss. When feeding, a wombat can pick up its food with one of its front feet and place it straight into its mouth. Wombat young are called joeys and the female wombat has a pouch which faces backwards to prevent dirt from entering it when it is burrowing.



**The dingo** is Australia's native wild dog and its largest carnivorous mammal. Its short-haired coat colour ranges from reddish ginger, rust, yellow to browns and (rarely) to black with white points on the feet, snout and the tip of the tail. The dingo (the size of a medium dog) has a fairly bushy tail, strong claws and a very angular alert looking head with erect ears. This canine does not bark (though it does howl). The Dingo can be

found in almost any part of Australian mainland which provides access to drinking water, (as it needs to drink once a day). Because of this need for water the dingo prefers the edge of forests which butt on to grasslands, but are forced inland to more semi-arid areas (mainly by man). In some pastoral areas, dingoes are also regarded as pests due to the threat they pose to sheep and other farm animals. In an effort to keep fertile south-east Australia relatively free of dingoes, the world's largest fence was built, spanning 5320 kilometres from Queensland to South Australia.

Australia is also home to many endemic reptiles. In one square kilometre of land in the centre of Australia, more reptile species can be found than in a square kilometre in any other place in the world. Reptiles are common in



Australia because they are well suited to the hot, dry conditions found in the centre of the continent. They range from estuarine crocodiles and poisonous snakes to skinks and geckoes.

Two types of **Crocodiles** are found in Australia: the freshwater Croc and the Salt Water (Estuarine) Croc. The salt water Croc is the biggest reptile in the world.



- 1) Fresh water crocodiles have a narrower snout.
- 2) Fresh water crocodiles are smaller than the "Saltys."
- 3) Fresh water crocodiles can only live in fresh or slight salty water, whilst the saltwater crocodile can survive in both types of water.
- 4) Saltys lay eggs in the nests of vegetation whilst freshwater crocs lay their eggs in sand.
- 5) Fresh water crocs teeth are shaped more like needles for piercing fish.
- 6) Saltwater Crocs reproduce in the WET season while Freshwater Crocs reproduce in the DRY season.

Australia is home to many unique amphibians that have adapted to conditions in dry climates. Australian frogs are adapted to living in the dry centre of the continent. Some burrow underground and aestivate (become dormant), waiting for rainfall. Others raise their young in their stomachs.

Australian birds have also adapted to dry conditions. Many of these birds are nomadic, travelling from place to place following favourable conditions. Some examples of Australian birds include black swans, kookaburras, galahs and cockatoos.



Of the 828 bird species listed in Australia, 400 – including the large, flightless emu – are found nowhere else. Isolation also allowed for the development of strange birds – as strange as the kangaroo and the koala. They range from tiny honeyeaters to the flightless emu which are nearly two metres tall.

A flightless bird (Ratite) is only one species of Emu, which is the world's third largest bird behind the Ostrich and Cassowary.

Emus are very mobile quick runners (up to 50 kph), running with a bouncy, swaying motion. Emus are generally nomadic, with some emus roaming over hundreds of kilometers. They are covered with long, thick, drooping feathers that are dark brown to grey-

brown which appears shaggy. Their heads though have shorter "downy" feathers, pointy beak, large bright looking eyes and often a blue throat.

Emus have extremely long legs (enabling them to run fast) with 3 toed feet. They are 1.5 to 2 meters tall and weigh up to 45 kg Male and females Emus look similar, though the female is usually larger.

In between is a vast array of water birds, seabirds and birds that dwell in open woodlands and forests. Some outstanding examples are cassowaries, black swans, fairy penguins, kookaburras, lyrebirds and currawongs.

There are 55 species of parrots in Australia. A map by one of the earliest navigators suggested that Australian continent should be called Terra psittacorum, land of parrots. Some of these birds are worth thousands of dollars a pair overseas, whereas in Australia they wake you up in the morning and crap on your car. Many of these birds are as numerous as they are colourful, including a spectacular variety of cockatoos, rosellas, lorikeets, cockatiels, parakeets and budgerigars.

Australia has more species of venomous snakes than any other continent (21 of the world's 25 deadliest snakes). Fear of snake bites is common among people planning to travel in Australia. However, bites are rare and most often occur when a snake is deliberately provoked by a man.

Australia's diverse oceans support around 4000 of the world's 22 000 types of fish, as well as 30 of the world's 58 seagrass species. Australia is also home to the world's largest coral reef system, the UNESCO World Heritage-listed Great Barrier Reef. Marine species of note include the predatory great white shark, which grows up to six metres in length; the giant filter-feeding whale shark, which can reach lengths of 12 metres; the bluebottle or Portuguese man-of-war, which is a common hazard at many Australian beaches; and the box jellyfish, which is one of the most venomous animals in the world.

### **3. Environmental Challenges**

The arrival of the Europeans has had a significant impact on Australia's flora and fauna. There are at least 18 introduced mammals with established feral populations in Australia. Cats and foxes are responsible for the decline and extinction of several native animals. The feral rabbit population has degraded some areas of Australian farmland, and their rapid spread led to the construction of three rabbit-proof fences spanning some 3256 kilometres in Western Australia between 1901 and 1907. Introduced plants have also caused substantial damage to native vegetation and habitats.

Australia is also the driest inhabited continent on the Earth. While Australia is rich in biodiversity, Australian soils are highly dependent on vegetation cover to generate nutrients and provide stability. Land clearing, water extraction and poor soil conservation have had an adverse impact on the country's flora and fauna.

Although Australia is very active in marine biology education and conservation, the pressure caused by human activity continues to take its toll on

marine environments. Climate change also presents a major challenge to Australia's fragile environment, with likely impacts on its biodiversity. Climate change poses a particular threat to specific areas, such as Australia's Alpine regions, the Great Barrier Reef, tropical rainforests, some species of *Eucalyptus*, and coastal mangrove and wetland systems like Kakadu in the Northern Territory.

### ***Key facts***

- Australia has around 10 per cent of the world's biodiversity.
- Of the estimated 20 000 species of vascular plants found in Australia, 16 000 are found nowhere else in the world.
- Of the 378 species of mammals in Australia, more than 80 per cent are unique to Australia.
- Of the 869 types of Australian reptile, 773 are found nowhere else.

### **TASKS**

#### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) type of animal that lives both on land and in water;
- 2) large Australian bird with a long neck and grey or brown feathers. They cannot fly but have long legs and can run quickly;
- 3) large, usually white bird with a long neck that lives on rivers and lakes;
- 4) tropical bird with a curved beak and brightly coloured feathers that can be taught to copy human speech;
- 5) hard substance formed in the sea from masses of shells of very small sea animals, usually orange or red in colour;
- 6) line of sharp rocks, often made of coral, or a raised area of sand near the surface of the sea;
- 7) all the animals living in a particular area or period in history;
- 8) all the plants that grow in a particular place or country;
- 9) small animal with long ears and soft fur, that lives in a hole in the ground;
- 10) plants in general, or the plants that are found in a particular area;
- 11) top layer of the earth in which plants grow;
- 12) protection of natural things such as animals, plants, forests etc, to prevent them being spoiled or destroyed;
- 13) natural features of a place, for example its weather, the type of land it has, and the type of plants that grow in it;
- 14) type of animal that drinks milk from its mother's body when it is young. Humans, dogs, and whales are mammals;
- 15) type of animal, such as a snake or lizard, whose body temperature changes according to the temperature around it, and that usually lays eggs to have babies.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

**II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):**

1. Gum trees (eucalypts) are a vital part of the Australian natural environment. The only major environment where eucalypts are absent is savanna.

2. As Australians became more patriotic towards the end of the 1800s, they began to appreciate Australian native plants more, and started a search for a floral symbol of the country. In 1912, the palm was incorporated into the design of the Australian Coat of Arms.

3. The dingo is Australia's largest marsupial. Kangaroos travel by hopping on their long hind legs, using their tail for balance. They can reach speeds of up to 60 kilometres per hour and can jump distances of eight metres and heights of around three metres.

4. The koala is the world's largest carnivorous marsupial. It is roughly the size of a dog, and thick-set with a muscular build, a large, wide head and a short, thick tail.

5. The Tasmanian devil is a well-known and popular animal, endemic to Australia but recognised around the world. It is a tree-dwelling marsupial with large furry ears, a prominent black nose, long sharp claws adapted for climbing and no tail.

6. Australian birds are also adapted to wet conditions. Many of these birds are nomadic, travelling from place to place following favourable conditions.

7. Of the 828 bird species listed in Australia, 400 – including the large, flightless parrots – are found nowhere else. Isolation also allowed for the development of strange birds – as strange as the kangaroo and the koala.

8. There are 55 species of emus in Australia. A map by one of the earliest navigators suggested the Australian continent should be called Terra psittacorum, land of emus.

9. Australia has more species of venomous snakes than any other continent (21 of the world's 25 deadliest snakes). Fear of snake bites is common among people planning to travel in Australia. However, bites are rare and most often occur when a snake is deliberately provoked by an animal.

10. There are three basic reasons for Australia's diverse organisms. Firstly, since the temperatures on the continent remained constant for such a long period of time, plants and animals were able to evolve and adapt to particular ecological conditions.

11. There are three basic reasons for Australia's diverse organisms. Secondly, the continent was so isolated that it was impossible for outside species to arrive, allowing native forms to develop unimpeded.

12. There are three basic reasons for Australia's diverse organisms. Thirdly, even though the continent is very old, there are areas of high fertility. Some species have remained more or less unchanged for 90 million years.

13. The arrival of Europeans has had a significant impact on Australia's flora and fauna. There are at least 18 introduced mammals with established feral populations in Australia. Cats and wolves are responsible for the decline and extinction of several native animals.

14. Australia is also the wettest inhabited continent on earth. While Australia is rich in biodiversity, Australian soils are highly dependent on vegetation cover to generate nutrients and provide stability.

15. Climate change poses a particular contribution to specific areas, such as Australia's alpine regions, the Great Barrier Reef, tropical rainforests, some species of *Eucalyptus*, and coastal mangrove and wetland systems like Kakadu in the Northern Territory.

**III. Read the text about Australia's flora and fauna and Charles Darwin.**

**Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

Observations of Australia's unique fauna and flora, 1 \_\_\_\_ considerations of the continent's geographical isolation, 2 \_\_\_\_ Charles Darwin (1809–1882) developing his theory of evolution 3 \_\_\_\_ .

Charles Darwin's theory was that species change over time, or evolve 4 \_\_\_\_ their environment. This theory transformed the way people understood the living world, and provided a logical, 5 \_\_\_\_ for the diversity of life. Darwin's theory of evolution changed the face of science and natural history forever.

While Darwin never saw a kangaroo in Australia, 6 \_\_\_\_ from Sydney to Bathurst, he did see many other species. Darwin made some 7 \_\_\_\_ about Australian animals, especially the platypus. At the time, the platypus was regarded as a curious creature, and it baffled 8 \_\_\_\_ . Darwin was the first British scientist to see a platypus in its natural environment, 9 \_\_\_\_ near Bathurst, in 1836.

For over forty years after his visit, Darwin used and relied upon collections of specimens from Australia that related directly to his 'theoretical concerns at any given time and his recognition 10 \_\_\_\_ of the continent'.

A) in response to

B) unifying explanation

C) the scientific world

D) combined with

E) spread over

F) of the peculiar status

G) by natural selection

H) at a creek

I) very astute observations

J) contributed toward

K) despite riding a horse

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

Australia's floras as well as fauna were important to Darwin in their developing his theory of evolution by natural selection. The adaptation of and the distribution of Australia's native flora were of great interest to Darwin.

A source of ours information, encouragement and critical discussion was the botanist Joseph Dalton Hooker. Hooker spent two of periods in Australia, in 1840–41 and 1842, while serving with James Clark Ross's 1841 Antarctic voyage, which was the first to penetrate the Antarctic pack ice south of New Zealand. Hooker was worked at Kew Gardens, where his father was Director,

and retained close links to a network of local from naturalists in the Australian colonies. Darwin had extensive correspondence with Hooker from 1843 until 1882 (over 400 items) and from the mid-1850s onwards was able to make from use of this network of naturalists in the Australian colonies.

In his publication, *Flora Tasmaniae* (1855-60), reprinted over in 1963, Hooker supports the theory of evolution as brought about by variation and natural selection. This essay, the first published statement in support of Darwin's theory, is based on Hooker's independent studies of plants, and particularly on their geographical distribution. Local Tasmanian naturalists Ronald Gunn and William Archer were acknowledged in the dedication of the third of volume.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

## **ПТАХИ АВСТРАЛІЇ**

В Австралії дуже багато різних видів папуг. Дуже красиві какаду – білі або рожеві з яскравими чубчиками на голові. Вони живуть у дуплах дерев і на скелях. Хвилясті маленькі папуги тримаються величезними зграями, як наші горобці. Вони налітають на посіви й завдають шкоди місцевому сільському господарству.

В лісах Нової Гвінеї водиться великий темно-синій вінценосний голуб. На голові у нього – велике гарне віяло з пір'я.

В лісах Австралії трапляється гігантський зимородок-реготун завбільшки з ворону. Його крик скидається на людський сміх.

Цікаві сміттєві кури поширені в Австралії та на Новій Гвінеї. Ці птахи згрібають листя в купи заввишки до 1 м і діаметром до 5 м. У купу загниваючого листя самка відкладає яйця, і в них розвиваються пташенята. Вони вилуплюються з яєць з розвиненим пір'ям на крилах і відразу починають літати й бігати.

В Австралії водяться чорний лебідь і райські птахи з надзвичайно гарним оперенням. Останні живуть ще на Новій Гвінеї та на деяких островах поблизу Австралії. Краса оперення цих птахів завжди приваблювала людей. Довгий час птахів винищували заради пір'я, яке йшло на прикрашання капелюхів, і яке збирали аматори-колекціонери та музеї всього світу. В результаті хижацького полювання деякі види цих напрочуд гарних птахів зникли.

З райськими птахами споріднені невеликі, завбільшки з дрозда, альтанкові птахи. Вони влаштовують з гілок курінці або альтанки і прикрашають їх пір'ям папуг, черепашками слимаків та побілілими на повітрі кістками. Залітаючи в будинки, ці птахи крадуть блискучі речі і розкладають їх біля своїх альтанок. Ці споруди є місцем для шлюбних ігор і зустрічей птахів.

**VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.**

**Nagy-Korallzátony**



Ausztráliában az élővilág hihetetlen változatoságot mutat. Mivel az ország területén megtalálható több éghajlati viszony, kezdve a sivatagtól, az esőerdőig, ezért az itteni élővilág is hasonló változatoságot mutat.

Ha Ausztrália kerül szóba mindenkinek egyből beugrik a kenguru, illetve a koala, de azt csak kevesen tudják, hogy ezekből az állatokból is többfajta található a kontinensen. Azt is kevesen szokták tudni, hogy Ausztráliában található meg a Föld második legnagyobb madara, az emu. A

kontinens hullővilága is igen jelentős. Az esőerdős területeken elképesztő mennyiségű, és színvilágú madárfaj található.

A kontinens vízi állatvilága is igen gazdag, melyet mi sem mutat jobban, hogy Ausztrália partvidéke mellett helyezkedik el a nagy korallzátony, mely a bűvárkodás paradicsoma. E fantasztikus képződményről először Cook kapitány adott hírt hajónaplójában, amikor 1769-ben először elhajózott mellette.

Egyedülálló híresség a Nagy-Korallzátony, a Föld legnagyobb korallzátonya, amely még az űrből is látható. A világ hét természeti csodája közé választotta a CNN. Micsoda kontrasztot mutat a sok millió élőlénynek életteret biztosító tengeri képződmény és a száraz, szinte lakhatatlan belföldi vörös dűnével tarkított sivatag!

Ez a legnagyobb egybefüggő építmény a Földön, amelyet élőlények építettek. Az építők, a kis korallpolipok alig pár mili- vagy centiméteresek. Milliárdnyi virágállat munkája kellett ekkora zátony kialakításához, hosszú idő folyamán 2900 zátonyt sikerült egyesíteniük. Csak a trópusokon honos korallok képesek zátonyépítésre, és ezt is csupán szoros együttműködésben egy bizonyos zöldmoszattal, a zooxantellával. Ezek az egysejtűek befészkelik magukat a korallpolipok sejtfalába, ahol fotoszintézist végeznek. A moszatok és a korallok kicserélik anyagcseretermékeiket, ami mindkét fél előnyére szolgál. A zooxantellák többek között szénhidrátok formájában kellő energiával látják el a polipokat, hogy a tengervízben oldott kalciumból felépíthessék mészvázukat. Minél világosabb a telephelyük, annál több szénhidrátot adnak át a zooxantellák a gazdáiknak. Ezért a korallok leginkább közvetlenül a tengerszint alatt hozzák létre telepeiket, ahová még könnyedén beszűrődik a napfény, ám 80 m alatti mélységben már képtelenek megélni. Ideális körülmények között a korallok rendkívül szorgalmas építőmesterek: egy szirt évente kb. 0,5-2,8 cm-rel növekszik. Viszont a Nagy-Korallzátony hatalmas kiterjedésű, 2000 km hosszan és 300 km szélesen terül el a kontinens előtt. A mai Nagy-korallzátony megközelítőleg 8000 éves lehet. Óriási korallmész-kő talapzaton nyugszik, amelynek idősebb részei még kb. 600 000 évvel ezelőtt keletkeztek.

Élővilága felülmúlhatatlanul gazdag. Több millió hektáros területén néhány nemzeti parkot is kialakítottak, legutóbb a Zöld-szigetet nyilvánították védetté, amely mindössze három méterrel emelkedik az óceán szintje fölé. Felszínét kókuszpalmák borítják, partjait vakítóan fehér korallhomok fedi. A víz alatti világ lenyűgözően színes és változatos.

A Nagy-korallzátonyt 1981 óta tartják számon a világörökség részeként. Megőrzése, megóvása nem csupán a tudományos kutatás, a zoológia és az oceanográfia, hanem Ausztrália számára is fontos. Ugyanis ez a korallgát védi a kontinens partjait a Csendes-óceán pusztításától. Ám az utóbbi esztendőkből több helyről is aggasztó hírek érkeztek a Nagy-korallzátonnyal kapcsolatban. A borúlátóbbak szerint a Nagy-korallzátony napjai meg vannak számlálva, s jelentős része a következő 40–50 esztendő során megsemmisül. A Queenslandi Egyetem Tengertudományi Központjának minapi tanulmánya szerint igen kicsi a valószínűsége annak, hogy a korallak képesek lesznek alkalmazkodni a világtengek hőmérsékletváltozásaihoz. Márpedig a legoptimistább előrejelzések is a következő ötven év vonatkozásában két Celsius fokos felmelegedést tétéleznek. A korallok pusztulásához azonban nem csupán a manapság naponta emlegetett globális felmelegedés járul hozzá. A megengedettnél nagyobb mértékű halászat, s a part menti vizek szennyezettsége ugyancsak veszélyeztetik e páratlan természeti képződményt.

A közelmúltban a WWF (Worldwide Fund of Nature) készített egy összefoglaló jelentést az ENSZ Éghajlatváltozási Kormányközi Testületének (IPCC), amelyben földünk tíz olyan természeti csodáját sorolja fel, amelyek eltűnhetnek a klímaváltozás hatására. E listán ott szerepel az ausztrál partok közelében lévő Nagy-korallzátony is.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the flora of Australia.***

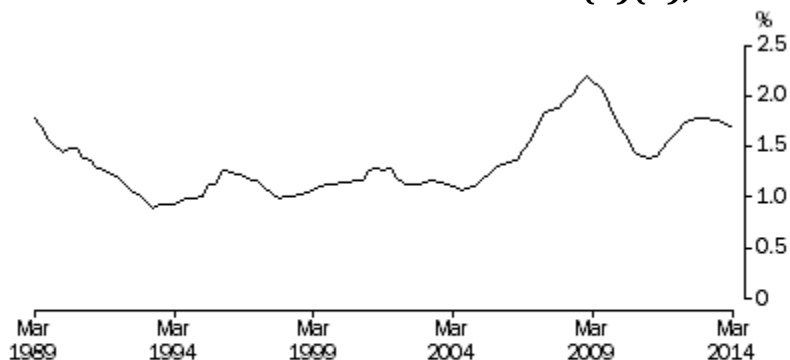
***VIII. Compare the fauna of Australia with that of your country***



## VI. DEMOGRAPHY AND LINGUISTIC AFFILIATION

The preliminary estimated resident population (ERP) of Australia on 31 March 2014 was 23,425,700 people. This reflects an increase of 388,400 people since 31 March 2013 and 111,600 people since 31 December 2012. The annual population growth rate for the year ended 31 March 2014 was 1.7%.

### ***ANNUAL POPULATION GROWTH RATE(a)(b), Australia***

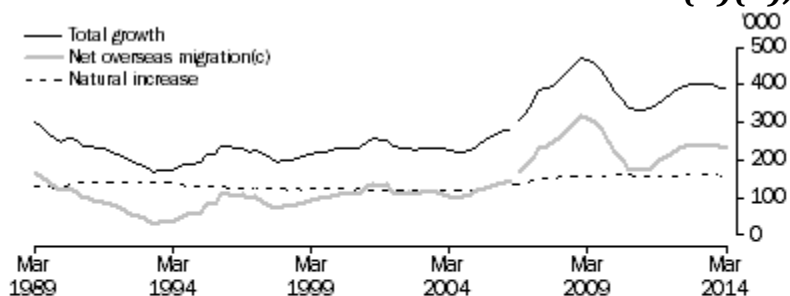


(a) Annual growth calculated at the end of each quarter.  
 (b) Estimates prior to 30 September 2011 are final. Estimates for 30 September 2011 to 31 December 2012 are revised. Estimates thereafter are preliminary.

The growth of Australia's population has two components: natural increase (the number of births minus the number of deaths) and net overseas migration (NOM).

The contribution to population growth for the year ended 31 March 2014 was higher from net overseas migration (60%) than from natural increase (40%).

### ***COMPONENTS OF ANNUAL POPULATION GROWTH(a)(b), Australia***



(a) Annual components calculated at the end of each quarter.  
 (b) Estimates prior to 30 September 2011 are final. Estimates for 30 September 2011 to 31 December 2012 are revised. Estimates thereafter are preliminary.  
 (c) NOM estimates have been calculated using a range of methods over the period, and include a break in series at 30 September 2006 – see paragraphs 12–19 of the Explanatory Notes.

### ***ESTIMATED RESIDENT POPULATION***

- The preliminary estimate of natural increase recorded for the year ended 31 March 2014 (156,900 people) was 3.3%, or 5,300 people lower than the natural increase recorded for the year ended 31 March 2013 (162,200 people).

- The preliminary estimate of net overseas migration (NOM) recorded for the year ended 31 March 2014 (231,500 people) was 2.8%, or 6,600 people lower than the net overseas migration recorded for the year ended 31 March 2013 (238,100 people).

### **POPULATION GROWTH RATES**

- All states and territories recorded positive population growth in the year ended 31 March 2014.
- Western Australia continued to record the fastest growth rate of all states and territories at 2.5%. Tasmania recorded the slowest growth rate at 0.3%.

**Australia's ageing population.** Australia's population, like that of most developed countries, is ageing as a result of sustained low fertility and increasing life expectancy. This results in proportionally fewer children (under 15 years of age) in the population. The median age (the age at which half the population is older and half is younger) of the Australian population has increased by 4.8 years over the last two decades, from 32.1 years at 30 June 1990 to 36.9 years at 30 June 2010. Between 30 June 2009 and 2010 the median age remained relatively steady at 36.8 years. Over the next several decades, population ageing is projected to have significant implications for Australia, including health, labour force participation, housing and demand for skilled labour.

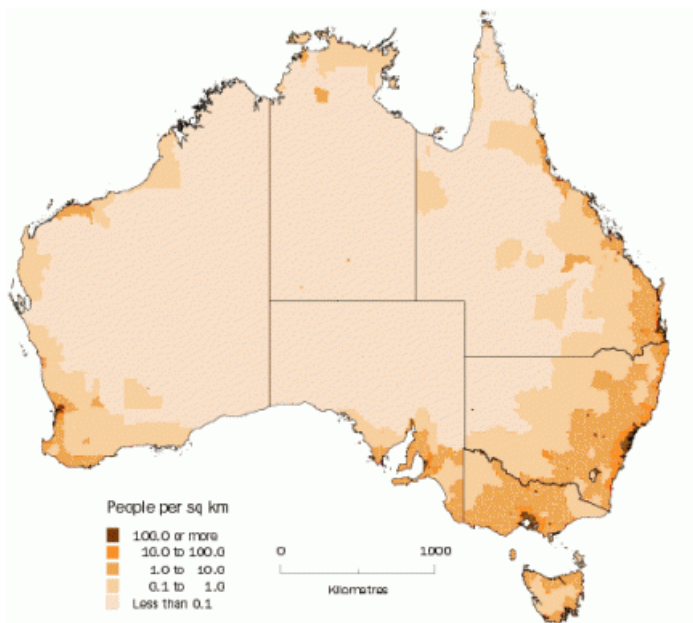
The ageing of Australia's population, already evident in the current age structure, is expected to continue. The median age of Australia's population is projected to increase between 38.7 years and 40.7 years in 2026 and between 41.9 years and 45.2 years in 2056.

In June 2010, Tasmania had the oldest population of all the states and territories with a median age of 39.9 years. The second oldest was South Australia with a median age of 39.2 years, followed by New South Wales (37.2 years), Victoria (36.9 years), Western Australia and Queensland (36.2 years), the Australian Capital Territory (34.7 years) and the Northern Territory (31.3 years).

Most of Australia's population is concentrated in two widely separated coastal regions. By far the larger of these, in terms of area and population, lies in the south-east and east. The smaller of the two regions is in the south-west of the continent. In both coastal regions the population is concentrated in urban centres, particularly the state and territory capital cities.

**Australia's population density** Population density varies greatly across Australia. Australia's total population density in June 2008 was 2.8 people per square kilometre. Among the states and territories, the Australian Capital Territory had the highest population density at 147 people per square kilometre and the Northern Territory had the lowest population density at just 0.2 people per square kilometre.

In June 2008, population density was highest in the capital cities of Australia's states and territories. With the exception of Canberra, all these capital cities are located on the coast.



Population density in other coastal and surrounding areas was also relatively high, particularly in the southeast corner of the country. On the other hand, most of central and western Australia had a population density of less than one person/km<sup>2</sup>.

Five of the top ten most densely-populated statistical local areas (SLAs) were located in Sydney, which is currently the most populous city in Australia. In June 2008, the Sydney statistical division had a population of 4.4 million people.

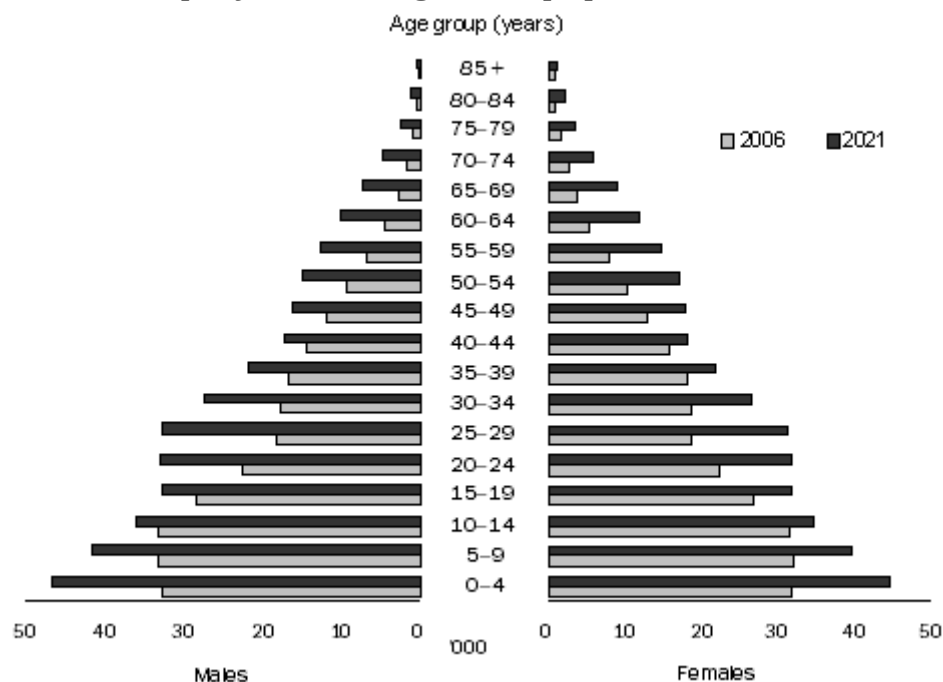
**Australia's sex ratio** In June 2010, there were 94,600 more females than males residing in Australia, with 11.12 million males and 11.21 million females. The sex ratio (the number of males per hundred females) was 99.2, up from 98.6 in 2005. The sex ratio of the states and territories in June 2010 varied from 97.3 in Tasmania, up to 107.7 in the Northern Territory. Only in the Northern Territory and Western Australia did males outnumber females, while in Queensland the ratio was almost even (99.9%).

**Australia's Indigenous population** Over recent decades, changing social attitudes, political developments, improved statistical coverage and a broader definition of Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander origin have all contributed to the increased likelihood of people identifying as being of Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander origin.

The Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander population of Australia was estimated to be 517,000 people in June 2006, or 2.5% of the total Australian population. In 2006, around 90% of Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander peoples identified as being of Aboriginal origin, 6% identified as being of Torres Strait Islander origin and 4% identified as being of both Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander origin. The Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander population is relatively young, with a median age of 21 years compared to 37 years for the non-Indigenous population in 2006.

In 2006, around one-third (32%) of the Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander population lived in major cities of Australia, 43% in regional areas and 25% in remote areas. The majority of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples live in New South Wales (30% of the Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander population lived in this state), Queensland (28%) and Western Australia (14%). While 12% of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples live in the Northern Territory, they do make up almost a third (30%) of the total Northern Territory population. In all of the other states and territory Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples make up less than 4% of the total population.

## *Estimated and projected Indigenous population, Australia, Series B*



### **Natural increase**

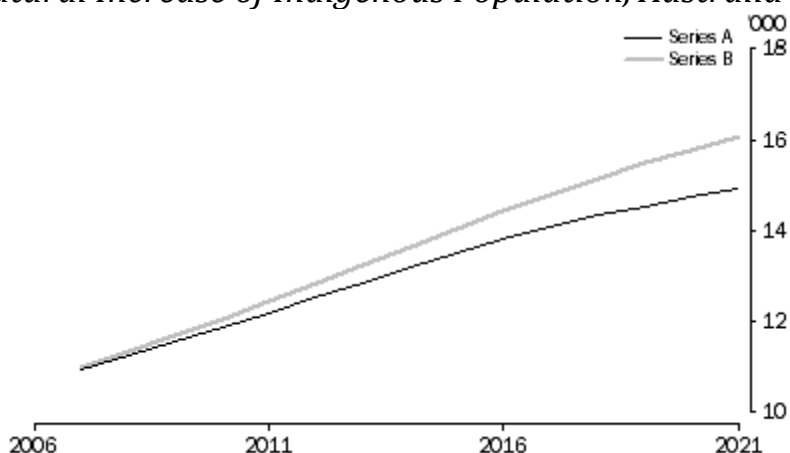
At the Australia level, any growth in the Indigenous population is entirely due to natural increase (that is, the excess of births over deaths), as net overseas migration is assumed to be zero. Although decreasing fertility rates are assumed, the number of births of Indigenous children is projected to increase over the projection period. This is due to the age structure of the Indigenous population, which has large numbers of people moving into peak child-bearing ages over the projection period, as well as due to the assumption of increasing paternity rates.

As a result, the number of births of Indigenous children is projected to increase from 13,600 in 2007, to between 19,000 and 19,100 in 2021. In Series A, which assumes constant life expectancy at birth, the number of deaths of Indigenous people is projected to increase from 2,600 in 2007 to 4,200 in 2021. In comparison, in Series B, which incorporates an increasing life expectancy at birth assumption, the number of deaths is projected to increase to 3,100 in 2021, 1,100 (26%) fewer than in Series A. As the number of births is considerably larger than the number of deaths, natural increase remains consistently high, reaching between 14,900 and 16,100 people (Series A and B respectively) in 2021.

The projection is based on the estimated resident population in June 2013 and assumes growth since then of:

- one birth every 1 minute and 41 seconds,
  - one death every 3 minutes and 32 seconds ,
  - a net gain of one international migration every 2 minutes and 10 seconds,
- leading to an overall total population increase of one person every 1 minute and 18 seconds.

### *Projected Natural Increase of Indigenous Population, Australia – 2007-2021*



As the number of births is considerably larger than the number of deaths, natural increase remains consistently high, reaching between 14,900 and 16,100 people (Series A and B respectively) in 2021.

**Birthplace.** Australia's population has increased each year since the end of World War II, due to a combination of high post-war fertility and high levels of migration. In 1901, 23% of Australia's population was overseas-born. In 1947 the proportion of the population born overseas had declined to 10%. The creation of a national government immigration portfolio in 1945 accompanied a gradual increase in the proportion of overseas-born Australians and by 1992 this proportion had increased to 23%. In 2002 the number of overseas-born Australians had passed 4.5 million or at 23% of the total population and in 2007 this increased to 25%.

The diversity of countries of birth has increased substantially over the years. Patterns of immigration have also changed. For the last few decades, Italy, Greece and Netherlands-born populations in Australia have been declining. The major migration flows from these countries occurred immediately after World War II and there has been relatively little migration from these countries more recently.

**Migration to Australia.** Almost 6 million migrants, born in over 200 countries, live in Australia.

People born in the United Kingdom continued to be the largest group of overseas-born residents, accounting for 1.2 million people. The next largest group was born in New Zealand with 544,000 people, followed by China (380,000 people), India (341,000) and Italy (216,000).

Over the last decade, the proportion of those born in the UK declined from 5.9% of Australia's population in 2000 to 5.3% in 2010. In contrast, the proportions increased for people born in New Zealand (from 1.9% to 2.4%), China (from 0.8% to 1.7%) and India (from 0.5% to 1.5%).

The majority (76%) of overseas-born residents were of working age, 15–64 years in June 2010. Migrants born in Asia, America and Africa had proportionally larger young (0–14 years) and working age (15–64 years) populations compared to those from Europe.

**Linguistic affiliation.** Australia has no official language, it is largely monolingual with English being the *de facto* national language. Australian English has a distinctive accent and vocabulary. The dominant language since colonisation has been English, with little multi-lingualism among the majority population. Nevertheless, both the diverse Aboriginal groups and many immigrants continue to use languages other than English. According to the 2011 census, 76.8% of people spoke only English at home. Other languages spoken at home included Mandarin 1.6%, Italian 1.4%, Arabic 1.3%, Cantonese 1.2% and Greek 1.2%. A considerable proportion of first- and second-generation migrants are bilingual.

At the time of European settlement, there were an estimated 250 languages spoken by the Indigenous people of Australia. These languages were made up collectively of a total of about 700 different dialects. Perhaps ninety of these languages are still spoken, with around twenty being spoken fluently by the indigenous children.

The following data is derived from the 2014 Census:

- About 61,000 people speak an Indigenous language. Of these, approximately 19% speak an Australian creole.

- A significant number of people speak an Australian creole including Torres Strait Creole (5,369 speakers) and Kriol (6,781 speakers). 575 people indicated that they speak Aboriginal English.

- Other Indigenous languages with large numbers of speakers are Arrernte cluster (5,362 speakers), Djambarrpuyngu (2,974), Pitantjatjara (3,486) and Walpiri (2,554).

- The most common Indigenous languages differ between states and territories reflecting the origins of particular Aboriginal groups and their continuity with their traditional lands.

- Over half (60%) of the Northern Territory's Indigenous population speak an Indigenous language, by far the greatest proportion of any state or territory. 13.5% of Indigenous people in Western Australia and 11.5% in South Australia speak an Indigenous language.

- The Northern Territory has over half (56.1%) of Australia's Indigenous language speakers, with most of the remainder in Queensland (19.8%), Western Australia (15.6%) and South Australia (5.9%).

The Aboriginal languages with the most speakers today are Arrernte, Kala Lagaw Ya, Tiwi, Walmajarri, Warlpiri, and the language. The decline in the use of the Aboriginal languages is due to the effects of colonisation. Among some Aboriginal groups, especially in parts of the north, a number of distinctive creole dialects mix Aboriginal languages with English.

Melbourne is the most multilingual city. Migrant groups want their languages to be maintained through government policies such as the Languages Other Than English (LOTE) program in secondary schools.

The analysis of the language spoken at home by the population of the Australia shows that there is a larger proportion of people who speak English only, and a smaller proportion of those speaking a non-English language (either exclusively, or in addition to English).

Overall, 76.8% of the population speak English only, and 18.2% speak a non-English language, compared with 70.4% and 24.7% respectively for Greater Capital Cities.

The dominant language spoken at home, other than English, in the Australia is Mandarin, with 1.6% of the population, or 336,178 people speaking this language at home.

Australian English probably originated as a combination of British regional dialects used by groups of convicts and others who came to the colonies. Australian English is different from British and American English but does not vary much regionally. Various social factors affect accent and style, including social class, education, gender (women tend to use the cultivated variety more than men do), and age.

The indigenous language remains the main language for about 50,000 (0.25%) people. Australia has a sign language known as Auslan, which is the main language of about 6,500 deaf people.

While English is Australia's national language, there are certain words and expressions that have become regarded as uniquely Australian through common usage. Some of them might seem strange to non-Australians.

The use of these colloquial or slang words, often coupled with an Australian sense of humour that is characterised by irony and irreverence, can sometimes cause confusion for international visitors. There are a number of books on Australian colloquialisms and slang, including the *Macquarie Book of Slang*.

## TASKS

***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) to show, express, or be a sign of something;
- 2) something that you give or do in order to help something be successful;
- 3) length of time that a person or animal is expected to live;
- 4) someone who has the training and experience that is needed to do something well;
- 5) degree to which an area is filled with people or things;
- 6) woman or girl;
- 7) to be more in number than another group;
- 8) something that you think is true although you have no definite proof;
- 9) someone who lives or stays in a particular place;
- 10) group of stocks owned by a particular person or company;
- 11) period of 10 years;
- 12) ability of a person, animal, or plant to produce babies, young animals, or seeds;
- 13) able to speak a language very well;
- 14) more powerful, important, or noticeable than other people or things;
- 15) very informal, sometimes offensive, language that is used especially by people who belong to a particular group, such as young people or criminals.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

**II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):**

1. The growth of Australia's population has two components: natural increase (the number of births plus the number of deaths) and net overseas migration (NOM).

2. The contribution to population growth for the year ended 31 March 2014 was higher from net overseas migration (60%) than from natural increase (40%).

3. Eastern Australia continued to record the fastest growth rate of all states and territories at 2.5%.

4. Australia's population, like that of most developed countries, is ageing as a result of sustained low fertility and increasing standard of life.

5. Over the next several decades, population ageing is projected to have significant implications for Australia, including for health, labour force participation, housing and demand for skilled labour.

6. At 30 June 2010, South Australia had the oldest population of all the states and territories with a median age of 39.9 years.

7. Most of Australia's population is concentrated in three widely separated coastal regions. By far the larger of these, in terms of area and population, lies in the south-east and east.

8. At 30 June 2008, population density was highest in the capital cities of Australia's states and territories. With the exception of Sydney, all these capital cities are located on the coast.

9. Five of the top ten most densely-populated statistical local areas (SLAs) were located in Canberra, which is currently the most populous city in Australia.

10. At the Australia level, any growth in the Indigenous population is entirely due to natural increase (that is, the excess of births over deaths), as net overseas migration is assumed to be not significant.

11. People born in the USA continued to be the largest group of overseas-born residents, accounting for 1.2 million people. The next largest group was born in New Zealand with 544,000 people, followed by China (380,000 people), India (341,000) and Italy (216,000).

12. At the time of European settlement, there were an estimated 50 languages spoken by the Indigenous people of Australia.

13. The most common Indigenous languages differ between states and territories reflecting the origins of particular Aboriginal groups and their continuity with their traditional lands.

14. Melbourne is the most multilingual city. Migrant groups don't want their languages to be maintained through government policies such as the Languages Other Than English (LOTE) program in secondary schools.

15. The use of these colloquial or slang words, often coupled with an Australian sense of responsibility that is characterised by irony and irreverence, can sometimes cause confusion for international visitors.



**III. Read this short text about the indigenous Australians. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

The 1 \_\_\_\_ for the first arrivals of indigenous Australians to the continent of Australia places this human migration to at least 40,000 years ago most probably from the islands of Indonesia and New Guinea.

These first inhabitants of Australia 2 \_\_\_\_, who over the course of many 3 \_\_\_\_ diversified widely throughout the continent and its nearby islands. Although their technical culture remained static—depending on 4 \_\_\_\_ and weapons—their spiritual and social life was highly complex. Most spoke several languages, and confederacies sometimes linked widely 5 \_\_\_\_\_. Aboriginal population density ranged from approximately one person per 3 km<sup>2</sup> (1 sq mi) along the coasts to one person per 90 km<sup>2</sup> (35 sq mi) 6 \_\_\_\_\_. Food procurement was usually a matter for the nuclear family, requiring an estimated 3 days of work per week. There was little large game, and outside of some communities in the more fertile south-east, they had no agriculture.

The Dutch navigators landed on the coasts of modern Western Australia and Queensland several times during the 17th century. Captain James Cook 7 \_\_\_\_ in 1770, the west coast was later settled by Britain also. At that time, 8 \_\_\_\_ was estimated to have been between 315,000 and 750,000, divided into as many as 500 tribes speaking many different languages. In the 2011 Census, 495,757 respondents declared they were Aboriginal, 31,407 declared they were Torres Strait Islander, and a further 21,206 declared they were both Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders.

Since the end of World War II, efforts have been made both by the government and by the public 9 \_\_\_\_ to Aboriginal rights and needs. Today, many tribal Aborigines lead a settled traditional life in remote areas of northern, central and western Australia. In the south, where most Aborigines are 10 \_\_\_\_\_, most Aboriginal people live in the cities.

- A) succeeding generations
- B) in the arid interior
- C) to be more responsive
- D) earliest accepted timeline
- E) to be less careful
- F) of mixed descent

- G) wood, bone, and stone tools
- H) were originally hunter-gatherers
- I) the indigenous population
- J) claimed the east coast for Great Britain
- K) scattered tribal groups

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

Abolition of the White Australia Policy in the mid-1970s led to a significant increase in to non-European immigration, mostly from the Asia and the Middle East. About 90% of Australia's population is of much European descent. Over 8% of the population is of Asian descent (predominantly the Chinese, Vietnamese, Filipino and Indian). The total indigenous population is estimated to be about

520,000 individuals, including people of mixed descent. The population of Queensland also includes from descendants of South Sea Islanders brought over for indentured servitude in the 19th century.

In the 2011 census, 60.2% of Australia's population declared inside European ancestry. In addition, many of those who chose Australian ethnicity were not of indigenous by ethnicity. The total indigenous population is estimated to be about 520,000 individuals, including people of mixed descent. In the 2011 Census, the Australians reported around 300 different ancestries. The most commonly reported ancestries were English (33.7 per cent) and Australian (33 per cent). A further 6 of the leading 10 ancestries reflected from the European heritage in Australia – Irish (9.7 per cent), Scottish (8.3 per cent), Italian (4.3 per cent), German (4.2 per cent), Greek (1.8 per cent) and Dutch (1.6 per cent). Other most common ancestries in the top 10 were Chinese (4.0 per cent) and Indian (1.8 per cent).

The most commonly spoken languages other than the English are Italian, Greek, German, Spanish, Vietnamese, Filipino, Chinese languages, Indian languages, Arabic and Macedonian, as well as much numerous Australian Aboriginal languages. Australia's hearing-impaired community uses Australian Deaf Sign Language. As of February 2012, more than 15 per cent of Australians speak non-English languages at home and more than the 200 languages are practiced in everyday life.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Перші українські поселенці**

Австралія, як країна іммігрантів, була насамперед такою для мешканців Великобританії та Ірландії — і згодом для колоній і домініонів імперії. З кінця 19 століття із Західної Європи прибували німецькі, французькі, а пізніше італійські та грецькі іммігранти, серед яких було чимало євреїв. З українців приїжджали тільки одиниці. Взагалі складно встановити етнічність та національність прибульців зі Східної Європи, оскільки українців включали в число російських та польських поселенців і мандрівників.

У 1820 році до Сіднея прибув російський корабель «Открытие». З цієї експедиції тут залишився хворий матрос Федір Зубенко, уродженець Полтавщини, подальші сліди якого губляться. За деякими даними, українцями були такі емігранти зі Львова: лікар Джон Луцький (або Лоцький), що прибув до Австралії 1832 р. і займав посаду державного ботаніка; також в Тасманії проживали Казимир Кабат та Володимир Косак, які працювали згодом у поліції. У 1854 році оселився у Джелонгу, Вікторії, 16-річний юнак із Шотландії, син польонізованого українця, Юрко Горецький.

У 1850 роках до Австралії приїхав український вояк Михайло Грив з австрійської армії. Він поселився у Квінсленді і працював на фермі. До нього у 1860 році приїхав селянин Яцко Пелевський, який успадкував май-

но Гриба. Інший український юнак І. Займак прибув у 1869 році до Брісбену, а потім поселився в Новому Південном Уельсі, де займався вирощуванням устриць.

У 1912 році до Австралії прибув лікар і журналіст, мандрівник і любитель пригод С. Барчинський. Він тричі повертався до Австралії, найдовше жив і працював у Сідней і помер у Західній Австралії. Барчинський популяризував відомості про Австралію в галицькій пресі між двома війнами, а після Другої світової війни був одним з небагатьох, хто ділився досвідом і порадами з новими іммігрантами. Після закінчення подій 1917-20 в Росії до Австралії прибув українець із Сибіру Іван Іванець, який став власником та розбудував велику ферму в околиці м. Дарвін, Північній Території.

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Ausztráliai magyar bevándorlás**

Az ausztrál kontinens európai lakosokkal való betelepítése a XVIII. század végén kezdődött, és a XIX. században lendült fel. Az angolajkú lakosság érkezett a legnagyobb számban, de az egyéb európai nemzetekből is érkeztek kisebb-nagyobb számban. A magyar bevándorlás csekély mértékű volt, a nagy távolság elriasztotta a kivándorolni vágyókat, ha mégis elszánták magukat, inkább Amerikát választották. A XX századig csupán párszáz magyar választotta új hazájának Ausztráliát, de az első világháborút követő szegénység és politikai változások sokakat kényszerített külföldre, így az ötödik kontinensre érkezők száma is nagyban megugrott.

Az első világháború után még mindig szerény méretű a bevándorlók száma: 272 magyarországi születésű ausztrál lakost tartanak nyilván. A jó szakemberek hamarosan érvényesülni tudtak: műhelyeket, gyárakat alapítottak, önállósodtak. Mások importtal foglalkoztak, kiváló magyar gyógyszereket, vegyészeti termékeket forgalmaztak.

A harmincas évek vége felé kivándorolt magyarok kifejezetten a nemzeti szocialisták elöl menekültek. Ausztrália készen állt 15 000 menekült befogadására, ám a távolság miatt csak 6500 menekült választotta e földrészt. 1936 és 1940 között mintegy nyolcszáz új bevándorlót regisztráltak. Nagy lökést adott a magyarországi zsidóság kivándorlása a 30-as években. Jellemzően olyanok érkeztek, akik nem szimpatizáltak a Magyarországon is erősödő nemzetiszocialista mozgalmakkal, vagy az erősödő zsidóellenesség elöl vándoroltak ki még időben. Többségük rendelkezett némi vagyonnal és szakmával is így nem okozott gondot a beilleszkedésük.

A magyarok kivándorlásának a következő lökést a II. világháború elvesztése okozta, és émiatt tízezrek menekültek az országból, így hungaristák is emigrálni kényszerültek, a korábbi üldözök többek közt szintén Ausztráliában találtak menedéket. Elhelyezkedésük nem okozott gondot: az ausztrál társadalomnak szüksége volt a szakértelmükre a háború alatti ínséges időkben. Egyedül az

átlag ausztrál állampolgárok bizalmatlanságával, idegenkedésével kellett megküzdeniük.

A következő hullám 1956-ban érkezett a forradalom bukása után. Legtöbbszörük *Sidneyben* és *Melbourneben* helyezkedett el, de szép számban kerültek *Adeleide-be*, *Brisbane-be* és a távolnyugati *Perthbe*.

A magyar bevándoroltak többsége aránylag jól képzett, vallásos és családszerető, nemzeti érzésű emberekből állt, akik magyarságukat megőrizve igyekeztek beilleszkedni. Ezért a nagy szétszórtságban is megszerveződtek. Az egymástól távol eső nagyvárosokban önerőből létrehozták a maguk egyházi, kulturális és szakmai szervezeteit, kis magyar társadalmát. A déli félteke egyetlen magyar hetilapja az ötezer példányban megjelenő *Ausztráliai Magyar Élet*.



Ma körülbelül 60 ezer magyar él Ausztráliában. Az ő összefogásuk csodálatos eredménye a világ legnagyobb magyar közösségi háza, a Melbourne-i Magyar Központ. A Központ húsz különféle kulturális, művészeti, ifjúsági, sport, nyugdíjas, karitatív egyesületnek, klubnak ad otthont; óvodát, iskolát működtet. 1993 végén a Központ részeként fölépült Szent István ökumenikus templomban minden vasárnap miséznek, istentiszteletet tartanak a keresztény egyházak. 2001-ben Márton Áron emlékéremmel tüntették ki a Magyar Központot a magyar nemzet és magyar kultúra megmaradásáért tett erőfeszítéseikért.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the demography of Australia.***

***VIII. Compare the linguistic affiliation of Australia with that of your country.***

## VII. CANBERRA

**Canberra** (/ˈkænb(ə)rə/ or /kænˈberə/) is the capital city of Australia. With a population of 381,488, it is Australia's largest inland city and the eighth-largest city overall. The city is located at the northern end of the Australian Capital Territory (ACT), 280 km (170 mi) south-west of Sydney, and 660 km (410 mi) north-east of Melbourne. A resident of Canberra is known as a "Canberran".

The site of Canberra was selected for the location of the nation's capital in 1908 as a compromise between rivals Sydney and Melbourne, Australia's two largest cities. It is unusual among Australian cities, being an entirely planned city outside of any state, similar to the American Federal District of Columbia.

Following an international contest for the city's design, a blueprint by the Chicago architects Walter Burley Griffin and Marion Mahony Griffin was selected and construction commenced in 1913. The Griffins' plan featured geometric motifs such as circles, hexagons and triangles, and was centred on axes aligned with significant topographical landmarks in the Australian Capital Territory.

The city's design was influenced by the garden city movement and incorporates significant areas of natural vegetation that have earned Canberra the title of the "bush capital". The growth and development of Canberra were hindered by the World Wars and the Great Depression, which exacerbated a series of planning disputes and the ineffectiveness of a procession of bodies that were created in turn to oversee the development of the city. The national capital emerged as a thriving city after World War II, as Prime Minister Robert Menzies championed its development and the National Capital Development Commission was formed with executive powers. Although the Australian Capital Territory is now self-governing, the federal government retains some influence through the National Capital Authority.

As the seat of the government of Australia, Canberra is the site of the Parliament House, the High Court and numerous government departments and agencies. It is also the location of many social and cultural institutions of national significance, such as the Australian War Memorial, Australian National University, Australian Institute of Sport, National Gallery, National Museum and the National Library. The Australian Army's officer corps are trained at the Royal Military College, Duntroon and the Australian Defence Force Academy is also located in the capital.

The ACT, like Washington, D.C. in the United States, is independent of any state, to prevent any one state from gaining an advantage by hosting the seat of Federal power. Unlike Washington, however, the ACT has voting representation in the Federal Parliament, and has its own independent Legislative Assembly and government, similar to the states.

As the city has a high proportion of public servants, the federal government contributes the largest percentage of Gross State Product and is the largest single employer in Canberra. As the seat of government, the unemployment rate is lower and the average income higher than the national average, while property

prices are relatively high, in part due to comparatively restricted development regulations. Tertiary education levels are higher, while the population is younger.

### ***Etymology***

The word "Canberra" is popularly thought to derive from the word *Kambera* or Canberry which is claimed to mean "meeting place" in the old Ngunnawal language, one of several Indigenous languages spoken in the district by the Aboriginal people before the European settlers arrived. According to Ngunnawal Elder, Don Bell, the correct translation is "woman's breasts" and is the Indigenous name for the two mountains, Black Mountain and Mount Ainslie which lie almost opposite each other. In the 1860s, the name was reported by Queanbeyan newspaper owner John Gale to be an anglicisation of the indigenous name 'nganbra' or 'nganbira', meaning "hollow between a woman's breasts", and referring to the Sullivans Creek flood plain between Mount Ainslie and Black Mountain.

Alternatively, R.H. Cambage in his 1919 book *Notes on the Native Flora of New South Wales, Part X, the Federal Capital Territory* noted that Joshua John Moore, the first settler in the region, named the area Canberry in 1823 stating that *"there seems no doubt that the original was a native name, but its meaning is unknown."* Survey plans of the district dated 1837 refer to the area as the Canberry Plain. In 1920, some of the older residents of the district claimed that the name was derived from the Australian Cranberry which grew abundantly in the area, noting that the local name for the plant was canberry. Although popularly pronounced /'kænb(ə)rə/ or /'kænbərə/, the original pronunciation at its official naming in 1913 was /'kæn.brə/.

### ***History***

Before the European settlement, the area in which Canberra would eventually be constructed was seasonally inhabited by the Indigenous Australians. Anthropologist Norman Tindale suggested the principal group occupying the region were the Ngunnawal people, while the Ngarigo lived immediately to the south of the ACT, The Wandandian to the east, the Walgulu also to the south, Gandangara people to the north, and Wiradjuri to the north west. Archaeological evidence of settlement in the region includes inhabited rock shelters, rock paintings and engravings, burial places, camps and quarry sites, and stone tools and arrangements. The evidence suggests human habitation in the area for at least 21,000 years.



*Blundells Cottage, built around 1860, is one of the few remaining buildings built by the first European settlers of Canberra.*

European exploration and settlement started in Canberra area as early as the 1820s. There were four expeditions between 1820 and 1824.

White settlement of the area probably dates back to 1823, when a homestead or

station was built on what is now the Acton peninsula by stockmen employed by Joshua John Moore. He formally applied to purchase the site on 16 December 1826, naming the property "Canberry". On 30 April 1827, Moore was told by letter that he could retain possession of 1,000 acres (405 ha) at Canberry.

The European population in Canberra area continued to grow slowly throughout the 19th century. Among them was the Campbell family of "Duntroon"; their imposing stone house is now the officers' mess of the Royal Military College, Duntroon. The Campbells sponsored settlement by other farmer families to work on their land, such as the Southwells of "Weetangera". Other notable early settlers included the inter-related Murray and Gibbes families, who owned the Yarralumla estate—now the site of the official residence of the Governor-General of Australia—from the 1830s through to 1881.

The oldest surviving public building in the inner-city is the Anglican Church of St John the Baptist, in the suburb of Reid, which was consecrated in 1845. St John's churchyard contains the earliest graves in the district. As the European presence increased, the indigenous population dwindled, mainly from diseases such as smallpox and measles.

### ***Decisions to start and locate a capital***

The district's change from a rural area in New South Wales to the national capital started during debates over Federation in the late 19th century. Following a long dispute over whether Sydney or Melbourne should be the national capital, a compromise was reached: the new capital would be built in New South Wales, so long as it was at least 100 miles (160 km) from Sydney, with Melbourne to be the temporary seat of government (but not referred to as the "capital") while the new capital was built. Newspaper proprietor John Gale circulated a pamphlet titled 'Dalgety or Canberra: Which?' advocating Canberra to every member of the Commonwealth's seven state and federal parliaments. By many accounts, it was decisive in the selection of Canberra as the site in 1908, as was a result of survey work done by the government surveyor Charles Scrivener. The NSW government ceded the Federal Capital Territory (as it was then known) to the federal government. In an international design competition conducted by the Department of Home Affairs, on 24 May 1911, the design by Walter Burley Griffin and Marion Mahony Griffin was chosen for the city, and in 1913 Griffin was appointed Federal Capital Director of Design and Construction and construction began.

### ***History of Canberra as a capital city***

At midday on 12 March 1913, the city was officially given its name by Lady Denman, the wife of Governor-General Lord Denman, at a ceremony at Kurrajong Hill, which has since become Capital Hill and the site of the present Parliament House. Canberra Day is a public holiday observed in the ACT on the second Monday in March to celebrate the founding of Canberra. After the ceremony, bureaucratic disputes hindered Griffin's work; a Royal Commission in

1916 ruled his authority had been usurped by certain officials. Griffin's relationship with the Australian authorities was strained and a lack of funding meant that by the time he was fired in 1920, little work had been done. By this time, Griffin had revised his plan, overseen the earthworks of major avenues, and established the Glenloch Cork Plantation. The federal legislature moved to Canberra on 9 May 1927, with the opening of the Provisional Parliament House. The Prime Minister, Stanley Bruce, had officially taken up residence in The Lodge a few days earlier. Planned development of the city slowed significantly during the depression of the 1930s and during World War II. Some projects planned for that time, including Roman Catholic and Anglican cathedrals, were never completed.



*Two of Canberra's best-known landmarks, Parliament House and Old Parliament House (foreground). Commonwealth Place runs alongside the lake and includes the International Flag Display. Questacon is on the right.*

Since 1920, three bodies, successively the Federal Capital Advisory Committee, the Federal Capital Commission, and the National Capital Planning and Development Committee have continued planning of the further expansion of Canberra in the absence of Griffin; however, they were only advisory, and development decisions were made without consulting them, increasing inefficiency. Immediately after the end of the war, Canberra was criticised for resembling a village, and its disorganised collection of buildings was deemed ugly. Canberra was often derisively described as "several suburbs in search of a city". Prime Minister Robert Menzies regarded the state of the national capital as an embarrassment. Over time his attitude changed from one of contempt to that of championing its development. He fired two ministers charged with the development of the city for poor performance. Menzies remained in office for over a decade, and in that time the development of the capital sped up rapidly. The population grew by more than 50 per cent in every five-year period from 1955 to 1975. Several Government departments, together with public servants, were moved to Canberra from Melbourne following the war. Government housing projects were undertaken to accommodate the city's growing population.

The National Capital Development Commission (NCDC), formed in 1957 with executive powers, ended four decades of disputes over the shape and design of Lake Burley Griffin—the centrepiece of Griffin's design—and construction was completed in 1964 after four years of work. The completion of the lake finally laid the platform for the development of Griffin's Parliamentary Triangle. Since the initial construction of the lake, various buildings of national importance have been constructed on its shores.

The newly built Australian National University was expanded, and sculptures and monuments were built. A new National Library was constructed



within the Parliamentary Triangle, followed by the High Court and the National Gallery. Suburbs in Canberra Central (often referred to as North Canberra and South Canberra) were further developed in the 1950s, and urban development in the districts of Woden Valley and Belconnen commenced in the mid and late 1960s respectively. Many of the new suburbs were named after Australian politicians, such as Barton, Deakin, Reid, Braddon, Curtin, Chifley and Parkes.



*Canberra Civic viewed from Mount Ainslie with Lake Burley Griffin and Mount Stromlo in the background.*

On 27 January 1972 the Aboriginal Tent Embassy was first established by the indigenous people on the grounds of the Parliament House; it was created to draw attention to the Indigenous rights and land issues and has been continuously occupied since 1992.

On 9 May 1988, a larger and permanent Parliament House was opened on Capital Hill as part of Australia's bicentenary celebrations, and the Federal Parliament moved there from the Provisional Parliament House, now known as Old Parliament House.

In December 1988, the ACT was granted full self-government through an Act of the Commonwealth Parliament. Following the first election on 4 March 1989, a 17-member Legislative Assembly sat at temporary offices at 1 Constitution Avenue, Civic, on 11 May 1989. Permanent premises were opened on London Circuit in 1994. The Australian Labor Party formed the ACT's first government, led by the Chief Minister Rosemary Follett, who made history as Australia's first female head of government.

Parts of Canberra were engulfed by bushfires on 18 January 2003 that killed four people, injured 435, and destroyed more than 500 homes and the major research telescopes of Australian National University's Mount Stromlo Observatory.

Throughout 2013, several events celebrated the 100th anniversary of the naming of Canberra. On 11 March 2014, the last day of the centennial year, the Canberra Centenary Column was unveiled in City Hill.

## *Arts and entertainment*



*The National Museum of Australia established in 2001 records Australia's social history and is one of Canberra's more architecturally daring buildings.*

Canberra is home to many national monuments and institutions such as the Australian War Memorial, the National Gallery of Australia, the National Portrait Gallery, the National Library, the National Archives, the Australian Academy of Science, the National Film and Sound Archive and the National Museum. Many Commonwealth government buildings in Canberra are open to the public, including Parliament House, the High Court and the Royal Australian Mint.



### *The Australian War Memorial*

Lake Burley Griffin is the site of the Captain James Cook Memorial and the National Carillon. Other sites of interest include the Black Mountain Tower, the Australian National Botanic Gardens, the National Zoo and Aquarium, the National Dinosaur Museum and Questacon – the National Science and Technology Centre.



*A copy of every book published in Australia is required by law to be held by the National Library of Australia.*

The Canberra Museum and Gallery in the city is a repository of local history and art, housing a permanent collection and visiting exhibitions. Several historic homes are open to the public: Lanyon and Tuggeranong Homesteads in the Tuggeranong Valley, Mugga-Mugga in Symonston, and Blundells' Cottage in Parkes all display the lifestyle of the early European settlers. Calthorpes' House in Red Hill is a well preserved example of a 1920s house from Canberra's very early days. Canberra has many venues for live music and theatre: the Canberra Theatre and Playhouse which hosts many major concerts and productions; and Llewellyn Hall (within the ANU School of Music), a world-class concert hall are two of the most notable. The Street Theatre is a venue with less mainstream offerings. The Albert Hall was the city's first performing arts venue, opened in 1928. It was the original performance venue for theatre groups such as the Canberra Repertory Society.

Stonefest at the University of Canberra was a large two-day music festival. There are numerous bars and nightclubs which also offer live entertainment, particularly concentrated in the areas of Dickson, Kingston and the city. Most town centres have facilities for a community theatre and a cinema, and they all have a library. Popular cultural events include the National Folk Festival, the Royal Canberra Show, the Summernats car festival, Enlighten festival, the National Multicultural Festival in February and the *Celebrate Canberra* festival held over 10 days in March in conjunction with Canberra Day.



*Canberra–Nara park with Kasuga stone lanterns framed by the gate*

Canberra maintains sister-city relationships with both Nara, Japan and Beijing, China. Canberra has friendship-city relationships with both Dili, East Timor and Hangzhou, China. City-to-city relationships encourage communities and special interest groups both locally and abroad to engage in a wide range of exchange activities. The Canberra Nara Candle Festival held annually in spring, is a community celebration of the Canberra Nara Sister City relationship. The festival is held in Canberra Nara Park on the shores of Lake Burley Griffin.

## ***Transport***



*Canberra Ford Falcon Taxicab at the Australian War Memorial*

The automobile is by far the dominant form of transport in Canberra. The city is laid out so that arterial roads connecting inhabited clusters run through undeveloped areas of open land or forest, which results in a low population density; this also means that the idle land is available for the development of future transport corridors if necessary without the need to build tunnels or acquire developed residential land. In contrast, other capital cities in Australia have substantially less green space.

Canberra's districts are generally connected by parkways—limited access dual carriageway roads with speed limits generally set at a maximum of 100 km/h (62 mph). An example is the Tuggeranong Parkway which links Canberra's CBD and Tuggeranong, and bypasses Weston Creek.

In most districts, discrete residential suburbs are bounded by main arterial roads with only a few residential linking in, to deter non-local traffic from cutting through areas of housing.

In an effort to improve road safety, traffic cameras were first introduced to Canberra by the Carnell Government in 1999. The traffic cameras installed in Canberra include fixed red-light and speed cameras and point-to-point speed cameras; together they bring in revenue of approximately \$11 million per year in fines.



*ACTION Ansair bodied Renault PR100.2 used in Canberra*

ACTION, the government-operated bus service, provides public transport throughout the city. Deane's Transit Group provides bus services between Canberra and nearby areas of New South Wales through their Transborder Express (Murrumbateman and Yass) and Deane's Buslines (Queanbeyan) brands. In the 2011 census, 6.7% of the journeys to work involved public transport; with 6.5% walking or cycling to work. There are two local taxi companies. Aerial Capital Group enjoyed monopoly status until the arrival of Cabxpress in 2007.



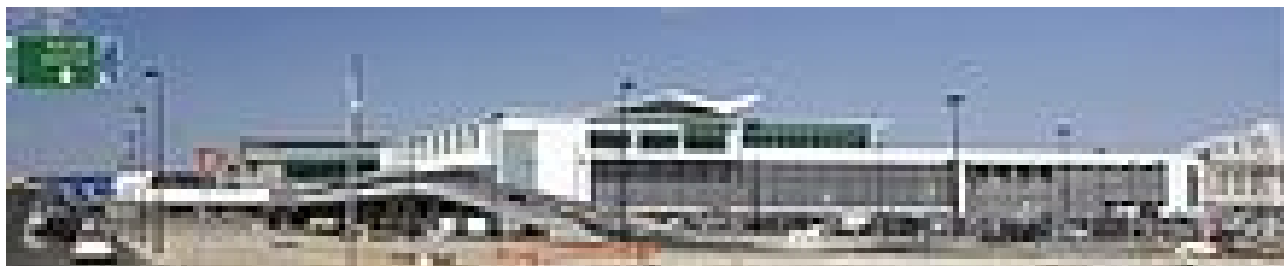
*Canberra Railway Station*

An interstate NSW Train Link railway service connects Canberra to Sydney. Canberra's railway station is in the inner south suburb of Kingston. Between 1920 and 1922 the train line crossed the Molonglo River and ran as far north as the city centre, although the line was closed following major flooding and was never rebuilt, while plans for a line to Yass were abandoned. A 3 ft 6 in (1,067 mm) gauge construction railway was built in 1923 between the Yarralumla brickworks and the provisional Parliament House; it was later extended to Civic, but the whole line was closed in May 1927.

Train services to Melbourne are provided by a NSW Train Link bus service which connects Sydney and Melbourne in Yass, about one hour drive from Canberra. Plans to establish a high-speed rail service between Melbourne, Canberra and Sydney, have not been implemented, as the various proposals have been deemed economically unviable. The original plans for Canberra included proposals for railed transport within the city, however none eventuated. The phase 2 report of the most recent proposal, the High Speed Rail Study, was published by the Department of Infrastructure and Transport on 11 April 2013. A railway connecting Canberra to Jervis Bay was also planned but never constructed.

Canberra is about three hours by road from Sydney on the Federal Highway (National Highway 23), which connects it with the Hume Highway (National Highway 31) near Goulburn, and seven hours by road from Melbourne on the Barton Highway (National Highway 25), which joins the Hume Highway at Yass. It is a two-hour drive on the Monaro Highway (National Highway 23) to the ski fields of the Snowy Mountains and the Kosciuszko National Park.

Batemans Bay, a popular holiday spot on the New South Wales coast, is also two hours away via the Kings Highway.



### *International Airport terminal*

Canberra International Airport provides direct domestic services to Sydney, Melbourne, Brisbane, Adelaide, Gold Coast and Perth, with connections to other domestic centres. There are direct daily flights to Albury and Newcastle in New South Wales. No regular commercial international flights operate from the airport. Canberra Airport was designated by the Australian Government Department of Infrastructure and Regional Development as a restricted use international airport.

Until 2003 the civilian airport shared runways with RAAF Base Fairbairn. In June, the Air Force base was decommissioned and from that time the airport was fully under civilian control.

Canberra has one of the highest rates of active travel of all Australian major cities, with 7.1 per cent of commuters walking or cycling to work in 2011. An ACT Government survey conducted in late 2010 found that Canberrans walk an average of 26 minutes each day. According to *The Canberra Times* in March 2014, Canberra's cyclists are involved in an average of four reported collisions every week. The newspaper also reported that Canberra is home to 87,000 cyclists, having the highest cycling participation rate in Australia; and, with higher popularity, bike injury rates in 2014 were twice the national average.

## **TASKS**

### ***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) wide road with trees or tall buildings on both sides, or a wide country path or road with trees on both sides;
- 2) increase of something in size, number, or importance;
- 3) feeling you have when you are embarrassed;
- 4) day or year that is 100 years after a particular event, esp. an important one; the 100th anniversary;
- 5) structure or building that is built to honour a special person or event;
- 6) place where things are stored;
- 7) public shows, performances, or other ways of enjoying yourself;
- 8) town or city that shares planned activities and visits with a similar town in another country;
- 9) long passage under or through the earth, esp. one made for vehicles;

10) an amount of money that has to be paid as a punishment for not obeying a rule or law;

11) movement of vehicles or people along roads, or the movement of aircraft, trains, or ships along a route;

12) area outside a city but near it and consisting mainly of homes, sometimes also having stores and small businesses;

13) public road, especially an important road that joins cities or towns together;

14) place where aircraft regularly take off and land, with buildings for passengers and flight management;

15) long specially prepared hard surface like a road on which aircraft land and take off.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. The site of Canberra was selected for the location of the nation's capital in 1908 as a compromise between rivals Sydney and Melbourne, Australia's two largest cities.

2. Following an international contest for the city's design, a blackprint by the Chicago architects Walter Burley Griffin and Marion Mahony Griffin was selected and construction commenced in 1913.

3. The city's design was influenced by the garden city movement and incorporates significant areas of natural vegetation that have earned Canberra the title of the "wattle capital".

4. The word "Canberra" is popularly thought to derive from the word *Kambera* or *Canberry* which is claimed to mean «sacred place" in the old Ngunnawal language, one of several Indigenous languages spoken in the district by Aboriginal people before European settlers arrived.

5. As the city has a high proportion of public servants, the police contribute the largest percentage of Gross State Product and is the largest single employer in Canberra.

6. Canberra Day is a public holiday observed in the ACT on the second Monday in December to celebrate the founding of Canberra.

7. At midday on 12 March 1913, the city was officially given its name by Lady Denman, the wife of Governor-General Lord Denman, at a ceremony at Kurrajong Hill, which has since become Capital Hill and the site of the present Court House .

8. Immediately after the end of the war, Canberra was praised for resembling a village, and its disorganised collection of buildings was deemed ugly. Canberra was often derisively described as "several suburbs in search of a city".

9. A new National Library was constructed within the Parliamentary Triangle, followed by the High Court and the National Gallery.

10. The Albert Hall was the city's first performing arts venue, opened in 1928. It was the original performance venue for theatre groups such as the Canberra Repertory Society.

11. The Canberra Museum and Gallery in the city is a repository of local history and art, housing a temporary collection and visiting exhibitions.

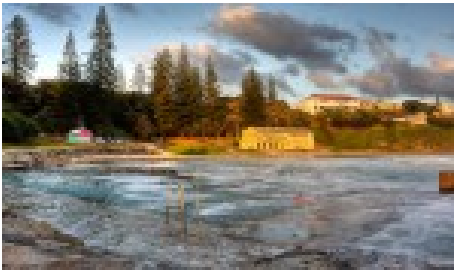
12. Canberra's districts are generally connected by railways—limited access dual carriageway roads with speed limits generally set at a maximum of 100 km/h (62 mph).

13. In an effort to improve road safety, traffic cameras were first introduced to Canberra by the Carnell Government in 1999. The traffic cameras installed in Canberra include fixed red-light and speed cameras and point-to-point speed cameras; together they bring in revenue of approximately \$11 million per year in fines.

14. ACTION, the private bus service, provides public transport throughout the city.

15. An interstate NSW Train Link railway service connects Canberra to Sydney. Canberra's railway station is in the inner south downtown of Kingston.

**III. Read this short text about Yamba. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**



Explorer Matthew Flinders first 1 \_\_\_\_ from his trim sloop, Norfolk, in 1799 near Clarence Head, a monolithic heap of rock that shields Yamba from the 2 \_\_\_\_ of the Pacific Ocean, to fix a leak and maybe have one. He'd been dispatched from Sydney to find a new Eden, but from his 3 \_\_\_\_, now Pilot Head, he blithely dismissed the 4 \_\_\_\_ as dangerous and unworthy of further examination, before sailing away. A shame, really, because he completely missed what he was sent to find; the 5 \_\_\_\_ on Australia's east coast, the fabulously bucolic Northern Rivers Delta, and one of Australia's most-favoured holiday spots – Yamba.

Liberally blessed with a perfect climate, quasi-bohemian lifestyle and 6 \_\_\_\_, the jewel in Yamba's board-riding crown is the revered and treacherous Angourie point break – beginners need not apply. Picture postcard pretty, Yamba prides itself on providing a wholesome, 7 \_\_\_\_.

The town retires early, sleeps soundly and wakes early with the kids. Its lack of nighttime pizzazz is more than compensated for by excellent eateries and more things to do than you can 8 \_\_\_\_\_. It's also enjoying a sprucing up.

Street cafes now shelter under sails and 9 \_\_\_\_\_. Shopping has become more cosmopolitan – posh frock shops, galleries et al – but even under increasing pressure from its 10 \_\_\_\_\_, Yamba refuses to move at any pace but its own.

A) shoaling, turbulent estuary

B) splashed ashore

C) dive in the canal

D) vantage point atop a craggy promontory

E) peerless surf beaches

F) burgeoning popularity

G) safe and peaceful getaway

H) flourishing shade trees

I) point a wet flipper at

J) largest estuarine system

K) wilder excesses

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**



Beechworth is by far the best-preserved 19th Century gold mining town in Australia. Not a single building in the town's centre feels 20th, let alone 21st, Century. The Beechworth streetscape is been so instantly charming because the buildings were largely less constructed in the same style, at roughly the same time, and with the same material – the local theirs honey-coloured granite. Ned Kelly, the town's most and notorious loiterer, could ride into Beechworth today and, ignoring the cars and oddly dressed people, it would look much the same as when he left in late 1880. In fact, he'd probably be arrested and charged at the local courthouse for stealing the horse he rode in on.

The courthouse retains its grandeur and original furniture, and visitors can stand in the same cell the Kelly did before he was taken to Melbourne Gaol and hung. Beechworth's current claims to fame are its growing number of microbreweries, the to-die-for range of Beechworth Honey, its regional fine food and the renowned Beechworth Bakery – Australia's No.1 purveyor of piping a hot pies, breads and cakes.

A town brimming with secrets of bygone eras, it's not hard to see and why people flock to Beechworth to walk the very same streets down which the Kelly Gang sauntered.

Robert O'Hara Burke was police superintendent in Beechworth from 1854 to since 1858. Despite being well known for getting lost in the bush, he was selected to go on an expedition across Australia. Perhaps unsurprisingly, he and the ill-fated Wills failed to complete their journey of discovery, with Burke's impatience and lack of bushcraft thought to be largely responsible.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

**V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.**

**МІСТА АВСТРАЛІЇ**



Майже 90 % усіх австралійців живуть у містах, Австралійський союз – це найбільша «міська» країна у світі. Більшість великих міст розташовані на узбережжі материка. В його пустельному центрі майже ніхто не живе.

Є в Австралії і невеликі містечка, що виростили як торгівельні центри для навколишніх сіл. Сюди фермери їдуть за покупками та везуть на продаж або на переробку свою продукцію: м'ясо, молоко, вовну, овочі, зерно, тютюн.



На східному березі Австралії, навколо глибокої затоки, розташоване найбільше місто країни – Сідней. Місто так назвав капітан Артур Філіпп, керівник конвою, що супроводжував на материк перших каторжників. Він назвав перше поселення на материк на честь лорда Сіднея, що палко закликав англійців освоювати новий материк

Центр міста невеликий. На вузьких вулицях стоять солідні, добротні будинки, збудовані у минулому столітті. Серед них багато високих будинків із скла, бетону та алюмінію. У центрі багато садів та парків із пишними рослинами.

Жителі Сіднея дуже люблять зоопарк і особливо ботанічний сад, розташовані на берегах Тасманового моря.

На околицях Сіднея розташувалися промислові райони. Тут мало зелені, будинки мають майже однаковий вигляд.

Із промислової частини Сіднея в торговельну можна потрапити мостом через затоку Порт-Джексон, довжина якої 4 км. Міст підводиться над водою на 53 м, тому під ним можуть проходити найбільші океанські судна.

Більшість сіднейців живуть за 20-30 км від промислових районів міста в маленьких одно- або двоповерхових будиночках. Перед будинком – галявина, декілька дерев та квітник. Майже біля кожного будиночка – цистерна на товстих цементних стовпах висотою на два метри. З даху в цю цистерну стікає дощова вода, що завжди може знадобитися в господарстві. Такі ж цистерни для дощової води, тільки більших розмірів, стоять на пагорбах навколо Сіднея та біля інших міст Австралії.

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Ausztrália városai**

Ausztrália erősen urbanizált, a lakosság majd' 90%-a városokban él, ennek ellenére nincs túlszűfoaltság, sőt az ausztrál nagyvárosok az egyik legélhetőbbek a világon!

Az Economist Intelligence Unit (EIU), a világ egyik legnagyobb nem befektetési banki jellegű elemző és előrejelző intézete 140 nagyváros életminőségét vizsgálta a stabilitás, egészségügyi ellátás, az oktatás, a kultúra és környezet, valamint az infrastruktúra szempontjából. A cég ezekre számszerű minősítéseket ad, és ezeket összegzi különböző súlyozásokkal egy nullától százig terjedő átfogó minőségi indexben. A zéró osztályzat az EIU meghatározása szerint „elviselhetetlen”, a 100-as „ideális” életkörülményeket jelöl.

A listán az ausztráliai Melbourne megőrizte első helyét, 97, 5 ponttal a megszerezhető 100-ból. A második helyre Bécs (97, 4), a harmadikra a kanadai Vancouver (97, 3) került. A felső tízes mezőnyben nyolc ausztrál, kanadai és új-zélandi nagyváros szerepel. Bécsen kívül a másik európai város ebben a csoportban a 8. helyezett Helsink. Ausztráliából Melbourne mellett Adelaide, Sydney és Perth található az élmezőnyben. Összehasonlításképp: Melbourne lakóinak száma kétszer annyi, mint Budapésté, de területe tizenötször akkora.

Fővárosa Canberra, melynek megalapítása a két legbefolyásosabb város – Sydney és Melbourne – vetélkedésének következménye, ugyanis nem tudtak megegyezni, hogy melyik nagyváros viselje a főváros címét. Így Viktória a királynő határozata alapján egy olyan várost kellett alapítani, amely egyik szövetségi állam területén sincs, ehhez pedig 1909-ben Új-Dél Wales kormánya bocsátott területet a főváros megalapításához.

Úgy mondják, hogy Melbourne a világ egyik legfiatalabb, mégis legrégebb óta lakott városa. Ez talán igaz is lehet, az viszont biztosan az, hogy ez Ausztrália második legjelentősebb nagyvárosa Sydney után – legalábbis népességét és méreteit tekintve.

Jelenleg Melbourne valódi metropolisz: megtalálhatóak benne a néhol már valóban művészi igényű graffitiktól hemzsegő sikátorok, a helyi és külföldi különlegességeket mázsaszám kínáló piacok csakúgy, mint az üzleti világ nemzetközi szimbólumai, a felhőkarcolók. A város lakosságának közel egyharmada bevándorló, az utcákon közel 180 féle nyelvvel és majd' 100 féle vallással találkozhat az odalátogató.

Történelmi szemmel nézve Melbourne néhány röpké pillanat alatt olyan világvárossá nőtte ki magát, ami nem csak helyet kapott az Economist 2011-es, "A világ legélhetőbb városai" listáján, de sok, nálánál öregebb és nagyobb múltú várost utasított maga mögé barátságos hangulatával és az ausztrálokra oly jellemző életigenlő kisugárzásával.



Melbourne-t Ausztrália kulturális fővárosaként is szokás emlegetni. Az évek alatt ugyanis kialakult egyfajta intellektuális imázs a város körül, ami persze azóta is igyekszik minél jobban megfelelni ennek. Így hát temérdek felsőkategóriás kulturális- és sportintézmény, könyvtár és múzeum van Melbourne-ben. Emellett számos bár, kávézó, üzlet és étterem – amik közül nem

egy világszínvonalúan elismert – igyekszik elbűvölni az odalátogatókat a hamisítatlan ausztrál életérzéssel. Melbourne-t a fesztiválok városaként is szokás emlegetni, legjelentősebbek ezek között is a nemzetközi művészeti és filmfesztiválok. E ponton érdemes megemlíteni azt is, hogy Melbourne az ausztrál filmgyártás és balett központja, illetve világhírű a Melbourne-i szimfonikus zenekar is.

A központi üzleti negyedben (CBD) az ország egyik leghíresebb filmszínháza – melynek tervezése valóban egyedülálló – az Australian Centre of Moving Image. A legkülönbözőbb filmeket vetítő mozi egyben galériaként és kiállító-, valamint rendezvényteremként is funkcionál.

A város egyik legjelentősebb galériája az Ian Potter Centre: National Gallery of Victoria Australia, a világ minden tájáról származó alkotásokat bemutató állandó tárlattal, illetve idényenként megújuló modern és antik kiállításokkal igyekszik csábítani a művészetek rajongóit.

Melbourne bővelkedik a szebbnél szebb látnivalókban. Az ország egyik legrégebbi és minden bizonnyal a leghíresebb piaca, az Queen Victoria Market is Melbourne szívében várja a kíváncsi érdeklődőket és a vásárolni vágyókat egyaránt. A Queen Victoria Market nem csak vásárlásra kiváló, de rendszeresen ad helyt különféle gasztro-kulturális programoknak is.

Érdekes színfoltja a városnak a neogótikus stílusban épült St. Paul Cathedral, a város szívében, Flinders Strett Station-al szemben áll.

Végül, de közel sem utolsó sorban meg kell említenünk a Melbourne Aquariumot is. A 2000-ben elkészült „állatkertben” több, mint 30 kiállítás és közel 3000 víziállat várja a látogatókat. A kultúra megbecsülését és kiemelt szerepét Melbourne-ben a legjobban talán az szemlélteti, hogy ez a város nyerte el a világon másodikként az irodalom városa címet az UNESCO-tól.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the cities and towns of Australia.***

***VIII. Compare the capital of Australia with that of your country***

## VIII. ECONOMY

### 1. Basic Economy.

After forty years of settlement, when there was little scope for industrial or commercial enterprises, the pastoral industry became a key force in economic development. In particular, the growth in the wool industry was associated with advances in the rest of the economy. Gold surpassed wool as the nation's major export in the 1850s and 1860s, resulting in a rapid expansion of banking and commerce.

From federation until 1930 there was some expansion in manufacturing industries, and with the onset of World War II, the manufacturing sector was developed to respond to the demand for war materials and equipment. Some industries expanded and new ones developed rapidly to produce munitions, ships, aircraft, machinery, chemicals, and textiles.

After the war exports consisted mainly of primary commodities such as wool, wheat, coal, and metals. High tariffs and other controls were imposed on most imported goods. Although many of those controls were lifted in the 1960s, effective rates of protection remained high. The government continues to be involved in the operation of some public enterprises, including railways, electricity, post offices and telecommunications. There remains a government interest in the Commonwealth Bank.

A move toward privatisation at the state and commonwealth levels of government has been gaining momentum since the early 1980s. Some states, such as Victoria, have embraced this move much more than the others. Australia is highly integrated into the global capitalist economy. Since World War II, much trade has been redirected from Britain and Europe to the Asia-Pacific region, especially Japan. A related trend has been the growth of mineral exports since the mid-1960s.

Australia has a developed modern market economy and has had one of the most outstanding economies in the world in recent years with high-growth, low-inflation and low interest rates. Over the past decade, inflation has typically been 2-3% and the base interest rate - 5-6%. There is an efficient government sector, a flexible labour market and a very competitive business sector.

Since 1992 Australia has averaged greater than 3 per cent economic growth and recorded over 17 consecutive years. This economic stability places Australia in the top echelon of developed countries in terms of sustained rates of growth.

The Australian economy is dominated by its service sector, representing 68% of Australian GDP. The agricultural and mining sectors account for 57% of the nation's exports.

The unemployment rate is very low in Australia: 5.1% in July 2010, with a continuous decrease since June 2009. The Australian market is known to be very flexible. The government has been following a "laissez-faire" policy that seems to have served the Australian economy.

Australia has a 1.8 percent average tariff rate. The government has reduced tariff and non-tariff barriers both unilaterally and through negotiated trade agreements. Foreign investment in a few “sensitive sectors” is limited. The open financial sector is highly competitive and well-developed. All banks are privately owned, and prudent regulations have allowed them to withstand the global financial turmoil with little disruption

For instance, according to the World Bank, a new business can be established in Australia within two days compared with an OECS average of 20 days. There is a minimum wage in Australia, which is determined by the category of job you fall into (executive, engineer, employee etc.). The federal minimum wage has been \$14.31 per hour and \$543 per week (before tax) since October 2008. The legal working week time is set at 38 hours and 4 weeks of paid holiday are granted per year. However, each Australian state has its own legislation.

Australia’s economic freedom score is 82, making its economy the 3rd freest in the 2014 Index. Its overall score is 0.6 point lower than last year, with a gain in investment freedom outweighed by declines in monetary freedom and labour freedom. Australia is ranked 3rd out of 42 countries in the Asia–Pacific region.

Over the 20-year history of the Index, Australia has advanced its economic freedom score by 7.9 points, one of the 10 biggest improvements among developed economies. Substantial score increases in six of the 10 economic freedoms, including business freedom, investment freedom, and freedom from corruption, have enabled Australia to achieve and sustain its economically “free” status in the Index.

With an economy that benefits from sound fundamentals including monetary stability, low public debt, and a vibrant employment market, Australia has weathered the global economic uncertainty well. Openness to global trade and investment is firmly institutionalised, supported by a relatively efficient entrepreneurial framework and a well-functioning independent judiciary. Australia has a strong tradition of reliable property rights protection, and the legal system is transparent and evenly applied. Effective anti-corruption measures are in force.

The Australian multiculturalism seems to be a strength in the workforce, as it is an opportunity to have ‘the best out of everyone’ approach, and also because it favors international commerce.

With its abundant physical resources, Australia has enjoyed a high standard of living since the nineteenth century. Australia is a major exporter of agricultural products, particularly wheat and wool, minerals such as iron-ore and gold, and energy in the forms of natural gas and coal. It has made a comparatively large investment in social infrastructure, including education, training, health and transport.

According to the Reserve Bank of Australia, Australian per capita GDP growth is higher than that of New Zealand, the US, Canada and the Netherlands. The past performance of the Australian economy has been heavily influenced by the US, Japanese and Chinese economic growth.

Anti-corruption measures generally discourage bribery of public officials. In 2013, however, a special Independent Commission Against Corruption investigated two former state ministers in New South Wales on allegations of a conspiracy to profit from mining leases. Australia's judicial system operates independently and impartially. Property rights are secure, and enforcement of contracts is reliable. Expropriation is highly unusual.

## **2. Land Tenure and Property.**

When the British took control of the continent in 1788, they deemed it terra nullius (land that was not owned). According to the British law all Australian land was the property of the Crown. In the last two decades of the eighteenth century, land grants were made to emancipated convicts, free settlers, marines, and officers. Land was available to anyone prepared to employ and feed the convicts who were assigned to it as servants. In 1825 sale of land by private tender was introduced.

Land is held as freehold (privately owned through purchase), leasehold (pastoralists and others are given special usage rights for a specified numbers of years), national parks, and Crown Land, which effectively remains under the control of the government. In 1992 a new form of rights in land was legally recognised—"native title"—as a form of continuing Aboriginal and islander connection with the land. To the extent that a system of indigenous customary law can be shown to have continued from the time of European establishment of sovereignty, these groups can make claims to their traditional lands.

Public land belongs to the Crown and includes land which is reserved, owned for public purposes, or vacant. It typically includes reserves for nature conservation, forestry, marine conservation, water conservation, mining and defence as well as vacant and other Crown land.



*Murrumbidgee Irrigation Area farming blocks.*

The first park managed by the colonial administration to be dedicated for public use in Australia was Kings Park in Perth in 1872. However, other areas such as recreation grounds managed by a board of trustees were set aside for public use prior to the declaration of Kings Park. Among these was the dedication in 1855 of 640 acres for a public recreation ground in Nowra, New South Wales and for the Prince Alfred (1865) and Macquarie Place (1866) parks in Sydney. The oldest national park in Australia, Royal National Park, at Port Hacking in New South Wales, was established in 1879. It was not until the 1950s that conservation reserves began to be systematically created in Australia.

Private land makes up the largest part of Australia and can be freehold land or Crown leasehold land, the latter normally being held on long term lease or licence.

Aboriginal land may be freehold, leasehold or Crown reserve, and made up of areas available for the use, benefit and residence by the Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people.

Of all the states and territories, South Australia has the most land dedicated to nature conservation reserves, with more than 203 700km<sup>2</sup>, or more than 20 per cent of the State.

### **3. Commercial Activities.**

Australia is a world-class provider of a range of services, such as telecommunications, travel, banking and insurance. The services sector is a significant part of the economy and represents about 70 per cent of Australia's gross domestic product (GDP) and employs four out of five Australians.

Service industries include distribution industries (wholesale trade, retail trade, accommodation, cafe's and restaurants, and transport and storage) and communication and business services (communications, finance and insurance, and property services). Other service industries are government administration and defence, education, health and community services, and cultural and recreational services.

Services also play an increasingly important role in international trade, with services exports growing by an average of 4 per cent per annum over the last decade. In 2012-13, total trade in services accounted for 18.7 per cent of Australia's total trade in goods and services, and services exports accounted for 17.4 per cent of Australia's total exports. The value of Australia's services exports is even greater once they take into account the export role of intermediate services inputs ('embodied services').

Australia's priority sectors for market opening in global services trade reform efforts include financial services, telecommunications, professional services, education, mining-related and environmental services.

In 2013-14, Australia's five largest services exports were:

- Education-related travel services – \$14.5 billion
- Recreational travel services – \$12.6 billion
- Business travel services \$4.2 billion
- Professional services – \$4.1 billion
- Technical and other business services (including architectural, engineering, surveying and scientific services) – \$3.5 billion

### **4. Trade**

Former Australian Prime Minister Kevin Rudd once described Australia to be a nation whose origins lie firmly in the west, “but whose geo-political and geo-economic circumstances are shaped in large part by the location in the east... this is the inescapable expression of the Australian condition.”

Today, Australia's economy has truly reflected this “condition”. Prior to the 1970s much of Australia's trade was held with the European and North

American markets. During this period, Australia was also considered as a relatively closed and protectionist economy. However, as key economic reforms were gradually being introduced by the Australian government, the Australian economy also started to turn its attention away from trade with the Western markets to trade within the Asia Pacific region.

This shift has turned Australia into one of the fastest growing advanced economies in the world. Australia is the 13<sup>th</sup> largest economy in the world according to nominal GDP (current prices) and the 17<sup>th</sup> largest according to GDP (PPP). In 2010, Australia's GDP (PPP) was US\$882.344 billion – a 3.94 percent increase from 2009. Australia's nominal GDP (current prices, US dollars) growth during the same period was even more amazing – GDP (current prices, US dollars) grew from US\$994.25 billion in 2009 to US\$1.219 trillion, a 22.68 percent increase.

In the past two decades, Australia has enjoyed a period of uninterrupted economic growth – an average of 3.3 percent in real GDP growth annually. Australia possesses a well-diversified economy boosted by the strength of its services and resources industries.

## **5. Australia's Economic Structure**

This has been obtained through a stable and modern institutional and regulatory structure. Australia was ranked third in the 2011 Economic Freedom Index behind Hong Kong and Singapore and continues to provide an ideal environment for business and environment.

Domestically, Australia's economy can also be characterized by an east/west divide. The eastern part of Australia is home to the majority of Australia's service and financial industries. It also contains Australia's capital city Canberra, the heart of Australia's political and economic policies. Western Australia, on the other hand, controls the majority of Australia's natural resources, including iron ore, gold, oil and natural gas.

The contrast between these two regions has often led to disagreements within the Australian government over developmental plans. Although Australia's GDP is still dominated by its service and financial industries, these industries have been struggling in recent years. On the other hand, Australia's resources and commodities industries are currently experiencing a boom period. According to Canberra-based Access Economics, growth in regions endowed with minerals and oil and gas will far outstrip growth in the country's more populous states next year. However, concerns have also been raised on whether the resource and commodities industries are too reliant on exports to China.

In 2009, China became Australia's largest export market, surpassing Japan.

Resources continue to underpin Australia's exports to China. Australia exported 266.2 million tons of iron ore to China in 2009, an increase of 45.2 percent over the same period.

China is also Australia's largest source of imports. Major imports from China include clothing, communications equipment, computers, prams, toys, games and sporting goods, furniture and televisions.



The vast scale of trade with China has seen massive investments by the Chinese companies in Australia. From 2007 to 2010, Chinese investment in Australia amounted to nearly US\$60 billion. Australia's mineral exports also grew by 55 percent to US\$139 billion in 2010 and are projected to reach US\$180 billion in 2011, thanks to China's strong economic performance. Chinese companies have also started to lease land from the Australian government to mine resources on their own.

Along with their relationship with China, Australia holds multiple free trade agreements with numerous other countries such as the US, Singapore, Chile and Thailand. Australia is also a member of numerous organisations such as APEC, the G20, WTO and OECD.

However, Australia's most notable trade partner is New Zealand. The Australia New Zealand Closer Economic Relations Trade Agreement (ANZCERTA) was enforced in 1983, building upon the 1965 New Zealand Australia Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA, not to be mistaken for the North American Free Trade Agreement). The ANZCERTA has greatly integrated both economies and there are now plans to create a single Australasian economic market by 2015.

In order of economic significance, Australia's current major trading partners include the United States, Japan, China, United Kingdom, Republic of Korea, and New Zealand. Australia is one of the world's largest exporters of wool, meat, and wheat and a major supplier of sugar, dairy products, fruits, cotton, and rice.

Major imports include passenger motor vehicles, telecommunications equipment, and crude petroleum oils.

## **6. Australia's Economic Outlook and Economic Forecast**

Spurred by robust business and consumer confidence, Australia's economy is expected to grow even quicker in the next five years. 2011 to 2015 saw Australia's GDP (PPP) grow by 4.81 to 5.09 percent annually.

Likewise, Australia's GDP (PPP) per capita is expected to experience healthy growth. In 2010, Australia's GDP (PPP) per capita was the tenth highest in the world – growing from US\$38,633.17 in 2009 to US\$39,692.06. In 2011, Australia's GDP (PPP) per capita increased by 3.52 percent to US\$41,089.17. The following four years saw fairly consistent growth in Australia's GDP (PPP) per capita, resulting in a GDP (PPP) per capita of US\$47,445.58 by the end of 2015.

However, despite Australia's strong economic growth, Australia's unemployment rate has been relatively high. In 2010, Australia's unemployment rate was 5.192 percent – 0.22 percent more than the world's average of 4.97 percent.

In an interview given before the May 2011 budget, Australia's Treasurer and Deputy Prime Minister, Wayne Swan, acknowledged that unemployment was unacceptably high in certain parts of Australia and the government was looking to create new incentives for more jobs. The May 2011 budget created

500,000 jobs in two years and was aimed at bringing unemployment rates down to 4.5 percent.

According to the unemployment rate forecast provided by the IMF, unemployment had seen a marginal decrease to 5.025 percent by the end of 2012. After which, the unemployment rate from 2013 to 2015 remained constant at 4.8 percent.

## **7. Currency**

Australia was the first country in the world to have a complete system of bank notes made from plastic (polymer). These notes provide much greater security against counterfeiting. They also last four times as long as conventional paper (fibrous) notes. The innovative technology with which Australian bank notes are produced – developed entirely in Australia – offers artists brilliant scope for the creation of images that reflect the history and natural environment of Australia. At the same time, the polymer notes are cleaner than paper notes and easily recyclable. Australia's currency comprises coins of 5, 10, 20 and 50 cent and one and two dollar denominations; and notes of 5, 10, 20, 50 and 100 dollar denominations.

### ***Australia's currency heritage***

Many forms of currency were used in the Australian colonies after the arrival of the first European settlers in 1788. In the rough early conditions barter was necessary, and payment in commodities like rum sometimes replaced money in transactions. Some of the first official notes used in Australia were Police Fund Notes, issued by the Bank of New South Wales in 1816.

After federation in 1901, when Australia became an independent nation, the federal government became responsible for the currency. The Australian Notes Act was passed in 1910. In 1913 the first series of Australian notes was issued, based on the old British system of 12 pence to a shilling, 20 shillings to a pound.

### ***Transition to the decimal system***

In 1963, Australia initiated the change to decimal currency. More than 1000 submissions were made about the name of the new currency unit. The Prime Minister Sir Robert Menzies, proposed the 'royal'. The 'dollar' was eventually chosen as the name, and decimal currency was introduced on 14 February 1966.

Shortly after the changeover, substantial counterfeiting of \$10 notes was detected. This provided an impetus for the Reserve Bank of Australia to develop new note technologies jointly with the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation.

The revolutionary polymer notes were first introduced in 1988 with the issue of a commemorative \$10 note, marking Australia's bicentenary by featuring the theme of settlement. The note depicted on one side a young Aborigine in body paint, with other elements of Aboriginal culture. On the

reverse side was the ship Supply from the First Fleet, with a background of Sydney Cove, as well as a group of people to illustrate the diverse backgrounds from which Australia has evolved over 200 years.

### ***Australia's notes***



The \$100 note features world-renowned soprano Dame Nellie Melba (1861–1931), and the distinguished soldier, engineer and administrator General Sir John Monash (1865–1931).

The \$50 note features the Aboriginal writer and inventor David Unaipon (1872–1967), and Australia's first female parliamentarian, Edith Cowan (1861–1932).

The \$20 note features the founder of the world's first aerial medical service (the Royal Flying Doctor Service), the Reverend John Flynn (1880–1951), and Mary Reibey (1777–1855), who arrived in Australia as a convict in 1792 and went on to become a successful shipping magnate and philanthropist.

The \$10 note features the poets AB 'Banjo' Paterson (1864–1941) and Dame Mary Gilmore (1865–1962). This note incorporates micro-printed excerpts of Paterson's and Gilmore's work.

The \$5 note features Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II and Parliament House in Canberra, the national capital.

Australia's banknotes are printed by Note Printing Australia, a wholly owned subsidiary of the Reserve Bank of Australia. Note Printing Australia prints polymer banknotes primarily for the the Reserve Bank of Australia and has some business with New Zealand, Singapore, Papua New Guinea and Brunei.

Along with being printed on polymer, Australia's banknotes include a range of other security features designed to combat counterfeiting.

### ***Australia's coins***



The \$2 coin, which replaced the two dollar note in 1988, depicts an Aboriginal tribal elder set against a background of the Southern Cross and native grass trees.

The \$1 coin, which replaced the \$1 note in 1984, depicts five kangaroos. The standard \$1 design, along with the 50, 20, 10 and 5 cent designs, was created by the Queen's official jeweler, Stuart Devlin.

The 50 cent coin carries Australia's coat of arms: the six state badges on a central shield supported by a kangaroo and an emu, with a background of Mitchell grass (see fact sheet on Australia's coat of arms).

The 20 cent coin carries a platypus, one of only two egg-laying mammals in the world. It has webbed feet and a duck-like bill that it uses to hunt for food along the bottom of streams and rivers.

The 10 cent coin features a male lyrebird dancing. A clever mimic, the lyrebird inhabits the dense, damp forests of Australia's eastern coast.

The 5 cent coin depicts an echidna, or spiny anteater, the world's only other egg-laying mammal.

The 5, 10, 20 and 50 cent coins are made of cupro-nickel (75percent copper and 25percent nickel). The one and two dollar coins are made of aluminium bronze (92percent copper, 6 per cent aluminium and 2 per cent nickel). The one dollar, 50 and 20 cent circulating coins occasionally feature commemorative designs.

Australia's coins are produced by the Royal Australian Mint, which is located in the nation's capital, Canberra. Since opening in 1965, the Mint has produced more than 14billion circulating coins, and has the capacity to produce more than two million coins per day, or more than 600million coins per year. The Royal Australian Mint has an international reputation for producing quality numismatic coins, and won an international award for 'Best Silver Coin 2006' for its Silver Kangaroo coin design.

Key facts:

- The Australian dollar, which divides into 100 cents, is the national currency.

- Decimal currency was introduced on 14 February 1966.

- In 1988, Australia introduced its first polymer bank note and in 1996, Australia became the first country in the world to have a complete series of polymer notes. Polymer note technology was developed by Australia, and Australia prints polymer notes for a number of other countries.

- Australia's colourful banknotes come in denominations of 5, 10, 20, 50 and 100 dollars.

## TASKS

***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

1) legal agreement which allows you to use a building, car, land, etc. for a period of time, in return for rent;

2) company or person that provides a service;

3) product that is sold to another country;

4) product that is brought from one country into another so that it can be sold there, or the business of doing this;

5) activity of buying, selling, or exchanging goods within a country or between countries;

6) things that are done to keep a person, building, or country safe from danger or crime;

7) old British coin or unit of money. There were 20 shillings in one pound;

8) system or type of money that a country uses;

9) influence that makes something happen or makes it happen more quickly;

10) company that is owned or controlled by another larger company;

11) copying something exactly in order to deceive people;

12) piece of paper money worth a particular amount of money;

- 13) place where coins are officially made;
- 14) piece of metal, usually flat and round, that is used as money;
- 15) value shown on a coin, paper money, or a stamp.

**Write down your own sentences with these words.**

**II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):**

1. Public land makes up the largest part of Australia and can be freehold land or Crown leasehold land, the latter normally being held on long term lease or licence.

2. Prior to the 1970s much of Australia's trade was held with the European and North American markets. During this period, Australia was also considered as a relatively closed and protectionist economy.

3. Domestically, Australia's economy can also be characterised by an east/west divide. The eastern part of Australia is home to the majority of Australia's service and financial industries. It also contains Australia's capital city Sydney, the heart of Australia's political and economic policies.

4. Domestically, Australia's economy can also be characterised by an east/west divide. Western Australia controls the majority of Australia's natural resources, including iron ore, gold, oil and coal.

5. China is also Australia's largest source of imports. Major imports from China include clothing, communications equipment, computers, prams, toys, games and sporting goods, furniture and televisions.

6. Along with their relationship with China, Australia holds multiple free trade agreements with numerous other countries such as the US, Singapore, Chile and France.

7. Australia is one of the world's largest exporters of wool, meat, and barley and a major supplier of sugar, dairy products, fruits, cotton, and rice.

8. Major imports include foodstuff, telecommunications equipment, and crude petroleum oils.

9. Australia was the first country in the world to have a complete system of bank notes made from plastic (polymer). These notes provide much greater security against counterfeiting. They also last ten times as long as conventional paper (fibrous) notes.

10. Many forms of currency were used in the Australian colonies after the arrival of the first European settlers in 1788. In the rough early conditions barter was necessary, and payment in commodities like wheat sometimes replaced money in transactions.

11. The revolutionary polymer notes were first introduced in 1988 with the issue of a commemorative \$10 note, marking Australia's bicentenary by featuring the theme of settlement. The note depicted on one side a young British in body paint, with other elements of British culture.

12. The \$1 coin, which replaced the \$1 note in 1984, depicts five emus. The standard \$1 design, along with the 50, 20, 10 and 5 cent designs, was created by the Queen's official jeweler, Stuart Devlin.

13. The 5 cent coin depicts a koala, or spiny anteater, the world's only other egg-laying mammal.

14. Australia's coins are produced by the Royal Australian Mint, which is located in the nation's capital, Sydney.

15. In 1988, Australia introduced its first bank note and in 1996, Australia became the first country in the world to have a complete series of bank note.

**III. Read this short text about Australia's economy. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

Australia is one of the world's richest countries. It exports 1 \_\_\_\_ to all parts of the world.

Various kinds of raw materials are produced. Many of them, however, lie in dry areas very far away from bigger cities or harbours. Workers must build 2 \_\_\_\_ to the mines, which is a reason why mining is a very expensive industry in Australia. Foreign companies come to Australia to invest money to mine raw materials.

Australia is the world's Nr. 1 in the production of 3 \_\_\_\_\_. It also produces a big quantity of coal, iron ore and nickel. Almost all of the world's valuable opals are mined in Australia. The country also has much of the world's uranium 4 \_\_\_\_\_.

About 60% of Australia is farmland, most of which is used 5 \_\_\_\_\_. Farmers can grow wheat in many parts of the country because wheat doesn't need very much rain. Other products that are produced 6 \_\_\_\_\_ in the tropical north and fruits like apples, oranges and pears in the south.

Australia is the world's largest wool producer. Most of it is exported to countries all over the world. Winemaking is a part of the economy that has been growing very quickly. Grapes grow in the southern and south eastern part of the continent and produce 7 \_\_\_\_\_.

Not many people work on Australian farms because farmers have many machines to work with. Only about 5 % of the population are farmers, but they produce almost 8 \_\_\_\_\_.

Tourism has become very important for the economy of the country. Australia offers many sights like Ayers Rock, the Great Barrier Reef or Sydney Opera House. Because it is so far away from Europe and North America, it costs a lot 9 \_\_\_\_\_.

Australia trades goods with many countries. China, Japan and other Asian countries buy Australian farm products like wheat and wool. Raw materials and minerals are also exported to European countries and to the USA. Japan is, however, Australia's biggest customer. It buys most of the coal, iron ore and bauxite it 10 \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) needs for its big industries
- B) diamonds, bauxite and lead
- C) to travel "down under"
- D) beer of excellent quality
- E) under its surface
- F) to raise cattle and sheep

- G) valuable minerals and farm products
- H) everything that the country needs
- I) wine of excellent quality
- J) railroad lines or roads
- K) include sugar cane and bananas

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

Australia's economy has been experiencing steady growth over the past decades, largely due to a mining boom in the western part of the country. Most of the nation's mineral resources are having exported to Asian countries, especially the China, which buys most of its raw materials from Australia. However, there are signs that the Australian mining boom is coming to an end.

Australia's the most valuable resources are iron ore and coal. Iron ore alone accounts for more than 50% of Australia's exports. Almost a quarter of the world's iron ore production comes from the Western Australia. Half of every dollar earned in Australia comes from the western part of the country.

The mining boom in Western Australia has also led to too an increase in population. It has risen by over 25% compared to a decade ago and has become the fastest growing region of the continent. The boom has also led to social such problems because there are far more of men coming to the region than women.

Many of the new settlers work in the mines. Foreign companies send employees in and out of the region on a their regular basis. As a result, more houses have been built and real estate prices have gone up. Land owners have profited by allowing mines on the land. People who work in Western Australia earn more than in the rest of the country, but the cost of living has also increased, making western Australia one of the most expensive regions to live in.

However, not all is well for the mining region. The every boom is dependent on global economy and as China's growth rate is sinking Australia is expected to suffer too. The price of iron ore is going down as global demand is falling.

Australia knows that the mining boom will not last forever and is being preparing for the future. It has vast oil and natural gas reserves in the north that are waiting to be exploited. Liquefied natural gas may become Australia's next big export product.

Economic critics complain that the government has been investing too much money in the mining business, while tourism and other industries lag behind. They suggest that Australia should not make its economy dependent on one sector and on a few developing countries.

In any case, the fact is that Australia has come through the global recession of the past few years almost completely undamaged.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

**Транспорт**

Загальна довжина дорожньої мережі в Австралії в 1997 році становила 803000км, але вона розподілена нерівномірно. Достатньою мірою забезпечені дорогами тільки східні, південно-східні та південно-західні

райони країни. Лише 40% усіх доріг має тверде покриття – асфальтове або бетонне. Багато доріг мало відрізняються від стежок, інші мають гравійне або пухке кам'яне покриття. У сільських і віддалених місцевостях у вологий сезон дорожнє сполучення іноді припиняється на тижні. Є кільцева дорога з твердим покриттям, що оперізує материк, і субмеридіональна дорога Дарвін – Аделаїда.

В Австралії існує національна система автомобільних доріг, фінансована федеральним урядом. Вона включає понад 1000 км доріг, якими можна користуватися безкоштовно. У 1990-х роках почалося будівництво платних доріг.

Автомобіль в Австралії можна придбати уздовж великих магістралей. Якщо купувати за приватними оголошеннями, то вартість машини вийде на 1,5-2 тисячі менше. Вартість уживаного автомобіля коливається в межах 1000-20000 AUD. Новий автомобіль – 20000-50000 AUD. Найпопулярніші марки в Австралії – Тойота, Міцубіси і Ніссан. Автомобіль в Австралії – не розкіш, а засіб пересування.

Правила дорожнього руху тут дещо простіші, аніж в Україні. Книжка з правилами маленька. Ніяких безглузких цифр запам'ятовувати не потрібно, знаків значно менше, і взагалі все простіше. Вся книжка присвячена розповідям про те, як недобре перевищувати швидкість і їздити п'яним. В місцевому ДАІ є тренувальний комп'ютер, на якому можна потренуватися відповідати на питання хоч сто разів. До речі, питань тут задають аж 45! Але можна помилитися 4 рази (хоча в деяких темах, наприклад, "знаки" можна помилитися тільки 1 раз). Обмеження за часом немає взагалі. Складаєш іспит на комп'ютері. У Австралії після здачі теорії відразу отримуєш права "учбові". З ними теж можна їздити, але тільки якщо поряд з тобою в машині сидить досвідчений водій. Вже після здачі водіння дають звичайні права або "початкові". З "початковими" потрібно їздити цілий рік і з ними є обмеження в швидкості (не більше 80 км/г) і ще на машині обов'язково повинен бути прикріплений значок "У". Здавати водіння тут складніше, ніж в Україні. Треба набрати певну кількість балів. Причому враховується все: чи подивився ти в бічне дзеркало при перебудові з ряду в ряд, чи зумів розвернутися на дорозі в три прийоми, чи не торкнувся колесом бордюру при парковці.

Біля багатьох світлофорів є спеціальні камери, які автоматично фотографують тих, що проїхали на червоне світло. Зате практично ніколи не зупиняють.

Розвиток повітряного транспорту в Австралії допоміг налагодити сполучення із зовнішнім світом і всередині країни. На внутрішніх лініях пасажирські перевезення забезпечуються головним чином авіакомпаніями "Куонтас" і "Ансетт". Крім того, міжнародними перевезеннями займалася державна компанія "Куонтас". У 1990-х роках компанії "Куонтас" і "Остреліен ерлайнз" злилися, об'єднана компанія "Куонтас" була приватизована і тепер обслуговує і внутрішні, і міжнародні рейси.



***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

**A tudomány és a technológia fejlesztése iránti elkötelezettség**

Ausztrália a régió egyik legstabilabb gazdasági, politikai és társadalmi környezetével, illetve a világ egyik legnyitottabb és leginnovatívabb gazdasággal büszkélkedhet. Gazdasága igen fejlett, több termékexportban világelső és a Föld leggazdagabb országai közé tartozik. Kereskedelmi partnerei pedig leginkább Japán, Malajzia, USA, Dél-Korea, Kína vagy az Egyesült Királyság. Az ausztrál kormány eltökélt szándéka, hogy ezt a jövőben is fenntartsa.

Míg a kezdetekben az ország legfőbb bevételi forrása a birka gyapja volt, addig a mai napokban a szén, a búza, és a drágakövek teszik ki a gazdaság bevételének legnagyobb részét. Természetesen Ausztrália fejlődése során nem elhanyagolható a turizmus, illetve a borászat sem.

Ausztráliát a világ egyik legnépszerűbb turisztikai célpontjává teszik csodálatos természeti adottságai, konyhája, borai, a vendégszerető emberek, a kedvező időjárás, valamint az ausztrál életstílus. Az említett tulajdonságok miatt Ausztrália az egyik legvonzóbb ország azok számára is, akik itt akarnak hosszútávon élni vagy üzleti tevékenységet folytatni. A turizmus Ausztrália legnagyobb és leggyorsabban növekvő iparága.

Értékük és kiváló minőségük miatt az ausztrál borok elismertek szerte a világon, sok fontos nemzetközi díjat megkaptak már, és igen sikeresen versenyeznek a lényegesen nagyobb múltra visszatekintő borkultúrák boraival is. Az ausztrál borok hírneve elsősorban a sokféle szőlőnek köszönhető. Ausztrália sokféle kedvelt borfajta hazája: megtalálható itt a testes vörösboroktól a zamatos, gyümölcsös fehéreken át a desszert- és a habzóborokig vagy a borpárlatokig sokféle bor. A díjnyertes, ausztrál palackozású borok nem hiányoznak a világ elegáns éttermeinek borkínálatából sem. A népszerű, egyféle szőlőből készült borok mellett a házasított borféleségek is megtalálhatók a szupermarketek és borszaküzletek polcain a világ mintegy 80 országában. Az innovatív ausztrál bortermelők szakértelmük miatt külföldön is keresettek.

A borkultúra részét képezi az ausztrál életmódnak, szervesen kötődik az üzleti élethez és a szabadidős tevékenységhez. Az ausztrál életmódra, életvitelre oly jellemző szabadban töltött szabadidős programokhoz erősen kapcsolódik a borfogyasztás, de az ausztrál lakosság nagy részét érintő, nagyvárosi, kozmopolita életvitelhez is.

Ausztrália legjelentősebb borvidékein a kulturális élet elképzelhetetlen borfesztiválok nélkül. Ezek az események évről évre rengeteg hazai és külföldi turistát, látogatót vonzanak. A növekvő turizmus újabb dimenziókkal járul hozzá a borászat jelentőségéhez. A külföldi és belföldi „borturisták” jelentősen járulnak hozzá az exportbevételek növeléséhez, s ezzel egyidejűleg emelik a foglalkoztatási mutatókat és az adóbevételeket.

Ausztrália elkötelezett a tekintetben is, hogy olyan innovációs kultúrát teremtsen meg, amely a lehető leghatékonyabban tudja kihasználni a hazai és a

nemzetközi információs hálózatokat, amely a kutatás minden területén bátorítja a kreativitást, elősegíti az egyetemi kutatók és az ipar közötti kutatási együttműködések, és amely közvetíti a kutatások legújabb eredményeit a szélesebb társadalmi rétegek felé.

Ausztráliát élénk és versenyképes gazdasági környezet jellemzi, magas a termelékenység és a gazdaság növekedési rátája, ami ösztönzőleg hat az innovációs készletre. Ausztrália gazdasági ereje nemcsak a hagyományos közszükségleti cikkeknek köszönhető. A világ legfejlettebb országait tömörítő szervezet – az OECD – egyik közelmúltban elkészült tanulmánya szerint Ausztrália a hat leggyorsabban növekvő, sikeres új gazdaság kereskedői között van, ami azt jelenti, hogy Ausztrália erős az ICT- (informatikai és kommunikációs technológia) infrastruktúra, az innovációs rendszerek, az üzleti környezet és az emberi erőforrás fejlesztés területén is.

Az OECD-országok között Ausztrália a harmadik, amely a GDP-jéhez viszonyítva a legtöbbet ruház be az informatikai és kommunikációs technológiába. Az Ausztrál Központi Jegybank kimutatta, hogy közvetlen kapcsolat van a jelentős ICT-beruházások és az ország erőteljes produktivitásának növekedése között. Az előrejelzések szerint az elektronikus kereskedelem bevezetése további 2.7 százalékos GDP-növekedést eredményez az ausztrál gazdaságban az elkövetkező tíz esztendőben.

Az ausztrál kis- és középvállalatok több mint 50 százaléka B2B (közvetlen, vállalkozások közötti) elektronikus kereskedelmet folytat az interneten. A lakosság mintegy harmada használja az internetes banki szolgáltatásokat. Az elektronikus államigazgatás (e-kormányzás) elterjedt az országban, s az ausztrálok egyharmada élt már az online közszolgáltatások lehetőségével.

Az ország gazdasági sikerei sokban hozzájárultak ahhoz, hogy az ausztrálok a legboldogabbak, míg az új-zélandiak a legegészségesebbek. Mindez, az OECD Better Life Index 2013-as adataiból derül ki, melynek célja az, hogy a GDP-n túl számos egyéb tényező figyelembe vételével vizsgálja az egyes országok jóllétének mértékét. Ausztrália fővárosa, Canberra a világ legélhetőbb helye a Gazdasági Együttműködési és Fejlesztési Szervezet felmérése szerint. Az OECD 34 tagállama 362 térségének tüzetes elemzése után jutott erre a döntésre. Míg Canberra a térségek sorrendjében végzett az első helyen, Ausztrália az országlistán került az élre, megelőzve Norvégiát. A világszervezet kilenc jóléti szempontot vizsgált a rangsor felállításához, köztük a jövedelmeket, a munkalehetőségeket, a közbiztonságot, az egészségügyi ellátást és a környezetvédelmet.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about trade and currency in Australia.***

***VIII. Compare Australia's economic structure with that of your country.***

## IX. POLITICAL LIFE

The Australian system of government has its beginnings in two great democratic traditions. Following British settlement in 1788, the Westminster model was used as the basis of government in the six separate colonies established across the continent in the 19th century. When those colonies met to discuss the formation of a national government in 1890 they opted for a relationship between the national and state governments similar to that of the United States. At the same time they opted to retain the Westminster model as the basis for the legislature, the executive government and the judiciary at the national and state level. The American tradition is expressed through a written constitution defining the powers of the national government. Australia was declared a federation in 1901 with the concurrence of the British Parliament, and now has a Federal Government, six State Governments and two Territories which are largely self-governing.

### 1. Constitution

Like the United States and unlike Britain, Australia has a written constitution. The Australian Constitution defines the responsibilities of the federal government, which include foreign relations, trade, defence and immigration. Governments of states and territories are responsible for all matters not assigned to the Commonwealth, and they too adhere to the principles of responsible government. In the states, the Queen is represented by a Governor for each state.

This document, drawn up in constitutional conventions in the 1890s and ratified at referenda in all six colonies, reserves for the Federal Government power over defence, foreign affairs, trade and commerce, taxation, customs and excise duties, pensions, immigration and postal services. Other powers are left with the States, but federal law prevails if there is a conflict over concurrent powers. The Federal Government also has the power to ensure observance at the state level of Australia's international treaty obligations. The Constitution vests the executive powers of government in a Governor-General representing Queen Elizabeth II of England (also the Queen of Australia), but they are exercised by tradition on behalf of the elected government. Only once, in 1975, has the Governor-General dismissed an elected national government.

The Australian Constitution can be amended only with the approval of the electorate through a national referendum in which all adults on the electoral roll must participate. A bill containing the amendment must first be passed by both houses of parliament or, in certain limited circumstances, by only one house of parliament. Any constitutional changes must be approved by a double majority—a national majority of electors as well as a majority of electors in a majority of the states (at least four of the six). Where any state or states are particularly affected by the subject of the referendum, a majority of voters in those states must also agree to the change. This is often referred to as the 'triple

majority' rule. The double majority provision makes alterations to the Constitution difficult. Since federation in 1901, only eight out of 44 proposals to amend the Constitution have been approved. Voters are generally reluctant to support what they perceive as increases in the power of the federal government. States and territories may also hold referendums.

### ***Parliamentary sovereignty***

The Australian Constitution sets out the powers of government in three separate chapters—the legislature, the executive and the judiciary—but insists that members of the legislature must also be members of the executive. In practice, parliament delegates wide regulatory powers to the executive.

Government is formed in the House of Representatives by the party able to command a majority in that chamber.

Minority parties often hold the balance of power in the Senate, which serves as a chamber of review for the decisions of the government. Senators are elected for six-year terms, and in an ordinary general election only half the senators face the voters.

In all Australian parliaments questions can be asked without notice, and there is a strict alternation between government and Opposition questions to ministers during Question Time. The Opposition uses its questions to pursue the government. Government members give ministers a chance to put government policies and actions in a favourable light, or to pursue the Opposition.

Anything said in parliament can be reported fairly and accurately without fear of a suit for defamation. The rough-and-tumble of parliamentary Question Time and debates is broadcast and widely reported. This has helped to establish Australia's reputation for robust public debate, and serves as an informal check on executive power.

### ***Frequent elections***

A national general election must be held within three years of the first meeting of a new federal parliament. The average life of parliaments is about two-and-a-half years. In practice, general elections are held when the Governor-General agrees to a request from the Prime Minister, who selects the date of the election.

The governing party has changed about every five years on average since federation in 1901, but length of hold on government has varied greatly. The Liberal Party led a coalition with the longest hold on government—23 years—from 1949 to 1972. Prior to World War II, several governments lasted less than a year, but since 1945 there have been only seven changes of government.

### ***Voting***

For all citizens over the age of 18 it is compulsory to vote in the election of both federal and state governments, and failure to do so may result in a fine or prosecution.

## ***Parties***

Relative to some other countries, Australia's political parties and their internal operations are comparatively unregulated, but internal party discipline is extremely tight. There is an official system of party registration and reporting of some party activities through the Australian Electoral Commission and its state and territory equivalents.

Australia has four main political parties. The Australian Labor Party (ALP) is a social democratic party founded by the Australian labour movement. The ALP has governed since late 2007. The Liberal Party is a party of the centre right. The National Party of Australia, formerly the Country Party, is a conservative party representing rural interests. The Australian Greens is a left-wing and environmentalist party.

Australia's major political parties have structured ways to involve their members in developing party policy on issues. Elected politicians rarely vote against their parties in parliament.

Although Australian commentators observe that elections have become more 'presidential' in the sense that some American campaign methods are used, the basic structure of the Australian system tends to emphasize policy stances rather than the character of individual politicians.

As in other democracies, the cost of election campaigns and the source of funds for political activity are issues in Australia. Since 1984, a system of public funding (administered by the Australian Electoral Commission) and disclosure for election campaigns has been in place. Parties must receive at least 4 per cent of the valid vote in the elections they contest to receive this public funding.

Parties must disclose campaign expenditures and sources of donations above a specified threshold. Individual candidates must also disclose sources of donations above a certain threshold. Parties and individuals contesting non-consecutive elections must disclose gifts and donations received between the campaigns.

## ***Relations between levels of government***

State parliaments are subject to the national Constitution as well as their state constitutions. A federal law overrides any state law not consistent with it. In practice, the two levels of government cooperate in many areas where states and territories are formally responsible, such as education, transport, health and law enforcement. Income tax is levied federally, and debate between the levels of governments about access to revenue and duplication of expenditure functions is a perennial feature of Australian politics. Local government bodies are created by legislation at the state and territory level.

The Council of Australian Governments (COAG) is a forum to initiate, develop and implement national policy reforms requiring cooperative action between the three levels of government: national, state or territory, and local. Its objectives include dealing with major issues by cooperating on structural reform of government and on reforms to achieve an integrated, efficient national economy and a single national market.

COAG comprises the prime minister, state premiers, chief ministers of the territories, and the president of the Australian Local Government Association.

In addition, ministerial councils (comprising national, state and territory ministers, and, where relevant, representatives of local government and of the governments of New Zealand and Papua New Guinea) meet regularly to develop and implement inter-governmental action in specific policy areas.

### ***Key facts***

- The Commonwealth of Australia was created in 1901 when the former British colonies—now Australia's six states—agreed to federate.

- Although Australia is a fully independent parliamentary democracy, Queen Elizabeth II of the United Kingdom is also formally the Queen of Australia.

- All citizens over the age of 18 must vote in both federal and state government elections.

## **2. The Federal Government and Parliament.**

Australia has a federal system of government with a national parliament and legislative assemblies and councils (parliaments) in each state and territory (there is no Legislative Council in Queensland, the Northern Territory, the ACT or Norfolk Island). Under the Constitution the federal government has responsibility for foreign relations, trade, defence and immigration. State government responsibilities include justice, consumer affairs, health, education, forestry, public transport and main roads. A variety of electoral systems are used for these parliaments.

The form of government at the national level corresponds largely with the British democratic tradition. The federal legislature consists of a House of Representatives and a Senate.

The House of Representatives has 150 members, each representing a different area of the country ('electorate'). Each electorate has roughly the same number of registered voters within its boundary, meaning that states with larger populations have more electorates and therefore more representatives in the House.

The Senate is composed of 76 members. Unlike the House of Representatives, membership of the Senate is divided evenly between the states. Each state has 12 senators, and the Northern Territory and the Australian Capital Territory have 2 senators each. The Senate was established this way to ensure that the larger states could not use their majority in the House of Representatives to pass laws that disadvantaged the smaller states.

The party with the majority in the House of Representatives provides a ministry from its members in the House of Representatives and the Senate, with the Prime Minister traditionally coming from the House of Representatives. Membership in the House of Representatives is divided between two major groupings, the Australian Labor Party and a coalition of the Liberal Party and the rural-based National Party. Elections must be held every three years, but may be held more frequently with the consent of the Governor-General.

The Senate is more diverse in its membership. The two major groupings provide the majority of members. However, the Australian Democrats, and recently other minor parties, have held the balance of power for most of the past 20 years. If the Government fails to command a majority in the House of Representatives it must ask the Governor-General to authorise an election or resign. It need not, however, command a majority in the Senate. Senators are generally elected for six-year terms.

Each Minister of State is responsible to Parliament for the operation of a department, in some cases jointly with other ministers. The amalgamation of departments in the past decade has resulted in the assignment of responsibilities in the larger departments to a portfolio minister, assisted by one or more ministers within the same portfolio. There are many statutory agencies, corporations, tribunals and commissions in the federal public sector, all responsible to particular ministers.

Australia is one of the few countries to adopt compulsory voting at the national and state level and to have a permanent electoral commission charged with overseeing fair elections and regular redistribution of the boundaries of electorates for the House of Representatives. This ensures, as nearly as practicable, the same number of electors in each electorate. The Australian Electoral Commission also administers public funding provisions for registered political parties and eligible independents.

### ***Changes in Immigration Policy***

John Howard won a third term in November 2001, primarily as the result of his tough policy against illegal immigration. This policy has also brought him considerable criticism: refugees attempting to enter Australia—most of them from Afghanistan, Iran, and Iraq and numbering about 5,000 annually—have been imprisoned in bleak detention camps and subjected to a lengthy immigration process. Asylum-seekers have staged riots and hunger strikes. Howard has also dealt with refugees through the “Pacific solution,” which reroutes boat people from Australian shores to camps in Papua New Guinea and Nauru. In 2004, however, the government began easing its policies on immigration.

### ***Australia on the International Stage as Peacekeeper***

Prime Minister Howard sent 2,000 Australian troops to fight alongside American and British troops in the 2003 Iraq war, despite strong opposition among Australians.

In July 2003, Australia successfully restored order to the Solomon Islands, which had descended into lawlessness during a brutal civil war.

Australian citizens have been the victims of two significant terrorist attacks in recent years: the 2002 Bali, Indonesia, bombings by a group with ties to al-Qaeda in which 202 died, many of whom were Australian, and the 2004 attack on the Australian embassy in Indonesia, which killed ten.

In October 2004, Howard won a fourth term as prime minister. When rival security forces in East Timor began fighting each other in 2006, Australia sent 3,000 peacekeeping troops to stem the violence. Howard was defeated by the Labor Party's Kevin Rudd in elections in November 2007. Rudd campaigned on a platform for change, and promised to focus on the environment, education, and healthcare. Observers predicted Rudd would maintain a close relationship with the United States. The military began withdrawing Australia's 550 troops from Iraq in June 2008, following through on a promise made by Rudd.

The worst wildfires in Australian history killed at least 181 people in the state of Victoria, injured more than a hundred, and destroyed more than 900 houses in February 2009. At least one of the fires was determined to be the work of arsonists. Australian officials were criticised for failing to evacuate those in danger. A government inquiry was requested to research the state's response to the fires.

### ***Australia Elects Its First Female Prime Minister***

Rudd's popularity plummeted in May 2010, largely because he shelved his environmental policy that centered on an emissions-trading system. In June, the Labor Party ousted him as its leader and elected his deputy, Julia Gillard. She became Australia's first female prime minister in June and promptly called for elections, which were held in August. They resulted in a hung parliament, with neither the incumbent Labor Party nor the conservative Liberal-National coalition, led by Tony Abbott, taking a majority of seats. It is the country's first hung parliament in 70 years. After several weeks of attempting to woo members of parliament to her side, Gillard succeeded in early September, when two independents backed her. It was enough to give her the slimmest majority: 76 out of 150 seats.

### ***U.S. Establishes Military Presence***

November 2011 saw Barack Obama in Canberra where he announced a new American military presence near the port city of Darwin, "Australia's Pearl Harbor." Marines will be gradually deployed over the coming years, to a total strength of 2,500. Mr. Obama's speech established his commitment to "a larger and long-term role" in shaping the region, which will include providing humanitarian relief and responding to security issues in Southeast Asia and the South China Sea.

### ***Gillard Resigns after Losing Party Leadership***

On June 26, 2013, Prime Minister Julia Gillard resigned after being ousted as Labor Party leader in a party vote. Former Prime Minister Kevin Rudd replaced her as party leader and, the following day, replaced her as prime minister. It was a dramatic turn of events and ironic because it was Gillard who replaced Rudd as Labor Party leader in 2010.

Gillard called the vote in late June to avoid a challenge from Rudd and his supporters. Rudd's support was steadily growing due to the party's recent poor



poll results under Gillard's leadership. The polls were predicting terrible losses for the Labor Party in upcoming elections. During a news conference after the vote, Gillard said, "I am pleased that in this environment, which wasn't easy, I have prevailed to ensure that this country is made stronger, and smarter, and fairer for the future." Gillard also said that it was a privilege to serve as Australia's first female prime minister.

### ***Abbott Named Prime Minister***

In the September 2013 federal elections, the incumbent Labor Party, led by Prime Minister Kevin Rudd was defeated by the Liberal/National Coalition opposition. The Liberal/National Coalition was led by Tony Abbott of the Liberal Party of Australia. A Member of Parliament since 1994, Abbott was sworn in as prime minister on September 18, 2013.

On January 28, 2014, Peter Cosgrove was named to succeed Governor-General Quentin Bryce. A retired Army officer, Cosgrove served as Chief of the Defence Force from July 2002 to July 2005.

### **3. State and Local Government**

There are six states in Australia: New South Wales (NSW), Queensland (Qld), South Australia (SA), Tasmania (Tas.), Victoria (Vic.) and Western Australia (WA). Each state has its own state Constitution, which divides the state's government into the same divisions of legislature, executive, and judiciary as the Australian Government. The six state parliaments are permitted to pass laws related to any matter that is not controlled by the Commonwealth under Section 51 of the Australian Constitution. The monarch's powers over state matters are exercised by a Governor in each state. The head of each state government is known as the Premier.

State governments have basically similar institutions to their federal counterpart. Each has its own Governor with powers similar to those of the Governor-General, also exercised on the advice of the Government. Each has an upper and lower House of Parliament, except for Queensland which has only one House. All operate on the British system of cabinet government. The Northern Territory and the Australian Capital Territory also have their own governments and legislatures, but their powers are less than those of state governments.

In the years since federation, increasing powers have been transferred to the Federal Government or shared between the States and the Federal Government. The taxing power, passed to the Federal Government more than 65 years ago, has generated regular consultations on the distribution of revenue and other matters between the Federal and State Governments. Councils and conferences of ministers are frequent and cover agriculture, education, housing, employment, minerals and energy, transport and legal matters. Commissions have also been set up to advise on the allocation of federal grants to the States in such areas as education and road construction.

There are ten Australian territories outside the borders of the states. Two mainland territories, The Australian Capital Territory (ACT) and The Northern Territory (NT) and one offshore territory, Norfolk Island, have been granted a limited right of self-government by the Australian Government. In these territories, a range of governmental matters are now handled by a locally-elected parliament.

Outside of government, the ACT and the NT are often treated like states because of their significant population sizes.

Seven territories are governed only by Commonwealth law, usually through an Australian Government-appointed Administrator. They are: Ashmore and Cartier Islands, Australian Antarctic Territory, Christmas Island, Cocos (Keeling) Islands, Coral Sea Islands, Jervis Bay Territory, Territory of Heard Island and McDonald Islands.

Canberra, located in the Australian Capital Territory, is Australia's national capital. The Parliament of Australia is located in Canberra, as is most of the Australian Government public service.

The other state and territory capital cities are: Adelaide (South Australia), Brisbane (Queensland), Darwin (the Northern Territory), Hobart (Tasmania), Melbourne (Victoria), Perth (Western Australia), Sydney (New South Wales).

If the laws of a state ever conflict with the laws of the Australian Government, the Constitution says that Commonwealth law is to be followed. The Australian Government judiciary may also have the power to review decisions by a state judiciary.

The Council of Australian Governments representing the Federal Government and the heads of all States and Territories has taken a number of initiatives to rationalise intergovernmental decision making since its formation in 1992 as a forum for ongoing discussions on national matters. It has endorsed strategies on ecologically sustainable development and greenhouse gas emissions.

The six States contain more than 850 local government areas. They are controlled by elected councils and are regulated by state Acts of Parliament. Responsibility for administering local amenities such as roads, water supply, sewerage and electricity often lies with statutory authorities established by State Governments.

Finance for their activities is increasingly obtained through grants from the Federal and State Governments.

#### **4. Legal System**

The Australian legal system is based on a fundamental belief in the rule of law, justice and the independence of the judiciary. All people—Australians and non-Australians alike—are treated equally before the law and safeguards exist to ensure that people are not treated arbitrarily or unfairly by governments or officials.

Principles such as procedural fairness, judicial precedent and the separation of powers are fundamental to Australia's legal system.

The common law system, as developed in the United Kingdom, forms the basis of Australian jurisprudence. It is distinct from the civil law systems that operate in Europe, South America and Japan, which are derived from Roman law. Other countries that employ variations of the common law system are the United States, Canada, New Zealand, Malaysia and India.

The chief feature of the common law system is that judges' decisions in pending cases are informed by the decisions of previously settled cases.

The Australian Constitution of 1901 established a federal system of government, under which powers are distributed between the federal government and the states. It defined exclusive powers (investing the federal government with the exclusive power to make laws on matters such as trade and commerce, taxation, defence, external affairs, and immigration and citizenship) and concurrent powers (where both tiers of government are able to enact laws). The states and territories have independent legislative power in all matters not specifically assigned to the federal government. Where there is any inconsistency between federal and state or territory laws, federal laws prevail. Federal laws apply to the whole of Australia.

In effect, Australia has nine legal systems—the eight state and territory systems and one federal system. However, it is the state and territory criminal laws that mainly affect the day-to-day lives of most Australians.

Each of the federal and state systems incorporates three separate branches of government—legislative, executive and judicial. Parliaments make the laws, the executive government administers the laws, and the judiciary independently interprets and applies them.

### ***The courts***

The High Court of Australia interprets and applies the law of Australia, decides cases of special federal significance, including challenges to the constitutional validity of laws, and hears appeals (by special leave) from the federal, state and territory courts. The High Court has a Chief Justice and six other judges who can preside either individually or together. It is the highest court of appeal on all matters, whether decided in the federal or state jurisdictions.

The other federal courts are the Federal Court of Australia, the Family Court of Australia and the Federal Magistrates Court of Australia. Under the Constitution, state and territory courts may be invested with federal jurisdiction.

The Federal Court's jurisdiction is broad, covering almost all civil matters arising under Australian federal law and some summary criminal matters. The court also has substantial and diverse appellate jurisdiction, including over the decisions of single judges of the Federal Court and the Federal Magistrates Court (in non-family-law matters) and some decisions of the state and territory courts.

The Family Court is Australia's superior court in family law. Through its specialist judges and staff, the court helps to resolve complex family disputes. It also covers specialized areas such as cases relating to the Hague Convention on

International Child Abductions (which came into force in Australia in December 1998) and the international relocation of children by parents or guardians.

The Federal Magistrates Court was established by the federal parliament in 1999 and conducted its first sittings in July 2000. Its jurisdiction includes family law, bankruptcy, unlawful discrimination, consumer protection and trade practices, privacy, migration, copyright and industrial law. Nearly its entire jurisdiction is shared with the Family Court or the Federal Court.

Australian state and territory courts have jurisdiction in all matters brought under state or territory laws. They also handle some matters arising under federal laws, where jurisdiction has been conferred by the federal parliament. State and territory courts deal with most criminal matters, whether arising under federal, state or territory law.

Each state and territory court system operates independently. All states have supreme courts and some also have courts of criminal appeal, which are the highest appellate courts at the state level. Courts known as 'district' or 'county' courts hear the more serious cases, with a judge presiding over the court to interpret and determine the law. For more serious charges it is usual for a jury (usually of 12 people) to determine the guilt or innocence of defendants. Serious offences such as murder, rape and armed robbery are usually tried in a higher court.

Lesser offences are dealt with in lower courts, known as local or magistrates courts (or courts of petty sessions), where magistrates determine the guilt or innocence of defendants.

In all cases, defendants are considered to be innocent until proven guilty beyond all reasonable doubt. There is no death penalty in Australia.

### ***Legal aid and representation***

Australian governments recognise that access to legal representation is an important element in ensuring justice for all. They provide some legal aid for people assessed as being least able to afford to cover the costs of a court appearance.

The federal Attorney-General's Department is responsible for administering funding for the provision of legal aid services for federal law matters through legal aid commissions, administering a Community Legal Services Program and managing legal aid services for Indigenous Australians.

State and territory governments fund legal aid services for cases being tried under state and territory law. There are eight independent legal aid commissions, one in each of the states and territories, with a total budget of around \$400 million. Funding is provided by the federal government and state and territory governments. Other revenue comes from interest earnings, contributions and fees.

### **Investigating complaints and reviewing administrative decisions**

Specific agencies also exist to protect the legal and administrative rights of all people in Australia, including the Commonwealth Ombudsman, the Migration Review Tribunal, the Refugee Review Tribunal, the Administrative Appeals.

### ***Tribunal and the Human Rights and Equal Opportunity Commission***

The position of Commonwealth Ombudsman was created in 1977 to consider and investigate complaints from people who believe they have been treated unfairly or unreasonably by a federal government department or agency. The ombudsman cannot override decisions made by agencies or issue directions to agency staff. Instead, the ombudsman resolves disputes through consultation and negotiation and, if necessary, by making formal recommendations to the most senior levels of government.

There is also an ombudsman in Western Australia (appointed in 1971), Victoria (1972), Queensland (1974) and New South Wales (1974). The Commonwealth Ombudsman acts as the ombudsman for the Australian Capital Territory.

Two separate tribunals provide independent and final merits reviews of decisions made about visas to enter or stay in Australia. The Migration Review Tribunal reviews decisions made about general visas (including visitor, student, partner, family, business and skilled). The Refugee Review Tribunal deals with decisions regarding protection (refugee) visas.

The Administrative Appeals Tribunal began operations in July 1976 and is part of the federal Attorney-General's portfolio. It is an independent body that conducts merits reviews of a wide range of administrative decisions made by other tribunals and by federal government ministers, officials and authorities. The Administrative Appeals Tribunal has jurisdiction to review decisions made under more than 400 separate Acts and legislative instruments.

The Human Rights and Equal Opportunity Commission was established in 1986 as an independent statutory organisation reporting to the federal parliament through the Attorney-General. Its goals are to foster understanding about, and protection of, human rights in Australia and to address human rights concerns. Its functions include resolving complaints of discrimination or breaches of human rights under federal law and holding public inquiries into human rights issues of national importance.

### ***Law enforcement and police***

The police in Australia are responsible for keeping peace and order in the community and bringing before the court people they believe have broken the law. Although police officers may arrest people and give evidence in court, they do not decide whether or not people are guilty of crimes. This is the responsibility of the courts.

Australia has a national police force—the Australian Federal Police—that investigates offences against federal laws, including drug trafficking, illegal immigration, crimes against national security and crimes against the environment.

All states of Australia and the Northern Territory have their own police forces that deal with crimes under state or territory laws. Policing in the Australian Capital Territory is handled by the Australian Federal Police.

### ***Australian Crime Commission***

The Australian Crime Commission was established in January 2003 (replacing the National Crime Authority) as an independent statutory body to work nationally with federal, state and territory agencies, principally to counter serious and organised crime. It brings together all arms of Australian intelligence gathering and law enforcement to coordinate the fight against major crime.

International legal cooperation and treaties.

Australia seeks to promote international cooperation in the legal sector. The federal government established the International Legal Services Advisory Council in 1990 to promote the globalisation of legal services. The council seeks to promote understanding of different countries' laws, legal systems and legal institutions, particularly in the areas of trade, business and international law. It also contributes to the development of legal institutions, education and training, and legal interchanges and contacts.

Combating transnational crime and terrorism is also a high priority for Australia, and extradition and mutual assistance are key tools in that fight. International cooperation ensures that criminals cannot evade justice simply by crossing borders. Australia has formal extradition arrangements with more than 120 countries.

Australia is a party to an extensive range of treaties, which are the formal instruments of international law. Australia is currently a signatory to agreements on a wide and expanding range of matters, including with respect to postal, shipping, social security and health arrangements, defence and security, nuclear non-proliferation, the environment, civil aviation, maritime delimitation and technological exchanges, and agreements designed to establish universal standards for the treatment of civilians in times of war. Australia has been heavily involved in international measures to outlaw the use of weapons of mass destruction. Australia has also been actively engaged in work on aspects of the law of the sea and the international trading system.

### ***Key facts***

- All people – Australians and non-Australians – are treated equally before the law.
- The Australian legal system is based on the concept of the rule of law.
- In all cases, defendants are considered to be innocent until proven guilty beyond all reasonable doubt.
- Laws are made by the federal and state parliaments, while an independent judiciary interprets and applies them.
- People who cannot afford legal representation may be given legal aid, subject to a means test and certain other conditions.
- Independent Australian agencies safeguard legal and administrative rights.

## 5. Military Activity

The defense forces operate according to three basic priorities: defeating attacks from outside the country, defending the nation's regional interests, and supporting a global security environment that discourages international aggression. Australia has a volunteer army reserve but no national service requirement. There is a navy, an army, and an air force. Twelve percent of regular service positions are held by women.

The nation's strategic stance is broadly defensive, with the expectation that armed force will be used only to defend national interests. The Defence Force has been called on frequently, to assist in international security and humanitarian crises in the Middle East, Namibia, and Cambodia as well as in humanitarian crises in Somalia and Rwanda. The most recent military activity has been peacekeeping in East Timor. The Defence Force also has played a key role in responding to major floods and fires, and its services are called on in search and rescue missions.

### *Formation*



*The ADF Tri-Service Flag*

Australia has maintained military forces since federation as a nation in January 1901. Shortly after Federation, the Australian Government established the Australian Army and Commonwealth Naval Force by amalgamating the forces each of the states had maintained. In 1911, the Government established the Royal Australian Navy, which absorbed the Commonwealth Naval Force. The Army established the Australian Flying Corps in 1912 although this separated to form the Royal Australian Air Force in 1921. The services were not linked by a single chain of command, as they each reported to their own separate Minister and had separate administrative arrangements. The three services saw action around the world during World War I and World War II, and took part in conflicts in Asia during the Cold War.

The importance of 'joint' warfare was made clear to the Australian military during World War II when Australian naval, ground and air units frequently served as part of single commands. Following the war, several senior officers lobbied for the appointment of a commander in chief of the three services. The government rejected this proposal and the three services remained fully independent. The absence of a central authority resulted in poor co-ordination between the services, with each service organising and operating on the basis of a different military doctrine. The need for an integrated command structure received more emphasis as a result of the inefficient arrangements which at times hindered the military's efforts during the Vietnam War. In 1973, the Secretary of the Department of Defence, Arthur Tange, submitted a report to the

Government that recommended the unification of the separate departments supporting each service into a single Department of Defence and the creation of the post of Chief of the Defence Force Staff. The government accepted these recommendations and the Australian Defence Force was established on 9 February 1976.

### *Defence of Australia Era*



*Australian soldiers lead a column of American troops during Exercise Kangaroo '89, which was held in northern Australia.*

Until the 1970s, Australia's military strategy centred on the concept of 'forward defence', in which the role of the Australian military was to cooperate with allied forces to counter threats in Australia's region. In 1969, when the United States began the Guam Doctrine and the British withdrew 'east of Suez', Australia developed a defence policy emphasising self-reliance of the Australian continent. This was known as the Defence of Australia Policy. Under this policy, the focus of Australian defence planning was to protect Australia's northern maritime approaches (the sea-air gap) against enemy attack. In line with this goal, the ADF was restructured to increase its ability to strike at enemy forces from Australian bases and to counter raids on continental Australia. The ADF achieved this by increasing the capabilities of the RAN and RAAF and relocating regular Army units to northern Australia. At this time, the ADF had no military units on operational deployment outside Australia. In 1987, the ADF made its first operational deployment as part of Operation Morris Dance, in which several warships and a rifle company deployed to the waters off Fiji in response to the 1987 Fijian coups d'état. While broadly successful, this deployment highlighted the need for the ADF to improve its capability to rapidly respond to unforeseen events. Since the late 1980s, the Government has increasingly called upon the ADF to contribute forces to peacekeeping missions around the world. While most of these deployments involved only small numbers of specialists, several led to the deployment of hundreds of personnel. Large peacekeeping deployments were made to Namibia in early 1989, Cambodia between 1992 and 1993, Somalia in 1993, Rwanda between 1994 and 1995 and Bougainville in 1994 and from 1997 onwards. The Australian contribution to the 1991 Gulf War was the first time Australian personnel were deployed to an active war zone since the establishment of the ADF. Although the warships and clearance diving team deployed to the Persian Gulf did not see combat, the deployment tested the ADF's capabilities and command structure. Following the war the Navy regularly deployed a frigate to the Persian Gulf or Red Sea to enforce the trade sanctions imposed on Iraq.



## ***Current structure***



*The ADF headquarters and the main offices of the Department of Defence are located in the Russell Offices complex in Canberra*

The Australian Defence Force, Department of Defence and Defence Materiel Organization (DMO) make up the Australian Defence Organisation (ADO), which is often referred to as 'Defence'. A diarchy of the Chief of the Defence Force (CDF) and the Secretary of the Department of Defence administers the ADO. The ADF is the military component of the ADO and consists of the Royal Australian Navy (RAN), the Australian Army and the Royal Australian Air Force (RAAF).

The Department of Defence is staffed by both civilian and military personnel and includes agencies such as the DMO, Defence Intelligence Organisation (DIO) and Defence Science and Technology Organisation (DSTO). The DMO purchases and maintains defence equipment. The DSTO provides science and technology support to the defence forces.

### ***Royal Australian Navy***

The Royal Australian Navy (RAN) is the naval branch of the Australian Defence Force. The RAN operates 74 vessels of all sizes, including frigates, submarines, patrol boats and auxiliary ships. The RAN is one of the most modern navies in the Pacific and is responsible for defending Australian waters and undertaking operations in distant locations. There are two parts to the RAN's structure. One is an operational command, Fleet Command, and the other is a support command, Navy Strategic Command. The Navy's assets are administered by four 'forces' which report to the Commander Australian Fleet. These are the Fleet Air Arm, the Mine Warfare, Clearance Diving, Hydrographic, Meteorological and Patrol Force, Submarine Force and Surface Force. All naval bases across Australia also report to the Commander Australian Fleet.

### ***Australian Army***

The Australian Army is Australia's military land force. While the Australian Army is principally a light infantry force, it is currently being 'hardened and networked' and expanded to enable it to conduct higher-intensity operations. The Army is organized into three main elements which report to the Chief of Army; the Headquarters of the 1st Division, Special Operations Command and Forces Command. Headquarters 1st Division is responsible for high-level training activities and is capable of being deployed to command large scale ground operations. It does not have any combat units permanently assigned to it, though it commands units during training activities and the Land Combat Readiness Centre reports to the divisional headquarters. Most of the Army's units report to Forces Command, which is responsible for overseeing their

readiness and preparing them for operations. Special Operations Command is responsible for preparing the ADF's special forces units for operational deployments. This organisation came into effect during January 2011; before this time the Army's three regular brigades were permanently assigned to the Headquarters 1st Division.

The Australian Army's main combat forces are grouped in brigades. These comprise a mechanized brigade—1st Brigade, a light infantry brigade—3rd Brigade, a motorised brigade—7th Brigade, six Army Reserve brigades, an aviation brigade (16th Brigade), a combat support and ISTAR brigade (6th Brigade) and a logistics brigade (the 17th Brigade). The Army's main tactical formations are battle groups formed around the headquarters of a battalion-sized formation. Special Operations Command (SOC) commands the ADF's special forces units. It comprises the Special Air Service Regiment, two commando regiments, the Special Operations Engineer Regiment and signals, logistics and training units. The Army's special forces units have been expanded since 2001 and are well equipped and capable of being deployed by sea, air or land. It currently comprises approximately 2,200 personnel.

### ***Royal Australian Air Force***

The Royal Australian Air Force (RAAF) is the air force branch of the ADF. The RAAF has modern combat and transport aircraft and a network of bases in strategic locations across Australia.

Unlike the other services, the RAAF has only a single operational command, RAAF Air Command, which includes the Air Force Training Group. RAAF Air Command is the operational arm of the RAAF and also consists of the Air Combat Group, Air Lift Group, Surveillance and Response Group, Combat Support Group and Aerospace Operational Support Group. Each group consists of a number of wings. The RAAF has eighteen flying squadrons; four combat squadrons, two maritime patrol squadrons, five transport squadrons, six training squadrons (including three Operational Conversion Units and a forward air control training squadron) and one Airborne Early Warning & Control squadron. The Air Force also includes a single independent flight (No. 5 Flight). A large number of ground support units support these flying squadrons, including three expeditionary combat support squadrons, two airfield defence squadrons and communications, radar and medical units.

### ***Personnel***



*Personnel from the Army's 16th Air Defence Regiment with one of the unit's RBS 70 systems*

The Australian military has been an all-volunteer force since the abolition of conscription in 1972. Both women and men can enlist in the ADF, although there are some restrictions on the

positions that women may fill. In general, only Australian citizens can enlist in the ADF though permanent residents are accepted in "exceptional circumstances". The minimum age for recruits is 17 and the retirement age is 60 for permanent personnel and 65 for reservists.

### ***Ethnic composition***

A high percentage of ADF personnel are drawn from the Anglo-Celtic portion of Australia's population. In 2007 the proportion of ADF personnel born in Australia and the other predominately Anglo-Celtic countries was higher than this population group's share of both the Australian workforce and overall population. As a result, analyst Mark Thomson argues that the ADF is unrepresentative of Australia's society in this regards and that recruiting more personnel from other ethnic backgrounds would improve the ADF's language skills and cultural empathy. The ADF is developing a new advertising campaign to attract recruits from non-Anglo-Celtic backgrounds.

The ADO is currently seeking to expand the number of Indigenous Australians it recruits and improve their retention rate. Restrictions on Indigenous Australians' ability to enlist in the military existed until the 1970s, though hundreds of Indigenous men and women had joined the military when restrictions were reduced during the world wars. By 1992 the representation of Indigenous Australians in the ADF was equivalent to their proportion of the Australian population, though they continue to be under-represented among the officer corps. Two of the Army's three Regional Force Surveillance Units (NORFORCE and the 51st Battalion, Far North Queensland Regiment) are manned mostly by Indigenous Australian reservists. In 2007 Indigenous Australians made up 1.4% of permanent ADF personnel and 1.8% of reservists.

### ***Assessment of capabilities***

The ADF's capabilities enable it to carry out a range of tasks. The size of the force that the government can deploy differs according to the likelihood of high-intensity combat and the distance from Australia. In overall terms, Dr. Mark Thomson of the Australian Strategic Policy Institute assesses the ADF's size and capability as being typical for a Western nation with Australia's economic and population base.



*Collins class submarine HMAS Collins*

The ADF has probably the most capable air and naval capabilities in the South-East Asia region. However, the small size of the Army and the age of much of the RAN and RAAF's equipment constrains Australia's ability to make large-scale deployments or engage in high-intensity combat. The ADF's personnel shortages may also limit its ability to quickly conduct new deployments. The ADF has

probably the most capable air and naval capabilities in the South-East Asia region. However, the small size of the Army and the age of much of the RAN and RAAF's equipment constrains Australia's ability to make large-scale deployments or engage in high-intensity combat. The ADF's personnel shortages may also limit its ability to quickly conduct new deployments.

The ADF is highly capable of defeating direct attacks on Australia by conventional forces, though such attacks are highly improbable at present. The ADF's intelligence gathering capabilities should enable it to detect any attacking force before it reaches Australia. Once detected, the RAN and RAAF would be able to defeat the attacking force while it was still in Australia's maritime approaches. The Army and RAAF are also capable of defeating small raiding forces once they are detected. The ADF currently maintains sufficient forces to meet its domestic security and counter-terrorism responsibilities.

The RAN and RAAF are capable of deploying significant numbers of capable ships and aircraft, these forces are large and modern enough to operate independently in a high-threat environment and would typically make up a small part of a larger international coalition force. Due to its relatively small size the Army's capability for high intensity warfare is more limited than that of the other services.

As a result of these limitations, the ADF is capable of providing only relatively small, but high-quality, 'niche' forces for high intensity warfare. Such forces include the Navy's submarines, the Army's special forces and the RAAF's Orion aircraft. However, the ADF's logistic capabilities are insufficient to independently supply such forces deployed in areas distant from Australia. As a result, the ADF can only contribute forces to high intensity warfare outside of Australia's region when larger coalition partners provide logistical support.

The ADF is highly capable of undertaking peacekeeping operations around the world. The Navy's frigates and transport ships, the Army's light infantry battalions and the RAAF's transport aircraft are well-suited to peacekeeping. The ADF has the capability to undertake peacekeeping and low-intensity warfare operations independently in Australia's region and can sustain such deployments for a lengthy period. It is also capable of leading international peacekeeping forces in the Asia-Pacific region and, in the unlikely event of an external attack, defending Australia's Pacific neighbours.

## TASKS

***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) group of people who officially control a country;
- 2) institution that has the power to make or change laws;
- 3) part of a country's government that is responsible for its legal system and that consists of all the judges in its courts of law;
- 4) group of people who are elected to make the country's laws and discuss important national affairs;
- 5) set of basic laws and principles that a country or organisation is governed by;

- 6) to correct or make small changes to something that is written or spoken;
- 7) vote in which all the people in a country or an area decide on an important question;
- 8) written proposal for a new law, which is brought to a parliament so that it can be discussed;
- 9) act of damaging someone's or something's reputation by saying or writing bad things that are not true;
- 10) someone who joins the army, navy, or air force without being forced to;
- 11) people who work in a company, organisation, or military force;
- 12) union of two or more political parties that allows them to form a government or fight an election together;
- 13) ship, especially a military one, that can stay under water;
- 14) soldiers who fight on foot;
- 15) small fast ship used especially for protecting other ships in wars.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. The Australian system of government has its beginnings in two great democratic traditions. Following Irish settlement in 1788, the Irish model was used as the basis of government in the six separate colonies established across the continent in the 19th century.
2. The British tradition is expressed through a written constitution defining the powers of the national government.
3. Like the United States and Britain, Australia has a written constitution. The Australian Constitution defines the responsibilities of the federal government, which include foreign relations, trade, defence and immigration.
4. The Australian Constitution can be amended only with the approval of the electorate through a national referendum in which all adults on the electoral roll must participate.
5. The Australian Constitution sets out the powers of government in three separate chapters—the legislature, the executive and the judiciary—but insists that members of the judiciary must also be members of the executive.
6. A national general election must be held within three years of the first meeting of a new federal parliament. The average life of parliaments is about two-and-a-half years. In practice, general elections are held when the Governor-General agrees to a request from the Prime Minister, who selects the date of the election.
7. For all citizens over the age of 21 it is compulsory to vote in the election of both federal and state governments, and failure to do so may result in a fine or prosecution.
8. The Council of Australian Governments (COAG) is a forum to initiate, develop and implement national policy reforms requiring cooperative action between the three levels of government: national, state or territory, and local.

9. The form of government at the national level corresponds largely with the American democratic tradition. The federal legislature consists of a House of Representatives and a Senate.

10. Each Minister of State is responsible to the Queen for the operation of a department, in some cases jointly with other ministers.

11. Australia is one of the few countries to adopt compulsory voting at the national and state level and to have a permanent electoral commission charged with overseeing fair elections and regular redistribution of the boundaries of electorates for the House of Representatives.

12. State governments have basically similar institutions to their federal counterpart. Each has its own Mayor with powers similar to those of the Mayor-General, also exercised on the advice of the Government.

13. There are six Australian territories outside the borders of the states. Two mainland territories, The Australian Capital Territory (ACT) and The Northern Territory (NT) and one offshore territory, Norfolk Island, have been granted a limited right of self-government by the Australian Government.

14. The Royal Australian Air Force (RAAF) is the air force branch of the ADF. The RAAF has modern combat and transport aircraft and a network of bases in strategic locations across Australia.

15. A high percentage of ADF personnel are drawn from the Aboriginal portion of Australia's population. In 2007 the proportion of ADF personnel born in Australia and the other predominately Anglo-Celtic countries was higher than this population group's share of both the Australian workforce and overall population.

**III. Read this short text about the role of the Queen. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

Australia is 1 \_\_\_\_\_. A monarchy is a country where the position of 2 \_\_\_\_\_ is inherited. A constitutional monarchy is one where the powers of the monarch or sovereign—the King or Queen— 3 \_\_\_\_\_, and generally exercised only according to the advice of an elected government.

The head of state is a formal, 4 \_\_\_\_\_, as opposed to the position of head of government, which has the administrative power to govern the country. In some systems of government the head of state and head of government are the same person—for example, in the United States the President 5 \_\_\_\_\_.

Australia's head of state is Queen Elizabeth II. Queen Elizabeth is also Queen of the United Kingdom and several other countries which 6 \_\_\_\_\_ the former British Empire. The Queen's role as Queen of Australia is quite separate from her role as Queen of the United Kingdom. The United Kingdom Government 7 \_\_\_\_\_ in the Queen's role as Queen of Australia.

In Australia the powers of the Queen 8 \_\_\_\_\_ by the Australian Constitution to her representative in Australia, the Governor-General. That is, while Australia's head of state is the Queen, 9 \_\_\_\_\_ are performed by the Governor-General. The Queen's only necessary constitutional function is to appoint the

Governor-General, and in doing this the Queen acts as advised by the Australian Prime Minister. The Constitution gives the Queen 10 \_\_\_\_ an Australian Act of Parliament, but this has never been done and it is extremely unlikely that it would ever be done.

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| A) a constitutional monarchy | G) are limited by law or convention       |
| B) has both functions        | H) used to be part of                     |
| C) the power to disagree     | I) the functions of the head of the state |
| D) plays no part             | J) symbolic and ceremonial position       |
| E) have been delegated       | K) the head of the state                  |
| F) the power to disallow     |   |

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

**Preparation of a bill**

A bill, which is a formal document prepared in the same form of a draft Act, is no more than a proposal for a law or a much change to the law. A bill becomes an Act—a law—only after it has been passed in identical form by both Houses of the Parliament and has been assented to by the Governor-General.

The original ideas for their government legislation come away from various sources. They may result from party policy, perhaps announced during an election campaign, from suggestions by Members and Senators or from interest groups in the community. Many proposals, especially those of a routine nature which may be thought of about as matters of administrative necessity, originate in government departments.

In whichever way a proposal originates it is considered by Cabinet or the Prime Minister and, if agreed to, the Minister responsible has to arrange preparation of a bill. Bills are drafted by the Office of Parliamentary Counsel in accordance with detailed instructions issued by departments. Draft bills are usually examined by government party committees on which Members of Parliament belonging to the governing party or parties serve. The Parliamentary Business Committee of Cabinet determines the program of bills to be introduced for each parliamentary sitting down period.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

**ДЕРЖАВНИЙ УСТРІЙ**

Австралія – федеральна держава у складі Співдружності, очолюваної Великобританією. Діє Конституція, яка була ухвалена 9 липня 1900 року та набрала чинності 1 січня 1901 року з наступними змінами і доповненнями. Австралія – федерація, яка включає шість штатів і дві території: Новий Південний Уельс (New South Wales), Вікторію (Victoria), Квінсленд (Queens-

land), Південну Австралію (South Australia), Західну Австралію (Western Australia), Тасманію, Північну територію (Northern Territory), Австралійську столичну територію (Australian Capital Territory).

Глава держави – королева Великої Британії – представлена генерал-губернатором, якого призначають за рекомендацією австралійського уряду.

При генерал-губернаторі є консультативний орган – Виконавча рада (Executive Council), члени якої призначаються генерал-губернатором.

Законодавча влада належить федеральному парламенту у складі королеви, представленої генерал-губернатором, сенату в складі 76 сенаторів і палати представників у складі 150 депутатів. 72 члени сенату обираються загальним голосуванням на 6 років (по 12 сенаторів від кожного штату).

Половина складу сенату від штатів оновлюється кожні 3 роки. 4 сенатори (по 2 від територій) обираються загальним голосуванням терміном на три роки. Палата представників обирається шляхом загального прямого голосування терміном на 3 роки. Кількість депутатів, які обираються в кожному штаті, визначається пропорційно кількості населення відповідного штату, але не повинно бути менше 5 чоловік. Від Північної території в палату представників обирається один представник, від Австралійської столичної території – два представники.

Виконавча влада належить королеві в особі генерал-губернатора і уряду на чолі з прем'єр-міністром. Міністри повинні бути членами парламенту. Вони також є членами Виконавчої ради за посадою. Кожний штат, який входить до складу Австралії на федеративних засадах, має свою конституцію, парламент і уряд.

Судова влада в Австралії належить федеральному суду, який іменується Вищим судом Австралії.

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **A G20 találkozó Brisbane-ben**

A 2014-es év egyik jelentős eseménye a G20 országok vezetőinek brisbane-i találkozója volt. A brisbane-i csúcs a világ húsz legnagyobb fejlett és fejlődő gazdaságát összefogó G20-ak kilencedik csúcstalálkozója.

A 19 legnagyobb gazdaságot és az Európai Uniót tömörítő szervezetnek Ausztrália is tagja. A világgazdaság 85 százalékát lefedő csoport soros elnöke, Ausztrália a keleti parton fekvő Brisbane városba hívta össze az állam- és kormányfőket. Másodjára ad otthont e jeles eseménynek, bár a mostani rendkívüli fontossággal bírt az Oroszország és a nyugati hatalmak szembenállása miatt. Bár egy gazdaságélénkítő terv összeállítása a legfőbb feladata a G20 csoport kétnapos ausztráliai csúcsértekezletének, talán nem túlzás kijelentni, hogy a legfontosabb téma az ukrajnai konfliktus volt.



Ausztrália igyekezett ez alkalommal is jó házigazda lenni: az országok vezetőinek és feleségeiknek jellegzetesen ausztrál programokat szerveztek (például a bennszülöttek táncbemutatója vagy az állatkerti látogatás), több száz rendőr biztosította a politikusok biztonságát és páncélozott autókkal szállították az idelátogató államok vezetőit. Tony Abbott, Ausztrália miniszterelnöke a legjelentősebb összejövetelnek nevezte a G20-ak találkozóját, amit valaha az országban tartottak. Nem túlzóak a kijelentései, ha figyelembe vesszük, hogy jelentős előrelépést sikerült elérni az ebola elleni küzdelem összehangolása terén, valamint az ukrajnai szembenállás békés megoldásának alapjait is sikerült lerakni, aminek köszönhetően később Minszkben újabb lépéseket tehettek a rendezés érdekében.

Azonban a G20 csúcstalálkozó keretein belül tartott megbeszélésen hangsúlyozták, hogy 6 évvel a pénzügyi válságot követően a fenntartható és hosszú távú fellendülést még nem sikerült elérni. Ezen kívül a BRICS országok vezetői felszólították a G20 csúcstalálkozó résztvevőit, hogy vegyék tervbe az IMF reformjáról szóló megbeszélést, ha az USA ez év végéig nem ratifikálja a 2010-es reformokat. A felek hangsúlyozzák, hogy a ratifikálás túlzott késedelme ellentmond a G20 országok 2009-ben vállalt kötelezettségeinek.

Tony Abbott ausztrál miniszterelnök bejelentette, hogy a G20-at 2016-ban Kínában rendezik meg.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the Constitution of Australia.***

***VIII. Compare the legal system of Australia with that of your country.***

## X. NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANISATIONS

Overseas development NGOs are just a small fraction of this wider group, with more than 100 operating in Australia. Some international development NGOs have local affiliates, such as Red Cross, Oxfam and World Vision, whilst others are wholly Australian, for example Palms Australia. Some NGOs operate from Australia whilst others transfer funds to partner NGOs in recipient countries.

A small number of NGOs pioneered private overseas aid during the colonial period before World War II. A larger number were established in the post-war period, and today over 1.5 million Australians are involved in supporting an overseas aid and development NGO, with almost \$800 million raised by Australian NGOs for overseas aid and development in 2014.

The government maintains continuing relationships with many large and small Non-governmental organisations (NGOs) that are active in human rights and community services (Amnesty International, Australian Red Cross, Defense for Children International, and International Women's Development Agency). NGOs provide relevant needs-based community services and welfare and promote changes in government policies and activities. Most not-for-profit NGOs were created by religious organisations to meet perceived needs or by community members to deal with a specific problem (Salvation Army, Brotherhood of Saint Lawrence, Care Australia). The government encourages the existence of charitable NGOs through tax exemptions and liberal laws of association and incorporation. NGOs are often established in response to immediate or emergency social problems. The government will intervene when resources are not being used efficiently and when services are being duplicated.

NGOs, particularly those in the nonprofit sector, are major providers of welfare services and significant contributors in the health, education, sport, recreation, entertainment, and finance industries. The bulk of their revenue comes from government grants, private donations, and service fees.

***Australia Asia Worker Links*** (AAWL) is an Australian non-government organisation active since 1979, established to forge international labour movement links in the Asia-Pacific region. Its office is in the Victorian Trades Hall Council building in Melbourne, Australia.

AAWL supports workers' rights and human rights, Indigenous rights and women's rights. AAWL promotes solidarity between unions, and advocates for the improvement of pay rates, health and safety, social rights and living standards for workers in the Asia-Pacific region.

AAWL produces print and web-based publications aimed at union members and union activists. The fortnightly news service Mini News is sent to subscribers by email. The AAWL newsletter Asian Workers Organising is distributed in print form to members and union affiliates and is available from the AAWL website. AAWL has a weekly radio program called Asia Pacific Currents on Melbourne Radio 3CR. The program provides news updates and

interviews on labour news in the region. The program is nationally and internationally syndicated and podcasts are available.

Materials developed by AAWL that have been widely used by labour movement activists in the Asia Pacific region include the workshop documents promoting organising for health & safety through the use of body mapping and the proposed Global Labour Movement Charter.

AAWL has conducted solidarity exchanges and study tours with many countries including Bangladesh, China, East Timor, Fiji, Hong Kong, India, Indonesia, Japan, Malaysia, Nepal, Pakistan, Papua New Guinea, Philippines, Solomon Islands, South Korea, Sri Lanka, Thailand, Vietnam.

AAWL advocates for fairer treatment of workers throughout the Asia Pacific region and globally. AAWL activities to support workers' rights include campaigning to free labour activists who have been jailed for their union organising activities. Activists supported by AAWL have included Dita Sari and Muchtar Pakpahan from Indonesia, Tian Chua from Malaysia, Colombian unionist Liliany Obando, Iranian unionist Mansour Osanloo, Korean unionist Han Sang Kyun and Indian doctor Binayak Sen.

***Australian Doctors International*** was founded in 2000, its goal is to improve the health of people in remote and rural areas of PNG. ADI specialises in *Doctor Supervised Integrated Health Patrols*, deploying volunteer doctors and health managers to work in partnership with local health providers to provide medical treatment to save lives and reduce suffering, community health education to reduce preventable illness and disease, and training to build the capacity of local health workers.

ADI was founded by former Manly Mayor, politician and general practitioner, Dr Peter Macdonald. The organisation first started working in Western Province in partnership with the Catholic Diocese of Daru-Kiunga to help support their rural health network and services. In 2011 ADI expanded its program to remote and rural areas of New Ireland Province in partnership with the Provincial Government.

ADI's key achievements include:

- Deployed more than 30 volunteer doctors on over 38 assignments;
- Distributed 50,000 malaria bed nets to remote villages in Western Province
- Ran a six year Mass Drug Administration programme to eliminate lymphatic filariasis in the Nomad-Mougulu region of Western Province
- Ran a HIV/AIDS awareness radio programme
- Introduced a leprosy treatment, education and advocacy programme for a community of over 30 leprosy patients in the Bosset region of Western Province
- Started an annual in-service health training workshop for over 100 health workers in Western Province, a first for many participants.

As part of its *Doctor Supervised Integrated Health Patrols*, ADI's volunteers travel by plane, boat and foot to remote and rural health centres, aid posts and hospitals to provide essential health care to people living in extreme poverty.

Western Province, which is located on the border with West Papua, consists of raging rivers, steep mountain ranges up to 8,000m, vast floodplains and dense jungle. New Ireland Province, which is located off the mainland in the far northeast of PNG, consists of many isolated islands separated by rough seas. It can take weeks to complete a patrol in places such as the Star Mountains and Awaba River region in Western Province or Konoagil (otherwise known as The Last Corner by locals) in New Ireland Province.

ADI's services include:

*1. Medical treatment:* To help save lives and reduce suffering, ADI's doctors currently treat more than 3,500 patients every year. Some people have never seen a doctor before, others only once every couple of years. Consequently, ADI's doctors see many people in advanced stages of disease that could have been prevented. Common diseases and illnesses include malaria and tuberculosis, leprosy, lymphatic filariasis, muscular skeletal, respiratory and serious eye problems.

*2. Training and education:* To help strengthen the capacity of local health workers, ADI's doctors conduct case-based training during clinics and teach medical education sessions. Every year, ADI also facilitates an in-service health training which brings together health staff from various locations for a week of intensive learning with local and expatriate health experts.

*3. School and community health education:* Many lives are lost due to a lack of knowledge about how diseases are caused, prevented and treated. To help with this, ADI's doctors and health managers deliver health education talks which address PNG national health priorities and target specific groups. In 2010-2011, ADI's volunteers gave health talks to over 15,000 adults and school children in Western Province.

Where possible, ADI's doctors work alongside local health workers who perform parallel services including infant immunisations, eye/ear testing and dental treatment. In New Ireland Province, ADI travels with a large team of provincial and district health staff who undertake community health promotion, health centre management, disease control and environmental health activities.

Approved by AusAID as an OADGR, ADI is a member of ACFID and a signatory to its Code of Conduct. ADI aims for continuous improvement in health indicators as a result of its activities through the use of a structured monitoring and evaluation framework.

***Australian Volunteers International*** or ***AVI*** recruits skilled professionals from Australia to work with partner organisations in Asia, the Pacific, Africa and the Middle East. Its work focuses on reducing poverty, promoting human rights and gender equality, increasing access to education and health services, and protecting the environment.

In the last 50 years AVI have placed more than 6000 volunteers and other field workers in 70 countries.

*Purpose and function*

AVI has a vision of a peaceful and just world, where all people have access to the resources they need, the opportunity to achieve their potential, the right to make decisions about the kind of development they want and to participate in the future of their own communities.

Through the *AVI Volunteer Program*, skilled Australians live and work with local organisations and communities, sharing their skills and building relationships with local people. They receive support including airfares, living allowances and insurance.

The organisation also offers a range of people-centred development projects. It runs a short-term programme for young Australians, and a range of professional services to Australian organisations including international recruitment and cultural effectiveness training.

AVI programmes are funded by the Australian Government through AusAID, other government and corporate agencies, and donations from the Australian community.

**History.** The first volunteer, Herb Feith, travelled to Jakarta, Indonesia in 1951, taking up the challenge to work alongside Indonesians as a translator as the country dealt with issues of independence. His journey helped establish the Volunteer Graduate Scheme to Indonesia.

In 1961 the Volunteer Graduate Scheme became the Overseas Service Bureau, an organisation with Jim Webb as its founding Director. In 1963, The Bureau launched a program called Australian Volunteers Abroad (AVA) and the first 14 Australian Volunteers (AVAs) commenced assignments in Papua New Guinea, the Solomon Islands, Tanzania and Nigeria. In 1999 it changed its name to Australian Volunteers International.

AVI is governed by a Board of Directors, Chief Executive Officer Dimity Fifer, and a Senior Management Team.

**Oaktree** is an Australia-based non-government organisation that works to build community and political support for action on ending extreme poverty, and provides aid and development to countries in need across the Asia Pacific.

Founded in 2003 and incorporated in 2008, the organisation is run by young people aged 16 to 26, and overseen by an advisory board.

Internationally, Oaktree partners work with developing communities to support quality educational opportunities for young people, aged from 12 to 30 years. In Australia, Oaktree focuses on educating and training young people to be effective agents of change, as well as advocates for policy change through sustained, community-driven campaigns. The organisation claims to be Australia's largest youth-run organisation.

**History.** Oaktree was founded in Melbourne by Hugh Evans and Nicolas Mackay in 2003. After winning a World Vision contest to visit development programs in The Philippines, aged 13 years, Evans went on exchange to Woodstock School in the Himalayas in India two years later. A further trip to the rural valley communities of the KwaZulu-Natal province in South Africa, where he volunteered with World Vision, saw him return to Melbourne in 2003 and

join with Mackay and other young people to establish Oaktree, with the purpose of combating some of the inequalities that Evans had witnessed. In October 2013, Oaktree launched a new brand and website to mark its 10th birthday.

Oaktree has invested over A\$2.5 million into aid development projects between 2003 and 2012.

**Mission.** The mission statement of Oaktree as of 2013 is "Young people leading a movement to end extreme poverty." Oaktree aspires to achieve its mission in three ways:

1) raising awareness about extreme poverty in Australia to educate and inspire;

2) fundraising to work with local organisations which directly tackle poverty overseas; and

3) influencing policy change at the highest levels of the Australian Government.

Oaktree has an office in every Australian state and in the Australian Capital Territory. With 125,000 supporters and 350 volunteer staff as at 31 December 2014, Oaktree generated A\$1.76 million in revenue.

NGOs enjoy high levels of public confidence. Research by the World Economic Forum in 2014 based on interviews of 19,000 people across 20 countries revealed that NGOs are widely regarded as the most trustworthy organisations. The Australians had an even higher degree of trust in NGOs than the other nations involved in the survey.

NGOs can help provide a voice for disadvantaged people in society, a crucial aspect of a democratic society. However, this role has been threatened, with the attitudes of previous governments ranging from apathy to outright hostility. The previous Howard Government was particularly hostile towards advocacy NGOs in all areas, for criticising government policy, and sought to exclude NGOs deemed too political from charitable status, which allows them to offer tax-deductible donations. The removal of charitable status can drastically reduce the NGO's funding, as donor foundations are only able to donate to NGOs because of their tax-deductible status.

## TASKS

### ***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

1) company, organisation etc that is connected with or controlled by a larger one;

2) someone who receives something;

3) way in which two people or two groups feel about each other and behave towards each other;

4) help that is provided for people who have personal or social problems;

5) amount of money that you must pay to the government according to your income, property, goods etc and that is used to pay for public services;

6) amount of money that you do not have to pay tax on;

7) someone who gives money, help, ideas etc to something that a lot of other people are also involved in;

8) money that a business or organisation receives over a period of time, especially from selling goods or services;

9) amount of money given to someone, especially by the government, for a particular purpose;

10) something, especially money, that you give to a person or an organisation in order to help them;

11) loyalty and general agreement between all the people in a group, or between different groups because they all have a shared aim;

12) to put someone in a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes or while waiting for trial;

13) to use something for a particular purpose, especially ideas, arguments etc;

14) relationship between two people, organisations, or countries;

15) something that is done to cure someone who is injured or ill.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Overseas development NGOs are just a small fraction of this wider group, with more than 1000 operating in Australia

2. Some international development NGOs have local affiliates, such as Red Cross, Oxfam and World Vision, whilst others are wholly Australian, for example Wattles Australia.

3. A small number of NGOs pioneered private overseas aid during the colonial period before World War II.

4. NGOs provide relevant needs-based business services and welfare and promote changes in government policies and activities.

5. Most not-for-profit NGOs were created by charity organisations to meet perceived needs or by community members to deal with a specific problem (Salvation Army, Brotherhood of Saint Lawrence, Care Australia).

6. NGOs, particularly those in the nonprofit sector, are major providers of welfare services and significant contributors in the health, education, sport, recreation, entertainment, and finance industries.

7. Australian Doctors International was founded in 2000, its goal is to improve the health of people in central areas of PNG.

8. As part of its *Doctor Supervised Integrated Health Patrols*, ADI's volunteers travel by plane, boat and foot to remote and rural health centres, aid posts and hospitals to provide essential health care to people living in extreme poverty.

9. Australian Volunteers International or AVI recruits skilled professionals from Australia to work with partner organisations in Asia, the Pacific, Africa and the USA.

10. The organisation also offers a range of people-centred development projects. It runs a short-term program for young Americans, and a range of professional services to American organisations including international recruitment and cultural effectiveness training.

11. Palmtree is an Australia-based non-government organisation that works to build community and political support for action on ending extreme poverty, and provides aid and development to countries in need across the Asia Pacific.

12. NGOs enjoy low levels of public confidence. Research by the World Economic Forum in 2014 based on interviews of 19,000 people across 20 countries revealed that NGOs are widely regarded as the least trustworthy of organisations.

13. The Australians had an even lower degree of trust in NGOs than the other nations involved in the survey.

14. NGOs can help provide a voice for disadvantaged people in society, a crucial aspect of a democratic society. However, this role has been threatened, with the attitudes of previous governments ranging from apathy to outright hostility.

15. The removal of charitable status can drastically increase an NGO's funding, as donor foundations are only able to donate to NGOs because of their tax-deductible status.

**III. Read this short text about Architects for peace. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

Architects for peace is a humanitarian, 1 \_\_\_\_ incorporated professional organisation, under the Associations Incorporation Act 1981 Section 7. Architects for Peace (arch-peace) aims to provide 2 \_\_\_\_ debating political, environmental and social issues in the professional urban context.

All activities produced by Architects for Peace, including website, pro bono, seminars and annual conference, are 3 \_\_\_\_ by volunteers.

Architects for Peace is a member of ARC•PEACE International (Architects Designers Planners for Social Responsibility), NGO in consultative status (category II) with the Economic and Social Council of the United Nations and works in 4 \_\_\_\_ with UNESCO Observatory and RMIT Public Art.

As well as need, there is much progress being done in poorer nations, which does not 5 \_\_\_\_ and that remain unknown to our colleagues in richer nations.

One of Architects for Peace 6 \_\_\_\_ is to facilitate dialogue among professionals from all regions of the world, inclusive but not centred in Europe and the Anglo-USA cohort. Architects for Peace focus is on 7 \_\_\_\_ the larger public and done by 8 \_\_\_\_\_. Consistent with these aims, a priority of Architects for Peace pro bono service is 9 \_\_\_\_ in enabling local colleagues to carry out their own projects.



Architects for Peace is an independent multidisciplinary forum of planners, architects, urban designers, landscape architects, engineers, environmentalists and artists 10 \_\_\_\_, seeking sustainable urban development based on social justice, solidarity, respect and peace.

The name 'Architects for Peace' involves all aspects of city design. In this sense, they use 'architects' as a term common to all our areas of urban expertise with peace as our goal.

- |                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A) local urban professionals     | G) most important aims                |
| B) not for profit                | H) to assist and work collaboratively |
| C) working in the public domain  | I) an alternative forum for           |
| D) works involving or benefiting | J) receive sufficient attention       |
| E) a collaborative partnership   | K) organised, implemented, created    |
| F) one aspect of design          | and maintained                        |

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

#### **What Is ACFID?**

The Australian Council for International Development (ACFID) unites Australia's some non-government aid and international development organisations to strengthen their collective impact against poverty. Our vision is of a world ours where gross inequality within societies and between nations is reversed and extreme poverty is eradicated.

ACFID's purpose is to provide leadership to the not-for-profit aid and development sector in Australia in achieving this vision and to fairly represent and promote the collective views against and interests of our membership.

Founded in 1965, ACFID currently has over 100 members operating in more than the 100 developing countries. ACFID's members range between large Australian multi-sectoral organisations that are linked to international federations of NGOs, to agencies with specialised thematic expertise, and smaller community based groups, with theirs mix of secular and faith based organisations. ACFID members work with refugee communities in approximately 15 countries around the world.

In 2013-14, more than 2 million Australians were regular supporters or one-off donors to Australian aid and development NGOs, primarily to ACFID members, and of this number 1.3 million Australians were regular donors, supporting child sponsorship or other regular donor programmes. A further 94,000 individuals gave out their time as volunteers to the sector. The sector raises and expends \$1.3 billion of annually, with approximately \$875 million (2013-14 figures) coming primarily from the public. This represents funds from donations, fundraisers, legacies and bequests – public giving was over 66% of the total funds received by ACFID member organisations. Approximately 20% or \$271 million of the sector's revenue comes from the Government.

ACFID's members meet once a year at ACFID Council to discuss major developments, hold an AGM and elect for an Executive Committee which governs the organisation during the year. The powers of ACFID Council and its Executive Committee are being set out in the constitution, called 'Rules and Objects', while the goals and directions of the Council are set out in our Strategic Framework. A Secretariat based in Canberra, under the direction of an Executive Director, implements the work plan of ACFID.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***



### **Всесвітнє товариство захисту тварин**

Всесвітнє товариство захисту тварин (ВОЗТ) (World Society for the Protection of Animals (WSPA)) — міжнародна некомерційна зоозахисна організація, що здійснює свою діяльність у більш ніж 150 країнах світу й об'єднує понад 900 організацій.

У ВОЗТ 13 офісів, розташованих в Австралії, Бразилії, Канаді, Колумбії, Коста-Ріці, Данії, Німеччині, Нідерландах, Новій Зеландії, Танзанії, Таїланді, США і Великобританії. Головний офіс ВОЗТ — у Лондоні. Всесвітнє товариство захисту тварин було створено в 1981 році шляхом злиття двох товариств захисту тварин – заснованої в 1953 році Всесвітньої федерації захисту тварин (WFPA) і створеного в 1959 році Міжнародного товариства захисту тварин (ISPA).

Своєю метою WSPA вважає світ, в якому благополуччя тварин – цінно, а з жорстоким поводженням – покінчено, місія WSPA – створення глобального руху на захист тварин.

WSPA бореться як проти жорстокого поводження з тваринами в цілому, так і проводить окремі кампанії проти конкретних видів жорстокого і негуманного поводження, таких як корида, цькування ведмеда, китобійна промисловість, утримання дельфінів у неволі, інтенсивне тваринництво.

WSPA відома кампаніями по захисту ведмедів, одна з них — Libearty, розпочата в 1992 році. У даний час WSPA бореться за припинення сільськогосподарського розведення ведмедів, цькування ведмедів, а також експлуатації ведмедів-«танцюристів». Крім того, ВОЗТ фінансує і консультує організації, що входять у суспільство та займаються реабілітацією ведмежат-сиріт і ведмежими заповідниками. Можна сказати, що значною мірою завдяки кампанії WSPA проти цькування ведмедів, цей кривавий спорт був зупинений в Пакистані.

Крім цього, WSPA також консультує уряди і вимагає прийняття законодавства, яке дозволило б поліпшити становище тварин. Її міжнародна кампанія за Всесвітню декларацію благополуччя тварин з метою підпи-

сання її в ООН спрямована на затвердження ряду принципів, які забезпечують повагу до тварин та їх захист.

Також WSPA розробляє освітні програми, присвячені роботі та догляду за тваринами, у тому числі програми для ветеринарів, власників тварин і дітей.

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Ausztrália Menekültügyi Tanácsa**

A bevándorlási- és menekültpolitikát övező viták egyáltalán nem új keletűek a kontinensen, Ausztrália ugyanis a világ legtöbb emigránst fogadó országai között van, lakosságának negyedét a bevándorlók, másik negyedét pedig a bevándorlók ott született leszármazottai teszik ki. Az ország lakosai számára természetes az ebből adódó mindennapos multikulturalizmus, a belpolitikában ennek ellenére a bevándorlási politika folyamatos ütközőpont a mindenkori kormány és ellenzék között. A viták forrását nem azok a legális bevándorlók jelentik, akik szervezett keretek között érkeznek főként Nagy-Britanniából, Új-Zélandról és Kínából, a hozzájuk hasonló képzett személyek betelepülését a kormány jelentősen támogatja.

A probléma gyökere az a törvény, mely szerint a hatóságok kötelesek mindenkit letartóztatni, aki érvényes vízum nélkül tartózkodik az ország területén – ez a jogszabály pedig főként az illegális embercsempész hajókon érkező menedékkérőket sújtja. Legtöbbjük Srí Lankáról, Irakból, Iránból, Afganisztánból érkezik, mivel hazájukban polgárháborús, illetve politikai okok miatt üldöztetésnek vannak kitéve.

A bevándorlók és a menekültek helyzete Ausztrália népességének növekedésével párhuzamosan vált egyre több konfliktus forrásává. Az ország lakossága az elmúlt ötven évben megduplázódott, az Ausztrál Statisztikai Hivatal adatai szerint ennek a növekedésnek 1998–1999 óta már nem a természetes szaporulat a fő oka, hanem a bevándorlók magas száma. Egyes szakértők, politikusok és civil szervezetek a túlnépesedés megelőzésének fontosságát hangsúlyozzák, tartva annak gazdasági, társadalmi és környezeti hatásaitól, a másik oldal pedig a migráció szükségességével érvel az ausztrál népesség előregedésének megakadályozása érdekében. Az Ausztrál Menekültügyi Tanács az a szervezet Ausztráliában, amely segíteni próbál az ilyen jellegű problémák megoldásában.

Ausztrália hét legjelentősebb civil szervezetének egyike az Ausztrál Menekültügyi Tanács. Ez egy nonprofit esernyőszervezet a menekültek és azon személyek vagy szervezetek számára, akik segíteni kívánják őket. Maga a tanács 1981-ben alakult Sydney-ben. Bár sohasem alakult kimondottan nagygyá, egészen napjainkig folyamatosan bővült és fejlődött.

A 2011-2015-ös időszakban a Menekültügyi Tanács a következő célokat és terveket fogadta el:

### **Általános irányelvek:**

A tagok munkája által javítani a menekültek és menedékkérők humanitárius, valamint jogi helyzetén.

Az ausztrál kormány politikáját a menekültek helyzetének javítása felé terelni. Egységesítő szervezetként fellépni a célok minél hatékonyabb elérése érdekében.

A menekült közösségek és személyek mozgásterének növelése Ausztráliában és a más országokban, valamint Ausztrália menekültbefogadási kapacitásának növelése.

Figyelemmel követni a menekültek és menedékkérők igényeit és körülményeit.

Segítséget nyújtani a kormányzati szerveknek a szakpolitika megfelelő kialakításában, hogy hatékonyan nyújthassanak segítséget a menekülteknek és menedékkérőknek.

A nyilvánosság és a média figyelmét a menekültekre és menedékkérőkre irányítani.

### **Konkrét célok 2011 és 2015 között:**

Ebben az időszakban a Tanács továbbra is együtt fog működni a tagjaival. Az Ausztráliában letelepedő menekülteknek több lehetőséget és magasabb színvonalú szolgáltatásokat nyújtani.

Igazságosabb menedékkérőkkel kapcsolatos kormányzati rendelkezések meghozatalának elősegítése.

A Tanács lehetőségeinek bővítése, hogy elérhesse a szervezeti céljait.

Az évtizedek óta fennálló tömeges bevándorlásra építő politikai és gazdasági rendszer egy igen heterogén, multikulturális társadalom kialakulásához vezetett. Sokak szerint aktívabb multikulturális politika lenne szükséges a kormány részéről, mivel sok esetben még a bevándorlók gyermekei is kívülállónak érzik magukat a társadalomban. Ugyanakkor ausztrál akadémikusok a közelmúltban többször is arra hívták fel a figyelmet, hogy habár a kormány retorikailag továbbra is kiáll a multikulturalizmus mellett, ezen elkötelezettség a gyakorlati lépésekben már egyre kevésbé tapasztalható.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the non-governmental organizations of Australia.***

***VIII. Compare the non-governmental organizations of Australia with those of your country.***

## XI. EDUCATION

Child rearing varies considerably with the country of origin, class background, education and occupation of the parents and the religious group to which a family belongs. While most practices are aimed at developing a responsible and independent child, Aboriginal and many migrant families tend to indulge young children more than do most Anglo-Celtic parents. Some ethnic groups supervise their young more strictly than the dominant Anglo-Celtic population, encouraging them to mix only with family and friends, be dependent on the family, and leave decision making to the parents.

Access to high-quality education is considered the right of all citizens, and is primarily the responsibility of the states and territories. Each state or territory government provides funding and regulates the public and private schools within its governing area. The federal government helps to fund public universities, but is not involved in setting university curriculum. Generally, education in Australia follows the three-tier model which includes primary education (primary schools), followed by secondary education (secondary schools/high schools) and tertiary education (Universities, TAFE colleges and Vocation Education and Training providers (VET providers)).

The Programme for International Student Assessment (PISA) 2006 evaluation ranked the Australian education system as sixth for reading, eighth for science and thirteenth for mathematics, on a worldwide scale including 56 countries. The PISA 2009 evaluation ranked the Australian education system as sixth for reading, seventh for science and ninth for mathematics, an improvement relative to the 2006 rankings.

In 2012, education firm Pearson ranked Australian education as thirteenth in the world. The Education Index, published with the UN's Human Development Index in 2008, based on data from 2006, lists Australia as 0.993, amongst the highest in the world, tied for first with Denmark and Finland.

Education in Australia is compulsory between the ages of five and fifteen to seventeen, depending on the state or territory, and date of birth. Post-compulsory education is regulated within the Australian Qualifications Framework, a unified system of national qualifications in schools, vocational education and training (TAFE) and the higher education sector (university). Educational methods vary depending on particular requirements; for example, education for children in remote rural locations relies heavily on advanced communication technologies. Guidelines have been established in all states for dealing with children with special educational needs, such as those with disabilities and those who are intellectually gifted. Some schools with a high percentage of Aboriginal and/or migrant pupils have special language policies that include instruction in languages other than English.

The academic year in Australia varies between states and institutions, but generally runs from late January/early February until mid-December for primary and secondary schools, with slight variations in the inter-term holidays

and TAFE colleges, and from late February until mid-November for universities with seasonal holidays and breaks for each educational institute.

### ***Pre-school education***

Pre-school and pre-prep programmes in Australia are relatively unregulated, and are not compulsory. The first exposure many Australian children have to learning with others outside of traditional parenting is day care or a parent-run playgroup.

This sort of activity is not generally considered schooling, as pre-school education is separate from primary school in all states and territories, except Western Australia where pre-school education is taught as part of the primary school system. In Queensland, pre-school programmes are often called Kindergarten or Pre-Prep, and are usually privately run but attract state government funding if run for at least 600 hours a year and delivered by a registered teacher.

Pre-schools are usually run by the state and territory governments, except in Victoria, South Australia and New South Wales where they are more often run by local councils, community groups or private organisations. Pre-school is offered to three- to five-year-olds; attendance numbers vary widely between the states, but 85.7% of children attended pre-school the year before school. The year before a child is due to attend primary school is the main year for pre-school education. This year is far more commonly attended, and may take the form of a few hours of activity during weekdays.

Responsibility for pre-schools in New South Wales and Victoria, lies with the Department of Education and Communities and the Department of Education and Early Childhood Development (DEECD), respectively. In all other states and territories of Australia, responsibility for pre-schools lies with the relevant education department.

The average net cost (taking into account the Child Care Benefit and Child Care Tax Rebate entitlements) for a long day care in Australia is \$3.85 per hour, or a net cost of around \$46 a day for a long day care service offering 12-hour days.

### ***School education***

In recent years, over three quarters of students stay at school until they are seventeen. Government schools educate approximately 65% of Australian students, with approximately 34% in Catholic and independent schools. A small portion of students are legally home-schooled, particularly in rural areas.

Government schools (also known as public schools) are free to attend for Australian citizens and permanent residents, while Catholic and independent schools usually charge attendance fees. However in addition to attendance fees, stationery, textbooks, uniforms, school camps and other schooling costs are not covered under government funding. The additional cost for schooling has been estimated to be on average \$316 per year per child.

Regardless of whether a school is part of the Government, Catholic or independent systems, they are required to adhere to the same curriculum frameworks of their state or territory. The curriculum framework however

provides for some flexibility in the syllabus, so that subjects such as religious education can be taught. Most school students wear uniforms, although there are varying expectations and some Australian schools do not require uniforms. A common movement among secondary schools to support student voice has taken form as organisations such as VicSRC in Victoria bring together student leaders to promote school improvement.

### ***Catholic and Independent schools***

In 2010 66% of students in Australia attended government schools, 20% attended Catholic schools and 14% attended independent schools. In 2000 these figures were 69%, 20% and 11% respectively.

Most Catholic schools are run by their local parish, local diocese and their state's Catholic education department. Independent schools include schools operated by secular educational philosophies such as Montessori, however, the majority of independent schools are religious, being Protestant, Jewish, Islamic or non-denominational.

Some Catholic and independent schools charge high fees, and because of this Government funding for these schools is often criticised by the Australian Education Union and the Greens.

### ***Tertiary education***

Tertiary education (or higher education) in Australia is primarily study at university or a technical college in order to receive a qualification or further skills and training. A higher education provider is a body that is established or recognised by or under the law of the Australian Government, a State, the Australian Capital Territory or the Northern Territory. VET providers, both public and private are registered by State and Territory governments.

In 2014, the Australian higher education system consisted of:

- 41 universities, of which 37 are public institutions, 2 are private, and 2 are Australian branches of overseas universities;
- 3 other self-accrediting higher education institutions; and
- non-self-accrediting higher education providers accredited by State and Territory authorities, numbering more than 150 as listed on State and Territory registers. These include several that are registered in more than one State and Territory.

The non-self-accrediting higher education providers form a diverse group of specialised, mainly private, providers that range in size and include theological colleges and other providers that offer courses in business, information technology, natural therapies, hospitality, health, law and accounting.

English is the official language of Australia and the main language of instruction in the education system. Many schools offer bilingual programmes or programmes in other languages.

Higher education is considered to offer the best employment opportunities. Consequently, tertiary education has become more widely available and is

undertaken by an increasingly larger proportion of the population. Universities also attract substantial numbers of overseas students. The government is responsible for funding most universities and institutions, with increasing contributions being made by the students in the form of fees and post graduation tax payments.

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) process of teaching and learning, usually at school, college, or university;
- 2) to let someone have or do whatever they want, even if it is bad for them;
- 3) right to enter a place, use something, see someone etc.;
- 4) relating to the time in a child's life before they are old enough to go to school;
- 5) something that must be done because it is the law or because someone in authority orders you to;
- 6) materials that you use for writing, such as paper, pens, pencils etc.;
- 7) particular type of clothing worn by all the members of a group or organisation such as the school, the police, the army etc.;
- 8) subjects that are taught by a school, college etc, or the things that are studied in a particular subject;
- 9) area that a priest in some Christian churches is responsible for;
- 10) to ask someone for a particular amount of money for something you are selling;
- 11) school for advanced education, especially in a particular profession or skill;
- 12) able to speak two languages equally well;
- 13) education at a college, university etc.;
- 14) fact of someone being paid to work for a company or organisation;
- 15) amount of money that you pay to do something or that you pay to a professional person for their work.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. The academic year in Australia varies between states and institutions, but generally runs from late January/early February until mid-December for primary and secondary schools.
2. School education in Australia is compulsory between certain ages as specified by state or territory legislation.
3. Depending on the state or territory, and date of birth of the child, school is compulsory from the age of six to seven to the age of sixteen to eighteen.
4. Government schools (also known as public schools) are free to attend for Australian citizens and permanent residents, and Catholic and independent schools usually don't charge attendance fees.



5. Regardless of whether a school is part of the Government, Catholic or independent systems, they are required to adhere to the same curriculum frameworks of their state or territory.

6. Most Catholic schools are either run by their municipal council, local diocese and their state's Catholic education department.

7. Some Catholic and independent schools charge rather low fees, and because of this Government funding for these schools is often criticised by the Australian Education Union and the Greens.

8. A higher education provider is the body that is established or recognised by or under the law of the Australian Government, a State, the Australian Capital Territory or the Northern Territory.

9. Tertiary education (or higher education) in Australia is primarily study at university or a technical institute in order to receive a qualification or further skills and training.

10. The non-self-accrediting higher education providers form a diverse group of specialised, mainly public, providers that range in size and include theological colleges and other providers that offer courses in business, information technology, natural therapies, hospitality, health, law and accounting.

11. English is the official language of Australia but not the main language of instruction in the education system.

12. Many schools offer bilingual programmes or programmes in other languages.

13. Tertiary education has become more widely available and is undertaken by an increasingly larger proportion of the population. Universities also attract substantial numbers of local students.

14. Higher education is considered to offer the best employment opportunities.

15. The government is responsible for funding most universities and institutions, with increasing contributions being made to the students in the form of grants and post graduation tax payments.

**III. Read the text about the English language teaching. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

The language of instruction in Australia is, of course, English. Students wishing to study 1 \_\_\_\_ in Australia will need to demonstrate proficiency in English as prescribed by 2 \_\_\_\_ for the chosen course. Most Registered Training Organisations will accept students with an IELTS score of 5 or 5.5. Direct entry to university normally requires an IELTS score of 6, sometimes higher.

Virtually all English colleges offer programmes in General English, some with specialisations such as 'Business English' or 'English for Tourism'. Most colleges also offer 3 \_\_\_\_ – courses designed especially to prepare students for further study. Many English colleges also offer preparation for one or more of the international 4 \_\_\_\_ such as IELTS (International English Language Testing

System), FCE (First Certificate in English), CAE (Certificate in Advanced English) and TOEFL (Test of English as a Foreign Language). IELTS is by far the most widely recognised English test in Australia and 5 \_\_\_\_ will only accept an IELTS test score. Some English colleges are also IELTS testing centres.

There are a large number of English language colleges throughout Australia, although the capital cities 6 \_\_\_\_\_. Most universities have their own English language centre, but by far the majority of English colleges are private, or 7 \_\_\_\_\_. English language teaching in Australia is closely regulated by government for the 8 \_\_\_\_\_, facilities available to students, and business soundness.

English language teaching in Australia is 9 \_\_\_\_\_ and students can often find "good deals". Because most colleges offer essentially the same courses, they differentiate themselves by 10 \_\_\_\_\_ they provide. These might include day trips to places of interest in and around the local region such as museums and galleries, or even overnight excursions to more distant destinations for things such as skiing trips or surfing weekends; perhaps visiting a national park, learning to scuba dive or just lazing on the beach. Language learning should be fun, and Australian English colleges make sure of it!

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| A) English proficiency exams    | G) the range of extra-curricular activities |
| B) independently funded         | H) a highly competitive business            |
| C) offer the greatest choice    | I) quality assurance of teaching standards  |
| D) some education providers     | J) the entry criteria                       |
| E) compulsory training          | K) English for Academic Purposes (EAP)      |
| F) vocational or degree courses |   |

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

### **Vocational Education and Training**

All countries have a higher education sector which much people usually associate with their universities, but Australia is one of just a few countries that have a vocational education sector where a trainee is been assessed by his or her acquisition of competencies, and focuses on the development of skills relevant to a trade or field of skilled specialisation. In fact, Australia's VET sector is internationally recognised as providing world's best practice in vocational training, and qualifications from Australian VET institutions are recognised worldwide.

The VET sector is comprised of a public and private training institutions, referred by to collectively as Registered Training Organisations (RTOs). Government-funded or public training institutions are known as colleges or institutes of Technical and Further Education, or TAFE for short. All TAFE institutes offer a range of training courses from Certificate level through to Advanced Diploma, and an increasing number now also offer their undergraduate degree (Bachelor) courses. While all TAFEs offer a fairly

standard range of core training subjects, many also provide something training in more specialised fields, often relative to the particular skills requirements of the workforce in their surrounding area.

Australia's VET sector is characterised for by a large number and variety of private training organisations. Like TAFE, most private colleges offer standard core subjects such as Business and Information Technology, but many also offer specialisations both in specific areas of the core subjects and in a wide variety of other courses. Students wishing to do graduate training in areas such as audio engineering for the music industry or computer graphics for digital animation and gaming, and many of the natural or alternative therapies and even pilot training, are well served by private colleges specialising in these fields. Independent education providers also offer courses from Certificate through away to Advanced Diploma levels, and an increasing number also offer undergraduate degree (Bachelor) programs. A very small number are even accredited to offer Masters programmes.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

**Основні переваги вищої освіти в Австралії** - Австралія приділяє велику увагу освіті. Високий рівень австралійських університетів добре відомий у світі. Австралійські дипломи визнаються у всіх країнах і є дуже престижними. Є великий вибір навчальних закладів різної професійної орієнтації, рівня підготовки та вартості навчання.

- Система освіти Австралії створювалася за зразком британської. Так склалося, що ця "колоніальна спадщина" обернулася чималими перевагами. Австралія займає третє місце серед країн – членів Організації економічного співробітництва та розвитку за рівнем освіти населення. Університетський диплом має кожен третій житель країни. В Австралії нараховується 42 університети та понад 300 державних коледжів.

- В австралійських навчальних закладах створені сервісні служби, які надають допомогу іноземним студентам. В усіх університетах існують міжнародні відділи, які допомагають учням під час їх перебування в країні.

- Вартість навчання в Австралії на 35 – 40% нижча, ніж у Європі та США.

- Вартість проживання в Австралії на 15-20% нижча, ніж в інших англомовних країнах.

- Українські студенти старші за 16 років можуть легально підробляти у вільний від навчання час (не більше 20 годин на тиждень), заробляючи при цьому \$ 10-15 на годину. Зароблених грошей вистачає на оплату витрат на проживання та харчування.

- Студенти, які успішно закінчили навчальні заклади Австралії, отримують хорошу перспективу працевлаштування за отриманою спеціальністю.

- Австралія – екологічно благополучна країна. Тут унікальний клімат і неповторний рослинний і тваринний світ.

- Австралія – країна безпечна для проживання та перебування іноземних студентів. Показники злочинності тут одні з найнижчих у світі.

- Австралійські закони гарантують збереження внесків, заплачених за навчання, і те, що курси, запропоновані іноземним студентам, відповідають високому освітньому рівню.

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Ausztráliai tanulási lehetőségek külföldiként**

Ausztráliának kiváló oktatási rendszere van. Az ausztrál oktatás világszinten elismert és az itt szerzett képesítéseket nem csak angol nyelvterületen, hanem a világ számos országában elfogadják illetve értékelik a munkaadók és az oktatási intézmények. Az egyetemi oktatás különösen kiemelkedő, több ausztrál egyetem előkelő helyet foglal el a nemzetközi ranglistákon. A kontinentális ország harmadik legfontosabb exportcikke az oktatási rendszere, ezt a külföldi diákok számának rohamos emelkedése is jól szemlélteti. A 22 milliós népességű országban 37 állami, két magánintézmény, valamint több mint 150 felső szintű oktatási intézmény van.

Magas beiratkozási arány és a középiskolát elvégzők száma is. A legutóbbi, 2001-ben készült népszámlálási adatok szerint a középiskola utolsó, 12. évfolyamát az összes diák 73.4 százaléka végezte el sikeresen, a 10–12. évfolyamig eljutók aránya pedig 75.4 százalék. Az ausztrál kormányzat minden szinten rendszeresen felülvizsgálja az oktatást, képzést, hogy gyorsan tudjon reagálni a gazdasági, társadalmi változásokból adódó kérdésekre. Sok esetben kerülnek a nemzetközi figyelem középpontjába az ausztrál oktatási modellek. Oktatási programok fejlesztése területén számos országgal van együttműködési megállapodása Ausztráliának.

Az ausztrál felsőoktatási politikában kiemelt szerepet kap az egyetemek nemzetköziesítése. A legnagyobb számban kínaiak, indiaiak és koreaiak képviseltették magukat. A külföldi hallgatók körében a pénzügy és menedzsment, az informatikai és a műszaki képzések a legnépszerűbb területek. Ausztráliában tanul a harmadik legtöbb külföldről érkezett diák az Egyesült Államok és az Egyesült Királyság után, annak ellenére, hogy a lakossága csupán 23 millió. Nem túl meglepő annak fényében, hogy a 100 legjobb egyetem közül 7 Ausztráliában található.

Bármely egyetemet is választja a külföldi hallgató, az alábbi intézmények az ausztrál felsőoktatás legjobbjaiként szerepelnek a köztudatban és a ranglistákon, így a hallgató biztos lehet abban, hogy tudástárát csak gazdagítani fogja, hiszen az ausztrál felsőoktatás legtöbb intézményének mottója a kutatásalapú oktatás.

Az ausztrál felsőoktatás abban a megtiszteltetésben részesült, hogy a 2010 szeptemberében közzétett a US News és a World Report által legjobbnak ítélt 20 intézmény ranglistáján több felsőoktatási intézményét látta viszont. A rangsorolás összeállításában társ volt a Quacquarelli Symonds – a világ egyetemeit értékelő intézmény – melynek segítségével különböző szempontokat vettek

figyelembe az összeállítók. A 20-as ranglista tartalmazza az ausztrál felsőoktatás intézményeinek legjobbait, amelyek vonzóak lehetnek a külföldi hallgatók számára. A ranglista összeállításának alapjaként az ausztrál felsőoktatás két nagyon fontos szempontja állt: az iskola nemzetközi hírneve és az intézmény világszintű vonzereje hallgatók és oktatók számára egyaránt. Az ausztrál felsőoktatás öt legjobb intézményének ranglistája, amit a fent említett szempontok és az azt kiegészítő tényezők alapján állítottak össze, a következő:

Az Australian National University (ANU) az akadémiai szféra úgy ismeri, mint a világ legjobb innovatív oktatás-kutatás egyetemét, mivel az ANU a kutatóorientált kvalifikációk és oklevelek egyedi palettáját kínálja. Ez ténylegesen az ausztrál felsőoktatás krémje.

University of Sydney ugyancsak az ausztrál felsőoktatás vezető kutatóorientált intézményei közé tartozik. Hallgatóinak egyötöde külföldi kutató, aki Ausztráliába jött tudástárát gazdagítani.



University of Melbourne ugyancsak az ausztrál felsőoktatás öt legjobb intézményének egyike, diplomás kurzusok és vezető programok széles választékát kínálja úgy professzionális, mind iskolai környezetben. A University of Melbourne Victoria legrégebbi egyeteme.

University of Queensland (UQ) egyik ismeretetőjele a nemzetközileg elismert egyetemi kar, amelynek tagjait sokszorosan díjazták az évek során. A UQ ugyanakkor ismert jól felszerelt egyetemi központjáról, ami ténylegesen játékosá és élvezetessé varázsolja az ausztrál felsőoktatás egészét a külföldi diákok számára is.

University of New South Wales (UNSW) mottója: Scientia manu et mente (magyarul: Kéz és elme a tudás atyja) egy mondatban összegzi miért az itt diplomázott hallgatókat keresik a fejezőleges cégek és miért jutalmazták őket a munkaadók a legnagyobb fizetéssel.

Az ausztráliában továbbtanulni szándékozó külföldi hallgató számára a fent említett és további vezető oktatási intézmények mind elérhetőek.



Kis túlzással élve mindenki megtalálhatja a neki való tanfolyamot, ugyanis 1100 intézet kínál 22000 kurzust. A mennyiség nem megy a minőség rovására, ugyanis az Universitas 2012 U21 Ranking of National Higher Education Systems felmérésén a nyolcadik helyezést érte el az ország, olyan államokat megelőzve, mint Németország, Japán vagy Hollandia. Az ausztrál kormány évente 200 millió ausztrál dollár ösztöndíjat biztosít az érkező külföldi diákoknak. Láthatjuk, hogy minél több tehetséges fiatal igyekszik az állam az országba csalogatni. Igazán csábító ajánlat annak fényében, hogy a természettudományok, matematika, mezőgazdaság és egyéb területeken van olyan ausztrál egyetem, amely a top 50-ben van.

Ennek az előrelátó politikának meg is van az eredménye: eddig 2, 5 millió külföldi diák tanult Ausztráliában, akik közül sokan a legjobbak közé tartoznak szakmájukban. Az ország viszonylag fiatal volta ellenére 15 Nobel-díjossal büszkélkedhet és naponta több mint 1 milliárd ember használ olyan ausztrál találmányokat, mint a Wi-Fi, a repülőgépek fekete dobozai, penicillin és a méhnyakrák elleni vakcina.

Az ausztrál állampolgárok zöme állami képzésben tanulhat, a jövőben elriaszthatja viszont a külföldi fiatalokat, hogy a költségtérítés és a tandíj egyre magasabb.

Az Ausztráliában tanulni szándékozóknak diákvízumot kell kérniük, amit az Ausztrál Bevándorlási Hivatal ad ki és a vízum a választott kurzus vagy kurzusok teljes idejére szól. A vízumhoz szükséges a tanfolyam befoglalása, valamint a megélhetéshez szükséges fedezeti összeg felmutatása. ( A tanulmányok ideje alatt heti 20 óra legális munkavállalás engedélyezett és a tanuló közvetlen családtagjai (házastárs/élettárs és 18 év alatti gyerekek) pedig csatlakozhatnak a vízumhoz, így együtt utazhatnak Ausztráliába.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the secondary education in Australia.***

***VIII. Compare the higher education in Australia with that in your country.***

## XII. RELIGION

Religion in Australia is diverse. The Constitution of Australia of 1901 prohibits the Commonwealth government from establishing a church or interfering with the freedom of religion but the country is predominantly Christian with, in an optional question on the 2011 Census, 61.1% of the Australian population declaring some variety of Christianity. Historically the percentage has been far higher and the religious landscape of Australia is changing and diversifying. Also in 2011, 22.3% of the Australians stated "no religion", and a further 9.4% chose not to answer the question. The remaining population is a diverse group which includes Buddhists (2.5%), Muslims (2.2%), Hindus (1.3%), and Jews (0.5%).

Australia's Aboriginal people developed the animist spirituality of the Dreaming and some of the earliest evidence on the Earth for religious practices among humans has been found in the archaeological record of their ancestors. Torres Strait Islander religion bore similarities to broader Melanesian spirituality. While Aboriginal people in Northern Australia would have had some contact with the Maccassans prior to the permanent arrival of the Europeans, the general isolation of indigenous Australian religion ended with the arrival of the first British settlers in 1788, after which the subsequent immigrants and their descendants became predominantly Christian.

While the Church of England originally held a position of privilege in early colonial Australia, a legal framework guaranteeing religious equality began to evolve within a few short decades. From the earliest days of the colony there were Jews and other religious minorities. Events such as the 19th century Australian gold rushes brought adherents of the various Chinese religions; and the requirements of the pre-mechanised era of transport brought specialised workers from British India, such as the mainly Muslim "Afghan Cameleers".

While Australia has a strong tradition of secular government, religious organisations have played a significant role in public life. The Christian churches, in particular, have played an integral role in the development of education, health and welfare services. While less than a quarter of Christians attend church weekly, around a quarter of all school students attend church-affiliated schools, and the Christian festivals of Easter and Christmas are public holidays. The Roman Catholic Church is by far the largest non-government provider of health and education services in Australia, and faith-based aid organisations such as the St Vincent De Paul Society and Salvation Army receive widespread community support. New religious movements are also practiced.

### 1. History

At the time of the British settlement, the Indigenous Australians had their own religious traditions of the Dreaming (as Mircea Eliade put it) "There is a general belief among the indigenous Australians that the world, man, and the various animals and plants were created by certain Supernatural beings who

afterwards disappeared, either ascending to the sky or entering the earth." and ritual systems, with an emphasis on life transitions such as adulthood and death.



*Kolaia man wearing a headdress worn in a fire ceremony, Forrest River, Western Australia.*

Aboriginal Australian religious practices associated with the Dreaming have been practiced for tens of thousands of years.

Prior to the European settlement in 1788 there was contact with the Indigenous Australians from people of various faiths. These contacts were with explorers, fishermen and survivors of the numerous shipwrecks. There have been countless artifacts retrieved from these contacts. The Aborigines of Northern Australia (Arnhem Land) retain stories, songs and paintings of trade and cultural interaction with boat-people from the north. These people are generally regarded as being from the east Indonesian archipelago. There is some evidence of Islamic terms and concepts entering northern Aboriginal culture via this interaction.

Centuries before European sailors reached Australia, Christian theologians already speculated whether this region, located on the opposite side of the Earth from Europe, had human inhabitants and, if so, whether the Antipodes descended from Adam and have been redeemed by Jesus. The prevailing point of view, expressed by St. Augustine of Hippo, was that "it is too absurd to say that some men might have set sail from this side and, traversing the immense expanse of ocean, have propagated there a race of human beings descended from that one first man." A dissenting view, held by the Irish-Austrian St. Vergilius of Salzburg was "that beneath the earth there was another world and other men"; while not much is known about Vergilius' views, the Catholic Encyclopedia speculates that he was able to clear himself from accusations of heresy by explaining that the people of the hypothetical Australia descended from Adam and redeemed by Christ.

By the early 18th century, Christian leaders felt that the natives of the little-known *Terra Australis Incognita* and *Hollandia Nova* (still often thought as two distinct land masses) were in need of conversion to Christianity. In 1724, a young Jonathan Edwards wrote:

... And what is peculiarly glorious in it, is the gospelising the new and before unknown world, that which is so remote, so unknown, where the devil had reigned quietly from the beginning of the world, which is larger – taking in America, Terra Australis Incognita, Hollandia Nova, ... – is far greater than the old world. I say, that this new world should all worship the God of Israel, whose worship was then confined to so narrow a land, is wonderful and glorious!

Christianity came to Australia with the first British settlers on the First Fleet. Of the convicts and settlers most were Roman Catholics (largely Irish convicts) and Anglicans. There were at least 15 Jews in the First Fleet, 14 convicts and one



"free" child. Other groups were also represented, for example among the Tolpuddle Martyrs, were a number of Methodists. The First Fleet brought tensions to Australia fuelled by historical grievances between the Roman Catholics and other Christians, tensions that would continue into the 20th century.

The first chaplain, Richard Johnson, a Church of England cleric, was charged by Governor Arthur Phillip with improving "public morality" in the colony, but he was also heavily involved in health and education. Christian leaders have remained prominent in health and education in Australia ever since, with over a fifth of students attending church schools at the beginning of the 21st century and a number of the nation's hospitals, care facilities and charities having been founded by Christian organisations.

Though free settlers began to arrive in the late 18th century, it was the gold rush of the 1850s that led to radically increased immigration. The new settlers brought with them their religious traditions, such as Irish Catholicism, Scottish Presbyterianism, and English Anglicanism, among others. The Australian Aborigines suffered a tragic decline during this period, as they were dispossessed of their lands and diseases spread among their population. Christian churches organised missions during this period, formally intended to "civilise" Aboriginal communities and spread Christianity. The overall consequences of this activity are still disputed, but it contributed to the decline of indigenous languages and beliefs.

In Western Australia the Anglican clergy saw themselves as pioneering a new society. Besides the usual religious roles of leading church building and public worship they took a major part in charity, education and public debate. They attempted to refashion it in their own ecclesiastical image based on English models.

The Church of England was disestablished in the colony of New South Wales by the *Church Act of 1836*. Drafted by the reformist attorney-general John Plunkett, the act established legal equality for Anglicans, Catholics and Presbyterians and was later extended to Methodists.

Freedom of Religion was enshrined in the Australian Constitution of 1901.

By 1901 apart from the indigenous population, and the descendants of gold rush migrants – Australian society was predominantly Anglo-Celtic, with 40% of the population being Anglican, 23% Catholic, 34% other Christian and about 1% professing non-Christian religions. There was a Lutheran population of German descent in South Australia.

### ***Pre 1901***

Before 1901 a few Muslims arrived. Some Muslim sailors and prisoners came to Australia on the convict ships. Afghans cameleers settled in Australia from the 1860s onwards, a number of them being Sikh. From the 1870s Malay divers were recruited (with most subsequently repatriated). Islam was not a significant minority in this period.

### ***Immigration restrictions***

In 1901, the government passed an act limiting immigration to those of European descent in what came to be known as the White Australia Policy. By effectively limiting the immigration of practitioners of different faiths, this policy ensured that Christianity remained the religion of the overwhelming majority of Australians for the foreseeable future and, indeed, to the present day. The first census in 1911 showed 96% identified themselves as Christian. The tensions that came with the First Fleet continued into the 1960s: job vacancy advertisements sometimes included the stipulation that "Catholics Need Not Apply". Nevertheless, Australia elected its first Catholic prime minister, James Scullin, in 1929 and Sir Isaac Isaacs, a Jew, was appointed governor-general in 1930.

### ***Post 1970***

Further waves of migration and the gradual repeal of the White Australia Policy helped to reshape the profile of Australia's religious affiliations over subsequent decades. The impact of migration from Europe in the aftermath of World War II led to increases in affiliates of the Orthodox churches, the establishment of Reformed bodies, growth in the number of Catholics (largely from Italian migration) and Jews (Holocaust survivors) and the creation of ethnic parishes among many other denominations. More recently (post-1970s), immigration from South-East Asia and the Middle East has expanded Buddhist and Muslim numbers considerably and increased the ethnic diversity of existing Christian denominations.

As has been the trend throughout the world since the 11 September attacks, there has been an increasingly strained relationship between the adherents of Islam and the wider community. Attempts have been made to bridge inter-faith differences. However, the influence of the identity politics as a whole is not to be discounted in these respects, reflected in the conflicting and ambiguous interpretation of the 2005 race riots in Cronulla, near Sydney.

Religious places of worship have made their mark on Australia. Churches or chapels have been constructed in most towns, with many fine cathedrals built in the colonies during the 19th century. Synagogues, mosques and temples are also a feature of most Australian cities. The oldest mosque in Australia was built in 1888. Australia also has one of the largest Buddhist temples in Southern Hemisphere.

## **2. Constitutional Status**

Australian Constitution consists of several documents, including the Statute of Westminster and the Australia Act of 1986, but there is only one reference to religion in the Constitution of the Commonwealth of Australia, signed into law in 1900. Notably, the constitution does not include a Bill Of Rights and, as a result, Australia's fundamental law has been criticised for its lack of explicit protection for several rights and freedoms. However, Section 116

of the 1900 Act to constitute the Commonwealth of Australia (Australian Constitution) provides that:

The Commonwealth shall not make any law for establishing any religion, or for imposing any religious observance, or for prohibiting the free exercise of any religion, and no religious test shall be required as a qualification for any office or public trust under the Commonwealth.

Technically, this article does not affect the states' authority to legislate on religion, nor would it block federal legislation on religion aside from that establishing an official religion of Australia. In practice, though, the government respects these rights and contributes to the generally free practice of religion.

In 1983, the High Court of Australia defined religion as *a complex of beliefs and practices which point to a set of values and an understanding of the meaning of existence*. The ABS 2001 Census Dictionary defines "No Religion" as a category of religion which has subcategories such as agnosticism, atheism, Humanism and rationalism.

The Human Rights and Equal Opportunity Commission (HREOC) is able to inquire into allegations of discrimination on religious grounds. HREOC's 1998 addressing the human right to freedom of religion and belief in Australia against article 18 of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights stated that *despite the legal protections that apply in different jurisdictions, many Australians suffer discrimination on the basis of religious belief or non-belief, including members of both mainstream and non-mainstream religions, and those of no religious persuasion*.

Many non-Christian adherents have complained to HREOC that the dominance of traditional Christianity in civic life has the potential to marginalise large numbers of Australian citizens. An example of an HREOC response to such views is the *IsmaU project*, which examines possible prejudice against Muslims in Australia since the 11 September 2001 attacks in the US, and the Bali bombings.

### **3. Indigenous Australian Traditions** ***Since British settlement***



*Statue of Christian pastor, Aboriginal activist and former Governor of South Australia, Sir Douglas Nicholls*

European culture and Christianity have had a significant impact on the Indigenous Australians. As in many colonial situations the churches both facilitated the loss of Indigenous Australian culture and religion and also facilitated its maintenance. The involvement of Christians in Aboriginal affairs has evolved significantly since 1788. Around the year 2000, many churches and church organisations officially apologised for

past failures to adequately respect indigenous cultures and address the injustices of the dispossession of indigenous people.

In the Torres Strait Islands, the Coming of the Light Festival marks the day the Christian missionaries first arrived on the islands on 1 July 1871 and introduced Christianity to the region. This is a significant festival for Torres Strait Islanders, who are predominantly Christian. Religious and cultural ceremonies are held across Torres Strait and mainland Australia.

Prominent Aboriginal activist Noel Pearson, himself raised at a Lutheran mission in Cape York, has written that missions throughout Australia's colonial history "provided a haven from the hell of life on the Australian frontier while at the same time facilitating colonisation. Prominent Aboriginal Christians have included Pastor David Unaipon, the first Aboriginal author; Pastor Sir Douglas Nicholls, athlete, activist and former Governor of South Australia; Mum (Shirl) Smith, a celebrated Redfern community worker who, assisted by the Sisters of Charity, work to assist Aborigines.; and former Senator Aden Ridgeway, the first Chairman of the Aboriginal Catholic Ministry. In recent times, Christians such as Fr Ted Kennedy of Redfern, Jesuit human rights lawyer Fr Frank Brennan and the Josephite Sisters have been prominent in working for Aboriginal rights and improvements to standards of living.

#### **4. Abrahamic *Bahá'í Faith***



*Bahá'í House of Worship, Sydney.*

The Bahá'í Faith in Australia has a long history and a growing visible presence in the country since 1922. A Bahá'í House of Worship exists in Sydney, dedicated on 17 September 1961 and opened to the public after four years of construction. The 1996 Australian Census lists Bahá'í membership at just under 9000. The 2001 second edition of *A Practical Reference to Religious Diversity for Operational Police and Emergency Services* added the Bahá'í Faith in its coverage of religions in Australia and noted that the community had grown to over 11,000. The

Association of Religion Data Archives (relying on World Christian Encyclopedia) estimated some 17,700 Bahá'ís in 2005.

#### ***Christianity***

Since the arrival of the first Christian settlers on the First Fleet of British ships in 1788, Christianity has grown to be the major religion in Australia.

Consequently, the Christian festivals of Christmas and Easter are public holidays, the skylines of Australian cities and towns are marked by church and cathedral spires, and the Christian churches have played an integral role in the development of education, health and welfare services in Australia.



*St Mary's Cathedral, Sydney*

The churches with the largest number of members are the Roman Catholic Church, the Anglican Church of Australia and the Uniting Church in Australia, Pentecostal churches are also present with megachurches being found in most states (for example, Hillsong Church and Paradise Community Church). The National Council of Churches in Australia is the main Christian ecumenical body.

Australia has an extensive network of Christian schools and around 20% of children attend Catholic schools.

For much of Australian history, the Church of England in Australia, now known as the Anglican Church of Australia, was the largest religious affiliation, however multicultural immigration has contributed to a decline in its relative position, with the Roman Catholic Church benefiting from the opening of post-war Australia to multicultural immigration and becoming the largest group. The Greek Orthodox Archdiocese of Australia and other congregations associated with non-British cultures have also expanded.

In his welcoming address to the Roman Catholic World Youth Day 2008 in Sydney, the Prime Minister of Australia, Kevin Rudd, said that Christianity had a positive influence on Australia: "It was the" (Christian) "church that began first schools for the poor, it was the church that began first hospitals for the poor, it was the church that began first refuges for the poor and these great traditions continue for the future." Christian charitable organisations, hospitals and schools have played a prominent role in welfare and education since the Colonial times, when the First Fleet chaplain Richard Johnson was credited as "the physician both of soul and body" during the famine of 1790, and was charged with general supervision of schools.

Today, the Roman Catholic education system is the second biggest sector after government schools, with more than 650,000 students (and around 21 per cent of all secondary school enrolments). The Anglican Church educates around 105,000 students and the Uniting Church has around 48 schools. Smaller denominations, including the Lutheran Church also have a number of schools in Australia. There are two Roman Catholic Universities in Australia, Australian Catholic University opened in 1991 following the amalgamation of four Catholic tertiary institutions in eastern Australia and the University of Notre Dame Australia which is based in Perth.

Catholic Social Services Australia's 63 member organisations help more than a million Australians every year. Anglican organisations work in health, missionary work, social welfare and communications; and the Uniting Church does extensive community work, in aged care, hospitals, nursing, family support services, youth services and with the homeless, and especially throughout inland Australia. Christian charities such as the Saint Vincent de Paul Society, the Salvation Army, Anglicare, and Youth Off the Streets receive considerable national support. Religious orders founded many of Australia's hospitals, such as St Vincent's Hospital, Sydney, which was opened as a free hospital in 1857 by the Sisters of Charity and is now Australia's largest not-for-profit health provider and has trained prominent Australian surgeons such as Victor Chang.

Notable Australian Christians have included: Mary MacKillop – educator, founder of the Sisters of St Joseph of the Sacred Heart and the first Australian to be recognised as a saint by the Roman Catholic Church; David Unaipon – an Aboriginal writer, inventor and Christian preacher currently featured on the Australian \$50 note; Archbishop Daniel Mannix of Melbourne – a controversial voice against Conscriptio during World War I and against British policy in Ireland; the Reverend John Flynn – founder of the Royal Flying Doctor Service, currently featured on the Australian \$20 note; and Sir Douglas Nicholls – Aboriginal rights activist, athlete, pastor and former Governor of South Australia.

Sectarianism in Australia tended to reflect the political inheritance of Britain and Ireland. Until 1945, the vast majority of Roman Catholics in Australia were of Irish descent, causing the British majority to question their loyalty to the British Empire. The first Roman Catholic priests arrived in Australia as convicts in 1800, but the Castle Hill Rebellion of 1804 alarmed the British authorities and no further priests were allowed in the colony until 1820, when London sent John Joseph Therry and Philip Connolly. In 1901, the Australian Constitution guaranteed Separation of Church and State. A notable period of sectarianism reemerged during the First World War and the 1916 Easter Uprising in Ireland, but the significance of sectarian division declined dramatically after World War II. There was a growth in non-religious adherence, but also a diversification of Christian churches (especially the growth of Greek, Macedonian, Serbian and Russian Orthodox churches), together with an increase in ecumenism among Christians, through organizations such as the National Council of Churches in Australia.

One of the most visible signs of the historical importance of Christianity to Australia is the prominence of churches in most Australian towns and cities. Among Australia's oldest are Ebenezer Chapel, and the Anglican St Matthew's, Windsor, St Luke's, Liverpool, St Peter's, Campbelltown and St James Church, Sydney, built between 1819 and 1824 by Governor Macquarie's architect, Francis Greenway. St Mary's Cathedral, Sydney was built to a design by William Wardell from a foundation stone laid in 1868, the spires of the cathedral were not finally added until the year 2000. Wardell also worked on the design of St Patrick's Cathedral, Melbourne – among the finest examples of ecclesiastical architecture in Australia. The Anglican St Paul's Cathedral, Melbourne in the

iconic hub of the city opposite Flinders Street Station. Adelaide is known as the "City of Churches", but churches extend far into the Australian Outback, as at the historic Lutheran Mission Chapel at Hermannsburg, Northern Territory. Along with community attitudes to religion, church architecture changed significantly during the 20th century. Urban churches, such as the Wayside Chapel (1964) in Sydney, differed markedly from traditional ecclesiastical designs. In the later 20th century, distinctly Australian approaches were applied at places such as Jambaroo Benedictine Abbey, where natural materials were chosen to "harmonise with the local environment" and the chapel sanctuary is of glass overlooking rainforest. Similar design principles were applied at Thredbo Ecumenical Chapel built in the Snowy Mountains in 1996.

The Christian festivals of Christmas and Easter are national public holidays in Australia. Christmas, which recalls the birth of Jesus Christ, is celebrated on 25 December during the Australian summer (although on 7 January by some Eastern Orthodox) and is an important cultural festival even for many non-religious Australians. The European traditions of Christmas trees, roast dinners, carols and gift giving are all continued in Australia, but they might be conducted between visits to the beach, and Santa Claus is said in song to be drawn on his sleigh by six white boomer kangaroos.

### ***Islam***



*Auburn Gallipoli Mosque was built in the classical Ottoman style by Sydney's Turkish Muslim community.*

The first contacts that Islam had with Australia was when the Muslim fishermen native to Makassar, which is today a part of Indonesia, visited North-Western Australia long before the British settlement in 1788. This contact of South East Asian ethnic groups of Islamic faith can be identified from the graves they dug for their comrades who died on the journey, being that they face Mecca (in Arabia), in accordance with Islamic regulations concerning burial, as well as evidence from the Aboriginal cave paintings and religious ceremonies which depict and incorporate the adoption of Makassan canoe designs and words.

In later history, throughout the 19th century following British settlement, other Muslims came to Australia including the Muslim 'Afghan' cameleers, who used their camels to transport goods and people through the otherwise unnavigable desert and pioneered a network of camel tracks that later became roads across the Outback. Australia's first mosque was built for them at Marree, South Australia in 1861. Between the 1860s and 1920s around 2000 cameleers were brought from Afghanistan and the north west of British India (now Pakistan) and perhaps 100 families remained in Australia. Other outback mosques were established at places like Coolgardie, Cloncurry, and Broken Hill –

and more permanent mosques in Adelaide, Perth and later Brisbane. A legacy of this pioneer era is the presence of wild camels in Outback and the oldest Islamic structure in the southern hemisphere, at Central Adelaide Mosque. Nonetheless, despite their significant role in Australia prior to the establishment of rail and road networks, the formulation of the White Australia policy at the time of Federation made immigration difficult for the 'Afghans' and their memory slowly faded during the 20th century, until a revival of interest began in the 1980s.

In the early 20th century, most Muslims could not legally immigrate to Australia because of the White Australia policy which restricted immigration to the Europeans or those of European descent, very few of whom were Muslim. However, European Muslims from Albania and Bosnia did arrive in numbers especially in the 1920s and 1930s. In 1947, out of 7,579,358 Australian inhabitants, there were 2,704 or 0.04% Muslims.

Successive Australian governments dismantled the White Australia Policy in the Post-WW2 period. From the 1970s onwards, under the leadership of Gough Whitlam and Malcolm Fraser, Australia began to pursue multiculturalism. Australia in the later 20th century became a refuge for many Muslims fleeing conflicts including those in Lebanon, the former Yugoslavia, Iraq, Iran, Sudan and Afghanistan. General immigration, combined with religious conversion to Islam by Christians and other Australians, as well as Australia's participation in UN refugee efforts has increased the overall Muslim population. Around 36% of Muslims are Australian born. Overseas born Muslims come from a great variety of nations and ethnic groups – with large Lebanese and Turkish communities.

Following the 11 September attacks, associations drawn between the political ideology of Osama Bin Laden and the religion of Islam have stirred debate in some quarters in Australia regarding Islam's relationship with the wider community – with some advocating greater emphasis on assimilation, and others supporting renewed commitment to diversity. The deaths of Australians in bombings by militant Islamic fundamentalists in New York in 2001, Bali in 2002–5 and London in 2005; as well as the sending of Australian troops to East Timor in 1999, Afghanistan in 2001 and Iraq in 2003; the arrest of bomb plotters in Australia; and concerns about certain cultural practices such as the wearing of the Burkha have all contributed to a degree of tension in recent times. A series of comments by a senior Sydney cleric, Sheikh Taj El-Din Hilaly also stirred controversy, particularly his remarks regarding "female modesty" following an incident of gang rape in Sydney. Australians were among the targets of Islamic Fundamentalists in the Bali bombings in Indonesia and attack on Australian Embassy in Jakarta and the South East Asian militant group Jemaah Islamiyah has been of particular concern to Australians. The Australian government's mandatory detention processing system for asylum seekers became increasingly controversial after the 11 September attacks. A significant proportion of recent Asylum seekers arriving by boat have been Muslims fleeing the conflicts in Iraq and Afghanistan and elsewhere.



Some Islamic leaders and social commentators claim that Islam has suffered from unfair stereotyping. Violence and intimidation was directed against Muslims and people of Middle Eastern appearance during southern Sydney's Cronulla riots in 2005.

In 2005, the Howard Government established the Muslim Community Reference Group to advise on Muslim community issues for one year, chaired by Ameer Ali. Inter-faith dialogues were also established by Christian and Muslim groups such as The Australian Federation of Islamic Councils and the National Council of Churches in Australia. Australia and Indonesia co-operated closely following the Bali-bombings, not only in law-enforcement but in improving education and cross-cultural understanding, leading to a marked improvement in relations. After a series of controversies, Sheikh Taj El-Din Hilaly retired as Grand mufti of Australia in 2007 and was replaced by Fehmi Naji El-Imam AM.

Today, over 370,000 people in Australia identify themselves as Muslims with diverse communities concentrated mainly in Sydney and Melbourne. Since the 1970s Islamic schools have been established as well as more than 100 mosques and prayer centres. Many notable Muslim places of worship are to be found in Australian cities, including the Central Adelaide Mosque, which was constructed during the 1880s; and Sydney's Classical Ottoman style Auburn Gallipoli Mosque, which was largely funded by the Turkish community and the name of which recalls the shared heritage of the foundation of modern Turkey and the story of the ANZACs. Notable Australian Muslims include boxer Anthony Mundine; community worker and rugby league star Hazem El Masri; cricketer Usman Khawaja and academic Waleed Aly. In 2013, Labor MP Ed Husic became Australia's first Muslim member of Cabinet, briefly serving as Parliamentary Secretary to the Prime Minister and for Broadband in the short lived Second Rudd Government.

## ***Judaism***



*The Great Synagogue, Sydney.*

At least eight Jewish convicts are believed to have been transported to Sydney aboard the First Fleet in 1788, when the first British settlement was established on the continent. An estimated 110,000 Jews currently live in Australia, the majority being Ashkenazi Jews of Eastern European descent, with many being refugees and Holocaust survivors who arrived during and after World War II.

The Jewish population has increased slightly in recent times due to immigration from South Africa and the former Soviet Union. The largest Jewish community in Australia is in

Melbourne, with about 60,000, followed by Sydney with about 45,000 members. Smaller communities are dispersed among the other state capitals.

Following the conclusion of the British colonial period, Jews have enjoyed formal equality before the law in Australia and have not been subject to civil disabilities or other forms of state-sponsored anti-Semitism which exclude them from full participation in public life.

Sydney's gothic design Great Synagogue, consecrated in 1878, is a notable place of Jewish worship in Australia. Notable Australian Jews have included the Sir John Monash, the notable World War I general who opened the Maccabean Hall in Sydney in 1923 to commemorate Jews who fought and died in the First World War and who is currently featured on the Australian \$100 note; and Sir Isaac Isaacs who became the first Australian born governor general in 1930. Sir Zelman Cowen also served as Governor-General, between 1977 and 1982. The Sydney Jewish Museum opened in 1992 to commemorate the Holocaust "challenge visitors' perceptions of democracy, morality, social justice and human rights". Until the 1930s, all synagogues in Australia were nominally Orthodox, with most acknowledging leadership of the Chief Rabbi of the United Kingdom. To this day the vast majority of synagogues in Australia are Orthodox. However, there is a wide range of Orthodox congregations, including Mizrachi, Chabad and Adass Israel congregations. There are also Sephardi congregations.

There had been short-lived efforts to establish Reform congregations as early as the 1890s. However, under the leadership of Ada Phillips, a sustained liberal congregation, Temple Beth Israel, was established in Melbourne. Subsequently another synagogue linked to the United States Reform Movement, Temple Emanuel, was established in Sydney. Following these two congregations, a number of other Liberal synagogues have been founded in other cities.

Since 1992 Conservative (Masorti) services have been held as an alternative service usually in the Neuweg, the smaller second synagogue within Temple Emanuel, Woollahra, Sydney. In 1999, Kehilat Nitzan, Melbourne's first Conservative (Masorti) congregation was established, with foundation president John Rosenberg. The congregation appointed its first rabbi, Ehud Bandel in 2006. In 2010 Beit Knesset Shalom became Brisbane's first Conservative (Masorti) synagogue.

In 2010, the first humanistic Jewish congregation, known as Kehilat Kolenu, was established in Melbourne with links to the cultural Jewish youth movement Habonim Drom. In 2011, a similar congregation was established in Sydney and is known as Ayelet HaShachar. The services are loosely based on the Humanistic Jewish movement in the United States and the musical-prayer group Nava Tehila in Israel.

## 5. Indian Religions

### *Buddhism*



*Nan Tien Temple, Wollongong.*

Although the first definite cases of Buddhist settlement in Australia were in 1848, there has been speculation from some anthropologists that there may have been contact some hundreds of years earlier. Buddhists began arriving in Australia in significant numbers during the gold rush of the 1850s, with an influx of Chinese miners. However, the population remained low until the 1960s. Buddhism is now one of the fastest growing religions in Australia. Immigration from Asia has contributed to this, but some people of non-Asian origin have also become Buddhists. The three main traditions of Buddhism – Theravada, East Asian and Tibetan – are now represented in Australia.

According to the Australian census in 2006, Buddhism is the largest non-Christian religion in Australia, with 418,000 adherents, or 2.1% of the total population. It was also the fastest growing religion in terms of percentage, having increased its number of adherents by 109.6% since 1996.

The Nan Tien Temple, or "Southern Paradise Temple", in Wollongong, New South Wales, began construction in the early 1990s, adopting the Chinese palace building style and is now the largest Buddhist temple in the Southern Hemisphere. The temple follows the Venerable Master Hsing Yun of the Fo Guang Shan Buddhist order.

### *Hinduism*



*Rajagopuram of the Sri Venkateswara Temple, Helensburgh, New South Wales*

Hinduism is a religious minority in Australia with about 275,535 adherents according to the 2011 census. In the 19th century, Hindus first came to Australia to work on cotton and sugar plantations. Many, who remained, worked in small business, as camel drivers, merchants and hawkers, selling goods between small rural communities. Their population increased dramatically from the 1960s and 1970s and more than doubled between the 1996 and 2006 censuses to around 148,000 people. Most were migrants from countries such as Fiji, India, Sri Lanka and South Africa. At present many Hindus are well-educated professionals in the fields of medicine, engineering, commerce and information

technology. Among Australia's best-known Hindus is the singer Kamahl. There are around 34 Hindu temples in Australia. Sri Mandir Temple in multicultural Auburn, Sydney was the first Hindu temple in Australia. It was established in 1977 to meet the needs of the growing Hindu community.



### ***Sikhism***

*Sri Guru Singh Sabha Gurudwara (Temple),  
Glenwood, New South Wales*

The 2011 Australian Census shows about 72,000 followers of the Sikh faith in Australia. Sikhs have been in Australia since the 1830s, initially coming to work as labourers in the cane fields and as cameleers, known as Ghans. Around the start of the 20th century, a number of them were working as hawkers, opening up stores. After World War I, Sikhs in Australia were given rights far greater than other Asians and made use of them by emigrating to Australia and working as labourers. As the decades passed they formed a sizable community in Woolgoolga, where the first Gurdwara, named the First Sikh Temple, was built. Following the end of the White Australia Policy there has been a great increase in the number of Sikhs from a number of countries including India, Malaysia, Fiji, the United Kingdom and Canada.

## **6. Paganism**

Alexandrian Wiccans and Gardnerian Wiccans arrived in Australia from England and the United States around the late 1960s.

In the 2011 census, 32,083 Australians identified their religion as a Pagan religion including 8,413 people who identified their religion as Wicca or Witchcraft.

## **7. Irreligion**

### ***Agnosticism***

Australia is one of the least religious nations in the developed world, with religion not described as a central part in many people's lives. This view is prominent among Australia's youth, who were ranked as the least religious worldwide in a 2008 survey conducted by The Christian Science Monitor. In the 2011 census, the ABS categorized 4,796,800 Australians (22.3%) as having "No Religion", up from 3,706,500 (18.7%) in 2006. This category includes agnosticism, atheism, Humanism, rationalism, "No Religion, " and people who are unaffiliated with any particular religion.

### ***Atheism***

While people with no religion are more than 22% of the Australian population, the Australian Bureau of Statistics does not provide information in

the annual "1301.0 – Year Book Australia" on religious affiliation as to how many people fall into each sub-category. Data on religious affiliation is only collected by the ABS at the five yearly population census. Atheist interests in Australia are represented nationally by the Atheist Foundation of Australia. Humanist interests in Australia are represented nationally by the Council of Australian Humanist Societies. Rationalist interests in Australia are represented nationally by the Rationalist Society of Australia.

The Global Atheist Convention, a prominent atheist event, has been held in Melbourne.

### ***Other***

The 2006 census showed 53 listed groups down to 5000 members (most of them Christian denominations, many of them national versions like Greek, Serbian Orthodox and Assyrian Orthodox. Of the smaller religions, Pagan Religions 29328, Bahá'í at 12,000, Humanism about 7000. Between 1000 and 5000, other than small Christian denominations, are the following religions – Taoist, Druse, Satanism, Zoroastrian, Rationalism, Creativity, Theosophy, Jainism. There are also adherents of Tenrikyo, Shinto, Unitarian Universalism, Eckankar, Cao Dai, Rastafarianism, Pantheism, Scientology and Raelianism.

In general, non-Christian religions and those with no religion, have been growing in proportion to the overall population. With fewer classifications, data from 1996 and 2001 showed Aboriginal religion decreasing from 7000 to 5000 while Bahá'í grew from just under 9000 to over 11,000 and the rest of the "Other" category growing from about 69,000 to about 92,000.

## **TASKS**

### ***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) someone who is related to a person who lived a long time ago, or to a family, group of people etc that existed in the past;
- 2) someone who supports a particular belief, plan, political party etc.;
- 3) someone whose religion is Islam;
- 4) events, powers, and creatures that cannot be explained, and seem to involve gods or magic;
- 5) feeling that something is definitely true or definitely exists;
- 6) someone who has studied theology;
- 7) to move from a higher level to a lower one ;
- 8) to improve yourself, or to take action to improve the way other people think of you or something you have done;
- 9) Jewish religion based on the sacred books known as the Hebrew Scriptures. These writings contain many of the books that are also in the Old Testament of the Christian bible;
- 10) religion of east and central Asia, based on the teaching of Gautama Buddha;
- 11) main religion in India, which includes belief in reincarnation;

12) member of an Indian religious group that developed from Hinduism in the 16th century;

13) belonging to a religion that worships many gods, especially one which existed before the main world religions;

14) someone who believes that people cannot know whether God exists or not;

15) official process of counting a country's population and finding out about the people.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Australian religion ended with the arrival of the first British settlers in 1788. It is known that all the subsequent immigrants and their descendants have been predominantly Catholic.

2. Events such as the 19th century Australian gold rush brought adherents of the various Muslim religions; and the requirements of the pre-mechanised era of transport brought specialised workers from British India, such as the mainly Muslim "Afghan Cameleers".

3. The Christian churches have played an integral role in the development of education, health and welfare services. While less than a quarter of Christians attend church weekly, around a quarter of all school students attend church-affiliated schools, and the Christian festivals of Easter and Christmas are public holidays.

4. The Roman Christian Church is by far the largest non-government provider of health and education services in Australia, and faith-based aid organisations such as the St Vincent De Paul Society and Salvation Army receive widespread community support.

5. There is a general belief among the indigenous Australians that the world, man, and the various animals and plants were created by certain Supernatural beings who afterwards disappeared, either ascending to the sky or entering the earth.

6. Centuries before European sailors reached Australia, Christian theologians already speculated whether this region, located on the opposite side of the Earth from Asia, had human inhabitants and, if so, whether the Antipodes descended from Adam and have been redeemed by Jesus.

7. By the early 18th century, Christian leaders felt that the natives of the little-known *Terra Australis Incognita* and *Hollandia Nova* (still often thought as two distinct land masses) were in need of conversion to Catholicism.

8. In Western Australia the Anglican clergy saw themselves as pioneering a new society. Besides the usual religious roles of leading church building and public worship they took a major part in charity, education and public debate.

9. The Jewish population has increased slightly in recent times due to immigration from South Africa and the former Soviet Union. The largest Jewish

community in Australia is in Sydney, with about 60,000, followed by Canberra with about 45,000 members.

10. At least eight Jewish convicts are believed to have been transported to Sydney aboard the First Fleet in 1788, when the first British settlement was established on the continent.

11. According to the Australian census, Paganism is the largest non-Christian religion in Australia, with 418,000 adherents, or 2.1% of the total population.

12. Although the first definite cases of Buddhist settlement in Australia were in 1848, there has been speculation from some anthropologists that there may have been contact some hundreds of years earlier. Buddhists began arriving in Australia in significant numbers during the gold rush of the 1850s, with an influx of French miners.

13. In the 19th century, Hindus first came to Australia to serve in the army. Many who remained worked in small business, as camel drivers, merchants and hawkers, selling goods between small rural communities.

14. Sikhs have been in Australia since the 1830s, initially coming to work as labourers in the cane fields and as cameleers, known as Ghans. Around the start of the 20th century, a number of them were working as hawkers, opening up stores.

15. In general, non-Christian religions and those with no religion, have been decreasing in proportion to the overall population.

**III. Read the text about Aboriginal Religion. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**



### ***Aboriginal Ceremony.***

Aboriginal religion, like many other religions, 1 \_\_\_\_ having a god or gods who created people and the surrounding environment during a particular creation period at the beginning of time. Aboriginal people are 2 \_\_\_\_, but rather than praying to a single god they cannot see, each group generally believes in a number of different deities, whose image is often depicted in some tangible, 3 \_\_\_\_ . This form may be that of a particular landscape feature, an image in a rock art shelter, or in a plant or animal form.

Landscape features may be 4 \_\_\_\_ itself, such as a particular rock representing a specific figure, or they may be the result of something the deity did or that happened to the deity in the Creation Period, such as a river having formed when 5 \_\_\_\_ passed through the area in the Creation Period, or a depression in a rock or in the ground representing the footprint or sitting place of an Ancestral Being.

Aboriginal people do not believe in animism. This is the belief that all natural objects 6 \_\_\_\_ . They do not believe that a rock possesses a soul, but they

might believe that 7 \_\_\_\_ was created by a particular deity in the creation period, or that it represents a deity from the Creation Period. They believe that many animals and plants are interchangeable with human life through 8 \_\_\_\_, and that this relates back to the Creation Period when these animals and plants were once people.

There is no one deity covering all of Australia. Each tribe has its own deities with an 9 \_\_\_\_, just as there is an overlap of words between language groups. Thus, for example, the Wandjina spirits in the northern Kimberley of Western Australia belong to the Ngarinyin, Worora and Wunambal tribes. These Wandjina are responsible for bringing 10 \_\_\_\_, as well as laying down many of the laws for the people. As one travels east, this function is taken over by Yagjagbula and Jabirringgi, The Lightning Brothers of the Wardaman tribe in the Victoria River District of the Northern Territory, then by Nargorkun, also known as Bula, in the upper Katherine River area, and by Namarrgun, the Lightning Man in the Kakadu and western Arnhem Land regions.

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| A) is characterised by         | G) re-incarnation of the spirit or soul |
| B) the Rainbow Serpent         | H) very religious and spiritual         |
| C) a particular rock outcrop   | I) possess a soul                       |
| D) the Wet Season rains        | J) the embodiment of the soul           |
| E) the embodiment of the deity | K) recognisable form                    |
| F) overlap of beliefs          |   |

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

#### **Totemic Beings.**

Totemic ancestors. A Totemic Being would represent the original form of an animal, plant or other object (totem), as it was in the above Creation Period. The concept of a Totemic Being overlaps with that of a Creation Being and an Ancestral Being because the Totemic Being may create the many abundance of species, and people see themselves as being derived from the different Totemic Beings.

Society is divided into the two groups, called moieties, each with a specific Totemic Beings belonging to it. Every person belongs to one or the other moiety. These moieties are further divided into sections or subsections, sometimes based on totemic beings. Every individual has come from at least much one Totemic Being, and these help define a person's origins and connections with the world, their relationships with the past, present and future.

For example, a person connected with a yam (native potato) totem might believe that he was a yam in a previous life, that some yams are his relatives, and that a particularly prominent rock feature in his clan estate represents the embodiment of his yam ancestor. This, or another area nearby, might also be an "increase centre" where rituals are been performed to ensure the maintenance of this food supply. Each clan will have several totems, so this person will have a close



human relative living on the same clan estate who is not of the yam totem. That person might have belong to the kangaroo totem and similarly be related to kangaroos and have another feature of the landscape representing their kangaroo totem.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **ВІРУВАННЯ АВСТРАЛІЙЦІВ**

Релігія австралійських аборигенів багатьма своїми рисами виділяється серед релігій інших народів. У ній відсутні уявлення про надприродний світ, відокремлений від реального. Світ тотемів і світ людей співіснують. Щоправда, за уявленнями деяких племен, світ душі знаходиться десь на півночі або на небі.

Домінуючим у системі вірувань та обрядів є тотемізм. Австралію вважають класичною країною тотемізму. Помітну роль у тотемних віруваннях австралійців відіграють міфи про подвиги тотемних пращурів. Це фантастичні істоти з невизначеними рисами. Міфи подають їх у вигляді тварин або людей з іменами тварин. Пращури виступають поодиночі або групами. Вони полюють, кочують, здійснюють обряди, як і самі австралійці. Тотемні пращури зникають під землею, перетворюючись на скелю, дерево, камінь.

Тотемізм — найважливіша, але не єдина форма релігії австралійців.

Австралійські вірування та міфи містять багато образів тварин. Магічні вірування переважають над анімістичними. Магічна дія на тотем, любовна, лікувальна, метеорологічна і мисливська магії виявляються яскравіше, ніж уявлення про духів і форми звертання до них. Австралійці більше покладаються на власні магічні засоби, ніж на допомогу духів, застосовуючи замість молитов – заклинання.

Австралійські аборигени не сповідують культу предків, а тільки уявлення про міфічних тотемічних пращурів, які мають фантастичні зооантропоморфні образи. Немає і культу природи; небесні явища не обожнюють, їм не приписують надприродних властивостей. Уявлення про надприродні властивості природних явищ пов'язані не з культом природи, а з тотемізмом.

У них майже немає космогонічних міфів. Міфологія австралійців не пояснює походження світу, Землі, неба. Вони переконані, що Всесвіт існував вічно, не мав визначеної форми і був порожнім. Міфи розповідають про подвиги героїв, походження тотемічних груп та митарства (мандри) тотемічних предків.

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **A leggyorsabban növekvő ausztrál vallás**

Ausztrália toleráns, befogadó ország. Társadalmát a legkülönbözőbb háttérrel rendelkező emberek alakították. Történelme során bevándorlók

érkeztek Ausztráliába Vietnámból, Kínából, Görögországból és az Egyesült Királyságból és ez csak négy a bevándorlás szempontjából legfontosabb tíz ország közül. Az ausztrál nemzeti identitásnak meghatározó eleme a kulturális sokféleség. Ennek a sokféleségnek az egyik példája lehet a különböző vallás terjedése az országban. Ausztrália elfogadja és tiszteletben tartja minden ausztrál azon jogát, hogy kifejezésre juttassa és megossza másokkal saját kulturális örökségét.

Több mint 500 törzs élt Ausztráliában az európai gyarmatosítás idején, napjainkban ebből még 400 létezik Közép- és Észak-Ausztráliában, túlnyomó részük a civilizációtól még most is érintetlen. A legnagyobb Aboriginal közösségek Közép-Ausztráliában élnek. Hitüket tekintve az őslakosok azt vallják, hogy az idők kezdetén volt egy földből kiemelkedő teremtmény, aki létrehozta a növény- és állatvilágot. Ez hasonló a keresztény valláshoz, mely szerint az Isten 6 nap alatt megteremtette a világot. A bennszülöttek a teremtés időszakát Dreamtime-nak hívják. Az ezutáni időszakot, amely napjainkban is tart Dreamingnek nevezik. Szemben a katolikus és egyéb egyházak követőivel, az aboriginálok nem járnak templomba vagy mecsetbe, ők spirituális rituálékon gyakorolják vallásukat. A ceremóniákon a testükre szimbólumokat festenek, táncolnak és énekelnek. Az európai gyarmatosítás óta nagyon sokan vallást változtattak. A misszionáriusok a Biblia tanulására kényszerítették őket, így napjainkban is vannak keresztény őslakosok.

Az ausztrálok többsége vallásos, 27% római katolikus, 26% anglikán, 24% egyéb keresztény, 13% felekezet nélküli és a fennmaradó 10% egyéb vallást gyakorol.

A többség Ausztráliában keresztény, bár a sok bevándorlónak köszönhetően szinte minden vallás megtalálható. Templomok, zsinagógák, mecsetek mára már minden nagyvárosban épültek.

Az elmúlt évszázad során ellenben mind a világ egészében, mind egyes régióiban drámai arányeltolódások következtek be. A változások még erőteljesebbek egy-egy földrészen vagy nagy régióon belül.

Meglepő módon a leggyorsabban növekvő ausztrál vallás a buddhizmus. A buddhizmus tipikusan ázsiai vallás. Ázsiában keletkezett, és ma is Ázsiában találjuk a hívők döntő többségét. A gyakorló buddhisták pontos számát országonként meghatározni nagyon nehéz. A keleti vallások, mint például a buddhizmus is, gyakran keverednek helyi vallásokkal. Jelenleg a népesség csupán 2,7%-a (601,290 ember) buddhista, de ez a szám még így is a második legnagyobb a kereszténység után. A növekedése töretlen: 1986-ban csupán 80,387 ember vallotta magát buddhistának, 2001-ben már 370,345.

Az első ausztrál buddhista település 1858-ban alakult. Vannak elméletek, miszerint az ausztrál őslakosok már korábban kapcsolatba kerültek a hinduizmussal és buddhizmussal, de döntő bizonyíték nincs erre. Bizonyos kutatók úgy gondolják, hogy indonézok kapcsolatba kerültek az őslakos kultúrával, és az indiai vallások nyomait vélik felfedezni bennük. Más elméletek kínai hatásról is szólnak.

Tény viszont, hogy az aranyláz hevében kínaiak is érkeztek a kontinensre 1851-ben, akik ott is maradtak, és 1856-ban megépítették a saját kultúrájukra

jellemző templomot, ahol a buddhizmust, a taót és a konfuciánus vallást is gyakorolták. Ekkor még nem volt jelentős a kínai bevándorlás, így papok sem jöttek, ezért nem volt kinek fenntartania a templomot, ami így a XX. század végére eltűnt.

Másfelől is érkeztek buddhista tanokat vallók: egy nagyobb japán csoport érkezett 1867-ben. Srí lankaiak és burmaiak is érkeztek akik terjeszthették volna a vallást, de jelentős számban nem tudtak a kontinensre érkezni a fehéreket preferáló bevándorlási politika miatt.



Jelentős változás az 1970-es években állt be, ekkorra az ausztrál bevándorlási politika is megváltozott, és az ázsiaiak számára is vonzóvá vált az ország. Az első nagy hullám a vietnámi háború után érkezett, és ettől fogva tart a buddhisták számának növekedése.

Az ausztrál nemzeti identitásnak meghatározó eleme a kulturális sokféleség. Ausztrália elfogadja és tiszteletben tartja minden ausztrál azon jogát, hogy kifejezésre juttassa és megossza másokkal saját kulturális örökségét. Ausztrália demokratikus alapjainak és az angol nyelvnek, mint nemzeti nyelvnek a tiszteletben tartása mellett.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the Indigenous Australian traditions.***

***VIII. Compare the Constitutional status of religion in Australia with that of your country.***

### XIII. CULTURE

The culture of Australia is essentially the Western culture influenced by the unique geography of the Australian continent, the diverse input of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples, the British colonisation of Australia that began in 1788, and the various waves of multi-ethnic migration that followed. The predominance of the English language, the existence of a democratic system of government drawing upon the British traditions of Westminster Government, Parliamentarianism and constitutional monarchy, American constitutional and federalist traditions, Christianity as the dominant religion, and the popularity of sports such as cricket and rugby are all evidence of a significant Anglo-Celtic heritage. Australian culture has diverged significantly since the British settlement in 1788.

Aboriginal people are believed to have arrived as early as 60,000 years ago, and evidence of Aboriginal art in Australia dates back at least 30,000 years. Several states and territories had their origins as penal colonies, with the first British convicts arriving at Sydney Cove in 1788. Stories of outlaws like the bushranger Ned Kelly have endured in Australian music, cinema and literature. The Australian gold rushes from the 1850s brought wealth as well as new social tensions to Australia, including the miners' Eureka Stockade rebellion. The colonies established elected parliaments and rights for workers and women before most other Western nations. Federation in 1901 evidenced a growing sense of national identity that had developed over the latter half of the 19th century, as seen in the works of the Heidelberg School painters and writers like Banjo Paterson, Henry Lawson and Dorothea Mackellar. The World Wars profoundly altered Australia's sense of identity, with World War I introducing the ANZAC legend, and World War II seeing a reorientation from Britain to the United States as the nation's foremost major ally. After the second war, 6.5 million migrants from 200 nations brought immense new diversity, and Australians grew increasingly aware of their proximity to Asia. Over time, the diverse food, lifestyle and cultural practices of immigrants have been absorbed into mainstream Australian culture.

Egalitarianism, informality and an irreverent sense of humour have been common themes of cultural commentary, exemplified by the works of C. J. Dennis, Barry Humphries and Paul Hogan. Fascination with the outback has persisted in the arts in Australia.

Major cities host internationally renowned cultural institutions, such as the Sydney Opera House and the National Gallery of Australia. Australia has contributed many artists to music and film internationally, from hard rock's AC/DC to opera's Nellie Melba and Joan Sutherland, as well as Hollywood actors Geoffrey Rush and Nicole Kidman, and designer Catherine Martin. The Australians also participate in a wide variety of sports, including Australian football and a vibrant surf culture.

## 1. Development of Australian Culture



*A Luritja man demonstrating method of attack with boomerang under cover of shield (1920)*

The oldest surviving cultural traditions in Australia—and some of the oldest surviving cultural traditions on earth—are those of Australia's Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples. Their ancestors inhabited Australia between 40,000 and 60,000 years ago, living a hunter-gatherer lifestyle. In 2006, the Indigenous population was estimated at 517,000 people, or 2.5 per cent of the total population. Most Aboriginal Australians have a belief system based on the Dreaming, or Dreamtime, which refers both

to the time when ancestral spirits created land and culture, and to the knowledge and practices that define individual and community responsibilities and identity. Conflict and reconciliation between the indigenous and non-indigenous Australians has been a source of much art and literature in Australia, and ancient Aboriginal artistic styles and iconic inventions such as the boomerang, the didgeridoo and Indigenous Australian music have become symbols of modern Australia.



*Governor Arthur Phillip hoists the British flag over the new colony at Sydney in 1788*

The arrival of the first British settlers at what is now Sydney in 1788 introduced Western civilisation to the Australian continent. Although Sydney was initially used by the British as a place of banishment for prisoners, the arrival of the

British laid the foundations for Australia's democratic institutions and rule of law, and introduced the long traditions of English literature, Western art and music, and Judeo-Christian ethics and religious outlook to a new continent.

The British Empire expanded across the whole continent and established six colonies. The colonies were originally penal colonies, with the exception of South Australia, which was established as a "free colony" with no convicts and a vision for a territory with political and religious freedoms, together with opportunities for wealth through business and pastoral investments.

Contact between the indigenous Australians and the new settlers ranged from cordiality to violent conflict, but the diseases brought by Europeans were devastating to Aboriginal population and culture. According to the historian Geoffrey Blainey, during the colonial period: "Smallpox, measles, influenza and

other new diseases swept from one Aboriginal camp to another ... The main conqueror of Aborigines was to be disease and its ally, demoralisation."

William Wentworth established Australia's first political party in 1835 to demand democratic government for New South Wales. From the 1850s, the colonies set about writing constitutions which produced democratically advanced parliaments as Constitutional Monarchies with Queen Victoria as the head of state.



*South Australian suffragette Catherine Helen Spence (1825–1910).*

Women's suffrage in Australia was achieved in the 1890s. Women became eligible to vote in South Australia in 1895. This was the first legislation in the world permitting women to stand for political office and, in 1897, Catherine Helen Spence became the first female political candidate. Though constantly evolving, the key foundations for elected parliamentary government have maintained an historical continuity in Australia from the 1850s into the 21st century.

During the colonial era, distinctive forms of Australian art, music, language and literature developed through movements like the Heidelberg school of painters and the work of bush balladeers like Henry Lawson and Banjo Paterson, whose poetry and prose did much to promote an egalitarian Australian outlook which placed a high value on the concept of mateship. Games like cricket and rugby were imported from Britain at this time and with a local variant of football, Australian Rules Football, became treasured cultural traditions.

The Commonwealth of Australia was founded in 1901, after a series of referenda conducted in the British colonies of Australasia. The Australian Constitution established a federal democracy and enshrined human rights such as sections 41 (right to vote), 80 (right to trial by jury) and 116 (freedom of religion) as foundational principles of Australian law and included economic rights such as restricting the government to acquiring property only "on just terms". The Australian Labor Party was established in the 1890s and the Liberal Party of Australia in 1944, both rising to be the dominant political parties and rivals of Australian politics, though various other parties have been and remain influential. Voting is compulsory in Australia and government is essentially formed by a group commanding a majority of seats in the Australian House of Representatives selecting a leader who becomes Prime Minister. Australia remains a constitutional monarchy in which the largely ceremonial and procedural duties of the monarch are performed by a Governor General selected by the Australian government.

Australia fought at Britain's side from the outset of World War One and World War Two and came under attack from the Empire of Japan during the latter conflict. These wars profoundly affected Australia's sense of nationhood and a proud military legend developed around the spirit of Australia's ANZAC troops, who came to symbolise the virtues of mateship, courage and endurance for the nation.

The Australian colonies had a period of extensive multi-ethnic immigration during the Australian gold rushes of the latter half of the 19th century, but following Federation in 1901, the Parliament instigated the White Australia Policy that gave preference to British migrants and ensured that Australia remained a predominantly Anglo-Celtic society until well into the 20th Century. The post-World War II immigration program saw the policy dismantled by successive governments, permitting large numbers of Southern European, and later Asian and Middle Eastern migrants to arrive. The Menzies Government (1949-1966) and Holt Government dismantled the legal barriers to multi-ethnic immigration and by the 1970s, the Whitlam and Fraser Governments were promoting multiculturalism. Some States and Territories of Australia retained discriminatory laws relating to voting rights for the Aborigines into the 1960s, at which point full legal equality was established. A 1967 referendum to include all the Aborigines in the national electoral roll census was overwhelmingly approved by voters. In 1984, a group of the Pintupi people who were living a traditional hunter-gatherer desert-dwelling life were tracked down in the Gibson Desert and brought into a settlement. They are believed to have been the last uncontacted tribe.

While the British cultural influence remained strong in the 21st century, other influences became increasingly important. The Hawaiian sport of surfing was adopted in Australia where a beach culture and the locally developed surf lifesaving movement were already burgeoning in the early 20th century.

American pop culture and cinema were embraced in the 20th century, with country music and later rock and roll sweeping Australia, aided by the new technology of television and a host of American content. The 1956 Melbourne Olympics announced a confident, prosperous post-war nation, and new cultural icons like Australian country music star Slim Dusty and dadaist Barry Humphries expressed a unique Australian identity.

Australia's contemporary immigration programme has two components: a program for skilled and family migrants and a humanitarian programme for refugees and asylum seekers. By 2010, the post-war immigration programme had received more than 6.5 million migrants from every continent. The population tripled in the six decades to around 21 million in 2010, including people originating from 200 countries. More than 43 per cent of the Australians were either born overseas or have one parent who was born overseas. The population is highly urbanised, with more than 75% of Australians living in urban centres, largely along the coast. Contemporary Australia is a pluralistic society, rooted in liberal democratic traditions and espousing informality and

egalitarianism as key societal values. While strongly influenced by Anglo-Celtic origins, the culture of Australia has also been shaped by multi-ethnic migration which has influenced all aspects of Australian life, including business, the arts, cuisine, sense of humour and sporting tastes.

## 2. Literature

Marcus Clarke's *For the Term of His Natural Life* (1874) is the best-known Australian convict novel, and a seminal work in the Tasmanian Gothic genre. First published in serial form in 1882, Rolf Boldrewood's *Robbery Under Arms* is a classic of the bushranger genre.

Henry Lawson is widely regarded as one of Australia's greatest writers of short stories, while Banjo Paterson's poems "Clancy of the Overflow" (1889) and "The Man From Snowy River" (1890) remain amongst the most popular Australian bush poems. At one point, Lawson and Paterson contributed a series of verses to *The Bulletin* magazine in which they engaged in a literary debate about the nature of life in the bush. Lawson said Paterson was a romantic and Paterson said Lawson was full of doom and gloom. C. J. Dennis wrote in the Australian vernacular with such works as *The Songs of a Sentimental Bloke*, while Mackellar wrote the iconic patriotic poem "My Country" which rejected prevailing fondness for England's "green and shaded lanes" and declared: "I love a sunburnt country". Significant political poets of the 20th century included Dame Mary Gilmore and Judith Wright. Among the best known contemporary poets are Les Murray and Bruce Dawe.

The legacy of Miles Franklin, renowned for her 1901 novel *My Brilliant Career*, is the Miles Franklin Award, which is "presented each year to a novel which is of the highest literary merit and presents Australian life in any of its phases".



*Patrick White, winner of the 1973 Nobel Prize in Literature*

Patrick White won the inaugural award for *Voss* in 1957; he went on to win the 1973 Nobel Prize in Literature. Other acclaimed Australian authors include Peter Carey, Thomas Keneally, Colleen McCullough, Nevil Shute, Tim Winton, Ruth Park and Morris West. Notable expatriate authors include the feminist Germaine Greer and humorist Clive James.





*The Magic Pudding* by Norman Lindsay is a classical Australian children's story. In terms of children's literature, Norman Lindsay (*The Magic Pudding*) and May Gibbs (*Snugglypot and Cuddlepiefie*) are among the Australian classics. The world's biggest prize in children's literature was received by Australian Shaun Tan, who won the 2011 Astrid Lindgren Memorial Award.

David Unaipon is known as the first indigenous author. Oodgeroo Noonuccal was the first Aboriginal Australian to publish a book of verse. A significant contemporary account of the experiences of Indigenous Australia can be found in Sally Morgan's *My Place*. Contemporary

academics and activists including Marcia Langton and Noel Pearson are prominent essayists and authors on Aboriginal issues.

Charles Bean (*The Story of Anzac: From the Outbreak of War to the End of the First Phase of the Gallipoli Campaign 4 May 1915, 1921*) Geoffrey Blainey (*The Tyranny of Distance, 1966*), Robert Hughes (*The Fatal Shore, 1987*), Manning Clark (*A History of Australia, 1962–87*), and Marcia Langton (*First Australians, 2008*) are the authors of important Australian histories.

### 3. Folklore



*A commemorative statue of John Simpson Kirkpatrick, a famous stretcher bearer who was killed in the Gallipoli Campaign.*

Australian stories and legends have a cultural significance independent of their empirical truth or falsehood. This can be seen in the national obsession with the almost mythological portrayal of bushranger Ned Kelly as a mixture of the underdog and Robin Hood.

Militarily, Australians have served in numerous overseas wars, ranging from World War I to recent regional security missions, such as East Timor, Iraq and Afghanistan. Australian war culture generally consists of sombre reflection and commemoration, focussing on noble sacrifice rather than glory. An annual national holiday, Anzac Day, exists for this purpose. The Australian experience of defeat in the Gallipoli Campaign, the first iconic moment in modern Australia's involvement in war, is viewed by the Australians with both pride for the fighting of the soldiers, and bitterness for the perceived negligence on the part of British commanders. The incidences of bravery and

determination displayed during the campaign for Gallipoli, as well as the mutual respect for their Turkish adversaries led by Kemal Atatürk, are seen as part of the ANZAC spirit. During the First World War, Australian soldiers were considered to be remarkably determined, united and hard-working. Many Australians knew how to ride and shoot prior to enlistment, making them talented recruits, but they were also infamous for their lax attitude towards formal parade ground discipline, a notoriety that the Australian soldiers revelled in. From this the notion of the larrikin Digger emerged, an important part of contemporary Australian identity.

#### 4. Music



##### *Indigenous music*

##### *Didgeridoo performers*

Music is an integral part of Aboriginal culture. The most famous feature of their music is the didgeridoo. This wooden instrument, used amongst the Aboriginal tribes of northern Australia, makes a distinctive droning sound and it has been adopted by a wide variety of non-Aboriginal performers.

Aboriginal musicians have turned their hand to Western popular musical forms, often to considerable commercial success. Pioneers include Lionel Rose and Jimmy Little, while notable contemporary examples include Archie Roach, Kev Carmody, the Warumpi Band, Troy Cassar-Daley and Yothu Yindi. Geoffrey Gurrumul Yunupingu (formerly of Yothu Yindi) attained international success singing contemporary music in English and in the language of the Yolngu. Christine Anu is a successful Torres Strait Islander singer. Amongst young Australian aborigines, African-American and Aboriginal hip hop music and clothing is popular.

The Deadly Awards are an annual celebration of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander achievement in music, sport, entertainment and community.

##### *Folk music and national songs*



*Cover of Old Bush Songs, Banjo Paterson's 1905 collection of bush ballads*

The early Anglo-Celtic immigrants of the 18th and 19th centuries introduced folk ballad traditions which were adapted to Australian themes: "Bound for Botany Bay" tells of the voyage of British convicts to Sydney, "The Wild Colonial Boy" evokes the spirit of the bushrangers, and "Click Go the Shears" speaks of the life of Australian shearers. The lyrics of Australia's best-known folk song,

"Waltzing Matilda", were written by the bush poet Banjo Paterson in 1895. This song remains popular and is regarded as "the nation's unofficial national anthem".

Well-known singers of Australian folk music include Rolf Harris (who wrote "Tie Me Kangaroo Down Sport"), John Williamson, and Eric Bogle whose 1972 song "And the Band Played Waltzing Matilda" is a sorrowful lament to the Gallipoli Campaign. Bush dance is a traditional style of dance of Australia with strong Celtic roots, and it influenced country music. It is generally accompanied by such instruments as the fiddle, accordion, concertina and percussion instruments.

### *Classical music*



*Portrait of Madame Melba by Rupert Bunny*

The earliest Western musical influences in Australia can be traced back to two distinct sources: the first free settlers who brought with them the European classical music tradition, and the large body of convicts and sailors, who brought the traditional folk music of England, Ireland, Scotland and Wales. The practicalities of building a colony mean that there is very little music extant from this early period although there are samples of music originating from Hobart and Sydney that date back to the early 19th century.

Nellie Melba travelled to Europe in 1886 to commence her international career as an opera singer. She became one of the best known Australians of the period and participated in early gramophone recording and radio broadcasting. The establishment of choral societies (1850) and symphony orchestras (1890) led to increased compositional activity, although many Australian classical composers worked entirely within European models. Popular works such as Percy Grainger's "Country Gardens" (1918) were greatly influenced by the folk music of other countries and a conservative British orchestral tradition.

In the mid 20th century, as pressure built to express a unique Australian identity in music, composers such as John Antill and Peter Sculthorpe drew influence from nature and Aboriginal culture, and Richard Meale turned to south-east Asian music. Nigel Butterley combined his penchant for international modernism with his own individual voice.

By the beginning of the 1960s, Australian classical music erupted with influences, with composers incorporating disparate elements into their work, ranging from Aboriginal and south-east Asian music and instruments, to

American jazz and blues, to the belated discovery of European atonality and the avant-garde. Composers like Don Banks, Don Kay, Malcolm Williamson and Colin Brumby epitomize this period. Recently composers including Liza Lim, Nigel Westlake, Ross Edwards, Graeme Koehne, Georges Lentz, Elena Kats-Chernin, Richard Mills, Brett Dean and Carl Vine have embodied the pinnacle of established Australian composers.

Well-known Australian classical performers include: sopranos Dame Joan Sutherland, Dame Joan Hammond, Joan Carden, Yvonne Kenny, and Emma Matthews; pianists Roger Woodward, Eileen Joyce, Geoffrey Tozer, Leslie Howard and Ian Munro; guitarists John Williams and Slava Grigoryan; horn player Barry Tuckwell; oboist Diana Doherty; violinists Richard Tognetti and Elizabeth Wallfisch; cellist David Pereira; orchestras including the Sydney Symphony Orchestra, the Melbourne Symphony Orchestra, the Australian Chamber Orchestra and the Australian Brandenburg Orchestra; and conductors Sir Charles Mackerras, and Simone Young. Indigenous performers like didgeridoo player William Barton and immigrant musicians like Egyptian-born virtuoso Joseph Tawadros have stimulated interest in their own music traditions and have also collaborated with other musicians and ensembles both in Australia and abroad.

### ***Popular music***



*Singer-songwriter Paul Kelly*

Among the brightest stars of early Australian rock and roll was Johnny O'Keefe, whose 1958 hit "Wild One" made him the first Australian rock artist to reach the national charts. While US and British content dominated airwaves and record sales into the 1960s, local successes began to emerge, notably The Easybeats and folk pop group The Seekers. The Bee Gees and AC/DC had their first hits in Australia before going on to international success.

During the 1970s, 1980s and 1990s Australian performers continued to do well on the local and international music scenes, for example Cold Chisel, Skyhooks, INXS, Men at Work, Little River Band, Kylie Minogue, Savage Garden and Silverchair. Bands such as Wolfmother, The Living End, Pendulum and Delta Goodrem have enjoyed success worldwide.

Domestically, John Farnham has remained one of Australia's best-known performers, with a career spanning over 40 years. Singer-songwriter Paul Kelly whose music style straddles folk, rock, and country has been described as the *poet laureate* of Australian music.

The national expansion of ABC youth radio station Triple J during the 1990s has increased the profile and availability of home-grown talent to listeners nationwide. Since the mid-1990s a string of successful alternative

Australian acts have emerged; artists to achieve both underground (critical) and mainstream (commercial) success include You Am I, Grinspoon, Powderfinger and Jet.

Australian country music has developed a style quite distinct from its US counterpart, drawing on Celtic folk and the Australian bush ballad tradition. Pioneers of popular Australian country music include Tex Morton in the 1930s and Smoky Dawson from the 1940s onward. Known as the "King of Australian Country Music", Slim Dusty released over 100 albums in a career spanning almost six decades; his 1957 hit "A Pub With No Beer" was the first Australian single to go gold. Dusty's wife Joy McKean penned several of his most popular songs. Other notable Australian country music performers include John Williamson who wrote the iconic song "True Blue", Lee Kernaghan, Adam Brand and Kasey Chambers. Olivia Newton-John and Keith Urban have attained success in the United States. The Tamworth Country Music Festival is held annually in Tamworth, the "Country Music Capital of Australia". During the festival the Country Music Association of Australia holds the Country Music Awards of Australia ceremony awarding the Golden Guitar trophies.

## 5. Visual arts



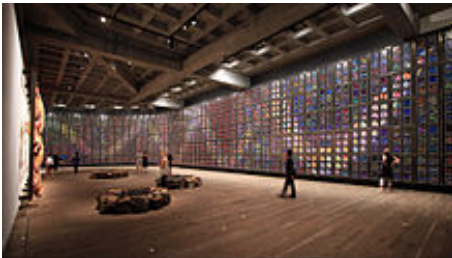
*Bradshaws in the Kimberley region of Western Australia*

The visual arts in Australia date as far back as 60,000 years. Ancient Aboriginal rock art can be found throughout the continent, notably in UNESCO-listed national parks, from Kakadu in the Northern Territory, to Sydney's Ku-ring-gai Chase National Park. 19th century Indigenous spokesman William Barak painted ceremonial scenes, such as corroborees. Led by Albert Namatjira, the Hermannsburg School received national fame in the 1950s for their watercolours of Central Australia. Leading critic Robert Hughes saw contemporary Indigenous Australian art as "the last great art movement of the 20th century". Key exponents such as Emily Kame Kngwarreye, Rover Thomas and the Papunya Tula group use acrylic paints on canvas to depict dreamings set in a symbolic topography of traditional land and culture. Clifford Possum Tjapaltjarri's *Warlugulong* (1977) typifies this style, popularly known as "dot painting". Art is important both culturally and economically to Indigenous society; central Australian Indigenous communities have "the highest per capita concentrations of artists anywhere in the world". Issues of race and identity are raised in the works of many 'urban' Indigenous artists, including Gordon Bennett and photographer Tracey Moffatt.



*Shearing the Rams (1890) by Heidelberg School artist Tom Roberts*

John Glover and Eugene von Guerard were among the foremost landscape painters during the colonial era. The origin of a distinctly Australian school of painting is often associated with Heidelberg School of the late 1800s. Major figures of the movement include Tom Roberts, Arthur Streeton and Frederick McCubbin. Like the French Impressionists they painted *en plein air*, and sought to capture the intense light and unique colours of the Australian bush. Popular works such as McCubbin's *Down on His Luck* (1889) and Roberts' *Shearing the Rams* (1890) defined an emerging sense of national identity in the lead-up to Federation. Civic monuments to national heroes were erected; an early example is Charles Summers' 1865 statue of the ill-fated explorers Burke and Wills, located in Melbourne.



*Sidney Nolan's Snake (1972), held at the Museum of Old and New Art*

Among the first Australian artists to gain a reputation overseas was the impressionist John Peter Russell in the 1880s. He and Charles Conder of Heidelberg School were the only Australian painters known to have close links with the European avant-garde at the time. Other notable expatriates include Rupert Bunny, a salon painter of sensual portraits, and sculptor Bertram Mackennal, known for his commissioned works in Australia and abroad.

Heidelberg's tradition lived on in Hans Heysen's imagery of gum trees. Roy de Maistre and Grace Cossington Smith were pioneers of modernism in Australia. Jessie Traill and Margaret Preston were accomplished printmakers; the latter artist advocated for a modern national art based on Aboriginal designs.

The conservative art establishment largely opposed modern art, as did the Lindsays and Australian Tonalists. Controversy over modern art in Australia reached a climax when William Dobell won the 1943 Archibald Prize for portraiture. Despite such opposition, new artistic trends grew in popularity.

Photographer Max Dupain created bold modernist compositions of Sydney beach culture. Sidney Nolan, Arthur Boyd, Joy Hester and Albert Tucker were members of the Angry Penguins, a group of expressionists who revived Australian landscape painting through the use of myth, folklore and personal symbolism. Elements of surrealism were used to evoke the strange disquiet of the outback, exemplified in Nolan's iconic Ned Kelly series and Russell Drysdale's 1948 masterpiece *The Cricketers*. The post-war landscapes of Fred Williams, Ian Fairweather and John Olsen border on abstraction, while the Antipodeans group and Brett Whiteley further explored the possibilities of figurative painting.

Pro Hart's output of Australianiana and Ken Done's Sydney Harbour views are widely known through reproductions. Michael Leunig developed a popular style

of poetic cartoons. Public artworks have sprung up in unlikely places, from the annual Sculpture by the Sea exhibitions at Bondi and Cottesloe Beach, to the rural folk art of "Australia's big things". Australian street art flourished at the turn of the 21st century, particularly in Melbourne.

Major arts institutions in Australia include the National Gallery of Victoria in Melbourne, the National Gallery of Australia, National Museum of Australia and National Portrait Gallery in Canberra, and the Art Gallery of New South Wales in Sydney. The Museum of Old and New Art in Hobart is the Southern Hemisphere's largest private museum.

## 6. Theatre

The ceremonial dances of Indigenous Australians recount stories of the Dreamtime and have been performed for thousands of years. European traditions came to Australia with the First Fleet in 1788, with the first performance being carried out in 1789 by convicts. In 1988, the year of Australia's bicentenary, the circumstances of the foundations of Australian theatre were recounted in Timberlake Wertenbaker's play *Our Country's Good*.



*The Princess Theatre in Melbourne*

Hobart's Theatre Royal opened in 1837 and is Australia's oldest continuously operating theatre. Inaugurated in 1839, the Melbourne Athenaeum is one of Melbourne's oldest cultural institutions, and Adelaide's Queen's Theatre, established in 1841, is today the oldest purpose-built theatre on the mainland.

The mid-19th century gold rushes provided funds for the construction of grand theatres in the Victorian style, such as the Princess Theatre in Melbourne, established in 1854.

After Federation in 1901, theatre productions evidenced the new sense of national identity. *On Our Selection* (1912), based on the stories of Steele Rudd, portrays a pioneer farming family and became immensely popular. Sydney's grand Capitol Theatre opened in 1928 and after restoration remains one of the nation's finest auditoriums.

In 1955, *Summer of the Seventeenth Doll* by Ray Lawler portrayed resolutely Australian characters and went on to international acclaim. That same year, young Melbourne artist Barry Humphries performed as Edna Everage for the first time at Melbourne University's Union Theatre. His satirical stage creations, notably Dame Edna and Les Patterson, became Australian cultural icons. Humphries also achieved success in the USA with tours on Broadway and has been honoured in Australia and Britain.

Founded in Sydney 1958, the National Institute of Dramatic Art boasts famous alumni including Cate Blanchett, Mel Gibson and Hugo Weaving. Construction of the Adelaide Festival Centre began in 1970 and South Australia's Sir Robert Helpmann became director of the Adelaide Festival of Arts.

The new wave of Australian theatre debuted in the 1970s. The Belvoir St Theatre presented works by Nick Enright and David Williamson. The Sydney Opera House, inaugurated in 1973, is the home of Opera Australia and the Sydney Theatre Company.

The Bell Shakespeare Company was created in 1990. A period of success for Australian musical theatre came in the 1990s with the debut of musical biographies of Australian music singers Peter Allen (*The Boy From Oz* in 1998) and Johnny O'Keefe (*Shout! The Legend of The Wild One*).

In *The One Day of the Year*, Alan Seymour studied the paradoxical nature of the ANZAC Day commemoration by the Australians of the defeat of the Battle of Gallipoli. *Ngapartji Ngapartji*, by Scott Rankin and Trevor Jamieson, recounts the story of the effects on the Pitjantjatjara people of nuclear testing in the Western Desert during the Cold War. It is an example of the contemporary fusion of traditions of drama in Australia with Pitjantjatjara actors being supported by a multicultural cast of Greek, Afghan, Japanese and New Zealand heritage.

## 7. Cinema



*Actor playing the bushranger Ned Kelly in The Story of the Kelly Gang (1906), the world's first feature film*

Australia's first dedicated film studio, the Limelight Department, was created by The Salvation Army in Melbourne in 1898, and is believed to be the world's first. The world's first feature-length film was the 1906 Australian production *The Story of the Kelly Gang*. Tales of bushranging, gold mining, convict life and the colonial frontier dominated the silent film era of Australian cinema. Filmmakers such as Raymond Longford and W. J. Lincoln based many of their productions on Australian novels, plays, and even paintings. An enduring classic is Longford and Lottie Lyell's 1919 film *The Sentimental Bloke*, adapted from the 1915 poems by C. J. Dennis. After such early successes, Australian cinema suffered from the rise of Hollywood.

In 1933, *In the Wake of the Bounty* was directed by Charles Chauvel, who cast Errol Flynn as the leading actor. Flynn went on to a celebrated career in Hollywood. Chauvel directed a number of successful Australian films, the last being 1955's *Jedda*, which was notable for being the first Australian film to be shot in colour, and the first to feature Aboriginal actors in lead roles and to be entered at the Cannes Film Festival. It was not until 2006 and Rolf de Heer's *Ten Canoes* that a major feature length drama was shot in an indigenous language.

Ken G. Hall's 1942 documentary feature *Kokoda Front Line!* was the first Australian film to win an Academy Award. In 1976, Peter Finch posthumously became the first Australian actor to win an Oscar for his role in *Network*.

During the late 1960s and 1970s an influx of government funding saw the development of a new generation of filmmakers telling distinctively Australian



stories, including directors Peter Weir, George Miller and Bruce Beresford. This era became known as the Australian New Wave. Films such as *Wake in Fright*, *Walkabout* and *Picnic at Hanging Rock* had an immediate international impact. These successes were followed in the 1980s with the historical epic *Gallipoli*, the romantic drama *The Man From Snowy River*, the comedy *Crocodile Dundee*, and the post-apocalyptic Mad Max series.



*Founded in 1993, Tropfest is the world's largest short film festival.*

The 1990s saw a run of successful comedies including *Muriel's Wedding* and *Strictly Ballroom*, which helped launch the careers of Toni Collette and Baz Luhrmann respectively. Australian humour features prominently in Australian film, with a strong tradition of self-mockery, from the *Ozploitation* style of the Barry McKenzie *expat-in-Europe* movies of the 1970s, to the Working Dog Productions' 1997 homage to suburban *The Castle*, starring Eric Bana in his debut film role. Comedies like the barn yard animation *Babe* (1995), directed by Chris Noonan; Rob Sitch's *The Dish* (2000); and Stephan Elliott's *The Adventures of Priscilla, Queen of the Desert* (1994) all feature in the top ten box-office list. During the 1990s, a new crop of Australian stars were successful in Hollywood, including Russell Crowe, Cate Blanchett and Heath Ledger. Between 1996 and 2013, Catherine Martin won four Academy Awards for her costume and production designs, the most for any Australian. *Saw* (2004) and *Wolf Creek* (2005) are credited with the revival of Australian horror.

The domestic film industry is also supported by the US producers who produce in Australia following the decision by Fox head Rupert Murdoch to utilise new studios in Melbourne and Sydney where filming could be completed well below US costs. Notable productions include *The Matrix*, *Star Wars* episodes II and III, and *Australia* starring Nicole Kidman and Hugh Jackman.

## 8. Architecture



*Sydney Opera House (foreground) and Sydney Harbour Bridge*

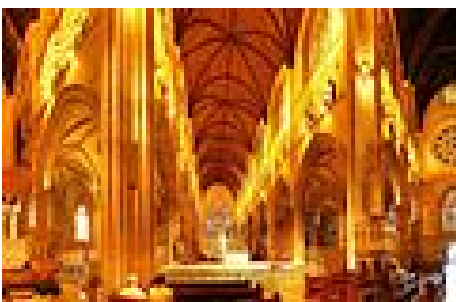
Australia has three architectural listings on UNESCO's World Heritage list: Australian Convict Sites (comprising a collection of separate sites around Australia, including Hyde Park Barracks in Sydney, Port Arthur in Tasmania, and Fremantle Prison in Western Australia); the Sydney Opera House; and the Royal Exhibition Building in Melbourne. Contemporary Australian architecture includes a number of other iconic

structures, including the Harbour Bridge in Sydney and Parliament House, Canberra. Significant architects who have worked in Australia include Governor Lachlan Macquarie's colonial architect, Francis Greenway; the ecclesiastical architect William Wardell; the designer of Canberra's layout, Walter Burley Griffin; the modernist Harry Seidler; and Jørn Utzon, designer of the Sydney Opera House. The National Trust of Australia is a non-governmental organisation charged with protecting Australia's built heritage.



*Victorian era buildings in Collins Street, Melbourne*

Evidence of permanent structures built by the Indigenous Australians before the European settlement in Australia in 1788 is limited. Much of what they built was temporary, and was used for housing and other needs. As a British colony, the first European buildings were derivative of the European fashions of the time. Tents and wattle and daub huts preceded more substantial structures. Georgian architecture is seen in early government buildings of Sydney and Tasmania and the homes of the wealthy. While the major Australian cities enjoyed the boom of the Victorian era, the Australian gold rushes of the mid-19th century brought major construction works and exuberant Victorian architecture to the major cities, particularly Melbourne, and regional cities such as Ballarat and Bendigo. Other significant architectural movements in Australian architecture include the Federation style at the turn of the 20th century, and the modern styles of the late 20th century which also saw many older buildings demolished. The Queenslander is a term which denotes the primarily residential style of warm climate architecture developed in Queensland and northern parts of New South Wales.



*Interior of St Mary's Cathedral, Sydney*

Religious architecture is also prominent throughout Australia, with large Anglican and Catholic cathedrals in every major city and Christian churches in most towns. Notable examples include St Patrick's Cathedral, Melbourne and St Mary's Cathedral, Sydney. Other houses of worship are also common, reflecting the cultural diversity existing in Australia; the oldest Islamic structure in the Southern Hemisphere is the Central Adelaide Mosque (built in the 1880s), and one of the Southern Hemisphere's largest Buddhist Temples is Wollongong's Nan Tien Temple. Sydney's Gothic-style Great Synagogue was consecrated in 1878. Historically, Australian pubs have also been noted for often distinctive designs.

Significant concern was raised during the 1960s, with developers threatening the destruction of historical buildings, especially in Sydney. Heritage

concerns led to union-initiated *green bans*, which saved significant examples of Australia's architectural past. Green bans helped to protect historic 18th-century buildings in The Rocks from being demolished to make way for office towers, and prevented the Royal Botanic Gardens from being turned into a car park for the Sydney Opera House.

## 9. Cuisine



*Bush tucker harvested in Alice Springs*

Contemporary Australian cuisine combines British and indigenous origins with Mediterranean and Asian influences. Australia's abundant natural resources allow access to a large variety of quality meats, and to barbecue beef or lamb in the open air is considered a cherished national tradition.

The great majority of Australians live close to the sea and Australian seafood restaurants have been listed among the world's best.

Bush tucker refers to a wide variety of plant and animal foods native to the Australian bush: bush fruits such as kakadu plums, finger limes and desert quandongs; fish and shellfish of Australia's saltwater river systems; and bush meats including emu, crocodile and kangaroo. Many of these are still seasonally hunted and gathered by the Indigenous Australians, and are undergoing a renaissance of interest on contemporary Australian menus. The macadamia nut is the most famous bushfood plant harvested and sold in large quantities.



*Sheep grazing in rural Australia.*

Early British settlers brought familiar meats and crops with them from Europe and these remain important in the Australian diet. The British settlers found some familiar game – such as swan, goose, pigeon, and fish – but the new

settlers often had difficulty adjusting to the prospect of native fauna as a staple diet. They established agricultural industries producing more familiar Western style produce. Queensland and New South Wales became Australia's main beef cattle producers, while dairy cattle farming is found in the southern states, predominantly in Victoria. Wheat and other grain crops are spread fairly evenly throughout the mainland states. Sugar cane is also a major crop in Queensland and New South Wales. Fruit and vegetables are grown throughout Australia. "Meat and three veg", fish and chips, and the Australian meat pie continue to represent traditional meals for many Australians. The post-World War II multicultural immigration programme brought new flavours and influences, with waves of immigrants from Greece, Italy, Vietnam, China, and elsewhere bringing about diversification of the typical diet consumed.

Australia's 11 million square kilometre fishing zone is the third largest in the world and allows for easy access to seafood which significantly influences Australian cuisine. Clean ocean environments produce high quality seafoods. Lobster, prawns, tuna, salmon and abalone are the main ocean species harvested commercially, while aquaculture produces more than 60 species for consumption, including oysters, salmonoids, southern bluefin tuna, mussels, prawns, barramundi, yellowtail kingfish, and freshwater finifish. While inland river and lake systems are relatively sparse, they nevertheless provide some unique fresh water game fish and crustacea suitable for dining. Fishing and aquaculture constitute Australia's fifth most valuable agricultural industry after wool, beef, wheat and dairy.

Vegemite is a well-known spread originating from Australia, though currently produced by the US-owned food company Kraft Foods. Iconic Australian desserts include pavlova and lamingtons. ANZAC biscuits recall the diet of Australia's World War I soldiers at the Battle of Gallipoli.

### ***Beverages***



*A billycan used for heating water*

Australia's reputation as a nation of heavy drinkers goes back to the earliest days of colonial Sydney, when rum was used as currency and grain shortages followed the installation of the first stills. Despite this reputation, Australia consumes significantly less alcohol per capita than Western and Eastern European nations such as Great Britain, France, Italy and Russia, and Asian nations such as South Korea. James Squires is considered to have founded Australia's first commercial brewery in 1798 and the Cascade Brewery in Hobart has been operating since 1832. Since the 1970s, Australian beers have become increasingly popular globally, with Foster's Lager being an iconic export. Foster's is not however the biggest seller on the local market, with alternatives including Victoria Bitter outselling it.

Billy tea was a staple drink of the Australian colonial period. It is typically boiled over a camp fire with a gum leaf added for flavouring.

The Australian wine industry is the world's fourth largest exporter of wine and contributes \$5.5 billion per annum to the nation's economy. Wine is produced in every state, however, wine regions are mainly in the southern, cooler regions. Amongst the most famous wine districts are the Hunter Region and Barossa Valley and among the best known wine producers are Penfolds, Rosemount Estate, Wynns Coonawarra Estate and Lindemans. The Australian Penfolds Grange was the first wine from outside France or California to win the *Wine Spectator* award for Wine of the Year in 1995.

## 10. Clothing and Apparel



*A swagman in bushman's apparel, wearing a brimmed hat and carrying swag, and billy can.*

Australia has no official designated national dress, but iconic local styles include *bushwear* and *surfwear*. The country's best-known fashion event is Australian Fashion Week, a twice yearly industry gathering showcasing seasonal collections from Australian and Asia Pacific Designers. Top Australian models include Elle Macpherson, Miranda Kerr and Jennifer Hawkins (Miss Universe 2004).

Major clothing brands associated with bushwear are the broad brimmed Akubra hats, Driza-Bone coats and R.M. Williams bushmen's outfitters (featuring in particular: moleskin trousers, riding boots and merino woolwear). Blundstone Footwear and Country Road are also linked to this tradition. Traditionally worn by jackaroos and swagmen in the blow-fly infested Australian outback, the cork hat is a type of headgear strongly associated with Australia, and comprises cork strung from the brim, to ward off insects.

World-famous Australian surfwear labels include Billabong, Rip Curl, Mambo and Quiksilver. Australian surfers popularised the ugg boot, a unisex sheepskin boot with fleece on the inside, a tanned outer surface and a synthetic sole. Worn by the working classes in Australia, the boot style emerged as a global fashion trend in the 2000s.

The slouch hat was first worn by military forces in Australia in 1885, looped up on one side so that rifles could be held at the slope without damaging the brim. After federation, the slouch hat became standard Australian Army headgear in 1903 and since then it has developed into an important national symbol and is worn on ceremonial occasions by the Australian army.

## 11. Attitudes, beliefs and stereotypes

The phrase "the lucky country", coined by Donald Horne, is a reference to Australia's weather, lifestyle, and history. Ironically, Horne was using the term to criticise the complacency of Australian society in the early 1960s.

"Mateship", or loyal fraternity is the code of conduct, particularly between men, although more recently also between men and women, stressing equality and friendship. The value of mateship is sourced in the difficulty of subduing the land. Unlike other cultures based on a nurturing landscape that they seek to protect from others, Australian settlers experienced great hardship and had to support each other in order to survive. The battle against the elements led to the nickname of a member of Australia's working class being the "Aussie battler".

An aspect of the mateship culture on language is that Australians have a propensity for the diminutive forms of names e.g. Hargrave → Hargie; Wilkinson → Wilko; John → Johnno; David → Davo; Hogan → Hoges; James → Jimmy → Jim → Jimbo. This is a display of affection and acceptance rather than belittlement.

One result of the prevalence of the "mateship" culture is that Australian society is stringently anti-hierarchical. The Australians are expected to behave with humility and not think of themselves as better than their peers. Any disloyalty to their "mates" is treated harshly, and is known as the tall poppy syndrome, where people who grow greater than their peers are harshly criticised as being narcissistic, or "up themselves". Even the most successful and beautiful Australians are eager to proclaim how ordinary they are. This egalitarian social system makes Australian society appear "laid-back" or relaxed to visitors. Most forms of address are by first name or nickname, and only children regularly use titles such as "Sir" or "Ma'am" for authority figures.

The mateship culture combined with the original convict and then colonial culture has created an irreverence for established authority, particularly if it is pompous or out of touch with reality. Politicians, or "pollies", are generally disliked and distrusted. Politicians who seek to lead must comply to the views of the egalitarian electorate, who will punish any hint of arrogance or glory-seeking behaviour. Voter turnout at elections had in fact been so low that compulsory voting was introduced for the 1925 federal election.

Mirroring the tall poppy syndrome which brings back to Earth the high fliers, the egalitarian Australian society has a traditional Australian support for the "underdog." Australians will show support for those who appear to be at a disadvantage even when the underdog is competing against fellow Australians, such as in sporting events. Related to the underdog is the belief in a "fair go", which is said to be a key part of Australian culture and Australian society. One accepted definition of a "fair go" in this Australian sense is "a chance, an adequate opportunity. Often used to describe a fair and reasonable course of action". The right to "a fair go" has been found to be the most highly rated value on a recent published survey of the opinion of Australian citizens. This belief sustains bipartisan political support for strong public health and education systems in Australia, as well as equal opportunity legislation to ensure people are not excluded from jobs or positions by their race, gender or sexual orientation. This value is frequently cited by politicians who wish to associate themselves or their party with the positive connotations of this notion. There has been ongoing public and political discussion of the place and future of "the fair go" in Australian society. This is especially frequent with reference to economics issues and policies. The call for "a fair go" is also regularly used by advocates wanting to point out groups who have been overlooked or treated unfairly according to the expectations of treatment by the wider community. Recent examples of this include media presentation of the treatment of illegal immigrants asylum seekers, and refugees, as well as the community campaign in support of "a fair go" for the large group of Australian doctors who have been

classified as "non-vocationally registered general practitioners" (non-VR GPs), and are subject to discriminatory pay and conditions compared to their colleagues, for identical work.

Australia's geographic isolation has led to the idea of cultural cringe, defined by Australian sociologists Brian Head and James Walter as the belief that one's own country occupies a "subordinate cultural place on the periphery", and that "intellectual standards are set and innovations occur elsewhere". As a consequence, a person who holds this belief is inclined to devalue their own country's cultural, academic and artistic life, and to venerate the "superior" culture of another country.

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) curved stick that flies in a circle and comes back to you when you throw it, first used in Australia;
- 2) based on the belief that everyone is equal and should have equal rights;
- 3) poems in general as a form of literature;
- 4) protection given to someone by a government because they have escaped from fighting or political trouble in their own country;
- 5) traditional stories, customs etc of a particular area or country;
- 6) extreme unhealthy interest in something or worry about something, which stops you from thinking about anything else;
- 7) long wooden musical instrument, played especially in Australia;
- 8) short story in the form of a poem or song;
- 9) stringed musical instrument;
- 10) someone who paints pictures;
- 11) name given to someone, especially by their friends or family, that is not their real name and is often connected with what they look like or something they have done;
- 12) people who are the same age as you, or who have the same type of job, social class etc.;
- 13) chance to do something or an occasion when it is easy for you to do something;
- 14) person, team etc that is weaker than the others, is always expected to be unsuccessful, and that is often treated badly;
- 15) someone who has been forced to leave their country, especially during a war, or for political or religious reasons.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. The oldest surviving cultural traditions in Australia—and some of the oldest surviving cultural traditions on earth—are those of Australia's Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples.

2. The arrival of the Americans laid the foundations for Australia's democratic institutions and rule of law, and introduced the long traditions of American literature, Western art and music, and Judeo-Christian ethics and religious outlook to a new continent.

3. During the colonial era, distinctive forms of Australian art, music, language and literature developed through movements like the Heidelberg school of painters and the work of wattle balladeers like Henry Lawson and Banjo Paterson, whose poetry and prose did much to promote an egalitarian Australian outlook

4. Australia's contemporary immigration programme has two components: a programme for unskilled and family migrants and a humanitarian programme for citizens and asylum seekers.

5. Australian stories and legends have a cultural significance independent of their empirical truth or falsehood. This can be seen in the national obsession with the almost mythological portrayal of bushranger Ned Kelly as a mixture of the underdog and Harry Potter.

6. Music is an integral part of Aboriginal culture. The most famous feature of their music is the harp. This wooden instrument, used amongst the Aboriginal tribes of northern Australia, makes a distinctive droning sound and it has been adopted by a wide variety of non-Aboriginal performers.

7. The early Anglo-Celtic immigrants of the 18th and 19th centuries introduced folk ballad traditions which were adapted to Australian themes.

8. Wattle dance is a traditional style of dance from Australia with strong Celtic roots, and influenced country music. It is generally accompanied by such instruments as the fiddle, accordion, concertina and percussion instruments.

9. The visual arts in Australia date as far back as 100,000 years. Ancient Aboriginal rock art can be found throughout the continent

10. Australia's first dedicated film studio, the Limelight Department, was created by The Salvation Army in Melbourne in 1898, and is believed to be the world's third.

11. Contemporary Australian cuisine combines British and indigenous origins with Mediterranean and American influences.

12. The battle against the elements led to the nickname of a member of Australia's working class being the "Aussie battler".

13. One result of the prevalence of the "friendship" culture is that Australian society is stringently anti-hierarchical. Australians are expected to behave with humility and not think of themselves as better than their peers.

14. Australians show support for those who appear to be at a disadvantage even when the underdog is competing against fellow Australians, such as in sporting events.

15. Related to the underdog is the belief in a «unfair go», which is said to be a key part of Australian culture and Australian society. One accepted definition of a "unfair go" in this Australian sense is "a chance, an adequate opportunity, often used to describe a fair and reasonable course of action".



**III. Read the text about the traditional indigenous architecture. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

Traditional Indigenous architecture was domestic – across a range of 1 \_\_\_\_ shelters and residential camps. These varied from temporary windbreaks and wiltjas (shelters) of stringy bark or paper bark to 2 \_\_\_\_ thatched with grass for large families.

The new architecture of the 21st century designed by university-trained Indigenous architects 3 \_\_\_\_ and standing of community life that reflect upon change and identity.



*Meriam house of the Torres Strait Islands. Courtesy of Queensland Museum and Aboriginal Environments Research Centre.*

The materials of construction varied 4 \_\_\_\_ depending on the availability and supply of materials. In cold regions of southeastern Australia, 5 \_\_\_\_ were built. In South Australia, whale bones were used as a framework for structures. In the Western Desert, tree limbs were used for shelter frames and spinifex for the cladding. In the Lake Eyre region, mud was used with grass 6 \_\_\_\_ The types of construction varied from dome frameworks 7 \_\_\_\_ through spinifex-clad arc-shaped structures, to 8 \_\_\_\_, and to elongated, egg-shaped, stone-based structures with a timber frame, and pole and platform constructions. Annual base camp structures, whether dome houses in the rainforests of Queensland and Tasmania or stone-based houses in southeastern Australia, were designed for use over many years by the same family groups.

Dome-shaped shelters extended across Australia, serving as 9 \_\_\_\_ for annual base camps. Well-constructed, grass-clad dome structures were used as permanent camps at Crawley on the Swan River, Western Australia. In the Lake Eyre region, South Australia, mud was used with grass to waterproof the dome shelters and 10 \_\_\_\_ which were constructed in villages.

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| A) substantial round houses                | H) across geographic regions      |
| B) to waterproof dome shelters             | I) tripod and triangular shelters |
| C) stone huts                              | J) made of cane                   |
| D) square stone-walled houses              | K) well crafted and               |
| E) has reflected the desires               | technologically designed          |
| F) circular stone-walled houses            |                                   |
| G) both temporary and permanent structures |                                   |

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

### **Sacred Sites and Dreaming Stories**



*Ludo Kuipers, Joli Laywonga dancing a 'bungkul' traditional dance during the opening of the library at Bamyili School in Barunga, an Aboriginal community 80 km from Katherine in the Northern Territory, 1982.*

In most the stories of the Dreaming, the Ancestor spirits came away to the earth in human form and as they would moved through the land, they created the animals, plants, rocks and other forms of the land that we know but today. They also created the relationships between groups and individuals to the land, the animals and other people.

Once the ancestor spirits had been created the world, they changed into trees, the stars, rocks, watering holes or other objects. These are the sacred places of Aboriginal culture and have special properties. Because the ancestors did not disappear at the end of the Dreaming, but remained in these sacred sites, the Dreaming is never-ending, linking the past and the present, the people and the land.

For Aboriginal the people all that is sacred is in the land. Knowledge of sacred sites is learned by through a process of initiation and gaining an understanding of Aboriginal law. It is, by definition, not public knowledge. This is why the existence of many sites might not be broadcast to the wider world unless they are threatened.

Perhaps the most well-known sacred site in Australia is Uluru. Located in the centre of the Australia, southwest of Alice Springs, the first European explorers named it Ayers Rock. The caves inside down the rock are covered with Aboriginal paintings. In 1985 the Commonwealth Government of Australia returned Uluru to its traditional owners, Pitjantjatjara and Yankunytjatjara people (also known as Anangu).

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

**V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.**

### **КУЛЬТУРА АВСТРАЛІЇ**

На початку історії Австралії архітектура мала суто утилітарний характер. Під час правління губернатора Лаклана Маккуорі каторжник Френсіс Гринуей (1777-1837) був призначений архітектором колонії. Вільям Уорделл (1823-1899) і Едмунд Блекет (1817-1883) були головними

поборниками відродження готичного стилю в Австралії. Уолтер Берлі Гріффін (1876-1937), уродженець Чикаго, здійснив планування столичного міста Канберри і залишився жити в Австралії, де мав великий авторитет. Датський архітектор Йорн Утсон проектував будівлю оперного театру в Сіднеї, яка породжує суперечки і розцінюється як радикальний відхід від традиційного стилю.

Бертрам Маккеннал (1863-1931) був першим відомим австралійським скульптором. Рейнер Хофф (1894-1937) і його учень Ліндон Дедсуел користувалися дуже великою популярністю. Роберт Кліппел прославився як майстер сучасної скульптури, пов'язаної з запровадженням металевих конструкцій.

Першими визначними австралійськими художниками були Том Робертс, Артур Стрітон, Чарльз Кондер, Джон Лонгстаф і Фредерік Мак-Каббін. Зазнавши впливу європейського мистецтва в 1880-х роках, вони сприяли проникненню до Австралії живопису під відкритим небом (плінер). Робертс і Мак-Каббін розвивали реалістичні традиції і писали жанрові сцени. Стрітон зі своєю майстерною передачею кольору і світла слугував прикладом для багатьох поколінь австралійських ландшафтних живописців.

Джордж У. Ламберт (1873-1930) був першим австралійцем, обраним до Королівської Академії. Почавши як імпресіоніст, він незабаром усвідомив, що в основі мистецтва лежить малюнок. Він глибоко вплинув на розвиток національних художніх шкіл і зробив вагомий внесок в австралійське мистецтво портрету.

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **A sokszínű ausztrál kultúra**

Ausztrália őslakosainak képzőművészete és zenéje egyedi és ma is igen népszerű. Az őslakosok közül sokan ajándéktárgyak készítéséből élnek. Különleges hangszereiket a modern zenészek is alkalmazzák, főleg a jazzt bolondítják velük szívesen. Sajnos az őslakosok helyzete nem méltányos, az állam elhanyagolja őket. Sokan közülük rossz körülmények között vagy az utcákon élnek, pedig ők seik lakták a szigetet már negyvenezer évvel ezelőtt. Az ausztrál kultúrát az utóbbi ötven évben erősen befolyásolta az amerikaiak, a szomszédos ázsiai népek és a bevándorlók kultúrája.



Ausztrália kulturális élete nagyon széleskörű és érdekes. Egy hatalmas színes faliszőnyeghez hasonlítható, amelynek sokszínűségét a különböző kultúrák összeolvadásának köszönheti. Itt minden megtalálható amit a világ kultúrája csak kínálhat.

Igy, betonba fúródott fekete ház jelképezi a nyugati kultúra és Ausztrália kapcsolatát Ian Strange, azaz Kid Zoom legújabb installációja. A

“Landed” egy 20-as évekbeli, tipikus ausztrál lakóház pontos mását képezi, ami az Art Gallery Of South Australia előtt süllyed a földbe. A teljesen feketére festett ház egy, az égből lezuhant és a betonba fúródott épület hatását kelti. Nem véletlen az sem, hogy Strange miért pont az intézmény elé helyezte a ház “pusztulását”, meglehetősen erős a kontraszt a neoklasszikus épület és a kisméretű, fából készült ház között, hogy ezzel együtt a nyugati kultúra hatását mutassa be Ausztráliára.

Mára már a filmezés, az opera, a zene, a festészet, a színház, a tánc és az iparművészet területein elért eredményei is nemzetközi elismerést váltottak ki. Több fesztivált is rendeznek az országban, például a Sydney Fesztivált, a Melbourne Fesztivált, zenei fesztiválokat. A festőművészet kezdetei egészen a barlangrajzokig nyúlnak vissza. Az első európai bevándorlók kedvelt témája az ausztrál táj volt, ami később az irodalomban is megjelent, többek között Banjo Peterson és Henry Lawson munkáiban. Nobel díjat egyetlen ausztrál embernek osztottak eddig, ő Patrick White, a XX. század egyik legjelentősebb írója. □

Meg kell említeni, hogy nagy kultúrája van különböző sportrendezvényeknek is az országban. A sport fontos terület az ausztrálok életében. Az éghajlat miatt a szabadidős sportok a legnépszerűbbek. Nemzetközi versenyeket is rendez az ország, többek között Forma 1 futamot és tenisz kupát.

Sokféle nemzeti és nemzetközi sportrendezvényt szerveznek ország-szerte. Melbourne ad otthont például olyan rangos eseményeknek, mint a híres lóverseny a Melbourne Cup vagy a minden év januárjában megrendezésre kerülő nemzetközi teniszverseny, az Australian Open. Szintén mindig Melbourne-ben rendezik a forma 1-es Melbourne Grand Prix futamot, de a rengeteg sportrendezvényel ellentétben Sydney volt a helyszíne a 2000-ben rendezett Olimpiai Játékoknak.

Az ausztrálok nemcsak a sportokért rajonganak, az élet és természet-szeretetükről is híresek, amelyben a kultúrának, a zenének, a művészeteknek éppannyira szerepe van, mint a sokszínű ételeknek, a különböző sportoknak és az éghajlatnak.

Ausztrália szabadtéri elfoglaltságokra igen alkalmas, köszönhető ez a napsütéses éghajlatának és a tengernek. Az ausztrálok kedvenc időtöltése a tengerparti fürdőzés. Szeretik a sportokat, mint például a foci, a krikett, a rögbi, a tenisz és a golf. Az ausztrálok a sportok üzése mellett sok időt és figyelmet fordítanak a művészeti tevékenységekre, igen színvonalas kulturális életük, nem véletlenül lett az ország egyik leghíresebb épülete a Sydneyi Operaház. Sőt, Sydneyben található az ausztrál filmgyártás fellegvára a Fox Studios is, ahol évente több száz világhírnévvel büszkélkedő filmsztár is megfordul.

Számos híresség ismeretes Ausztráliából, mint például Dame Nellie Melba és Joan Sutherland operaszatórok, Jason Donovan énekes, Kylie Minouge énekesnő, Nicole Kidman Oscar-díjas színésznő, de nemzetközi figyelem irányul az AC/DC rockegyüttesre is. Ország-szerte számos színházi társulat és szimfonikus zenekar működik, rengeteg művészeti kiállítás tekinthető meg.

Magyarország és Ausztrália között nincs érvényben lévő kulturális együttműködést érintő államközi egyezmény. Ausztráliában nincs Magyar Intézet és magyar lektorátus sem működik. Az ausztrál szövetségi államfelépítés rendszerében a kultúra nem szövetségi hatáskörbe tartozik (a szövetségi kormányban nincs is olyan miniszteriális szerv, amely a kultúráért felel), hanem az egyes államok feladatkörébe. A kulturális intézmények így az egyes államok irányítása alatt működnek, de leginkább helyi (városi) közösségek a fenntartóik. A gazdasági alapon szerveződő kulturális intézmények működéséhez nagyban hozzájárulnak a különböző magánalapítványok, amelyeket magánszemélyek adakozásaiból és szponzorcégek pénzügyi támogatásaiból tartanak fenn.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the development of Australian culture.***

***VIII. Compare the visual arts of Australia with those of your country.***

## **XIV. PUBLIC HOLIDAYS**

The national public holidays are New Year's Day, Australia Day, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, Christmas Day and Boxing Day. All other public holidays such as Queen's Birthday and Labour Day are individually declared by the state and territory governments.

### **1. Anzac Day**

Probably the most significant national public celebration is Anzac Day on 25 April. ANZAC Day is the solemn day of remembrance of those Australian and New Zealand Army Corps soldiers who fought and died at Gallipoli in 1915. It is also a day of remembrance for all soldiers who have fought and died for their country. It is celebrated on 25 April each year, regardless of on which day it falls. The day is a public holiday, however no replacement holiday is given if Anzac Day falls on a weekend (except in Western Australia).

It was on 25 April 1915 that the armies of Australia and New Zealand entered into their premier battle of the First World War, at Gallipoli, Turkey. At the time, Australia had only been recognised as a federal commonwealth for thirteen years. Many Australians were sympathetic to the United Kingdom, which they regarded as the motherland. So the volunteer armies of Australia and New Zealand, eager to fight the good fight in the war, bravely landed on the shore of the Gallipoli Peninsula with the intent to capture and secure a safe passage for the Allied navies.

At Gallipoli, the Anzacs faced off with one of the fiercest armies history has ever known. Despite landing under the cover of darkness, the Anzacs were met with immediate bombardment and gunfire. On the shores of Gallipoli, the Australian and New Zealand armies fought for eight months forcing a stalemate. Eight thousand Anzac soldiers lost their lives before the Allies called for an evacuation.

While the operation itself was not a success, the valour and determination shown by Anzacs, the "Knights of Gallipoli," were immediately commemorated in Australia, London, and even at the Allies' camp in Egypt in 1916. Parades and ceremonies were held in their honour, and even those who were wounded in combat were a part of the parade while they were still recovering. By the 1920s, the day had become a way to memorialise the sixty thousand Australian soldiers who died in the First World War. By the next decade, all Australian states had a form of celebration for Anzac Day, and many of the traditions we still carry out today had already taken shape. Forevermore, the 25th of April would be known as the day Australia arrived as a force in the world.

While Anzac Day is set to coincide with the anniversary of the landing in Gallipoli, the day itself is not meant to be a commemoration of the event, but rather the qualities that Australia established for itself there. On Anzac Day, they recognize the courage, mateship, skill, and perseverance of those who have served, fought, and given their lives in the military. On Anzac Day, they show love, honour and

support for those who fought to enable freedom for people all over the world, but were not able to make it home.

### ***Some ways Anzac Day is commemorated***

- ***Dawn Service.*** The Dawn Service is one of the most revered and popular ceremonies that takes place on Anzac Day. The Dawn Service is thought to have originated in the military routine known as the “stand-to.” Opposing armies often attacked in the partial light of dusk and dawn. Ever vigilant, the Australian military made it a practice to wake the soldiers and prepare them at their posts with weapons before the other armies could strike. The stand-to technique is still used by the Australian military to this day. The Dawn Service seeks to recapture those quiet moments in the near-darkness, when soldiers had an opportunity to bond and reflect. While the first Dawn Services were vigils performed only by veterans in complete silence, all Australians are encouraged to participate. Today, some services feature readings, hymns, and rattle volleys.

- ***The Last Post.*** Often heard at the Dawn Service and other memorials on Anzac Day, The Last Post is the tune that is played over a bugle to signify the end of the day, or the final post. The soldiers could then take their rest. At memorial services, this melody is played to suggest the last post as a metaphor. The soldiers who are being honoured can hear the tune and know that all duties have been completed, so he or she may finally rest in peace.

- ***Marches, Memorials, and Exhibits.*** Throughout the day, many towns host marches that feature veterans and members of The Returned and Services League. Thousands of people gather to give their thanks and respect along the parade routes. Memorial readings where well known poems such as “For the Fallen” and “In Flanders Fields,” help the community to honour and remember those who have served in the military, and better experience what they went through. Haunting verse such as, “*Take up our quarrel with the foe: / To you from failing hands we throw / The torch; be yours to hold it high. / If ye break faith with us who die,*” cause those in attendance to take a moment and really consider what roles the soldiers play in the greater context of Anzac Day. War memorials and museums also host exhibits on Australia’s military history to deepen our understanding.

- ***Red Poppies.*** The lines that follow in Canadian Colonel John McCrae’s poem, “In Flanders Field,” mention, “We shall not sleep, though poppies grow / In Flanders fields.” Red poppies were the first flowers to bloom on the battlefields of Northern France and Belgium despite the bloodshed in the First World War. It was a popular tale among soldiers that the flowers gained their bright red hue from the blood of the fallen that had soaked into the ground. These red flowers are placed on war memorials as a symbol of remembrance, and perhaps a reminder that out of sacrifice, new hope emerges.

- ***Anzac Day Football.*** Although football had been played on Anzac Day for a number of years, the match between Collingwood and Essendon did not become a standard recurrence until 1995. When Collingwood and Essendon first

squared off against each other, it was not uncommon for AFL matches to occur on Anzac Day, as donations from the day went to benefit the RSL. However, after that first match between the classic rivals, it became clear that this annual match was a special way to pay tribute to the values of Anzac Day; while deployed across the globe, football played by Anzac soldiers as a way to sharpen their skills, keep up good humour, and forge better connections with one another. That same vein of spirit, courage, mateship, and fairness runs throughout the day, at the end of the annual match, the Anzac medal is awarded to the player who best demonstrates these highly valued Australian qualities.

- ***Catafalque parties.*** A catafalque is a raised structure that holds a coffin. At a funeral as a sign of respect, four soldiers stand about a meter away from the catafalque, facing in four different directions, with their heads lowered and weapons held at reverse. Mourners pass by to say farewell to the departed. On Anzac Day, you may see soldiers standing in such a position again as a sign of tribute.

- ***Anzac Biscuits.*** These treats had a very practical beginning. During the First World War, the friends and families of soldiers sent care packages overseas. Since any food they could send had to be resistant to spoilage and full of nutrition, a biscuit made from rolled oats, sugar, flour, coconut, butter, and a few other ingredients became a popular pastry to pack in boxes. To this day, Anzac biscuits are one of the few products approved to bear the Anzac acronym, which is protected by Federal Legislation.

On **Remembrance Day** (11 November), which is not a public holiday, a two-minute silence is observed in remembrance of the Australians who fought and died in wars.

## **2. Australia Day**

**Australia Day** is Australia's national day celebrated on 26 January annually in all states and territories. 26 January was chosen because it is the day of the establishment of the first English settlement at Port Jackson by Captain Arthur Phillip in 1788.

Recorded celebrations date back to 1808 in Australia, and in 1818, Governor Lachlan Macquarie held the first official celebration of Australia Day. It was made a public holiday in New South Wales in 1836, and Victoria adopted the day as a public holiday in 1931. It commenced to be celebrated by all states and territories in 1946, but began to be actually celebrated on 26 January from 1994.

Most Australians attend festivals, fireworks, community and sporting events or gather for family barbecues at homes, parks or on the beach.

The public holiday of Australia Day is always celebrated on January 26 no matter what day of the week it occurs. Many people become citizens of Australia on Australia Day at Citizenship Ceremonies across the nation. It is also the day that the Australian Government awards the Order of Australia to selected Australians, which is 'an Australian society of honour for according recognition to Australian citizens and other persons for achievement or meritorious service'.



### **3. Christmas**

Christmas is celebrated on 25 December each year to commemorate the birth of Jesus. In Australia, it was brought over as a matter of course with white English settlement in 1788. Though a Christian religious festival, it does not breach the constitution's separation of Church and State provision, because it is declared under State law, which is not subject to the provision.

While historians estimate the year of Christ's birth to be somewhere between 2 and 7 BC, no one can pinpoint the exact month and day. Meanwhile, the Bible does provide other specific details deemed more important. According to the Holy Scriptures, Jesus was born to the Virgin Mary inside a stable, wrapped in swaddling clothes, laid in a manger, and surrounded by farm animals. Upon hearing the news of the young Messiah's birth and led by the Star of Bethlehem, a few wise men came to visit the newborn bearing gifts of gold, frankincense and myrrh. To this day, Christians and non-Christians carry on the tradition of gift-giving during this special holiday season.

Australia, Christmastime (or the Season of Advent) is also the weeks and months leading up to Christmas which, over the last century, have become a season of family holidays, shopping for food and presents, and the sending cards. For retailers it is the boom season.

Christmas in Australia is a bit of a curiosity. The country is in the southern hemisphere meaning that 25th December falls in mid-summer, rather than in mid-winter like in Europe, the UK and the USA. So it is not unusual for shop windows to be full of toys and displays that are covered with fake snow spray and for there to be icicles in the windows, even if it is sweltering outside.

The insides of homes are usually decorated with a pine tree covered in trinkets, tinsel and fairy lights in red, green and gold, and often with a small nativity scene under the tree or on a coffee table. And outside, many homes are transformed with amazing displays of light and colour.

Traditionally, Christmas lunch is a gathering of large family groups who eat roast turkey, ham and vegetables and finish the meal with hot plum pudding, fruit mince tarts and cream or custard. But many Australian families now opt for the more comfortable means of cooking in hot weather – the Aussie BBQ with various meats, seafoods and salads. More likely than not, carols are played somewhere in the house throughout the day.

#### ***Key Christmas highlights:***

##### ***Carols by Candlelight***

This is a favourite Australian tradition that began somewhere around 1938. These spectacular events are held every year during the week before Christmas Day and were founded by Norman Banks. Story has it that Banks passed by a window lit by candlelight on his way home one Christmas Eve. Through the glow, he saw elderly women sitting in a room and singing along to "Away in a Manger," which was played on the radio. This prompted him to wonder how many people spent their holidays alone and so he organised a

public sing-a-long of Christmas carols with participants holding a single candle. Now, multitudes of people gather in their respective towns and cities at public parks, music halls and stadiums to sing Christmas carols while holding candles. The cities of Melbourne and Sydney even host a huge stage event, billing renowned entertainers. Carols by Candlelight events are broadcast live on television and radio across the country as well as Southeast Asia and New Zealand. The song "Christmas Lullaby" by Olivia Newton-John and Manheim Steamroller is a beloved perennial.

Christmas has not always been such a joyous occasion for some Australians. The holiday was once overshadowed by a very dark period when a massive storm named Cyclone Tracy struck the tropical city of Darwin from Christmas Eve into Christmas Day in 1974. There were nearly 100 confirmed deaths with 15 missing at sea and presumed dead. Approximately 70 percent of the town was destroyed, leaving over 20,000 devastated and homeless. Nevertheless, inspiration came from such great tragedy. The song "Santa Never Made It into Darwin," penned by pop duo William "Bill" Cate and William "Boyd" Robinson, was released as a fundraiser to provide relief for the people of Darwin. The song won APRA Song of the Year at the 1976 Country Music Awards of Australia and is still sung at Carols by Candlelight concert events as a tribute and reminder.

### ***Christmas Church Services***

Perhaps the most significant celebrations are the Christmas worship services held on Christmas Eve and Christmas Day. According to the Census Bureau, Christianity is the largest Australian religion. Christmas, along with Easter, attracts the most church attendance. Congregants come together to pray, sing and hear the story of Jesus Christ and His message of hope and redemption. For Christians this is the true meaning of Christmas. Some churches throughout Australia begin services around 11:00 p.m. or close to midnight on Christmas Eve, leading into Christmas morning.

### ***Santa's Appearance on Lake Macquarie***

Naturally, kids are excited about Christmas. For them, it is the commercial aspect (toys) that is the most appealing. Aside from the usual posing on Santa's knee at the shopping malls, there is another special place in NSW where children can see their favourite toymaker. Every Christmas Eve, jolly old St. Nick travels along the great Lake Macquarie on the famous Wangi Queen Show Boat as the ferry's loud speaker belts out Christmas carols. Children can hardly contain themselves once he makes a pit stop at each jetty along the shoreline to unload his bag of goodies. Later that evening inside their homes, dozens of cheerful children will leave a carrot for Santa's reindeer (or boomers) while the parents sometimes gift him with sherry or beer, and a piece of mince pie.

The North Pole native's other alias are: Saint Nicholas, Father Christmas and Kris Kringle. Known for his long white beard, horn-rimmed spectacles and

wide girth, Santa Claus is always seen wearing a red jacket and trousers, cuffed in white fur material. The average Christian prefers to observe Christmas in honour of the birth of Jesus Christ rather than for the commercialism Santa Claus represents.

#### **4. New Year's Day**

New Year's Day is the first day of the calendar year and is celebrated each January 1<sup>st</sup>. In Australia, the day is marked by a public holiday but, for many, it's simply a day of recovering from the night before – New Year's Eve.

The public holiday of New Year is movable, meaning that if it falls on a Saturday or Sunday, then the following Monday becomes the public holiday. In most states of Australia, most shops are closed and public transport is reduced significantly.

Although the day of December 31<sup>st</sup> is not a public holiday, it is the day most Australians prepare for one of the biggest parties of the year. Each capital city, most towns and many homes put on celebrations to mark the end of one year and the first moments of the next. In many places, fireworks at midnight on New Year's Eve usher in the New Year. People sing, cheer, toast (take drinks) and party into the small hours of the first day of the year.

On New Year's Day many towns and cities run events. For example, in Perth the premier horse race for Western Australia, the Perth Cup, is run on this day. It is held at Ascot Racecourse and has a large purse for the winners. Horse racing is also prominent in Victoria. 'Racing at the Rock' is racing in the natural amphitheatre of Hanging Rock. It includes a fun and lazy day of food, wine, entertainment and activities for children alongside the race track.

A summer public holiday in Australia would be empty without the Aussie Barbecue and this is the main type of eating that happens on this day across the country.

Significantly, New Year's Day is generally a very hot day all over Australia although it is not unusual for there to be rain also. The average temperatures in January range from the high 20's to high 30's in degrees Celsius with the hottest areas being in the horizontal mid-band of the country.

#### **5. Boxing Day**

Boxing Day occurs the day after Christmas, on December 26. The date is also known as St Stephen's Day, celebrating not the first St Stephen, a disciple of Jesus, but the second St Stephen who lived around 800 years later and who, apparently was a horse buff. Even so, Boxing Day is not celebrated as a religious holiday.

Some people think that because Boxing Day is the day after Christmas, it must be the day all the boxes that presents came in are thrown away. Actually, the origins of this holiday go back many centuries to where, traditionally, on the day after Christmas, churches would open their alms' boxes and distribute the contents to the poor of their parish.

In the nineteenth century, Queen Victoria made Boxing Day a formal holiday for all countries of the Commonwealth. It was the day when the maids, drivers, cooks etc. were given the day off, with small gifts, often in boxes, given as a token of appreciation by their masters. Contrary to its name, there are no big boxing events taking place on this federal public holiday. Instead, most Australians cozy up to their televisions to watch a cricket match held at the MCG or the Sydney to Hobart yacht race. Boxing Day is also considered comparable to the United States' "Black Friday," a popular shopping day promising fantastic sales. A poem by John O'Brien and entitled "Tangmalangmaloo" may express how a great many Australians actually feel about Boxing Day. In it, the poem describes what happened when a bishop questioned his class about religion. An excerpt reads as follows:

"And oh, how pleased his lordship was, and how he smiled to say,  
'That's good, my boy. Come tell me now; and what is Christmas Day?'"  
The ready answer bared a fact no bishop ever knew –  
'It's the day before the races out at Tangmalangmaloo."

Most countries outside the Commonwealth do not celebrate Boxing Day, but in America, during the slave times, the masters would often give their slaves the day off after Christmas.

In Australia, Boxing Day is the second day in a row marked by food, although they are usually leftovers from Christmas Day that have been reinvented into turkey salad, stir-fried turkey, ham terrine, turkey sandwiches, bubble and squeak, and for dessert, trifle.

Sport features highly on this public holiday. Since 1945, the over 1000km Sydney-to-Hobart yacht race has started each Boxing Day at noon in Sydney and has become one of the toughest yacht races ever with competitors bringing their yachts from around the globe to attempt to win. And, since 1950, the Boxing Day Test Match begins its five-day run on the 26th. For the die-hard cricket spectators – up to 160,000 in seats at the Melbourne Cricket Ground (MCG) or the millions on their couch or around the BBQ at home – there's nothing quite like the crack of the ball against the willow, the roar of the crowd or the sound of a cold can of drink cracking open.

While no particular colours are related to Boxing Day, the cricket 'whites' contrast against the green grass of the MCG, and the white sails and hulls of yachts stand out against the blue-green Tasman Sea.

There's one other major event that hits most Australian cities and large towns on Boxing Day. Although it is a public holiday, the Boxing Day Sales have become a sporting event in themselves, with crowds of shoppers queuing for shop doors to open and to get that 'special deal'. For many it's not even about the purchasing, but about the adrenaline of the fight for the bargain.

Christmas and Boxing Day always fall together and if one or both of these days occur on a weekend, the days are 'made up' by more public holidays being declared for the weekdays following, so sometimes there can be up to a four-day break for most Australians.

## 6. Easter

The days of Easter vary each year depending on the day determined by the Western Christian religious calendar. Until 1994 Easter Tuesday was a public holiday in Victoria (it retains this status partially in Tasmania). The NSW *Public Holidays Act 2010* refers to the day after Good Friday as "*Easter Saturday*," but the Victorian *Public Holidays Act 1993* refers to it merely as "the Saturday before Easter Sunday." Easter is the oldest of the Christian festivals. It is celebrated approximately at the end of the first quarter of the calendar year although its date changes depending on the lunar cycle.

Easter remembers the death and resurrection of Jesus Christ and globally encompasses three specific days of celebration. In Australia there is a fourth day taken as a part of the holiday.

The first day of the four days is Good Friday, which is the day on which Christians remember that Jesus Christ was arrested and how he died. The following day is known, in some denominations, as Holy Saturday. Then Easter Sunday, or simply Easter, is the day of celebration when Jesus Christ was resurrected from death. Monday is considered a day of renewal.

In her book, *The Liturgical Year*, Joan Chittister writes, "Easter, the scholars tell us, is the oldest feast in the history of Christianity, but it really only came into focus as a distinct celebration in the late second century... The truth is that Easter, Resurrection, has been celebrated in the church every Sunday since the first week after the resurrection itself." – Joan Chittister, *The Liturgical Year*

Australia, and much of the western world, follows the Gregorian calendar. The date of Easter Sunday is the first Sunday after the first full moon that occurs on or after the March equinox. Many Eastern Christians who live in Australia use the Julian calendar, which can put their dates of Easter up to several weeks after western churches. The official Australian Easter long weekend gets its dates from the western Gregorian calendar.

Prior to Easter, many Christians in Australia recognise the season of Lent – a period of 40 days of partial fasting, and abstinence from meat, that prepares the person for the celebration.

The period of Easter, and the public holidays surrounding it, has a large impact on all of the country for almost all people regardless of their faith. For many weeks before the weekend, shops sell hot-cross buns – a spicy fruit bun with a cross of dough paste on top – and Easter eggs and rabbits, usually of chocolate. The histories of these items are varied and mixed with folklore, but the cross on the bread can be related to the wooden cross that Jesus was hung on, and the eggs are often related to the new life that his death and resurrection promises.

On the weekend of Easter, families and community groups set up Easter egg hunts where children search through houses and gardens for chocolates and treats that have been hidden by parents and friends and, on the Friday and Sunday, Christians attend church services.

The Easter long weekend is one of two major holiday periods in the year, Christmas being the other, when many people travel. Schools often cause their

holidays to fall around Easter meaning that children and parents will take at least several days away to enjoy the Autumn weather.

## **7. Labour Day**

Labour Day commemorates the achievements of the Australian labour movement. The celebration of Labour Day has its origins in the eight hour day movement, which advocated eight hours for work, eight hours for recreation, and eight hours for rest. On 21 April 1856 Stonemasons and building workers on building sites around Melbourne, Australia, stopped work and marched from the University of Melbourne to Parliament House to achieve an eight hour day. Their direct action protest was a success, and they are noted as the first organised workers in the world to achieve an eight hour day with no loss of pay, which subsequently inspired the celebration of Labour Day and **May Day**. In Tasmania the public holiday is called Eight Hours Day and in the Northern Territory it is called May Day.

The holiday varies considerably between the various states and territories. It is always on a Monday, creating a long weekend. Marches or parades only occur in Queensland now, and not always there depending on the state government at the time.

Labour Day is celebrated in March in Western Australia, Tasmania and Victoria, in May in the Northern Territory, and in October in Queensland, New South Wales, South Australia and the Australian Capital Territory.

## **8. Queen's Birthday**

In all states and territories except Western Australia, Queen's Birthday is observed on the second Monday in June. Due to the fact that Western Australia celebrates Western Australia Day (formerly Foundation Day) on the first Monday in June, the Governor of Western Australia proclaims the day on which the state will observe the Queen's Birthday, based on school terms and the Perth Royal Show. There is no firm rule to determine this date before it is proclaimed, though it is typically the last Monday of September or the first Monday of October. In 2011 the Queen's Birthday holiday in Western Australia was moved from Monday, 3 October 2011 to Friday, 28 October 2011 to coincide with the Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM), which was held in Perth. In 2012, Queensland celebrated the Queen's Birthday on the first weekend in October, the June holiday for that year being a special holiday to mark the Queen's Diamond Jubilee. Following 2012, the holiday has reverted to its normal June date in Queensland in line with the other eastern states.

The day has been celebrated since 1788, when Governor Arthur Phillip declared a holiday to mark the birthday of King George III. Until 1936 it was held on the actual birthday of the Monarch, but after the death of King George V it was decided to keep the date at mid-year.

On that day the "Queen's Birthday honours list" is released naming new members of the Order of Australia and other Australian honours. This occurs on

the date observed in the Eastern States, not the date observed in Western Australia.

The Queen's Birthday weekend and Empire Day, 24 May, were long the traditional times for public fireworks displays in Australia. Although they still occur, the tradition has recently been overshadowed by larger New Year's Eve fireworks, as the sale of fireworks to the public was progressively banned by the states in the 1980s. The sale of fireworks in the Australian Capital Territory was also banned on 24 August 2009.

### ***Other holidays***

- ***Proclamation Day*** is in December in South Australia only.

- ***Canberra Day*** is held on the 2nd Monday in March in the ACT. Prior to 2008, this holiday was celebrated on the 3rd Monday of March.

- ***Melbourne Cup Day*** is held on the first Tuesday of November – the day of the Melbourne Cup. It was originally observed only in the Melbourne metropolitan area. From 2007 to 2009 in ACT, Melbourne Cup day was also a holiday called "Family and Community Day". The holiday continues from 2010 but no longer coincides with Melbourne Cup day. In Victoria, the Public Holidays Act 1993 (Vic) was amended on 24 September 2008 and made the Melbourne Cup Day holiday applicable in all parts of the state (unless another day is observed in substitute). It also made the holiday applicable to employees covered by federal awards.

- ***Recreation Day*** is the first Monday of November, and celebrated in Northern Tasmania where Regatta Day is not a holiday.

- ***Regatta Day*** is the second Monday in February, and is celebrated in Southern Tasmania. Previously it was held on the second Tuesday in February.

- ***Geelong Cup Day*** is held on the fourth Wednesday of October in the city of Geelong, Victoria.

- ***Queensland Day*** is celebrated on 6 June each year, but is not a public holiday.

- ***Adelaide Cup Day*** is held on the second Monday in March in South Australia (held in May before 2006.)

- ***Western Australia Day*** is celebrated in Western Australia on the first Monday in June.

- ***Picnic Day*** is celebrated in the Northern Territory in August, and also in May.

- Tasmania has ***Easter Tuesday*** as a bank holiday (for bank and government employees only).

- New South Wales has the first Monday in August as a ***bank holiday*** (for bank employees only).

- Many cities and towns observe local public holidays for their local *Agricultural Show*. For example:

- ***Darwin Show Day*** in Darwin area in late July.

- ***Royal Queensland Show Day*** in Brisbane area in August.

- ***Gold Coast Show*** in Gold Coast area in October.

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) great courage, especially in war;
- 2) very serious and not happy, for example because something bad has happened or because you are at an important occasion;
- 3) decorated raised structure on which the dead body of an important person is placed before their funeral;
- 4) piece of jewellery or a small pretty object that is not valuable;
- 5) connected with God and religion;
- 6) one of the two times in a year when night and day are of equal length;
- 7) return of Jesus Christ to life after his death on the cross, which is one of the main beliefs of the Christian religion;
- 8) small round sweet cake;
- 9) building where Christians go to worship;
- 10) Christian holy day in March or April when Christians remember the death of Christ and his return to life;
- 11) to show that an event or occasion is important by doing something special or enjoyable;
- 12) public celebration when musical bands, brightly decorated vehicles etc move down the street;
- 13) to do something to show that you remember and respect someone important or an important event in the past;
- 14) small container filled with powder that burns or explodes to produce coloured lights and noise in the sky;
- 15) something such as a special title or medal given to someone to show how much people respect them for what they have achieved.

### ***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Probably the most significant national public celebration is Christmas on 25 April.
2. The Sunset Service is one of the most revered and popular ceremonies that takes place on Anzac Day. The Sunset Service is thought to have originated in the military routine known as the “stand-to.”
3. The lines that follow in Canadian Colonel John McCrae’s poem, “In Flanders Field,” mention, “We shall not sleep, though snowdrops grow. In Flanders fields.” Snowdrops were the first flowers to bloom on the battlefields of Northern France and Belgium despite the bloodshed in the First World War.
4. Australia Day is Australia's national day celebrated on 26 January annually in all states and territories. 26 January was chosen because it is the day of the establishment of the first French settlement at Port Jackson by Captain Arthur Phillip in 1788.



5. Christmas in Australia is a bit of a curiosity. The country is in the southern hemisphere meaning that 25th December falls in mid-summer, rather than in mid-winter like in Europe, the UK and the USA.

6. Christmas has always been such a joyous occasion for some Australians.

7. Boxing Day occurs the day after Christmas, on December 26. The date is also known as St Martin's Day, celebrating not the first St Martin's, a disciple of Jesus, but the second St Martin's who lived around 800 years later and who, apparently was a horse buff.

8. Traditionally, Christmas lunch is a gathering of large family groups who eat roast turkey, ham and vegetables and finish the meal with hot plum pudding, fruit mince tarts and cream or custard.

9. The public holiday of New Year is movable, meaning that if it falls on a Saturday or Sunday, then the following Monday becomes the public holiday.

10. In the nineteenth century, Queen Elizabeth made Boxing Day a formal holiday for all countries of the Commonwealth.

11. Australia, and much of the western world, follows the Gregorian calendar. The date of Easter Sunday is the first Sunday after the first full moon that occurs on or after the March equinox.

12. Schools often cause their holidays to fall around Easter meaning that children and parents will take at least several days away to enjoy the Spring weather.

13. The celebration of Labour Day has its origins in the eight hour day movement, which advocated eight hours for work, eight hours for recreation, and eight hours for rest.

14. In all states and territories except Western Australia, Queen's Birthday is observed on the second Monday in December.

15. The Queen's Birthday weekend and Empire Day, 24 May, were long the traditional times for public fireworks displays in Australia. The tradition has recently been overshadowed by larger New Year's Eve fireworks, as the sale of fireworks to the public was progressively allowed by the states in the 1980s.

**III. Read the text about Proclamation Day in South Australia. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

Proclamation Day is the name of official or unofficial holidays or other anniversaries which commemorate or mark 1 \_\_\_\_\_. In some cases it may be the day of, or the anniversary of, the proclamation of 2 \_\_\_\_\_ to the throne. The proclamation day may also celebrate the independence of a country, the end of a war, or the ratification of an important treaty.

Proclamation Day in South Australia celebrates the establishment of government in South Australia as a British province. The proclamation was made by Captain John Hindmarsh beside The Old Gum Tree at the present-day suburb of Glenelg North on 28th December 1836. The proclamation specified the same 3 \_\_\_\_\_ for the local native population as for the settlers. The date 28

December as a public holiday in South Australia was modified to the first otherwise working day after the Christmas Day public holiday (i.e. usually 26 December). Formal ceremonies involving 4 \_\_\_\_ and politicians, followed by public celebrations, continue to be held at the still-extant Old Gum Tree at Glenelg on 28 December.

The proclamation was printed by Robert Thomas (1782–1860), who came from England with his family on the *Africaine*, arriving at Holdfast Bay on 8 November 1836. Thomas brought with him 5 \_\_\_\_ to reach South Australia. The press was a Stanhope Invenit No. 200, and was on display in the State Library until 2001. It may be surmised that, from the quilled text of the proclamation provided to him by the officials, it was Thomas himself who 6 \_\_\_\_ for print and thus gave rise to the belief that the document was "The Proclamation...of South Australia".

The colonising fleet consisted of 10 vessels which had gathered at Nepean Bay before being directed to Holdfast Bay. The *Africaine* was the first to arrive, discharging settlers on 9 November 1836, followed by the *Emma*, the *John Pirie*, and the *Tam O'Shanter*. These deliberately preceded Governor John Hindmarsh on the *Buffalo* to enable preparations including the printing of the proclamation 7 \_\_\_\_ on 28 December. Thomas's wife Mary (who died in 1875) published *The Diary of Mary Thomas*, in which she described the journey on the *Africaine* and the early years in South Australia. An extract from the diary reads:

"About December 20th 1836, we built a rush hut a short distance from our tents for 8 \_\_\_\_ of part of our family... and in this place (about 12 feet square) the first printing in South Australia was produced."

One of the children of Robert and Mary Thomas was a surveyor who assisted Colonel William Light in the survey which led to the founding of the City of Adelaide. Another son, William Kyffin Thomas, 9 \_\_\_\_ the newspaper of the time, *The Register*, which his parents had set up. William had a son, also called Robert, who became senior proprietor of *The Register*. He was knighted by King Edward VII in 1909 when President of the first great Press Conference in London. 10 \_\_\_\_ of that king stands prominently outside the South Australian Institute building in North Terrace, Adelaide.

- |                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| A) a monarch's accession            | G) inherited from his uncle          |
| B) the first printing press         | H) the most senior current officials |
| C) in advance of his formal arrival | I) the better accommodation          |
| D) inherited from his father        | J) made a more striking layout       |
| E) an important proclamation        | K) protection under the law          |
| F) A majestic statue                |                                      |

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

**Family Day** is the name of a public holiday in the South Africa, in the Canadian provinces of Alberta, British Columbia, Saskatchewan, and Ontario, in

the American states of Arizona and Nevada, in Vanuatu, in the Vietnam and (as "Family & Community Day") in the Australian Capital Territory.

Family & Community Day was celebrated on the first of Tuesday of the November in 2007, 2008 and 2009, coinciding with the Melbourne Cup. This public holiday was been declared in 2007 under section 3(1)(b) of the Holidays Act 1953 (ACT). It was announced in 2008 that it would continue on Melbourne Cup Day in the 2008 and 2009. Mr. Andrew Barr, the ACT Minister for Industrial Relations stated the purpose of the new public holiday was:

"...to must enable workers to take a break from their hectic working lives and to spend some quality time with their family and friends. ... Australians do work the longest hours of any country in the western world. We do deserve for a break."

The ACT's Minister for Industrial Relations John Hargreaves announced in August 2009 that the territory's Family and Community Day would move to a different date from 2010 onwards.

Hargreaves announced that Family and Community Day would be on the first of Monday of September/October school holidays in 2010 (Monday, September 27, 2010). "However, in future years when the first Monday of the school holidays falls on the currently designated Labour Day public holiday, such as will occur in 2011 and 2012, the Family and Community Day will be have moved to the second Monday of the term break".

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used***

### **Королівська регата**



Королівська регата в Хобарті (Royal Hobart Regatta) вперше відбулася в 1838 році. І з тих пір залишається одним з найпопулярніших щорічних заходів Австралії і найдавнішим спортивним змаганням в Тасманії. Регата проходить протягом трьох лютневих днів з суботи до поне-

ділка. Понеділок, день завершення регати, вважається національним святом. На час змагань судноплавство на річці Дервент повністю припиняється.

Старт заходу майже двісті років тому дав губернатор Тасманії сер Джон Франклін. Франклін забезпечив безкоштовною їжею і пивом всіх глядачів. Ця традиція — закуски і напої за рахунок організаторів — жива й донині. Тоді ж губернатор оголосив другий понеділок лютого офіційним святом, і тепер цей день є громадським святом в Австралії (навіть день Австралії святкується тільки з 1935 року!).

Регата проходить на території відомій як Regatta Ground. Сьогодні тут розташований кенотаф — військовий меморіал, присвячений загиблим тасманійцям. Традиційно величезна кількість глядачів з'їжджається подивитися Королівську регату.

Захід знаходиться під егідою Королівського флоту Австралії, який щорічно посилає військовий корабель бути флагманом регати. Підтримують захід і Королівські військово-повітряні сили, забезпечуючи не лише зйомку з повітря, але і барвисті авіа-шоу. А елітний військовий підрозділ Австралії — Червоні берети — демонструє чудеса скай-дайвінгу.

Сама регата включає плавання під вітрилом, греблю, водні лижі, гонки човнів, а також заплив — учасники повинні подолати Дервент, ширина якого 1,6 км. Обов'язковий захід—вибір найкрасивішої дівчини «Міс Регата». В останні роки безпосередньо до змаганням яхтсменів додалися численні розважальні шоу — шоу-забіги і шоу-запливи для глядачів — місцевих жителів і туристів.

**VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used**

### **Győzelem a Csendes-óceánon Nap**



A második világháború befejezését a legtöbb ország ünnepli, általában május 8.-án, 9.-én, augusztus 15.-én vagy szeptember 2.-án attól függően, hogy melyik esemény a legfontosabb számára. Ausztrália augusztus 15.-én ünnepli a Győzelem a Csendes-óceánon néven **(Victory in the Pacific Day)**. Ez az elnevezés minden más országtól eltér, az ázsiai hadszíntéren érintett országok általában a Japán felett aratott győzelem néven ünnepelnek. Ennek csupán az az oka, hogy az akkori ausztrál kormány ezen a néven jelentette be a háború végét és a kétnapos munkaszünetet, így ebből kifolyólag az újságok is ezt az elnevezést használták.

A háború végét nemhiába követte ekkora lelkesedés, hiszen 27 ezer ausztrál soha többé nem térhetett haza, és még tízezrek sérültek meg a háborúban. Összesen egy millióra tehető azon ausztrálok száma, akik a hadseregben szolgáltak a második világháborúban. Az utolsó ausztrál áldozat 1945. május 8.-án halt meg Csehországban. Kalandos körülmények között került oda, német fogságból megszökvén csatlakozott a cseh partizánokhoz, ahol hónapokon át tartó küzdelméért cseh katonai keresztet is kapott. A kitüntetést most az Ausztrál Háborús Emlékhely őrzi.

Azóta a háború emléke már elhalványult, ellentétben sok európai országgal, a háború végét jelentő évfordulót már nem ünneplik hivatalosan, és munkaszüneti nap sincs ekkor. Ennek ellenére kötelességtudó állampolgárok évente tartanak megemlékezéseket és ápolják emlékét a sok áldozatot követelő éveknél.

**VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about Christmas and Easter.**

**VIII. Compare the public holidays of Australia with those of your country.**

## XV. SPORT

Sport is something of a national obsession in Australia. They're avid followers of 'footy', which covers everything from rugby union to the unique Australian AFL. They play backyard and beach cricket all summer and turn out in their thousands to watch the iconic Boxing Day test at Melbourne's MCG. Summer is also the season they become amateur commentators at the Grand Slam tennis tournament. They have lush, championship-designed golf courses across the country and host many premier golf events. Their marathons attract hundreds of thousands of runners and rev-heads everywhere know about car racing events such as the Formula 1 Australia Grand Prix.

### ***Football***



Australia's beloved 'footy' covers four codes, which can get a little confusing. Depending on who you're talking to and the state you're in, this could mean Australian Football League (AFL), Rugby League, Rugby Union or the soccer that most Europeans know as football. All codes command a strong, loyal fan base and share the same season from March to September.

### ***Australian Football League (AFL) or 'Aussie rules'***



If you see men in shorts leaping to great heights on a large arena with an oval ball, then you're probably watching a game of AFL or Australian rules football. Developed in Melbourne in the 19th century, AFL is Australia's premier spectator sport, and the most attended sporting league. Popularity is highest in Victoria, where it's practically a religion, but Sydney, Adelaide, Perth and Brisbane also have passionately supported AFL teams. The league comprises 16 teams which play 22 home and away rounds between late March and September. The four-week finals series culminates in the Grand Final, one of the country's top sporting events.

### ***Rugby League***



Rugby League is a full contact ball sport, which branched out from Rugby Union in the early 20th century. The National Rugby League or NRL (Australia's premier Rugby League competition) is mostly played in Australia's eastern states, with most of the 16 teams are based in and around Sydney. The NRL season kicks off in early March

and culminates with the grand final on the first Sunday of October. State of Origin is a best-of-three series between New South Wales and Queensland. It's held during the middle of the regular NRL competition, attracting sell-out crowds and huge TV audiences. There are also annual international games such as the Australia Vs New Zealand ANZAC Day test.

### ***Rugby Union***



Australia's Rugby Union team is the Wallabies and each year – clad in green-and-gold – they compete with New Zealand and South Africa in the Tri-Nations Series. Their on-field battles with the New Zealand All-Blacks form the Bledisloe Cup, while the games with South Africa are part of the Mandela Challenge Plate. Every four years, Australia competes with rugby-playing

nations from across the world in the Rugby World Cup. Seven former Australian players, including Nick Farr-Jones, have been inducted into the International Rugby Hall of Fame. Australia's state teams play with each other and New Zealand and South African teams in the Super 14s.

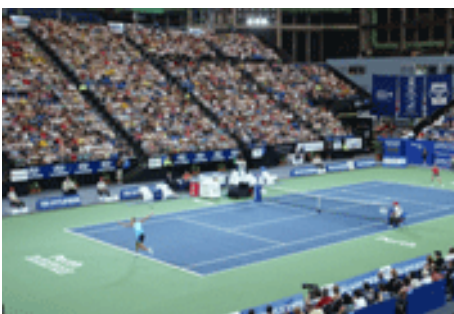
### ***Football (also known in Australia as soccer)***



Australia's first national soccer team was formed in 1922 for a tour of New Zealand. In 1974, Australia made their first appearance at the World Cup finals in West Germany. Today the national team –the Socceroos – has several World Cups behind it and is gaining success on the international circuit. The Socceroos qualified for the 2010 World Cup in South Africa without losing

a match. The whole nation will proudly be behind their progress through each round of the competition.

### ***Tennis***



Each January Australia becomes the headquarters for international tennis, hosting a number of tournaments in the lead-up to the Australian Open. Kicking off the season is Perth's Hopman Cup, where eight top-ranking doubles teams compete for a tennis-ball trophy encrusted with Kimberley diamonds. In the first week of January, top male players warm up for the

Australian Open at the Brisbane International. Female tennis stars hone their serves at the Moorilla Hobart International a week later. The tennis greats head to Sydney for the Medibank International, before Melbourne's Australian Open

at the end of the month. It's the first of four Grand Slam tournaments, the others being the French Open, Wimbledon and US Open.

### ***Golf***



With more than 1,500 golf courses across Australia, it's no wonder golf is a popular leisure sport for the Australians. There are both public and private courses, some of which are champion-designed and many boasting spectacular views. Many courses are connected to luxurious resorts which offer 'stay and play' packages. The top resorts are in southern Queensland, but Victoria,

New South Wales and Western Australia also have acclaimed resorts. Australia's world-class players include Greg Norman, Geoff Ogilvy, Adam Scott and Karrie Webb. The premier golf events are the Australian PGA Championship the Australian Masters and the Australian Open Golf.

### ***Cricket***



The Australians have played cricket for more than 200 years and it's one of their most popular sports. Over summer they play it at picnics, barbeques, beaches and parks. The Australian cricket team, with their trademark baggy green caps, is one of the world's top-ranking teams. The competition consists of Test series lasting from three to five days, One Day Internationals and the

Twenty20 series. There is also the Ashes, where Australia and England compete for the charred remains of a wicket. The most famous match is probably the one-day Boxing Day Test at Melbourne's MCG. Australia's cricket heroes include Sir Donald Bradman, Ritchie Benaud, the Chappell brothers, Waugh brothers, Shane Warne and Glen McGrath.

### ***Car racing***



Car racing has passionate followers in Australia and hosts a number of rubber-burning events. Each March, Melbourne's Albert Park is the venue for the Formula 1 Australian Grand Prix. In April or May, elite drivers race around Tasmania for the Targa Tasmania - a five-day tarmac-based rally. Primed V8 Supercars hit the Gold Coast in October for the Nikon SuperGP (formerly the Indy

300). Much fanfare accompanies this high-adrenalin race along the Surfers Paradise Street Circuit. People also enjoy the buzz around the Supercheap Auto Bathurst 1,000, held in Bathurst in October.

### ***Marathon***



Marathons are big on Australia's sporting calendar, and most of these also feature half marathons, 10km and 5km races. The Great Ocean Road International Marathon happens in May and the popular Gold Course Airport Marathon draws distance runners from around the world in June. Each August, elite runners and thousands of Sydneysiders take part in City to Surf, a scenic

14km course between the city and Bondi Beach. The Sydney Running Festival happens in September, with different courses to suit different fitness levels. The 42km marathon travels from Milsons Point, over the Harbour Bridge and through Sydney's inner-west and CBD to Centennial Park.

### ***Olympics***



*Australian track cyclists Jack Bobridge, Anna Meares and Shane Kelly.*

The Olympic movement in Australia started out during the 1900s and 1910s. The first organisations for the Olympics in Australia came out of the athletics governance system and resulted in the creation of state based Olympic committees. The first national governing body for Australian Olympics was created in 1914 and was a joint effort with New Zealand though New Zealand was a less than able partner. The movement in Australia then stagnated as a result of the Great War. The New Zealand and Australian organisation was disbanded and an Australian only national organisation was founded in 1920 called the Australian Olympic Federation. The early goals of the organisation were to ratify team selection and to fundraise to assist Olympians in paying for their travel to compete at the Games. By the 1980s, the organisation had issues on the international level as the IOC wanted them to re-structure; until this time, the organisation followed governance models similar to that of other Australian sporting organisations with a federated model of governance. Changes were made and the organisation ended up with an executive board with a president, two vice presidents, a secretary general and a 14 member executive board which had 10 elected members, 4 IOC members and 2 members of the Athlete's Commission.

Australia hosted the Olympics twice, in 1956 in Melbourne and in 2000 in Sydney. These were the first Games hosted in the southern hemisphere.



Australia has been active in the Olympic movement, with four Australian representatives who are members of the International Olympic Committee.

The government has provided monetary support for the Olympics. In the lead up to the 1924 Games, they provided 3,000 pounds and in 1936 provided 2,000 pounds. This support was seen as a way of supporting national identity, but no formal system existed for the funding wider sport at the time.

The 1956 Games were the first time Australia had an Equestrian competitor when Victorian Ernie Barker competed. Australia has generally been a world power in Olympic swimming since the 1956 Melbourne Olympics: swimmers like Shane Gould, Dawn Fraser, Ian Thorpe and Kieren Perkins have taken multiple gold medals.

Australia performed relatively poorly at the 1976 Summer Olympics. This upset the nation as it challenged a fundamental part of Australian identity. The following Olympics, the 1980 Summer Olympics, some Australian sports sat out as part of a boycott and the country earned only nine medals, two of them gold, in Moscow. To prevent a recurrence of this, the Australian Institute of Sport was created to help improve Australia's medal tally at the Games.

Channel Seven had exclusive Australian free-to-air, pay television, online and mobile telephony broadcast rights to the 2008 Summer Olympics in Beijing. The live telecast of the 2008 Summer Olympics was shared by the Seven Network and SBS Television. Seven broadcast the opening and closing ceremonies and mainstream sport's including swimming, athletics, rowing, cycling and gymnastics. In contrast, SBS TV provided complementary coverage focused on long-form events such as football, road cycling, volleyball, and table tennis.

### ***Paralympics***



*Australian swimmers at the training pool at the 1996 Atlanta Paralympic Games*

Australia has attended every Summer Paralympics and hosted the 2000 Sydney Games. Australia sent a delegation of 170 athletes to compete at the 2008 Summer Paralympics in Beijing, and a team of 11 competitors to compete in two disciplines at the 2010 Winter Paralympics in Vancouver, Canada. A team of 161 members was sent to the 2012 Summer Paralympics in London.

### ***Commonwealth Games***

The Australians as a nation take the Commonwealth Games very seriously because, on one level of national thinking, the event offers the country an opportunity to prove that they are superior to the "original country", the United Kingdom. By the 1938 British Empire Games, Australia's combined medal total was already greater than that of the Home Nations tallies combined. Australia

would go on to beat England in total medals at the Commonwealth Games at the 1950, 1962, 1970, 1974 and 1982 Commonwealth Games. This rivalry with England continues to be an important component of the Games for the country.

By the 1938 British Empire Games, Australia's combined medal total was already greater than that of the Home Nations tallies combined. Australia would go on to beat England in total medals at the Commonwealth Games at the 1950, 1962, 1970, 1974 and 1982 Commonwealth Games.

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) competition in which players compete against each other in a series of games until there is one winner;
- 2) someone who likes a particular sport or performing art very much, or who admires a famous person;
- 3) to jump high into the air or to jump in order to land in a different place;
- 4) group of sports teams or players who play games against each other to see who is best;
- 5) outdoor game played by two teams with an oval (=egg-shaped) ball that you kick or carry;
- 6) sport played by two teams of 11 players, who try to kick a round ball into their opponents' goal;
- 7) when a subject or event is reported on television or radio, or in newspapers;
- 8) to provide the place and everything that is needed for an organised event;
- 9) to take part in a competition or sports event;
- 10) to stop existing as an organisation, or to make something do this;
- 11) group of organisations, clubs, or people that have joined together to form a single group;
- 12) international sports event held every four years in different countries;
- 13) international sports event held every four years for disabled athletes who cannot use a part of their body properly. It is held after the Olympic Games, in the same city;
- 14) better, more powerful, more effective etc than a similar person or thing, especially one that you are competing against;
- 15) flat piece of metal, usually shaped like a coin, that is given to someone who has won a competition or who has done something brave.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Sport is something of a national obsession in Australia. They play backyard and beach hockey all summer and turn out in their thousands to watch the iconic Boxing Day test at Melbourne's MCG.

2. Australia's beloved 'footy' covers four codes, which can get a little confusing. All codes command a strong, loyal fan base and share the same season from September to January.

3. If you see men in shorts leaping to great heights on a large arena with a round ball, then you're probably watching a game of AFL or Australian rules football.

4. Car racing has passionate followers in Australia and hosts a number of rubber-burning events.

5. Each June Australia becomes the headquarters for international tennis, hosting a number of tournaments in the lead-up to the Australian Open.

6. With more than 1,500 golf courses across Australia, it's no wonder golf is a popular leisure sport for Australians.

7. There are both public and private golf courses, some of which are champion-designed and many boasting spectacular views. Many courses are connected to luxurious resorts which offer 'stay and rest' packages.

8. Australians have played cricket for less than 100 years and it's one of our most popular sports. Over summer they play it at picnics, barbeques, beaches and parks.

9. The Great Ocean Road International Marathon happens in May and the popular Gold Course Airport Marathon draws distance runners from around the world in June.

10. Australia has been active influential in the Olympic movement, but there are no members of the International Olympic Committee.

11. Australia has hosted the Olympics twice, in 1956 in Melbourne and in 2000 in Sydney.

12. The first national governing body for Australian Olympics was created in 1914 and was a joint effort with Great Britain.

13. The Olympic movement in Australia started out during the 2000s and 2010s in Australia.

14. Australia has attended every Winter Paralympics and hosted the 2000 Sydney Games.

15. Australians takes the Commonwealth Games very seriously as a nation because, on one level of national thinking, the event offers the country an opportunity to prove they are inferior to the "original country", the United States.

**III. Read the text about golf. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

Golf is one of the most popular 1 \_\_\_\_\_ in the world. It is played on a golf course. Players try to hit a golf ball into a small hole with as few strokes as possible. Millions of men and women around the world play golf for fun, thousands play tournaments and millions 2 \_\_\_\_\_ watch golf on TV.

Golf courses have different sizes and shapes. Most of them have 18 holes that are between a hundred and 500 metres long. If you have finished playing all 18 holes you have played 3 \_\_\_\_.

Each hole has a starting place, 4 \_\_\_\_\_. This is a small area from which the golfer takes the first stroke or drive. The grass between the tee and the green is called the fairway. Sometimes fairways can be very long and golf players need a few strokes to get 5 \_\_\_\_\_. The land on the left and right of the fairway is the rough. It is made up of tall grass, bushes and trees.

The green is the round area at the end of the fairway. It has special grass that is very short. In the middle of the green is a hole. It has a flag placed in it so that golfers can see where it is.

Almost all golf courses 6 \_\_\_\_\_. These are small lakes, sandy areas and bunkers. They make it more difficult for players to hit the ball.

Although the Romans may have played 7 \_\_\_\_\_ and a ball filled with feathers golf, as we know it today, started in Scotland in the 14th century. Saint Andrews is called the birthplace of golf because its golf course is over 500 years old. The first rules of the game were also set there.

Golf spread from the British Isles to the overseas colonies. The oldest golf club outside of Britain was founded in Calcutta, India. Golf came to the USA, Canada and Australia towards the end of the 19th century. Although British golfers 8 \_\_\_\_\_ at first, great American golfers emerged at the beginning of the 20th century. In 1916 they formed a professional organization, the PGA, in which they started 9 \_\_\_\_\_ through golf.

Players like Severiano Ballesteros of Spain, Bernhard Langer of Germany or Gary Player of South Africa made golf popular in Europe and other continents. In the last two decades the American Tiger Woods has dominated the game.

In the 1960s more and more companies, private sponsors and television networks started 10 \_\_\_\_\_ golf. Today the best golfers in the world earn millions of dollars in prize money every year. Tiger Woods became the first athlete to become a billionaire.

- A) to the green
- B) dominated the sport
- C) have hazards
- D) around the world
- E) to earn money
- F) to pour money into
- G) called a tee
- H) indoor sports
- I) outdoor sports
- J) golf with a bent stick
- K) a round of golf

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

More and more middle-aged of men are trying to stay healthy through triathlons. They are events that combine swimming, running and cycling. Triathlons have become a very popular in the last five years, especially with men who are over 40. According to a sporting goods association there are 1.2 million triathletes around the world.

The triathlon mania probably was started around fifteen years ago when the sport became an event in the Atlanta Olympics. Before that triathlon was only for "Ironmen", those who could swim 2.4 miles, ride a bike for 112 miles and run a classical 26.2 mile marathon. In the Olympics the distances became shorter and those athletes who did not want to struggle for 12 hours could also take part. A sprint triathlon can be finished in three hours.

Older marathon runners have switched to the triathlon because they do not want to be risk further injuries. Your knees get many worse in long distance races and swimming and cycling takes a lot of pressure off them.

Triathlon is a booming kind sport in sportswear stores as well. They sell everything from special triathlon sunglasses to running shoes. Magazines are full of articles about triathlon, training tips and previews of events from all over the world. Triathlon is not a cheap sport and many young men cannot afford it. An ambitious athlete preparing for an "Ironman" can spend up to \$20,000 a year, including training, fitness articles, wet suits, helmets and other things. A bike alone can be cost up to \$10,000.

Many of people who have started the sport do so mainly because they want to keep fit and be able to look at themselves in a mirror. Most of them just don't must want to sit around and wait till they get old. They want to do something about it.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

**Спорт в Австралії**

Спорт в Австралії, особливо командні та водні види спорту, популярний серед населення і поширений у всіх регіонах. Уряд вкладає значні суми в його розвиток, крім того, економічний стан країни і клімат сприяють популяризації спорту. Австралійські команди беруть участь в Олімпійських іграх, Іграх Співдружності та інших міжнародних змаганнях. Спорт відіграє настільки важливу роль в житті країни, що його називають «народною релігією». Найбільш популярні такі види спорту: австралійський футбол, скачки, автоперегони, крикет, пляжний волейбол, серфінг, плавання і гольф. Серед жінок популярний нетбол. Національним видом спорту є крикет.

Австралія входить до числа країн, які регулярно посилають своїх спортсменів на літні Олімпійські ігри. Двічі вони проводилися в Австралії:

Літні Олімпійські ігри 1956 році в Мельбурні і Літні Олімпійські ігри 2000 році в Сіднеї.

## Серфінг



Серфінг дуже популярний в Австралії. Столицею Австралійського серфінгу є Золоте Узбережжя – більше 30 кілометрів піщаного пляжу і яскравого сонця. Теплий клімат, зелений континент і хвилі будь-якого ступеня складності – все це приваблює тисячі серфінгістів з усього світу саме в Австралію. Кращим сезоном для серфінгу є найтепліші місяці австралійського літа – з грудня по квітень. Сотні змагань в кожному з міст Австралії, безліч секцій та спеціалізованих шкіл дають австралійцям можливість перебувати на високих позиціях у світі серфінгу. Щорічно в Австралії проводяться два великі міжнародні змагання з серфінгу – «Quicksilver Pro» (2-х тижневе змагання в кінці лютого – середині березня на пляжах Kirra, Broadbeach, Snapper Rocks Superbank) і змагання «Rip Curl Pro» (найтриваліше в світі змагання з серфінгу на знаменитому пляжі Беллс-Біч, яке проводиться в період Пасхи). Крім того, Австралія є світовим лідером з виробництва дощок і спорядження для серфінгу.

***VI. Translate the text from Hungarian into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Szörfösök és strandok**

Ausztrália az ezerarcú ország. Földrajzi adottságai lehetővé teszik, hogy az ember minden létező sportot kipróbálhasson és élvezzen. Az ország bővelkedik hegyekben, sivatagban, tengerpartokban vagy éppen sík és kopár terepeken egyaránt. Változatossága igen sok sportrajongót, elsősorban bűvárokat és vitorlázni vágyókat vonz a turista paradicsomokba. Évente több ezer megszállott szörfös is érkezik a világ minden tájáról, hogy kipróbálja magát az ausztrál hullámok tetején.

Igazi ausztrál szenvedély a hullámlovaglás. Az ausztrál életforma nem teljes a szörfdeszka nélkül. Talán azért is alakult ez így, mert a nagyvárosok többsége a partvidéken található, karnyújtásnyira a habos hullámok sokaságától. Így ha az ország neve szóba kerül a sport területén, akkor rögtön a szörfözés jut az emberek eszébe. Nincs olyan fiatal, aki életében egyszer ne próbálta volna ki a szörfözés élményét. Ez az élmény már gyerekkorban elkezdődik, mert a strandokon is azt látni, hogy az úszógumi helyett egy kisebb deszkát húznak maguk mögött az aprócska gyerekek. A víz imádata, a veszélyérzet hiánya és a szörfdeszkák sokasága mind hozzátartozik az ország sportimázsához. A munka utáni és hétvégi szörfözések a cápatámadások ellenére sem riasztják vissza a megszállottakat eme sporttól. A remek partszakaszok és hullámok olyan

helyszínekre csábítanak szörfözni vágyókat szerte a világból, mint Surfers Paradise vagy Bells Beach Victoria állam partjainál. Ausztrália 38 640 km hosszú partjai mentén, érdemes kipróbálni az ausztrál vizeket ebből a szempontból is. Aki nem tud szörfözni, annak számos iskola áll rendelkezésére tanulni a part mentén. A biztosított strandokon általában ki van tűzve két jól látható sárga, piros zászló, és az úszni vágyók ezek között úszhatnak biztonságosan.

Mivel az ausztrál strandokon lényegesen több veszélylehetőség van, mint másutt, ezért nem meglepő, hogy majdnem minden strandot életmentők biztosítanak. Az életmentők figyelnek a strand állapotára, az aktuális veszélyforrásokra, melyek eredhetnek a nagy hullámból, medúza rajok, strandra tévedt cápa miatt. De nem csak veszélyes állatok ólálkodnak a szörfösök és fürdőzők körül, az emberszerető delfinek is felbukkannak néha.



Mindenki látott már a filmekben laza, nap barnította, szőke, hosszú hajú, érdekes nyakláncokat, karkötőket viselő, szörfdeszkájukkal akrobatikus mutatványokat végrehajtó szörfösöket. Ha Ausztráliában vagy nem kell bekapcsolnod a TV-t, hogy találkozz velük, elég, ha lemész a legközelebbi strandra. Ausztrália partjainál hatalmas hullámokban törik meg a tenger morajlása. Ez teszi Ausztráliát a szörfösök paradicsomává. Érdekes életforma a szörfösöké. Áthatja őket valamiféle lazaság, nyugodtság, természetközelség. Tisztelik az óceánt és kihasználják az általa nyújtott mérhetetlen lehetőségeket, hogy kedvenc időtöltésüknek hódolhassanak. Ezt a sportot eredetileg hawaii bevándorlók hozták magukkal a XX: század elején, és napjainkra szinte nemzeti sporttá nőtte ki magát. Több mint minden tizedik ausztrál hódol aktívan ennek a tevékenységnek.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about golf and cricket.***

***VIII. Compare sport in Australia with that in your country.***

# I. ETYMOLOGY AND SYMBOLISM

## 1. Etymology



*Detail from a 1657 map showing the western coastline of "Nova Zeelandia"*

Dutch explorer Abel Tasman sighted New Zealand in 1642 and called it *Staten Landt*, supposing it was connected to a landmass of the same name at the southern tip of South America. In 1645 Dutch cartographers renamed the land *Nova Zeelandia* after the Dutch province of Zeeland. British explorer James Cook subsequently anglicized the name to New Zealand.

*Aotearoa* (often translated as "land of the long white cloud") is the current Māori name for New Zealand. It is unknown whether Māori had a name for the whole country before the arrival of Europeans, with *Aotearoa* originally referring to just the North Island. Māori had several traditional names for the two main islands, including *Te Ika-a-Māui* (the fish of Māui) for the North Island and *Te Waipounamu* (the waters of greenstone) or *Te Waka o Aoraki* (the canoe of Aoraki) for the South Island. Early European maps labelled the islands North (North Island), Middle (South Island) and South (Stewart Island / Rakiura). In 1830 maps began to use North and South to distinguish the two largest islands and by 1907 this was the accepted norm. The New Zealand Geographic Board discovered in 2009 that the names of the North Island and South Island had never been formalized, and names and alternative names were formalized in 2013. This set the names as North Island or *Te Ika-a-Māui*, and South Island or *Te Waipounamu*. Note that for each island, either its English or Māori name can be used, or both can be used together.

## 2. National Symbols of New Zealand

The national symbols of New Zealand are a manifestation of the rich history, culture and heritage of the country.

### New Zealand's National Anthem

"God Defend New Zealand" is one of two national anthems of New Zealand, the other being "God Save the Queen". Legally they have equal status, but "God Defend New Zealand" is more commonly used, and is widely albeit incorrectly referred to as "the national anthem". Originally written as a poem, it was set to music as part of a competition in 1876. Over the years its popularity increased, eventually being named the second national anthem in 1977. The anthem has English and Māori lyrics, with slightly different meanings. When performed in public, the usual practice is to sing the first verse in both Māori and English.



"God Defend New Zealand" was written as a poem in the 1870s by Irish-born, Victorian-raised immigrant Thomas Bracken of Dunedin. A competition to compose music for the poem was held in 1876 by The Saturday Advertiser and judged by three prominent Melbourne musicians, with a prize of ten guineas. The winner of the competition was the Tasmanian-born John Joseph Woods of Lawrence, New Zealand who composed the melody in a single sitting the evening after finding out about the competition. The song was first performed at the Queen's Theatre, Princes Street, Dunedin, on Christmas Day, 1876.

The song became increasingly popular during the 19th century and early 20th century, and in 1940 the New Zealand government bought the copyright and made it New Zealand's national hymn in time for that year's centennial celebrations. It was used at the British Empire Games from 1950 onward, and first used at the Olympics during the 1972 Summer Olympics in Munich. Following the performance at the Munich games, a campaign began to have the song adopted as the national anthem.

In May 1973 a remit to change the New Zealand flag, declare a New Zealand republic and change the national anthem from 'God Save The Queen' was voted down by the Labour Party at their national conference.

In 1976 Garth Henry Latta from Dunedin presented a petition to Parliament asking 'God Defend New Zealand' to be made the national anthem, and, with the permission of Queen Elizabeth II, it became the country's second national anthem on 21 November 1977, on equal standing with "God Save The Queen". Up until then "God Save The Queen" was New Zealand's national anthem.

An alternative official arrangement for massed singing by Maxwell Fernie was announced by the Minister of Internal Affairs, Allan Highet on 1 June 1978.

It is interesting to observe that Woods' autograph manuscript (illustrated, Auckland Library) has an error in bar 3 of the tune itself. The second note is clearly written as a C but it is always sung as D-flat as indeed the accompaniment is a D-flat triad.

### **God Defend New Zealand**

Regarded as one of the national anthems of New Zealand, it has great significance in the lives of the citizens living in New Zealand. "God Defend New Zealand" was written in 1870 by Thomas Bracken, and music was composed by John Joseph Woods. Due to its increasing popularity in the 19th and 20th century, it was finally adapted as one of the national anthems of the country through a legal procedure.

### **Coat of Arms of New Zealand**

The Coat of Arms of New Zealand is regarded as the official symbol of New Zealand and was initially granted by King George V on 26 August 1911.

From 1840 until 1911 New Zealand used the British Royal Coat of Arms. The first known move to establish a Coat of Arms for New Zealand was a design competition in 1906. Legend has it that the submissions were destroyed by a fire



in the old Parliament Buildings the following year, but in fact they are held in the Archives of New Zealand. Whatever the reason, the competition was rerun in 1908, when 75 designs featuring everything from kiwi, sheep, cows, moa and lions to stars, ships, British soldiers, Māori warriors and Union Jacks were received. Three entries were sent to England for the final judging. The winner was James McDonald, a draughtsman in the Department of Tourist and Health Resorts. However, the Heraldry of the World website notes

that McDonald's design was 'tidied up' before being officially accepted in 1911. Changes included replacing Māori carvings at the bottom with 'more conventional' decoration, and making the Zealandia figure 'more demure' and the Māori figure 'less challenging'.

Although the Royal Warrant specified the design of the New Zealand Coat of Arms, by the mid-1940s at least 20 different versions were in use. A committee was set up to redraw and standardise the Arms and the Queen approved a revised version in 1956. These Arms are still in use today.

The coat of arms depicts a shield with four quadrants divided by a central "pale". The first quadrant depicts the four stars on the flag of New Zealand; the second quadrant depicts a golden fleece, representing the nation's farming industry; the third depicts a sheaf of wheat for agriculture; and the fourth quadrant depicts crossed hammers for mining. The central pale depicts three galleys, representing New Zealand's maritime nature and also the Cook Strait. The Dexter supporter is a European woman carrying the flag of New Zealand, while the Sinister supporter is a Maori Warrior holding a Taiaha (Fighting weapon) and wearing a Kaitaka (flax cloak). The Shield is topped by the Crown of St. Edward, the Monarch of New Zealand's Crown. Below is a scroll with "New Zealand" on it, behind which (constituting the "heraldic compartment" on which the supporters stand) are two fern branches.

## National Flag of New Zealand



The Flag of New Zealand bears striking similarity with the Union Flag. It has four red stars with a white border. The stars represent the configuration of Crux, referred to as the Southern Cross in New Zealand.

### History of the New Zealand flag

Over relatively short history of only 169 years New Zealand has had three official flags.

### **1834 - 1840 - The Flag of the United Tribes of New Zealand**

New Zealand's first flag was designed by a senior missionary of the Church Missionary Society, sewn up by an Australian and voted on by 25 Maori Chiefs from the Far North. It came to be known as the Flag of the United Tribes of New Zealand in recognition of the title used by the same chiefs when they met again at Waitangi to sign the Declaration of Independence in 1835. To Maori, the United Tribes flag was significant in that Britain had recognised New Zealand as an independent nation with its own flag, and in doing so, had acknowledged the mana of the Maori chiefs.

### **1840 - 1902 - The Union Jack**

Following the signing of the Treaty of Waitangi on 6 February 1840, the Union Jack replaced the Flag of the United Tribes of New Zealand as the official flag of New Zealand. The new Lieutenant -Governor, William Hobson, forcibly removed the United Tribes flag from the Bay of Islands, however, some Maori, including Hone Heke, believed that Maori should have the right to fly the United Tribes flag alongside the Union Jack, in recognition of their equal status with the government. Heke's repeated felling of the flagstaff at Kororareka between 1844 and 1846 was a vivid rejection of the Union Jack, which was viewed as a symbol of British power over Maori.

### **1902- present - The Current Flag**

At the end of the nineteenth century the blue ensign with the Southern Cross was a flag for maritime purposes only but it had gradually come to be used on land, even though the Union Jack remained the legal flag of New Zealand. With the outbreak of the South African War in 1899 and its associated patriotism and flag-waving, the confusion surrounding the correct flag was an embarrassment to Premier Seddon. In 1902 Seddon instituted the Blue Ensign with the stars of the Southern Cross the legal flag of New Zealand.

The roots of New Zealand's present flag lie in the Imperial Colonial Naval Defence Act of 1865, which ruled that all ships owned by a colonial government must fly the Blue Ensign with the badge of the colony on it. New Zealand at that time did not have an official badge or emblem, and as such flew the Blue Ensign without a distinguishing badge. In 1866, the Government steamers St. Kilda and Sturt were reprimanded by visiting British ships for flying the Blue Ensign without the colony's badge. This embarrassment prompted the government to devise an emblem for placement on the flag, in compliance with the Act.

Initial ideas for the design of New Zealand's emblem included the seal of New Zealand and the words 'New Zealand', however both were found to be too difficult to work into the design of the Blue Ensign. The 4 stars of the Southern Cross were also proposed, but were rejected as not being exclusively representative of New Zealand. In 1867, the colonial government settled on the abbreviation NZ in red lettering with a white border to represent New Zealand on the Blue Ensign. This emblem was shortlived and in 1869, was replaced by the earlier suggestion of the Southern Cross, comprised of 4 red stars with white borders.

Officially the flag with the Southern Cross was for maritime purposes only but it gradually came to be used on land, even though the Union Jack remained the

legal flag of New Zealand. Further confusion was caused by the introduction of a new International Code of Signals, which instituted a new signalling flag in 1899. The signalling flag was identical to the Southern Cross flag, except for the addition of a white disc surrounding the red stars. It was also for use at sea or in foreign ports; however, its use spread on shore to public buildings and commercial advertising, causing much consternation in the House of Representatives. During debates in Parliament it was harshly described as being 'mutilated' or 'an abortion' or more curiously, as 'a Hennessy's brandy capsule'. With the outbreak of the South African War in 1899 and its associated patriotism and flag-waving, the confusion surrounding the correct flag was an embarrassment to Premier Seddon.

### **Making the flag official**

Seddon's response was to introduce the New Zealand Ensign and Code Signals Bill in 1900 to make the Blue Ensign with the stars of the Southern Cross the legal flag of New Zealand. The Bill received general acclaim in the House, but met with opposition when it reached Sir Robert Stout, who was acting as Governor in the absence of the Earl of Ranfurly. Stout disapproved of the Bill as he felt the clause reserving the Act for Her Majesty's approval trampled on the Governor's right to decide an appropriate course of action. Seddon disagreed, and refused to alter the offending clause, as he considered a constitutional principle to be at stake. In the end, the wrangling all came to nothing as the Admiralty had concerns entirely unrelated to the mechanism by which the Bill was set aside for Her

### **Majesty's assent.**

The Admiralty objected to the proposed use of the Blue Ensign 'for all purposes', as set out in the preamble of the Act. In the United Kingdom, the privilege of flying the Blue Ensign was reserved for Government ships, and other distinguished vessels. It was feared that this distinction would be watered down should the New Zealand Bill be approved, as all New Zealand-registered merchant ships would be automatically granted the right to fly the Blue Ensign under its provisions. The New Zealand Government therefore agreed to specifically limit the use of the Blue Ensign at sea to those 'vessels owned and used by the New Zealand Government', or where a warrant to fly the Ensign had been obtained from the Admiralty.

The Bill was replaced by another modified New Zealand Ensign Act, which was passed by the House on 5 November 1901, after debate as to whether the Southern Cross ought to include 5 stars as the Victorian flag did. His Majesty The King approved the Act on 24 March 1902 and His Excellency the Governor's proclamation to this effect was published in the New Zealand Gazette on 12 June 1902. A description of the flag followed on 27 June 1902, detailing alterations to the size and position of the stars. The Act was replaced by various Shipping and Seamen's Acts, including those of 1903 and 1908, but the provisions concerning the New Zealand flag remained effectively unchanged until the Flags, Emblems and Names Protection Act 1981 came into force.

## **Kiwi**

Kiwi is a national symbol of New Zealand. The name of the bird – Kiwi comes from the language of Maori (indigenous NZ people). It means “hidden bird”. The association between Kiwis and NZ is so strong that often the word Kiwi is used to refer to the people of New Zealand. Kiwi appeared as a symbol for the first time in the middle of the 19 century when it is pictured on New Zealand regimental badges. During the First World War “Kiwi” was used as a byword for New Zealand soldiers. Nowadays the use of the word has spread, so that it includes all New Zealanders. Therefore for all the people who want to work, live and travel to New Zealand it will be interesting to read some information about these fascinating birds.

Kiwis are one of the most ancient and unique birds in the world. Their natural habitat is the forests and jungles of New Zealand. Kiwi is the only bird, which does not have a tail. Furthermore during its evolution it lost its wings and thus the ability to fly. In comparison with other birds, it has a very acute sense of smell, but not so well developed vision. Kiwis are omnivorous and like to eat both small animals and plants. Another interesting fact is that among all birds Kiwis lay the largest eggs in relation to their own body size. The Kiwi’s egg can weigh up to 450 gr. (16 oz), which is almost one fifth of the average weight of an adult female. Most of the Kiwi subspecies are currently endangered. It is now believed that only 200 birds are left in the wild. There are many Kiwi conservation projects that are currently being run. The largest one is managed by the Bank of New Zealand. There are five Kiwi sanctuaries currently created. Two of them are in the South Island and three are in the North Island. Furthermore New Zealand has introduced a strict system of pest management as a result of which the survival rate for Kiwis has greatly increased.

Different scientific variations have been observed on the behavior of this species of birds after lots of research work. They also form an important part of rich traditional customs of New Zealand where nature is worshipped and apprehended as great gift of God.

### **National colours of New Zealand**

National colours of New Zealand orders include black, white or silver, and red ochre.

### **Decorations**

In addition to the Queen's Service Order, decorations that include or consist of the national colours are the Order of New Zealand, the New Zealand Order of Merit the New Zealand Operational Service Medal, the New Zealand War Service Medal, and the New Zealand Service Medal 1946–1949.

The Queen's Service Order and Queen's Service Medal both have a ribbon with "central alternating stripes of red ochre (kokowhai), white and black in a descending step pattern from left to right" with a Māori Poutama motif.

The military decorations New Zealand Operational Service Medal, New Zealand War Service Medal, and New Zealand Service Medal 1946–1949 all have black and white ribbons drawn from the national colours.

## Floral Emblem

New Zealand does not have an official national flower however the Silver Fern (foliage) is acknowledged as a national emblem in New Zealand. The Kowhai (*Sophora* spp., native trees with yellow cascading flowers) is usually regarded as the national flower. Other plant emblems are: Koru (a curled fern symbol) and the crimson-flowered Pohutukawa (*Metrosideros excelsa*), also called New Zealand's Christmas tree.

## New Zealand's National Gemstone

Finding beautiful, durable and rare stones in New Zealand is a matter of knowing where they lie among the predominant greywacke boulders. By scouring certain rivers and beaches, enthusiasts may come upon pieces of quartz or garnet, or the even rarer pounamu, goodletite or kyanite. Gemstones are stones that are rare, beautiful, and don't have defects. People often polish them so that they are smooth and shiny. They can then be made into earrings, pendants and other jewellery.

New Zealand does not have any precious gems such as diamonds or emeralds. The main gemstones in New Zealand include:

*Quartz* – in this group are purple amethysts and agates of many colours.

*Garnets* – these are pink, red or yellow.

*Pounamu* – this is also known as greenstone or New Zealand jade.

Most New Zealand gemstones come from mountain rocks which have broken off into boulders. These wash into streams and rivers, which carry them out to sea. Along the way, they break up into smaller and smaller pieces, and eventually into stones, which get washed up onto beaches.

Gemstones are hard to find. New Zealand has plenty of ordinary grey stones, which come from a hard rock called greywacke. This is what the country's mountain ranges are made of, and you can see it all around the country. So, finding the special gemstones is a matter of searching out places where there are other kinds of rock. The best places to look are rivers and beaches. For example, gemstones have been found at Granity on the West Coast of the South Island, at Birdlings Flat near Christchurch, and on the Coromandel Peninsula.

Māori from the Ngāi Tahu tribe have traditional rights to pounamu. This beautiful green gemstone is usually found as large boulders on the West Coast of the South Island. Pounamu is very good for cutting and carving. Māori have traditionally made pounamu weapons, tools and ornaments, and used it for trade.

## TASKS

***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) tract of land completely surrounded by water, and not large enough to be called a continent;
- 2) something that is passed down from preceding generations;
- 3) piece of cloth, usually rectangular, of distinctive color and design, used as a symbol, standard, signal, or emblem;

- 4) traditional practice or usual way of doing something followed by a social group or people;
- 5) local division of an aboriginal people;
- 6) song, as of praise, devotion, or patriotism;
- 7) typical way of living, reflecting attitudes, preferences, etc., of an individual or group;
- 8) group of closely related organisms that are very similar to each other and are usually capable of interbreeding and producing fertile offspring;
- 9) science, art, and business of cultivating soil, producing crops, and raising livestock; farming agriculture;
- 10) large area of land landmass.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Aotearoa (often translated as "land of the long white cloud") is the current English name for New Zealand.
2. It is unknown whether Māori had a name for the whole country before the arrival of Europeans, with Aotearoa originally referring to just the North Island.
3. Māori had several traditional names for the two main islands, including Te Ika-a-Māui (the fish of Māui) for the North Island and Te Waipounamu (the waters of greenstone) or Te Waka o Aoraki (the canoe of Aoraki) for the South Island.
4. Early American maps labelled the islands North (North Island), Middle (South Island) and South (Stewart Island / Rakiura). In 1830, maps began to use North and South to distinguish the two largest islands and by 1907 this was the accepted norm.
5. The New Zealand Geographic Board discovered in 2009 that the names of the North Island and South Island had never been formalised, and names and alternative names were formalised in 2013.
6. This set the names as North Island or Te Ika-a-Māui, and South Island or Te Waipounamu.
7. Note that for each island, either its Spanish or Māori name can be used, or both can be used together.
8. New Zealand's first flag, the flag of the United Tribes of New Zealand, was adopted in 1834, six years before New Zealand became a German colony following the signing of the Treaty of Waitangi in 1840.
9. Chosen by an assembly of Māori chiefs at Waitangi in 1834, the flag was of a St George's Cross with another cross in the canton containing four stars on a blue field.
10. After the formation of the colony in 1840, British ensigns began to be used.
11. The current flag was designed and adopted for use on Colonial ships in 1869 following an Imperial statute and became New Zealand's national flag in 1902.

12. The Coat of Arms of New Zealand is regarded as the official symbol of New Zealand and was initially granted by King George V on 26th August 1911.

13. Since 1911, the central shield has not been changed: while a quarter of the shield of four stars representing the Southern Cross constellation, is also seen in the national flag of the country.

14. The golden fleece stands for the farming industry, while a wheat sheaf representing education and the two hammers correspond to the mining activities and industrial development.

15. A recent addition to it is that the shield is supported by two women on both sides of it holding the flag of New Zealand, and a warrior of Maori tribe having a taiaha.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

### **Māori clothing and adornment – kākahu Māori**

Traditionally, Māori made their clothes and adornments 1\_\_\_\_. There was a great variety of garments, including many kinds of cloaks. Clothing, adornments and even hairstyles showed a lot 2\_\_\_\_, and fine clothes could enhance mana.

As well as protecting against the rain and cold, traditional Māori garments were used to protect modesty and to show 3\_\_\_\_.

When 4 \_\_\_\_ came to New Zealand they had to adjust to a new climate, and to use new plants and animals to make their clothing. They used plants such as harakeke (New Zealand flax), cabbage trees and grasses to make fabrics. They also used birds' feathers and skins, and the skins of seals and kurī (Polynesian dogs).

Maori garments were hand woven, using both plaiting and weft-twining techniques. The skill of weaving natural materials into fabric was passed down 5 \_\_\_\_ . Many techniques were used to create patterns and to make fabric with different qualities.

The art of traditional weaving was in decline in the first half of the 20th century until groups and programmes were started 6 \_\_\_\_ .

The most special cloaks were worn only 7 \_\_\_\_ . These included cloaks made of kurī skin and hair, full-feathered cloaks and kaitaka, which are made of finely woven flax fibre.

Rain capes were 8\_\_\_\_ , and kept the wearer dry. They were usually made from flax or cabbage-tree leaves. In the 2000s 9 \_\_\_\_ were sometimes worn by waka (canoe) paddlers.

Māori generally walked barefoot, but sometimes made sandals from flax, cabbage-tree leaves or mountain grass for 10\_\_\_\_ .

A) the descendents of Maori

B) by chiefs

C) the wearer's status

D) from native plants, and bird and

animal skins

E) within families by women



- |                               |                          |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| F) shorter than cloaks        | I) to preserve the skill |
| G) about a person's status    | J) rain capes            |
| H) the ancestors of the Māori | K) crossing rocky ground |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

**The national Māori flag**

On Waitangi Day 2010 the national Māori flag flew fly for the first time over the Auckland Harbour Bridge. It also flew at Parliament, Premier House, the National War Memorial and on a number of other government buildings.

**The origins of the flag**

In 1989 the government allocated \$20 million to memory commemorating the sesquicentenary (150th anniversary) of the signature signing of the Treaty of Waitangi. In response a coalition of Māori independence organisations, collectively known as Te Kotahitanga, agreed to seek 'creative ways' to inform Māori of about breaches of the Treaty. Te Kawariki, an organisation based in the Far North, came up with the idea of running a competition for a national Māori flag, with the winning design to be ready in at time for the 1990 commemorations.

The idea arose from a trip a group of Māori activists had made to Australia the some years earlier. While in the country to support Aboriginal opposition to the 1982 Commonwealth Games in Brisbane, they visited Aboriginal activists in Redfern, Sydney. They were impressed by the prominent display of the Aboriginal flag by the Aboriginal community. In Te Kawariki's account of its activities, *20 years of protest action 1979-1999, Te Kawariki*, one of its members did describes the experience:

It was in everywhere – on T-shirts, on flagpoles, on hats, on bags, on walls, and even spray-painted onto a couple of had broken down cars on the road. A stunning and powerful symbol that were required no words, no explanations, no descriptions. It was just here there – in your face, behind your back, beneath your feet, waving above your head, and watching you from the sidelines. You just couldn't ignore it. The flag. It blew us away.

I remember memory vowing that one day we would have a flag of our own – a symbol of our struggle for Maori independence.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

**Етимологія назви та національні символи Нової Зеландії**

Назва, дана країні маорі до появи тут перших європейців, не збереглася, але відомо, що острів Північні маорі іменували Ті Іка-а-Мāуі (маорі Те Іка — а — Мāуі), що можна перекласти як "риба, належна Мāуі".

Мауї — напівбог в легендах маорі, який впіймав в океані величезну рибу, що перетворилася після цього в острів. Острів Південний мав дві поширені назви: *Ti Bāi Паўнаму* (маорі *Te Wai Pounamu*) і *Ti Bāka-a-Māui* (маорі *Te Waka a Māui*). Першу назву можна перекласти як "нефритова вода", а другу – як "човен, що належить Мауї", вже згаданому вище напівбогові легенд маорі. До початку ХХ століття острів Північний часто іменувався корінними жителями *Aotearoa* (що може бути перекладено, як "країна довгої білої хмари" (ao = хмара, tea = білий, roa = довгий), і пізніше саме ця назва стала загальноприйнятою назвою в мові маорі для всієї країни.



*Перша карта Нової Зеландії, складена Джеймсом Куком.*

Перший європейський мореплавець, що побував біля берегів цієї країни, голландець Абел Тасман назвав її "Staten Landt". Саме ця назва була трансформована голландськими картографами в латинське *Nova Zeelandia* на честь однієї з провінцій Нідерландів — Зеландія (нідерл. *Zeeland*), і в голландську назву *Nieuw Zeeland*. Пізніше британський мореплавець Джеймс Кук використовував англійську версію цієї назви, *New Zealand*, у своїх записах, і саме вона стала офіційною назвою країни. Українська назва, *Нова Зеландія*, є точним перекладом назви, що історично склалася.

Прапор Нової Зеландії — один із офіційних символів Нової Зеландії. Офіційно затверджений 24 березня 1904. Прапор створений на основі прапора Великобританії. На прапорі зображені чотири червоні п'ятикутні зірки, які символізують географічне положення країни та зображують найяскравіші зірки сузір'я Південного Хреста.

На державному прапорі Нової Зеландії в лівому верхньому куті як елемент зображений прапор Великобританії. У правій частині – чотири червоні п'ятикутні зірки, що символізують географічне положення Нової Зеландії та представляють найбільш яскраві зірки сузір'я Південного Хреста. Прапор має три кольори: червоний, синій та білий. Співвідношення сторін 1:2.

Перший варіант прапора Нової Зеландії, за основу якого був узятий англійський синій прапор, прийняли у 1867 році на підставі «Акту про захист колоніального флоту», який вимагав, щоб всі кораблі, що належать колоніальним урядам, несли синій прапор Королівських військово-морських сил з емблемою колонії. У Нової Зеландії в той період не було колоніальної емблеми або навіть герба, тому на синій прапор просто наклали літери NZ.

Існуючий прапор прийняли у 1869. Він спочатку використовувався лише на урядових кораблях, проте став національним прапором de facto на хвилі патріотизму під час другої бурської війни у 1902. Щоб припинити неясну ситуацію через різні варіанти прапора, уряд лібералів прийняв постанову про прапор та кодові сигнали, схвалену королем Едуардом VII 24 березня 1902, яка оголосила цей прапор національним прапором Нової Зеландії.

Прем'єр-міністр Нової Зеландії Джон Кей виступив на підтримку ідеї змінити національний прапор країни. Однак, він попередив, що будь-які пропозиції по зміні стягу потрібно буде винести на референдум. «Я виступаю за модифікацію прапора. Але потрібно пам'ятати, що це – не найбільша проблема, з якою стикається наша країна», – додав Кей. За словами прем'єра, майже половина мешканців Нової Зеландії вважає, що країні потрібен новий прапор. Сам прем'єр зазначив, що хотів би побачити на прапорі срібну папороть – рослину, що стала національним символом Нової Зеландії.

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Népszavazáson döntöttek Új-Zéland zászlajáról**

Már a második világháború óta téma a zászlóváltás Új-Zélandon, ami azután került ismét napirendre, hogy John Key nemzeti párti miniszterelnök is hangot adott a lobogóval kapcsolatos nemtetszésének 2014-ben, amikor harmadik mandátumát elnyerte. A csere egyik fő okaként azt hozzák fel, hogy a mostani összetéveszthető a nagy ausztrál szomszédokéval.

A jelenlegi, 1902-ből származó zászló meglehetősen jellegtelen és Új-Zéland gyarmati múltjához kapcsolódik, ami nem véletlenül épp a Nemzeti Pártot zavarja: tulajdonképpen a brit zászlóról van szó. Mit is láthatunk a jelenlegi új-zélandi zászlón, amelyet 1902-ben fogadott el a nemzet? A bal felső sarokban található a brit zászló, jelképezve a brit gyarmati létet, illetve a Nagy-Britanniához való tartozást. A zászló jobb oldali felén pedig 4 csillagot láthatunk, amely a Dél Keresztje avagy a Southern Cross csillagkép, amely azt hivatott szimbolizálni, hogy az ország a déli féltekén található. Ez a csillagkép olyasmi, mint az északi féltekén az északi Sarkcsillag. Igen fontos útmutatásként szolgált a hajósoknak, mivel a csillagkép mindig a Déli-sark felé mutat.



*Ausztrália és Új-Zéland zászlója*

A kormány a lakosságtól kért terveket, és kinevezett egy 12 fős, a társadalom minden rétegét reprezentáló bizottságot, hogy kiválassza közülük a legjobbakat, amelyek közül utána a lakosság egy előzetes népszavazáson választotta ki a Kyle Lockwood által tervezett ezüstpáfrányosat, amin szerepel a Dél Keresztjét jelképező négy csillag (ahogy a régin is), az alapszínek fekete-kék, a brit Union Jack pedig ezüst páfránylevélre módosult.

A 40 zászló-javaslaton sokféle elrendezésben és formában visszatérő motívumok a páfrányág, a koru (maori szimbólum, a még kibomlás előtt álló páfrányág), a Dél Keresztje csillagkép, és a brit zászló is.

A színeket illetően megjelentek a brit zászló piros, fehér és kék színei, az All Blacks nemzeti rögbi-válogatott feketéje, illetve a zöld szín talán a természet szeretete és jelentősége miatt.

Mit jelentenek a zászlójavaslatokon megjelenő szimbólumok?

A koru komolyan hozzátehetne az ország maori (helyi őslakos) identitás kifejeződéséhez. (Új-Zéland az úgynevezett Waitangi Egyezmény értelmében bikulturális ország, ami azt jelenti, hogy igyekszik éppen annyira figyelembe venni a maori kultúrát és érdekeket, mint amennyire a pakeha, azaz európai származásút.) A maori kultúrában a koru szimbolizálja az új életet, új kezdést, a növekedést, az erőt, a békét. A koru nagyon sok szuvenírtárgyon, képen, művészeti alkotáson megtalálható. Az ezüst páfrányágot fekete alapon a világhíres új-zélandi rögbicsapat, az All Blacks tette igazán népszerűvé, hiszen mezük fekete, és egy fehér (ezüst) páfrányág látható rajta. Új-Zélandon sokan az autójukra vagy a házukra az All Blacks zászlóját tűzik ki, sokak számára Új-Zéland szinte azonos az All Blacksszel.

A lakosságnak a jelenlegi, gyarmati időkből származó lobogó, illetve a szavazást megnyerő, ezüstpáfrányos zászló között kellett választania. A zászlócserélést folyó kampány még 2015 májusában kezdődött meg,

A szavazásra jogosultak 56, 6 százaléka szavazott a brit zászlót magában foglaló, 1902 óta érvényes lobogóra, és 43, 4 százaléknyan az új változatra, amelyet több mint tízezer pályaműből választottak ki. Ezen fekete-kék alapon egy ezüst színű páfrány, és a régi zászlóból átvett négy piros Dél csillaga látható. Voksolni levélben lehetett, a részvételi arány 67, 3 százalékos volt. Ez volt egyébként az ország történelmében az első népszavazás, amin végül a résztvevők 57 százaléka állt ki az eredeti lobogó mellett.

Hasonló zászlóváltoztatásra más angolszász országokban is akadt már példa. Kanada mai juharleveles zászlóját csak a hatvanas években fogadták el, azelőtt pedig az ő zászlójuk bal felső sarkában is a brit zászló díszelgett.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the symbols of New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the symbols of New Zealand with those of your country***

## II. HISTORY AND ETHNIC RELATIONS

### 1. History



The Māori people are most likely descended from the people who emigrated from Taiwan to Melanesia and then travelled east to the Society Islands. After a pause of 70 to 265 years, a new wave of exploration led to the discovery and settlement of New Zealand.

New Zealand was one of the last major landmasses settled by humans. Radiocarbon dating, evidence of deforestation and mitochondrial DNA variability within Māori populations suggest New Zealand was first settled by Eastern Polynesians between 1250 and 1300, concluding a long series of voyages through the southern Pacific islands. Over the centuries that followed these settlers developed a distinct culture now known as Māori. The population was divided into iwi (tribes) and hapū (subtribes) who would sometimes cooperate, sometimes compete and sometimes fight with each other. At some point a group of Māori migrated to the Chatham Islands (which they named Rēkohu) where they developed their distinct Moriori culture. The Moriori population was decimated between 1835 and 1862, largely because of Taranaki Māori invasion and enslavement in the 1830s, although European diseases also contributed. In 1862 only 101 survived and the last known full-blooded Moriori died in 1933.

The first Europeans known to have reached New Zealand were Dutch explorer Abel Tasman and his crew in 1642. In a hostile encounter, four crew members were killed and at least one Māori was hit by canister shot. The Europeans did not revisit New Zealand until 1769 when British explorer James Cook mapped almost the entire coastline. Following Cook, New Zealand was visited by numerous European and North American whaling, sealing and trading ships. They traded food, metal tools, weapons and other goods for timber, food, artifacts and water. The introduction of the potato and the musket transformed Māori agriculture and warfare. Potatoes provided a reliable food surplus, which enabled longer and more sustained military campaigns. The resulting inter-tribal Musket Wars encompassed over 600 battles between 1801 and 1840,

killing 30,000–40,000 Māori. From the early 19th century, Christian missionaries began to settle New Zealand, eventually converting most of the Māori population. The Māori population declined to around 40% of its pre-contact level during the 19th century. Introduced diseases were the major factor.



*The Waitangi sheet from the Treaty of Waitangi*

In 1788 Captain Arthur Phillip assumed the position of Governor of the new British colony of New South Wales which, according to his commission, included New Zealand. The British Government appointed James Busby as British Resident to New Zealand in 1832 following a petition from northern Māori. In 1835, following an announcement of impending, French settlement by Charles de Thierry, the nebulous United Tribes of New Zealand sent a Declaration of the Independence to King William IV of the United Kingdom asking for protection. Ongoing unrest, the proposed settlement of New Zealand by the New Zealand Company (which had already sent its first ship of surveyors to buy land from Māori) and the dubious legal standing of the Declaration of Independence prompted the Colonial Office to send Captain William Hobson to

claim sovereignty for Great Britain and negotiate a treaty with the Māori. The Treaty of Waitangi was first signed in the Bay of Islands on 6 February 1840. In response to the New Zealand Company's attempts to establish an independent settlement in Wellington and French settlers purchasing land in Akaroa, Hobson declared British sovereignty over all of New Zealand on 21 May 1840, even though copies of the Treaty were still circulating throughout the country for Māori to sign. With the signing of the Treaty and declaration of sovereignty the number of immigrants, particularly from the United Kingdom, began to increase.

New Zealand, still part of the colony of New South Wales, became a separate Colony of New Zealand on 1 July 1841. The colony gained a representative government in 1852 and the first Parliament met in 1854. In 1856 the colony effectively became self-governing, gaining responsibility over all domestic matters other than native policy. (Control over native policy was granted in the mid-1860s). Following concerns that the South Island might form a separate colony, Premier Alfred Domett moved a resolution to transfer the capital from Auckland to a locality near the Cook Strait. Wellington was chosen for its harbour and central location, with parliament officially sitting there for the first time in 1865. As immigrant numbers increased, conflicts over land led

to the New Zealand Wars of the 1860s and 1870s, resulting in the loss and confiscation of much Māori land.

In 1891 the Liberal Party led by John Ballance came to power as the first organised political party. The Liberal Government, later led by Richard Seddon, passed many important social and economic measures. In 1893 New Zealand was the first nation in the world to grant all women the right to vote and in 1894 pioneered the adoption of compulsory arbitration between employers and unions. In 1898 Seddon's government passed the Old-age Pensions Act of 1898, the first general pensions scheme in the British Empire.

In 1907, at the request of New Zealand Parliament, King Edward VII proclaimed New Zealand a dominion within the British Empire, reflecting its self-governing status. Accordingly, the title "Dominion of New Zealand" dates from 1907.

In 1947 the country adopted the Statute of Westminster, confirming that the British Parliament could no longer legislate for New Zealand without the consent of New Zealand. New Zealand was involved in world affairs, fighting alongside the British Empire in the First and Second World Wars and suffering through the Great Depression. The depression led to the election of the first Labour government and the establishment of a comprehensive welfare state and a protectionist economy. New Zealand experienced increasing prosperity following World War II and Māori began to leave their traditional rural life and move to the cities in search of work. A Māori protest movement developed, which criticized Eurocentrism and worked for greater recognition of Māori culture and the Treaty of Waitangi. In 1975, a Waitangi Tribunal was set up to investigate alleged breaches of the Treaty, and it was enabled to investigate historic grievances in 1985. The government has negotiated settlements of these grievances with many iwi, although Māori claims to the foreshore and seabed have proved controversial in the 2000s.

## 2. Ethnicity and immigration



*New Zealanders of European descent*

In the 2013 census, 74.0% of New Zealand residents identified ethnically as European, and 14.9% as Māori. Other major ethnic groups include Asian (11.8%) and Pacific peoples (7.4%). The population has become more diverse in recent decades: in 1961, the census reported that the population of New Zealand was 92% European and 7% Māori, with Asian and Pacific minorities sharing the remaining 1 percent.

While the demonym for a New Zealand citizen is New Zealander, the informal "Kiwi" is commonly used both internationally and by locals. The Māori loanword Pākehā has been used to refer to New Zealanders of European

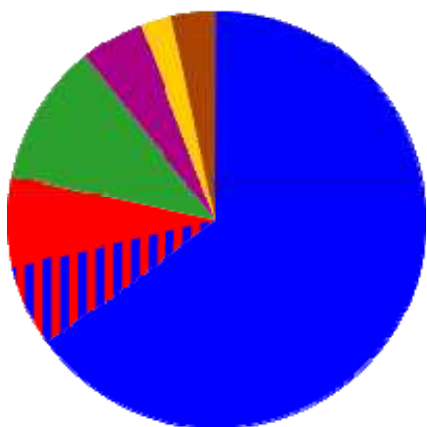
descent, although others reject this appellation. The word Pākehā today is increasingly used to refer to all non-Polynesian New Zealanders.



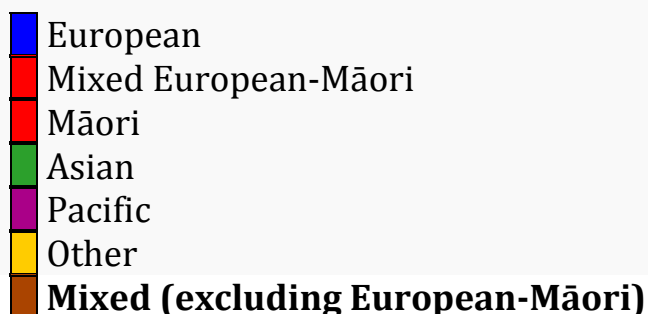
*Lion dancers perform at the Auckland Lantern Festival.*

The Māori were the first people to reach New Zealand, followed by the early European settlers. Following colonisation, immigrants were predominantly from Britain, Ireland and Australia because of restrictive policies similar to the white Australian policies. There was also significant Dutch, Dalmatian, Italian, and German immigration, together with indirect European immigration through Australia, North America, South America and South Africa. Following the Great Depression policies were relaxed and migrant diversity

increased. In 2009–10, an annual target of 45,000–50,000 permanent residence approvals was set by the New Zealand Immigration Service — more than one new migrant for every 100 New Zealand residents. Just over 25% of New Zealand's population was born overseas, with the majority (52%) living in the Auckland region. In the late 2000s, Asia overtook the UK and Ireland as the largest source of overseas migrants; at the 2013 census, 31.6% of overseas-born New Zealand residents were born in Asia (mainly China, India, the Philippines and South Korea), while 26.5% were born in the UK and Ireland. Australia, the Pacific Islands, and South Africa are also significant sources of migrants. The number of fee-paying international students increased sharply in the late 1990s, with more than 20,000 studying in public tertiary institutions in 2002.



*Ethnic groups as per the 2013 census.*



New Zealand is a multiethnic society, and home to people of many different national origins. Originally composed solely of the Māori who arrived in the thirteenth century, the ethnic makeup of the population has been



dominated since the mid 19th century by New Zealanders of European descent. Settlers brought diseases for which the Māori population had no immunity – by the 1890s, the Māori population was approximately 40% of its size pre-contact. From about 1820, a large number of children born were of mixed parentage, especially in the North of New Zealand where chiefs forced huge numbers of slave women and many children into prostitution with visiting sailors. One French captain described a chief forcing upwards of 150 girls and young women on his crew of 80. Most New Zealanders are of British and Irish ancestry, with smaller percentages of other European ancestries such as French, Dutch, Scandinavian and German. In the 2006 census, 67.6 % identified ethnically as European and 14.6% as Māori. Other major ethnic groups include Asian (9.2%) and Pacific peoples (6.9%), while 11.1 % identified themselves simply as a "New Zealander" (or similar) and 1% identified with other ethnicities. This contrasts with 1961, when the census reported that the population of New Zealand was 92 % European and 7 % Māori, with Asian and Pacific minorities sharing the remaining 1%.

During the 2013 census in New Zealand, it was estimated that 14.90% of the population of New Zealand were Maori, 11.8% of the population were Asians (deriving from various nations in Asia), 7.4% were of Pacific Islander origin (including from the Cook Islands, Niue, and Tokelau, all of which are dependent states of New Zealand in the Pacific), and 1.2% were individuals of Middle-Eastern, Latin American, and African descent. Approximately, a third of the population of New Zealand during the census were non-white European, while two-thirds of the population were white-European.

The largest Māori iwi is Ngapuhi with 122,211 people (or 18.97%) of the Māori population. The next largest iwi are Ngāti Porou, Ngāti Kahungunu, Ngāi Tahu/ Kāi Tahu, Te Arawa, Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Ngāti Maniapoto, Waikato and Tūhoe. A total of 102,366 people (or 15.9%) of Māori descent did not know their iwi. A group of Māori migrated to the Chatham Islands and developed their distinct Moriori culture. The Moriori population was decimated, first, by disease brought by European sealers and whalers and, second, by Taranaki Māori, with only 101 surviving in 1862 and the last known full-blooded Moriori dying in 1933. People identifying as having Moriori descents have increased in number in recent years, from 105 in 1991 to 945 in 2006.

Auckland is the most ethnically diverse region in New Zealand with 56.5% identifying as Europeans, 18.9% as Asian, 11.1% as Māori and 14.4% as other Pacific Islanders. Recent increases in interracial marriages has resulted in the New Zealand population of Māori, Asian and Pacific Islander descent growing at a higher rate than those of European descent. In 2006 10.4% of people, identified with more than one ethnic group in 2006, compared with 9.0% in 2001. The ethnic diversity of New Zealand is projected to increase. Europeans (including "New Zealanders") will remain the largest group, although it is predicted to fall to 70% in 2026. The Asian, Pacific and Māori groups are the fastest growing and will increase to 3.4%, 10% and 16% respectively. The ethnicity of the population aged under 18 years at 30 June 2006 was 72%

European, 24% Māori, 12% Pacific and 10% Asian. The population aged 65 years or older consisted of 91% European, 5% Māori, 4% Asian and 2% Pacific.

### 3. Language

English is the predominant language in New Zealand, spoken by 98% of the population. New Zealand English is mostly non-rhotic with an exception being the Southern Burr found principally in Southland and parts of Otago. It is similar to Australian English and many speakers from the Northern Hemisphere are unable to tell the accents apart. In New Zealand English the short i (as in kit) has become centralised, leading to the phrase fish and chips sounding like "fush and chups" to the Australian ear. The words *rarely* and *really*, *reel* and *real*, *doll* and *dole*, *pull* and *pool*, *witch* and *which*, and *full* and *fill* can sometimes be pronounced as homophones. Some New Zealanders pronounce the past participles *grown*, *thrown* and *mown* using two syllables, whereas *groan*, *throne* and *moan* are pronounced as one syllable. New Zealanders often reply to a question or emphasise a point by adding a rising intonation at the end of the sentence.

From 1880 Māori MPs in parliament were keen that Māori should be taught in English rather than Māori. At that time missionary schools still taught Māori. This trend was further enforced by the Young Maori Party of the early 20th century which consisted of highly qualified Western educated Māori graduates such as Pomare and Ngata who believed that learning English would help Māori integrate into the modern world. After WW2 Māori, who had previously lived mainly in isolated rural areas migrated into urban areas where there were few Māori speakers. Māori were discouraged from speaking their own language (te reo Māori) in schools and work places and it existed as a community language only in a few remote areas. It has recently undergone a process of revitalisation being declared an official language in 1987, and is spoken by 4.1 percent of the population. There are now Māori language immersion schools and two Māori Television channels, the only nationwide television channels to have the majority of their prime-time content delivered in Māori. Many places have officially been given dual Māori and English names in recent years. Samoan is the most widely spoken non-official language (2.3%), followed by French, Hindi, Yue and Northern Chinese. New Zealand Sign Language is used by approximately 28,000 people and was made New Zealand's third official language in 2006.

### TASKS

#### ***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) act of finding something that had not been known before;
- 2) form of a language that is spoken in a particular part of a country or by a particular group of people and that contains some words, grammar, or pronunciations (the ways in which words are said) that are different from the forms used in other parts or by other groups;
- 3) object that is respected by a group of people, especially for religious reasons;

- 4) large area of land where it is always very hot and dry, and there is a lot of sand;
- 5) tropical forest with tall trees that are very close together, growing in an area where it rains a lot;
- 6) member of your family who lived a long time ago;
- 7) official, usually periodic enumeration of a population, often including the collection of related demographic information;
- 8) area outside of cities and towns rural areas;
- 9) of unmixed ancestry;
- 10) to leave one country or region to settle in another;
- 11) feeling or showing enmity or ill will;
- 12) official appointed to govern a colony or territory;
- 13) group of people who have the same interests, religion, race etc.;
- 14) condition of having or including people from different ethnicities and social backgrounds;
- 15) name, title, or designation.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. The English were the first people to reach New Zealand, followed by the early European settlers.
2. Following colonisation, immigrants were predominantly from Britain, Ireland and Australia because of restrictive policies similar to the white Australian policies.
3. There was also significant Dutch, Dalmatian, Italian, and German immigration, together with indirect European immigration through Australia, North America, South America and South Africa.
4. Following the Great Depression policies were relaxed and migrant diversity increased.
5. In the late 2000s, Asia overtook the UK and Ireland as the largest source of overseas migrants; at the 2013 census, 31.6% of overseas-born New Zealand residents were born in Asia (mainly China, India, the Philippines and South Korea), while 26.5% were born in the UK and Ireland.
6. Australia, the Pacific Islands, and South Africa are also significant sources of migrants.
7. The number of fee-paying international students decreased sharply in the late 1990s, with more than 20,000 studying in public tertiary institutions in 2002.
8. Auckland is the most ethnically diverse region in New Zealand with 56.5 % identifying as Europeans, 18.9 percent as Asian, 11.1% as Māori and 14.4 % as other Pacific Islanders.
9. Recent increases in interracial marriages has resulted in the New Zealand population of Māori, Asian and Pacific Islander descent growing at a higher rate than those of European descent.
10. The ethnic diversity of New Zealand is projected to decrease.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

The **Maori** are the native or 1 \_\_\_\_ (Aotearoa – The Long White Cloud). They arrived in New Zealand 2 \_\_\_\_ in several waves at some time before 1300 CE. Over several centuries in isolation, the Maori developed a unique culture with their own language, a rich mythology, distinctive crafts and performing arts. They formed a 3 \_\_\_\_ based on East Polynesian social customs and organisation.. The arrival of Europeans to New Zealand starting from the 17th century brought enormous change to the Maori way of life. Maori people gradually adopted 4 \_\_\_\_ Initial relations between Maori and Europeans were largely amicable, and with the signing of the Treaty of Waitangi in 1840 the two cultures 5 \_\_\_\_ . However, rising tensions over disputed land sales led to conflict in the 1860s. Social upheaval, decades of conflict and epidemics of disease 6 \_\_\_\_ on the Maori population. But by the start of the 20th century the Maori population had begun to recover, and efforts were made to increase their standing in wider New Zealand society. A marked Maori 7 \_\_\_\_ gathered pace in the 1960s and is continuing.

There are estimated 660,000 Maori in New Zealand, making up roughly 15% of the national population. They are 8 \_\_\_\_ in New Zealand, after European New Zealanders ("Pakeha"). The 9 \_\_\_\_ is spoken to some extent by about a quarter of all Maori, and 4% of the total population, although many New Zealanders regularly use Maori words and expressions in normal speech such as "Kiaora". Maori are active in all spheres of New Zealand culture and society, with 10 \_\_\_\_ in areas such as media, politics and sport.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A) the second-largest ethnic group             | G) cultural revival                          |
| B) many aspects of Western society and culture | H) no representation                         |
| C) Maori language                              | I) coexisted as part of a new British colony |
| D) the native or indigenous                    | J) took a devastating toll                   |
| E) independent representation                  | K) tribal society                            |
| F) in New Zealand from eastern Polynesia       |  |

**Translate the text into Ukrainian.**

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

**New Zealand and the United Kingdom**

The history story of New Zealand's relationship with the UK mirrors closely the history of the growth of New Zealand as a modern nation. Today New Zealand has a distinctive identity, forged from the twin strands of our indigenous aboriginal Maori culture and our British heritage, but also incorporating

many influences from our wider region. We enjoy our uniqueness and the confidence it gives us as we deliver conduct our business throughout the world.

As a small nation with limited redundant resources, we are dependent on trade to survive and as a people we seek to build personal networks as well as business ones wherever we go.

The relationship between New Zealand and the UK has been based on complex trading and financial links, warm relations and a detailed understanding of each other and the way we do business. Our close ties have endured through inside times of prosperity and of hardship. We are share many perceptions of the world at large. Our soldiers have fought side by side in two World Wars, and have worked together as peacekeepers soldiers around the globe.

The UK remains a traditional and major overseas investor in New Zealand, and the source of more many of our imports. However, the relationship has changed and evolved over the decades. New Zealand's pattern of international trade changed importantly significantly once the UK joined the EU. Prior to that it was the destination for over half of all our exports. Today, New Zealand's trade and other links have spread and diversified enormously.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Маорійські війни**

Маорійське прислів'я говорить: «Краща смерть для людини – смерть за землю». І маорі піднялися на захист своїх земель.

1843-1872 роки – це роки так званих «маорійських війн». Історія «маорійських війн» поділяється на декілька етапів, кожен зі своїми характерними особливостями. Основними етапами можна вважати наступні: 1) 1843-1846 рр. – період розрізнених військових дій окремих племен;

2) 1846-1853 рр. – період відносного затишшя;

3) 1854-1859 рр. – рух до об'єднання серед маорі та підготовка більш організованого опору;

4) 1860-1865 рр. – війна під керівництвом «маорійського короля»;

5) 1865-1867 рр. – «рух паї-маріре»;

6) 1868-1872 рр. – останній етап боротьби.

Перший етап маорійських воєн – це стихійні спалахи опору, які охоплювали деколи великі райони, але не переростали у загальнонародний рух. Перше велике зіткнення мало місце в долині Ваірау (Південний острів). Приводом послужила суперечка про права на цю долину. Маорі розгромили озброєний загін колоністів (червень 1843). Більші розміри прийняло зіткнення в районі Корорарека, де плем'я нгапухов під керівництвом вождя ХонеХеке майже рік (1845) вело боротьбу проти англійців, завдаючи їм неодноразові поразки. Англійцям довелося мобілізувати великі сили – в останньому поході брали участь понад 1600 солдатів і офіцерів, крім того, їх підтримували деякі маорійські вожді.

У ході цієї війни вперше виявилися вражаючі бойові якості маорійських ополчень і майстерна фортифікаційна техніка: їх укріплення успішно протистояли артилерійському обстрілу і штурмам англійської піхоти. Насилу закінчивши важку війну, англійці не зважилися на конфіскацію землі у переможених маоріанців, щоб не озлобити їх ще більше.

У 1846 році зіткнення сталося на південному кінці Північного острова, в долині р.Хутту, де англійські війська зрадницьки напали під час переговорів на маорійське село, у відповідь на що маорі стали громити садиби колоністів. За допомогою своїх «маорійських союзників» англійцям і тут вдалося під кінець придушити опір повстанців.

У середині 1850-х років Нова Зеландія отримала права обмеженого самоврядування, а до кінця 90-х років того ж століття фактично стала незалежною державою. У 1893 році Нова Зеландія стала першою країною в світі, яка надала виборчі права жінкам.

У 1907 році Нова Зеландія була проголошена самостійним домініоном. Попри те, що протягом тривалого часу, як і всі домініони Британської Імперії, країна мала незалежне управління, розвинену економіку, власну внутрішню й зовнішню політику, формально вона стала цілком самостійною державою лише у 1947 році.

Сьогодні Нова Зеландія продовжує розвиватись як незалежна демократична держава й активний учасник міжнародних економічних і політичних відносин, приділяючи особливу увагу розвитку і зміцненню взаємин серед країн Тихоокеансько-Азіатського регіону.

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Egy kis történelem**

Új-Zéland egyike Földünk legkésőbb benépesült szárazföldjeinek. Nem lehet tudni pontosan mikor lépett ember először Új-Zéland területére. Feltehetőleg a VII-VIII. században. A sziget első lakói valószínűleg hajótöröttek voltak. A legtöbb korai település maradványait a Déli-szigeten találták meg. Az idekeveredett emberek legfőbb gondja az élelemszerzés és a hideg ellen való védekezés volt. Akkor még sok madárfaj élt a szigeten, köztük a legnagyobbak a moák. Innen származik a korai bevándorlók moavadász elnevezése. Őket szokták premaoriknak, ős-maoriknak vagy morioriknak nevezni.

Új-Zéland benépesülésének története a mai ismeretek szerint mintegy 1200 körül lehetett. Polinéziaiak vándoroltak be ide 500 és 1300 között, és létrehozták a maori kultúrát. A maorik a polinéz szigetvilág népeivel állnak rokonságban. A maori név is polinéz eredetű. Jelentése: normális, közönséges, rendes. A polinézek népesítik be a Csendes-óceán szigeteinek nagy részét. Antropológiai szempontból a polinézek kultúrájukat, szokásait, hitvallásukat tekintve sok hasonlóságot mutatnak. A polinéz népek nem ismerték az írást. A maorik gazdag szellemi kultúrája szájhagyomány útján maradt fenn. Ennek ellenére elég pontosan visszakövethető a maorik történelme. Az is elfogatható tény, hogy az ide érkező népek sokkal fejlettebb kultúrával rendelkeztek, mint a szomszédos Ausztrália őslakói. Természetesen, más antropológiai embertípust képviseltek.

A maorik őshazájuknak a Társasági-szigeteki Hawaikit tartják. Hawaikiről a törzsek több irányba indultak el. A maorik végül is az általuk Aoteaora-nak nevezett szigeten kötöttek ki. 25-30 méteres csónakokkal, egész családok érkeztek az új lakóhelyre.

A legenda szerint az első ember, aki megtalálta a mai Új-Zélandot Te Kupe maori hajós volt. Te Kupe 925-ben a Társaság-szigetéről útnak indult, hogy a kokoperos (hosszú farkú kakukk) nyomán megkeresse a madár hazáját. A szárazföld fehér hegycsúcsait megpillantva felkiáltott: „Ao-te aora!” azaz hosszú fehér felhő. Innen ered az Aotearoa maori elnevezés.

Új-Zéland mai nevét Abel Tasmantól kapta. Ő volt az első európai, aki ellátogatott a szigetekre 1642-ben. A maorik Tasman partraszállása után még 130 éven át zárt közösségekben éltek. Ekkor érkezett Cook kapitány titkos megbízatásával: Tahititől nyugat felé kellett hajózzon, hogy foglalja el Nagy-Britannia számára az arra található szárazföldeket. Megkezdődött a gyarmatosítás. Cook az év folyamán teljesen feltérképezte a szigetek partvonalát. A sziget csak lassan népesült be. Részben azért, mert nagyon távol volt Európától, részben, mert az angolok el voltak foglalva Ausztráliával. A szigetekben élő maorik kezdetben ellenségesen fogadták a "betolakodókat", de aztán megbarátkoztak velük. Az európai kereskedők cserekereskedelmet folytattak a maorikkal: fegyvert, fémeszközöket cseréltek fára, ételre. A maori hadviselést teljesen átalakította a lőfegyverek megjelenése. 1840-ben a vezetők megállapodtak a britekkel – Waitangi szerződés – amelyben Viktória királynő átengedte a szuverenitást, miközben a területi jogokat megtartotta. Ebben a szerződésben Anglia biztosította a bennszülötteket a védelemről, cserébe viszont kötelezte őket földjeik egy részének eladására. A szerződést kétnapi vita után elfogadták, ám a maorik, úgy tűnik, máig nem egységesek a szerződést illetően. Érdekes, hogy a maoriknak nem volt írott nyelvük, ebből kifolyólag az angolok írták le úgy, ahogy azt hallották.

Ugyanebben az évben kezdte meg működését az első szervezett gyarmati település. A sorozatos háborúk a szárazföldért 1843 és 1872 között végül a bennszülött népek vereségével ért véget. Nem sokkal később – 1856-ban – a szövetségesként elfogadott európai telepések kormányt alakítottak. Új-Zéland 1931 decemberében vált a Brit Nemzetközösség egyenrangú tagjává.

Az angolok szép lassan benépesítették a szigeteket. Új-Zéland 1947-ben vált teljesen függetlenné az angol országtól. Ma az egyetlen kapcsolódási pont az Egyesült Királysággal a Főkormányzó kinevezésében van. Ez a pozíció kb. az államelnöki posztnak felel meg, tehát inkább reprezentatív jellegű. A szabadon választott új-zélandi miniszterelnök tesz javaslatot a főkormányzó személyére és az angol uralkodónak jóvá kell azt hagynia. Ettől függetlenül az angol királynő képe látható minden helyi pénzen, csupán megszokásból.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the history of New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the ethnic relations in New Zealand with those in your country.***

### III. LOCATION AND GEOGRAPHY



New Zealand is about 1,000 miles (1,600 km) long (north-south) and about 280 miles (450 km) across at its widest point. The country has slightly less surface area than the U.S. state of Colorado and a little more than the United Kingdom. About two-thirds of the land is economically useful, the remainder being mountainous. Because of its numerous harbours and fjords, the country has an extremely long coastline relative to its area



*The snow-capped Southern Alps dominate the South Island, while the North Island's Northland Peninsula stretches towards the subtropics.*



*Aoraki / Mount Cook viewed from the road to Mount Cook Village, located in the Southern Alps. Much of New Zealand's South Island landscape is mountainous.*





*Torrent Bay at Abel Tasman National Park in the South Island.*

New Zealand is located near the centre of the water hemisphere and is made up of two main islands and a number of smaller islands. The two main islands (the North Island, or Te Ika-a-Māui, and the South Island, or Te Waipounamu) are separated by the Cook Strait, 22 kilometres (14 mi) wide at its narrowest point. Besides the North and South Islands, the five largest inhabited islands are Stewart Island, the Chatham Islands, Great Barrier Island (in the Hauraki Gulf), d'Urville Island (in the Marlborough Sounds) and Waiheke Island (about 22 km (14 mi) from central Auckland). The country's islands lie between latitudes 29° and 53°S, and longitudes 165° and 176°E.

New Zealand is long and narrow (over 1,600 kilometres (990 mi) along its north-north-east axis with a maximum width of 400 kilometres (250 mi)), with about 15,000 km (9,300 mi) of coastline and a total land area of 268,000 square kilometres (103,500 sq mi). Because of its far-flung outlying islands and long coastline, the country has extensive marine resources. Its Exclusive Economic Zone is one of the largest in the world, covering more than 15 times its land area.

The South Island is the largest landmass of New Zealand, and is divided along its length by the Southern Alps. There are 18 peaks over 3,000 metres (9,800 ft), the highest of which is Aoraki / Mount Cook at 3,754 metres (12,316 ft). Fiordland's steep mountains and deep fiords record the extensive ice age glaciation of this south-western corner of the South Island. The North Island is less mountainous but is marked by volcanism. The highly active Taupo Volcanic Zone has formed a large volcanic plateau, punctuated by the North Island's highest mountain, Mount Ruapehu (2,797 metres (9,177 ft)). The plateau also hosts the country's largest lake, Lake Taupo, nestled in the caldera of one of the world's most active supervolcanoes.

The country owes its varied topography, and perhaps even its emergence above the waves, to the dynamic boundary it straddles between the Pacific and Indo-Australian Plates. New Zealand is part of Zealandia, a microcontinent nearly half the size of Australia that gradually submerged after breaking away from the Gondwanan supercontinent. About 25 million years ago, a shift in plate tectonic movements began to contort and crumple the region. This is now most evident in the Southern Alps, formed by compression of the crust beside the Alpine Fault. Elsewhere the plate boundary involves the subduction of one plate under the other, producing the Puysegur Trench to the south, the Hikurangi Trench east of the North Island, and the Kermadec and Tonga Trenches further north.

Spectacular glaciers, picturesque fiords, rugged mountains, vast plains, rolling hillsides, subtropical forest, volcanic plateau, miles of coastline with

gorgeous sandy beaches – it's all here. No wonder New Zealand is becoming so popular as a location for movies.

Lying in the south-west Pacific, New Zealand consists of two main islands – the North Island and the South Island. Stewart Island and many smaller islands lie offshore.

The North Island of New Zealand has a 'spine' of mountain ranges running through the middle, with gentle rolling farmland on both sides. The central North Island is dominated by the Volcanic Plateau, an active volcanic and thermal area. The massive Southern Alps form the backbone of the South Island. To the east of the Southern Alps is the rolling farmland of Otago and Southland, and the vast, flat Canterbury Plains.

### **How it began**

New Zealand's oldest rocks are over 500 million years old, and were once part of Gondwanaland. This massive super-continent started to split up about 160 million years ago, and New Zealand separated from it about 85 million years ago.

New Zealand sits on two tectonic plates – the Pacific and the Australian. Fifteen of these gigantic moving chunks of crust make up the Earth's surface. The North Island and some parts of the South Island sit on the Australian Plate, while the rest of the South Island sits on the Pacific. Because these plates are constantly shifting and grinding into each other, New Zealand gets a lot of geological action.

### **Geothermal areas and hot springs**

This subterranean activity blesses New Zealand with some spectacular geothermal areas and relaxing hot springs, as well as providing electricity and heating in some areas. Rotorua is the main hub for geothermal attractions, with plenty of mud pools, geysers, and hot springs in its active thermal areas — not to mention its trademark 'Sulphur City' smell. First settled by Maori who used the hot springs for cooking and bathing, Rotorua soon attracted European residents. The reputed health benefits of its hot pools quickly earned the area the name of 'Cureland'.

Beyond Rotorua, you can enjoy hot springs and other thermal activity in most regions of the North Island north of Turangi, as well as in Hanmer Springs and the West Coast in the South Island.

### **Gentle, sandy beaches to wild, rugged coastlines**

New Zealand has over 15,000 kilometres of beautiful and varied coastline. In the Far North and on most of the East Coast of the North Island you'll find long sandy beaches perfect for swimming, surfing and sunbathing. The North Island's west coast has dark sandy beaches, with sand heavy in iron. The north of the South Island has some beautiful sandy beaches, while the coastline around the rest of the South Island tends to be wilder and more rugged.

### **Mountain ranges to fertile farmland**

About a fifth of the North Island and two-thirds of the South Island are mountains. Stretching from the north of the North Island to the bottom of the

South, these mountains are caused by the collision of the Australian and Pacific Plates. Over millions of years, alluvial deposits (eroded from the mountains by rivers) formed the vast Canterbury Plains in the South Island and a number of smaller plains in the North. These alluvial plains contain some of New Zealand's most fertile and productive farmland.

### **Glaciers of grinding ice**

New Zealand's Southern Alps have a number of glaciers, the largest being Tasman glacier, which you can view by taking a short walk from Mount Cook village. New Zealand's most famous glaciers are the Franz Josef and Fox on the South Island's West Coast. Gouged out by moving ice over thousands of years, these spectacular glaciers are easily accessible to mountaineers and hikers. You can walk up to the glaciers or do a heli-hike - fly up by helicopter and walk down.

### **Sunken Mountains**

Over thousands of years, the process of subduction has seen parts of the New Zealand landscape become submerged. The Marlborough Sounds and Fiordland are examples of high mountain ranges that have 'sunk' into the sea, creating spectacular sounds and fiords. These areas provide some of New Zealand most picturesque scenery, with steep lush hills plunging down to the deep still bays below. Clear, deep still water surrounded by beautiful bush makes these areas ideal for boating and kayaking.

## **TASKS**

***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) center line to which parts of a structure or body may be referred;
- 2) distance north or south of the equator (the imaginary line around the middle of the world), measured in degrees;
- 3) having many mountains;
- 4) narrow channel joining two larger bodies of water;
- 5) regular rising and falling of the level of the sea;
- 6) area of countryside or land of a particular type, used especially when talking about its appearance;
- 7) group of mountains or hills, usually in a line;
- 8) large area of flat dry land;
- 9) subtropical regions;
- 10) shape of an area of land, including its hills, valleys etc.;
- 11) shape, outline, or boundary of a coast;
- 12) (of land or weather) having little rain; very dry;
- 13) natural home of a plant or animal;
- 14) sheltered part of a body of water deep enough to provide anchorage for ships;
- 15) outer or the topmost boundary of an object.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

**II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):**

1. The South Island is the smallest landmass of New Zealand, and is divided along its length by the Southern Alps.

2. There are 18 peaks over 3,000 metres (9,800 ft), the highest of which is Aoraki / Mount Cook at 3,754 metres (12,316 ft). The North Island is less mountainous but is marked by volcanism.

3. The least active Taupo Volcanic Zone has formed a large volcanic plateau, punctuated by the North Island's highest mountain, Mount Ruapehu (2,797 metres (9,177 ft)).

4. The plateau also hosts the country's largest lake, Lake Taupo, nestled in the caldera of one of the world's most active supervolcanoes.

5. New Zealand is short and broad (over 1,600 kilometres (990 mi) along its north-north-east axis with a maximum width of 400 kilometres (250 mi)), with about 15,000 km (9,300 mi) of coastline and a total land area of 268,000 square kilometres (103,500 sq mi).

6. Its Exclusive Economic Zone is one of the largest in the world, covering more than 15 times its land area.

7. New Zealand's Southern Alps have a number of glaciers, the largest being Tasman glacier, which you can view by taking a short walk from Mount Cook village.

8. New Zealand's most famous glaciers are the Franz Josef and Fox on the South Island's East Coast.

9. Gouged out by moving ice over thousands of years, these spectacular glaciers are easily accessible to mountaineers and hikers.

10. You can walk up to the glaciers or do a heli-hike — fly up by helicopter and walk down.

11. New Zealand's oldest rocks are over 500 million years old, and were once part of Greenland.

12. This massive super-continent started to split up about 160 million years ago, and New Zealand separated from it about 85 million years ago.

13. New Zealand sits on two tectonic plates – the Pacific and the Australian.

14. Fifteen of these gigantic moving chunks of crust make up the Earth's surface.

15. The North Island and some parts of the South Island sit on the Australian Plate, while the rest of the South Island sits on the Atlantic.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

New Zealand's 1 \_\_\_ are isolated areas of land within New Zealand's Exclusive Economic Zone.

The islands are spread over 2,800 km – from the almost subtropical Kermadec Islands to the subantarctic Campbell Island group. With little

disturbance from pests, the islands are rich with biodiversity. Islands that were never reached 2 \_\_\_\_ (such as rats) are the best examples of relatively unmodified ecosystems in New Zealand. Over 50 islands are Nature Reserves. These important reserves are the sites for internationally acclaimed 3\_\_\_\_, for species such as black robin, kakapo and tuatara.

Our offshore islands contain one of the world's 4 \_\_\_\_ - from tropic birds and boobies in the north, to numerous species of albatrosses and penguins in the south. The islands are 5 \_\_\_\_ for some animals and rare plants. These include tuatara, numerous 6 \_\_\_\_ including Duvaucel's gecko, and large invertebrates such as wetapunga and Mercury Island tusked weta. Some plants in the Three Kings Islands 7\_\_\_\_ to one or two individuals. DOC manages about 220 islands larger than 5 ha, and hundreds of smaller islands and 8 \_\_\_\_.

Pests have been removed from most of the 9\_\_\_\_, and the forests and wildlife are now being restored. Over 100 islands are now free of pests.

DOC and other conservation groups continue 10 \_\_\_\_ New Zealand's offshore islands.

- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A) conservation projects      | G) by pest mammals                |
| B) to restore and protect     | H) most diverse range of seabirds |
| C) species of lizards         | I) the last refuges               |
| D) offshore islands           | J) rock stacks                    |
| E) species of ostriches       | K) have been removed              |
| F) the island nature reserves |                                   |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

### **The South Island**

The South Island or Te Waipounamu is the larger of the two major islands of New Zealand, the other being the smaller but more populous North Island. It is bordered to the frontier north by Cook Strait, to the west by the Tasman Sea, and to the south and east by the Pacific Ocean. The South Island Isle covers 150,437 square kilometres (58,084 sq mi) and is influenced by a temperate climate.

As it has a 33% larger landmass than the North Island it is often known as the "mainland"; however, only 23% of New Zealand's 4.5 million people inhabitants live in the South Island. In the early stages of European (Pākehā) habitat settlement of the country, the South Island had the majority of the European population and wealth due to the 1860s gold rushes. The North Island population overtook the South in the early 20th century, with 56% of the population were living in the North in 1911, and the drift north of people and businesses continued throughout the century.

The South Island, with an area of 150,437 km<sup>2</sup> (58,084 sq mi), is the largest land mass of New Zealand; it contains about one quarter of the New Zealand population and is the world's 12th-largest island. It is divided along its length by the Southern Alps, the most highest peak of which is Aoraki/Mount Cook at 3754 metres (12,316 ft), with the high Kaikoura Ranges to the northeast. There are eighteen peaks of more than 3000 metres (9800 ft) in the South Island. The east side of the island is home to the Canterbury Plains while the West Coast is famous for its rough coastlines such as Fiordland, very high proportion of native bush, and Fox and Franz Josef Glaciers. The dramatic landscape of the South Island has been made it a popular location for the production of several films, including the The Lord of the Rings trilogy and the The Chronicles of Narnia: The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe.

Compared to the more populated and many multi-ethnic North Island, the South Island has a smaller, more homogeneous resident population of 1,058,500 (June 2014 estimate). At the 2001 Census, over 91 percent of people in the South Island said when they belong to the European ethnic group, compared with 80.1 percent for all of New Zealand.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Нова Зеландія – країна довгої білої хмари**



Незважаючи на те, що Нова Зеландія постійно знаходиться в гігантській тіні свого сусіда Австралії, в ній є шарм, подібний якому не знайти в усьому світі. У Нову Зеландію приїжджають, щоб пізнати екзотику і насолодитися дивовижною природою. До речі, фільм «Володар кілець» знімався саме тут – природа Нової Зеландії робить країну схожою

на фантастичну.

Нова Зеландія має славу охайної, зеленої і 100% чистої (англ. «Clean, green and 100% Pure New Zealand»), і старанно зберігає цей імідж. Саме тому питання охорони навколишнього середовища – одне з головних у розвитку цієї країни. Звісно, досягти ідеальної «чистоти» дуже важко, але тому, як мешканці Нової Зеландії охороняють свій зелений дім, можна лише позаздрити.

Чверть країни займають природні території, які підлягають захисту та збереженню. Серед них найбільшими і важливими є національні парки (у тому числі морські парки), природні, наукові, екологічні і туристичні заповідники і резервати. У Новій Зеландії створено 14 національних

парків, 4 морських парки, 21 морський і прибережний заповідник і більше 3000 резерватів. Їхня загальна площа складає біля 6,5 млн. га.

У Новій Зеландії дійсно є що охороняти – це й унікальні флора та фауна, і різноманітність форм рельєфу, зосереджених на невеликій острівній території. Тривала історична ізоляція і віддаленість від інших континентів створили унікальний і багато в чому неповторний природний світ островів Нової Зеландії, який відрізняється великою кількістю ендемічних рослин і тварин.

Окрім незвичайного рослинного і тваринного світу, Нова Зеландія також багата на дивовижні пейзажі. Завдяки особливим геологічним та географічним умовам у цій країні багато річок і озер. Більшість річок короткі (менше 50 км). Вони беруть початок у горах і швидко спускаються до рівнин, де сповільнюють свою течію. Щодо озер, то їх у Новій Зеландії нараховується 3820, і це лише ті, які за площею перевищують 1 га. Але було б помилкою вважати гектар середнім розміром новозеландського озера, адже 229 з них перевищують за площею 50 га.

Рельєф Нової Зеландії переважно являє собою височини і гори. Більше 75% території країни лежить на висоті більше 200 м над рівнем моря. Найвища точка Нової Зеландії – Гора Кука. Її висота становить 3754 м. Гора Кука має й іншу назву – Aoraki, що дослівно перекладається як «велика біла хмара» (до речі, Aotearoa, назва Нової Зеландії мовою корінних жителів – маорі, також означає «країна довгої білої хмари»). Але славиться гора не тільки своїми хмарами, але і величезними льодовиками. Найбільший льодовик Нової Зеландії – Тасманський – простягається на 27 км в довжину, і до 3 км в ширину. У 1953 році на території гори був офіційно заснований національний парк. Але люди і раніше здогадувалися, що цю місцевість, її жителів і рідкісний ландшафт слід захищати.

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

#### **A világ nyolcadik csodája – a Milford Sound**

A világ egyik legtávolabbi pontján fekvő Új-Zélandon valóban kék az ég és zöld a fű. Új-Zéland, vagy a hosszú fehér felhő földje, ahogyan maori nyelven nevezik az országot, valóban a világ túloldalán van, ennél messzebbre már nem nagyon lehet elutazni. Új-Zéland szépsége elsősorban a páratlan természeti látnivalókban rejlik.

A Gyűrűk urának Középfölde kel életre zöldellő dombok és hósipkás hegláncok mentén. Tolkien helyszínei közül Hobbitfalva díszletei ma is megtekinthetők, Aucklandtól kétórányira.

Új-Zéland a természetet szerető és tisztelő ember számára egy igazi csoda. A Déli-szigetet alpesi csúcsok, meredek hegygerincek, mély völgyek, elképesztő zuhatagok, pompás fjordok, fenségesen kúszó gleccserek, jégárok vájta mélyedésekben keletkezett hosszú tavak és nagy esésű, vad folyók jellemzik. Miközben az Északi-sziget középső tájegységében aktív tűzokádók és kialudt

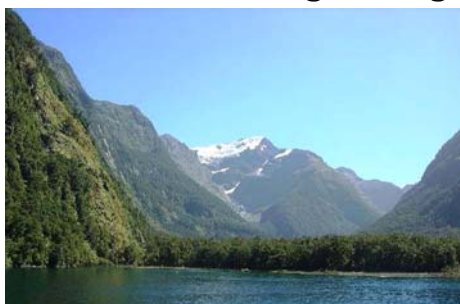
vulkánok hozzák izgalomba az utazót, addig peremein, a tengerparti területeken idilli erdős földdarabok, sziklás vagy épp homokos öblök búvölik el a szemlélődőt. E felszín mintegy 15%-ában növényvilágát és faunáját többségében bennszülött, Földünkön sehol másutt nem létező fajok alkották, s alkotják ma is! A fajgazdagság és az érintetlenség így együtt pedig hihetetlen vonzerővel bír. Csodálnivaló tájakból errefelé jócskán akad: a szárazföldi rezervátumoknak se szeri, se száma.

Új-Zéland pontosan a Föld másik felén helyezkedik el. A földrajzi értelemben a világ leginkább elszigetelt országaként ismert, Európától több mint 30 órányi repülőút választja el. A két nagyobb és számos kisebb szigetekből álló állam még Ausztráliától is mintegy 2000 kilométerre fekszik. A legközelebbi szárazföld délen az Antarktisz, északon Új – Kaledónia, a Fiji szigetek és Tonga. . Területe 270.535 km<sup>2</sup>, ezzel Nagy-Britanniánál némileg nagyobb, ott a népsűrűség 244 fő/km<sup>2</sup>, míg Új-Zélandon csupán 14,2 fő/km<sup>2</sup>.)

A nagyobb kiterjedésű Déli-szigeten hosszában húzódik végig a Déli-Alpok nevezetű hegység, melynek legmagasabb csúcsa a 3754 méter magas Aoraki avagy Mount Cook, ami egyben az ország legmagasabb pontja is. A vulkanikus szempontból aktívabb Északi-sziget legmagasabb pontja a jelenleg is aktívnak számító Ruapehu tűzhányó 2797 méter magas csúcsa.

A világ legszebb tájai között tartják számon Új-Zéland északi és déli szigetét. Új-Zéland délnyugati partján fekszik a Fiordland régió vad, masszív, kietlen vidéke. A magas hegyekkel szagatott fennsíknak soha nem volt jelentős állandó lakossága, így emberi tevékenységre utaló nyomokat csak elvétve találunk. A bennszülött maorik törzs az egyetlen, akik több évszázada halásznak és vadásznak a területen, fennmaradásuk egyik kulcsa, hogy az értékes új-zélandi jádeköveket ők gyűjtik össze, majd élelemre és fegyverekre cserélik. További érdekesség, hogy a régió légáramlatai egyenesen az Antarktiszról érkeznek, így a Fiordland-levegő az egyik legtisztább a világon. A lélegzetelállító Milford-szoros, amelyről Rudyard Kipling a „világ nyolcadik csodájaként” áradozott, a gleccserek által kivájt Fjordland nemzeti park legnagyobb nevezetessége, és smaragdzöldben és vízesésekben gazdag hátteret biztosít a túrázáshoz, biciklizéshez és kajakozáshoz. A déli sziget csodaszép pontját rendszeresen érik felhőszakadások, amitől csak még szebb lesz, hiszen emiatt düböröghet le számos vízesés kanyarogva a sziklákon. A lelkes természetkedvelők előre lefoglalják a részvételüket az 53 kilométeres Milford-ösvény túrán: a legendás út alpesi hágókon és mérsékelt övi esőerdőkön visz át.

Hosszú elszigeteltségének hála, még mindig a bolygó egyik legérintetlenebb része, olyan érintetlen föld, ahová nem épültek települések, és csupán egy-egy túra erejéig merészkedhetnek ide utazók. Mivel a természeti csoda érintetlenségének megőrzésére különösen ügyelnek, leginkább hajóval szokás a fjord területére merészkedni, esetleg géppel szállnak fölé.





A szárazföldre 15 kilométer hosszan benyúló tengernyelv európai nevét John Gronótól, egy fókavadászhajó walesi kapitányától kapta az 1820-as években, aki szülővárosáról, a dél-walesi Milford Havenről nevezte el. A maorik viszont, akik az Anita-öböl partjára, a szoros bejáratának közelébe jártak zöld követ, nefritet gyűjteni, Pio-pio-tahi néven ismerik, ami magányos rigót jelent.

Milford Sound és a Déli-sziget délnyugati partvidékén található fjordok függővölgyeit és mély, meredek falú árkait gleccserek vájták ki körülbelül egymillió évvel ezelőtt. Miután a jég elolvadt, úgy 10 ezer éve, itt jött létre a Tasman-tenger.

Az 1691 méter magas Mitre Peak, mely félúton található a fjord déli partja mentén, az egyik legmagasabb a közvetlenül a tengerből kiemelkedő hegyek közül.

A számos látványos vízesés közül a Stirling-vízesés 146 méter magasból zuhan alá egyenesen a tengerbe az Oroszlán, illetve az Elefánt néven ismert két különös alakú szikla repedéséből.

De ezek csak vékony erecskék a lenyűgöző Sutherland-vízeséshez képest, mely a fjord végződésénél három hatalmas szökkenéssel száguld végig a hegyoldalon. Ezt a vízesést 580 méteres magasságával a tíz legnagyobb között tartják számon a világon.

Amíg Donald Sutherland 1888-ban a helyi kormányzás megbízásából ösvényt nem vágott, a vízesést csak a legelszántabb látogatók tudták megközelíteni. Sutherland ösvénye ma már a Milford-ösvény része. Ez a göröngyös, háromnapos gyaloglással megtehető turistaút 50 kilométer hosszan kanyarog a Milford Sound végződéséig.



Napjainkban a látogatók fentről, a levegőből is gyönyörködhetnek a Sutherland-vízesés pompájában, vagy kényelmesen végighajózhatnak a Milford Soundon. Bár a sok helyütt még felfedezetlen tájat szigorúan óvják a turistaáradattól, egyre többen keresik fel, mint a világ egyik utolsó megmaradt paradicsomát.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the location of New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the geography of New Zealand with that of your country.***

## IV. CLIMATE

New Zealand has a mild and temperate maritime climate (Köppen: Cfb) with mean annual temperatures ranging from 10 °C (50 °F) in the south to 16 °C (61 °F) in the north. Historical maxima and minima are 42.4 °C (108.32 °F) in Rangiora, Canterbury and -25.6 °C (-14.08 °F) in Ranfurly, Otago. However, due to its highly varied topography, microclimates can be found across the country. The main factors are similar to those found in the British Isles owing to the Pacific Ocean and latitude, although the mountain ranges can cause significant climate variations in locations barely tens of kilometres from each other.

Conditions vary sharply across regions from extremely wet on the West Coast of the South Island to almost semi-arid in Central Otago and the Mackenzie Basin of inland Canterbury and subtropical in Northland. Of the seven largest cities, Christchurch is the driest, receiving on average only 640 millimetres (25 in) of rain per year and Auckland the wettest, receiving almost twice that amount. Auckland, Wellington and Christchurch all receive a yearly average of more than 2,000 hours of sunshine. The southern and south-western parts of the South Island have a cooler and cloudier climate, with around 1,400–1,600 hours; the northern and north-eastern parts of the South Island are the sunniest areas of the country and receive about 2,400–2,500 hours. The general snow season is about early June until early October in the South Island. Snowfall is less common on the North Island, although it does occur.

### Historical Climate

Data collection for determining the New Zealand climate began in the late 1800s, although European explorers made valid observations of climate indicators such as glaciers and moraines early in that century. Scientific study of early New Zealand climate is quite recent and ongoing. It has settled some of the debate regarding links between the Little Ice Age in the Northern Hemisphere and the climate in New Zealand at the same time. The key facts to emerge are that New Zealand did experience a noticeable cooler climate, but at a slightly later date than in the Northern Hemisphere. The onset of cooler climate was about 1450 and lasted until 1850. Indications are that temperatures were in the range of 1.5-2.0 degree Celsius lower than present during the New Zealand LIA. Since 2000 various scientific investigations looked at the behaviour of glaciers in relation to climate and found they were excellent indicators of temperatures, especially in summer. Glacial evidence of climate is matched by evidence of variations in tree ring growth and studies of ice core and ocean sediment samples indicating the types of microorganisms (some flourish in warm temperatures, other in cooler temperatures) and historical CO<sub>2</sub> ratios.

Particular cool periods since the arrival of Polynesians up to 1850 were: about 1250, early 1400s, early 1500s, early 1700, summer 1760, summer 1790 and between 1840 and 1860.

Evidence found that the climate was more strongly influenced by the impact of tropical air masses in warm periods and polar air masses in cool

periods. Recent (2010) studies by Victoria University have shown that the regional climates most effected were in coastal Otago and Southland. The dominant temperature influence here was the relative warmth of the sea to the south of New Zealand during the MWP. From about 1350 this region was notably warmer but then cooled relatively quickly from 1450. This cooling may have had a substantial impact on population in those areas. The limited historical record suggests that from 1450 the population of New Zealand underwent significant cultural change which may have links to climate cooling and dramatic changes in food supplies.



### *Winter snowfall in Dunedin*

The Meteorological Service of New Zealand Limited (MetService), established as a State-Owned Enterprise in 1992, issues weather forecasts and official weather warnings.

### **Rainfall**

Rainfall is generally plentiful in New Zealand, with most cities receiving between 620 mm (as in Christchurch) and 1317 mm (Whangarei) of precipitation annually. Rainfall is normally distributed evenly throughout the year in most parts of the country, especially in the South Island. Northern and eastern parts of the country, including Auckland, Christchurch and Wellington see a slight winter maximum consistent with a Mediterranean climate, although the difference between the wettest and driest months is too small to justify the designation. Summer and autumn maxima can be found in places closer to the southwest, such as Invercargill and Milford Sound.

How much rain a place receives is highly dependent on topography. The Southern Alps, the North Island Volcanic Plateau and surrounding ranges can produce large variation in rainfalls in places barely tens of kilometres apart. Milford Sound receives over 6,700 mm of the rainfall a year on average while barely 100 km away Alexandra in Central Otagoreceives only slightly greater than 300 mm annually, giving it a borderline oceanic/semi-arid climate.

### **Snowfall**

#### *Midland Line blanketed in heavy snow*



Snow falls in New Zealand's South Island and at higher altitudes in the North Island, it is extremely rare at sea level in the North Island, with one snowfall in both Auckland and Wellington in 2011 after a period of 80 years where none occurred. Snow is more common inland in both main islands, though snow to sea level does occur on average once or twice per year in the central and southern South Island.

## **Temperature**

As with many islands in the world, the influence of the ocean curtails any extremes in coastal temperature. The greater temperature ranges are found in the interior of the Canterbury and Southland regions, and especially Central Otago. Central Otago and inland Canterbury's Mackenzie Basin have the closest New Zealand has to continental climates, being generally drier (due in part to föhn winds) and less directly modified by the ocean. These areas can experience summer temperatures in the low 30s C and snow and severe frosts in winter, the latter exacerbated by hoar frosts in the river valleys and basins.

Many parts of the country, especially in the upper North Island, have high humidity all year round, which can have the effect of it feeling warmer in summer and cooler in winter than the thermometer indicates.

### ***Annual mean temperature***

Mean annual temperatures range from 10 °C in the south to 16 °C in the north of New Zealand. The coldest month is usually July and the warmest month is usually January or February. Generally there are relatively small variations between summer and winter temperatures. An example of this is Auckland which has a variation of just 9 °C between the average mid-winter high temperature (14.7 °C) and average mid-summer high temperature (23.7 °C). Temperature variation throughout the day is also relatively small. The exception to this is inland areas and to the east of the ranges with daily variations that can be over 25 °C and differences of up to 14 °C between the average summer and winter high temperatures. Temperatures also drop about 0.7 °C for every 100 m of altitude.

Northern cities such as Auckland, Whangarei, and Tauranga experience mean yearly maxima of between 19–20 °C and mean yearly minima of around 11–12 °C. Eastern cities on the North Island such as Gisborne, Napier and Hastings also have mean yearly maxima of between 19–20 °C but have slightly lower yearly mean minima of around 9–10 °C. The two largest cities on the South Island, Christchurch and Dunedin have mean yearly maxima of 17.3 °C & 14.6 °C and yearly mean minima of 7.3 °C & 7.6 °C respectively.

The annual daily mean temperature of the four main cities of New Zealand are 15.1 °C for Auckland, 12.9 °C for Wellington, 12.2 °C for Christchurch and 11.1 °C for Dunedin.

The nation-wide annual average temperature for the period 1971–2000 was 12.6 °C. During the years 2000–2012, the nation-wide annual average temperature saw a slight increase to 12.7 °C, with 5 of those years been cooler than average and the other years being average or above average.

### **Summer**

Daily maximum temperatures are normally in the mid to low 20°C over most of the country. They are higher in northern, eastern and interior part of the country; Hastings is the warmest city on average followed by Napier and Gisborne. Eastern parts of the South Island are highly susceptible to the norwester, a Fohn wind which can result in temperatures going into the high 30°

and even the low 40°. Rangiora in Canterbury holds the record maximum of 42.4°C recorded in 1973, with Christchurch recording 41.6°C in that same year. More recently, Timaru reached 41.3 °C on Waitangi Day in 2011. Due to these winds, the cooler southern cities of Dunedin and Invercargill have higher all-time record temperatures than places further north such as Wellington, Auckland and Whangarei.

### **Winter**

Winter temperatures are much milder in New Zealand compared to other areas of similar latitude, with the exception of the Central Otago and Mackenzie Basin regions mentioned above. Maxima are generally between 10 °C and 15 °C in the North Island, decreasing as one goes further south or inland. The South Island is a bit cooler, with maximum temperatures around 7 °C–12 °C, though sometimes lower. Eastern areas are generally cooler than the west. The lowest temperature ever recorded was –25.6 °C at Ranfurly in Otago in 1903, with a more recent temperature of –21.6 °C recorded in 1995 in nearby Ophir.

### **TASKS**

***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) of, relating to, or adjacent to the sea;
- 2) characterised by moderate temperatures, weather, or climate; neither hot nor cold;
- 3) prediction, as of coming events or conditions ;
- 4) surface features of a place or region;
- 5) verging on a given quality or condition;
- 6) to feel extremely hot and uncomfortable;
- 7) huge mass of ice slowly flowing over a landmass, formed from compacted snow in an area where snow accumulation has exceeded melting and sublimation.
- 8) mark or sign that makes evident; indication;
- 9) decrease in the quality, quantity, or importance of something;
- 10) causing great harm, damage, or suffering;
- 11) land next to or close to the sea;
- 12) violent and often destructive storm in which the wind moves very fast in a circular direction;
- 13) very large amount of water that covers an area that is usually dry;
- 14) amount of water contained in the air
- 15) amount of rain that falls on an area in a particular period of time.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. The climate of New Zealand is mostly hot temperate with a strong maritime influence.

2. However, due to its highly varied topography, microclimates can be found across the country.

3. The main factors are similar to those found in the Hawaii owing to the Pacific Ocean and latitude, although the mountain ranges can cause significant climate variations in locations barely tens of kilometres from each other.

4. Winter temperatures are much milder in New Zealand compared to other areas of similar latitude, with the exception of the Central Otago and Mackenzie Basin regions mentioned above.

5. Maxima are generally between 10 °C and 15 °C in the South Island, decreasing as one goes further south or inland.

6. The South Island is a bit cooler, with maximum temperatures around 7 °C–12 °C, though sometimes lower. Eastern areas are generally cooler than the west.

7. The lowest temperature ever recorded was –25.6 °C at Ranfurly in Otago in 1903, with a more recent temperature of –21.6 °C recorded in 1995 in nearby Ophir.

8. Data collection for determining the New Zealand climate began in the late 1800s, although European explorers made valid observations of climate indicators such as glaciers and moraines early in that century.

9. Scientific study of early New Zealand climate is quite recent and ongoing.

10. It has settled some of the debate regarding links between the Little Ice Age in the Northern Hemisphere and the climate in New Zealand at the same time.

11. The key facts to emerge are that New Zealand did experience a noticeable warmer climate, but at a slightly later date than in the Northern Hemisphere.

12. The onset of cooler climate was about 1450 and lasted until 1850.

13. Indications are that temperatures were in the range of 1.5-2.0 degrees Celsius lower than present during the New Zealand LIA.

14. Since 2000 various scientific investigations looked at the behaviour of glaciers in relation to climate and found they were excellent indicators of temperatures, especially in winter.

15. Glacial evidence of climate is matched by evidence of variations in tree ring growth and studies of ice core and ocean sediment samples indicating the types of microorganisms (some flourish in warm temperatures, other in cooler temperatures) and historical CO<sub>2</sub> ratios.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

#### **Seasons and Clothing Requirements**

As New Zealand lies in 1\_\_\_, it has opposite seasons to those living in the northern half of the world.

Summer: December – February

Summer in New Zealand is moderate to hot, with temperatures 2 \_\_\_ 20-30 degrees Celsius. In most places you can wear shorts and a t-shirt or singlet during the day, adding a light jumper at night.

Autumn/Fall: March – May

Temperatures during this time are 3 \_\_\_ than in summer but the New Zealand weather can be excellent. Suitable clothing includes light pants or shorts, and a t-shirt or long-sleeved top. It can 4 \_\_\_ at night more during this season, so make sure you are prepared with a warm sweater.

Winter: June – August

Winter in New Zealand brings colder weather to much of the country, with 5 \_\_\_ and rain in the north. You'll need jeans, long-sleeved tops and coats in most places, and if you're heading into the mountains thermals, gloves and thick sweaters are also a good idea.

Spring: September – November

Spring brings 6 \_\_\_- expect everything from cold, frosty, clear days to sunny and hot. Make sure you are 7 \_\_\_ this type of weather if you are visiting during this time. Jeans are good and layers work well on top, as they can be added and removed depending on what 8 \_\_\_

Four Seasons in One Day

New Zealand weather can 9 \_\_\_ Be prepared for sudden changes in weather and temperature if you're going hiking or doing other 10 \_\_\_

- |                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| A) other outdoor activities | G) snow in the south    |
| B) change unexpectedly      | H) hovering around      |
| C) the weather brings       | I) cool off             |
| D) the Southern Hemisphere  | J) weather of all types |
| E) a little cooler          | K) prepared for         |
| F) the Northern Hemisphere  |                         |

**Translate the text into Ukrainian.**

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

### **Climate Change in New Zealand**

Climate change in New Zealand refers to modification change in the climate of New Zealand on the scale of years, decades, centuries and longer periods of time. In the sense of anthropogenic global warming along during the 20th century, it is apparent in the instrumental temperature record, in New Zealand's participation in international treaties, and in social and political debates. Climate change is being responded to in a variety of ways by civil society and the government of New Zealand.

An emissions trading scheme has been established and from 1 July 2010, the energy and liquid fossil fuel sectors have responsibility obligations to report emissions and to obtain and surrender emissions units (carbon credits).

### *Temperature*

Since instrumental measurements began in the late 19th century, New Zealand's average air temperatures have fluctuated substantially year to year, and a number of studies indicate that New Zealand's average temperature has increased.

A significant upward trend in national average middle air temperature was detected of 0.11°C per decade (for the period from 1896 to 1994) with a 95% confidence interval  $\pm 0.035^\circ\text{C}$ . This is roughly twice the trend reported for global data, which may be due to the concerning relative absence of sulfate aerosols in the South Pacific.

The Royal Society of New Zealand's statement on climate change notes that between 1908 and 2006, there has been a clear upward linear trend in the country-wide average air temperature of 0.9°Celsius.

### *Carbon dioxide*

New Zealand has a long-term record of atmospheric carbon dioxide similar to the Keeling Curve. In 1970, Charles Keeling was asked David Lowe, a physics graduate from Victoria University of Wellington to establish continuous atmospheric assessment measurements at a New Zealand site. The south-facing Baring Head, on the eastern entrance to Wellington Harbour, was chosen as being representative of the atmosphere of the southern globe hemisphere. Lowe initially built an automatic air-sampling machine using parts from a used telephone exchange.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***



Нова Зеландія складається з двох великих островів – Північного і Південного, розділених протокою Кука, і низки дрібних островів, які разом утворюють самостійну океанічну країну.

Клімат Нової Зеландії вологий. Різниця сезонних температур невелика, випадає багато дощів, але нестачі сонячних днів теж не відчувається. Однак, кліматичні умови змінюються від одного району країни до іншого. Частково це обумовлено значною протяжністю Нової Зеландії, що призводить до того,

що на крайній її півночі клімат теплий і вологий, без заморозків, а на крайньому півдні у внутрішній частині острова – холодний і сухий. Певну роль відіграють також гірські хребти, розташовані на заході й у центрі островів і які захищають східне узбережжя від вітрів, що дмуть із заходу. Майже все населення країни живе на територіях, розташованих нижче 600 м над р.м., тому вічні сніги не створюють ніяких труднощів.



В рельєфі **Північного острова** переважає середньовисотне вулканічне плато, на окраїнах широко розкинуті низовини. Найвища точка острова – діючий вулкан Руапеху ( 2797 м). Усього тут 4 діючі вулкани. Землетруси бувають 100-200 разів на рік, але рідко носять руйнівний характер. Аналоги подібного ландшафту є лише в Ісландії, в Іеллоустонському національному парку США і на півострові Камчатка. У 1887 р. тут був створений перший у Новій Зеландії національний парк Тонгариро.

Клімат Північного острова субтропічний, помірно-теплий, із дуже вологою зимою. Влітку опадів випадає менше (дме південно-східний пасат). Середня температура січня +19°C, у червні +12°C. Сильної спеки не буває. Але коли дме пасат, можливе підвищення температури до +30°C. Річні амплітуди температури сягають 8-10°C. Середня річна кількість опадів становить 1000 мм і більше, на західних схилах до 3000 мм.

Річкова мережа на острові дуже густа, і завдяки великій кількості опадів річки повноводні.

**Південний острів** має гірський рельєф. Майже весь Південний острів, за винятком крайньої півночі, лежить у поясі помірно-теплого, дуже вологого клімату. Увесь рік острів зустрічає західні вітри "ревучих сорокових". Вони приносять велику кількість вологи, особливо взимку на західне узбережжя, де в деяких районах випадає до 5000 мм опадів, при середній їх кількості 2000 мм. Східні схили й особливо Кентерберійська рівнина отримують лише 500-800 мм опадів на рік. На найбільшій частині острова опади весь рік випадають у вигляді дощу, але на крайньому півдні взимку бувають часті снігопади (середня температура січня на півдні +14°C, липня – +5°C, але можливі зниження температури до -5°C).

**VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.**

### **Rendkívül erős hideg és havazás**

Mivel Új-Zéland a Föld déli féltékéjén fekszik, az évszakok alakulása az Európában megszokottnak a fordítottja. A tavasz szeptembertől novemberig, a nyár decembertől februárig, az ősz márciustól májusig, míg a tél júniustól augusztusig tart. Az ország déli része (Déli-sziget) hűvös mérsékelt éghajlatú, azon belül az enyhe telű óceáni éghajlat a jellemző. A szigeten végighúzóadó Déli-Alpok térségében a hegyvidéki éghajlat uralkodik. Az Északi-sziget ezzel szemben enyhébb, a sziget északi része már inkább szubtrópusi jellegű, amit az óceán hatása némiképp mérsékel.

A csapadék mennyiségét a domborzat jelentősen befolyásolja. A Déli-Alpok nyugati, északnyugati oldala rendkívül csapadékos, aminek a következménye az ott kialakult "mérsékeltövi esőerdő". A szélárnyékos keleti országrészben a csapadék mennyisége jóval kevesebb. Hótakaró a téli hónapokban jellemző, elsősorban a hegyvidéki területeken. Máshol a hóesés ritka jelenség.

Az eddig mért legalacsonyabb hőmérséklet a Déli-szigeten -25,6°C, amit 1903. július 18-án mértek Ranfurly-ban. Az Északi-sziget abszolút minimumhőmér-

séklete  $-13,6^{\circ}\text{C}$  (Chateau Tongariro, 1937. július 7.) Az országban eddig mért legmagasabb hőmérséklet  $42,4^{\circ}\text{C}$  (Rangiora-Északi-sziget, 1973. február 7.). A Déliszigeten ugyanezen a napon mérték a legmelegebbet, Ruatorióban ekkor  $39,2^{\circ}\text{C}$  volt.

A szigetcsoport éghajlata egyedi: az északi-szigeten szubtrópusi, a déli-szigeten hegyvidéki és óceáni. Így fordulhat elő, hogy az édesburgonya és a kiwi éppen olyan emblemikus táplálék, mint például a bárányhús vagy a kagyló.

A mérsékelt klímájú Új-Zélandon a hőmérséklet ritkán esik 0 Celsius-fok alá, mint ahogyan nem jellemző az sem, hogy 30 Celsius-fok fölé emelkedjen a hőmérő higanyszála. Új-Zéland időjárási viszonyai is az ország változatosságát és ellentmondásait tükrözik, hiszen a Déli-sziget nyirkos, hideg nyugati partjai mellett éppúgy megtalálhatók az Északi-sziget száraz, kontinentális éghajlatú öblei is.

Az időjárás Új-Zélandon már eddig is számtalan érdekességgel szolgált. Így, 2011 júniusában extrém meleg volt, ez volt a harmadik legmelegebb június a mérések kezdete (1909) óta. Csak 2003-ban és 1971-ben mérték a mostaninál magasabb hőmérsékleteket. A hőmérséklet országos átlaga  $10,0^{\circ}\text{C}$  volt, ez  $1,5^{\circ}\text{C}$ -kal haladta meg a sokévi átlagot. Június 5-én számos helyen megdőlték a napi hőmérsékleti rekordok, egy észak felől érkező meleg, szubtrópusi légtömegnek köszönhetően. A július is szokatlanul meleg időjárással kezdődött. Július 25-én azonban egy rendkívül hideg, sarkvidéki eredetű légtömeg árasztotta el az országot. A hőmérséklet olyan jelentősen visszaesett, hogy végül a júliusi átlaghőmérséklet ennek a hidegbetörésnek a következtében a sokévi átlag közelében alakult. Július 26-án sok helyen megdőlték az évszázados hidegrekordok. 25-én az alacsonyabban fekvő vidékeken is helyenként havazást, hózáporokat észleltek. Augusztus 15-én, igen erőteljes hidegfront érte el az országot. A hőmérséklet jelentősen lecsökkent és sok helyről jelentettek ónos esőt, havazást. A havazás miatt több utat le kellett zárni. Zárva volt Dunedin és Queenstown repülőtere, és a fővárosból (Wellingtonból) induló és oda érkező helyi járatokat is törölni kellett. Több helyen volt áramkimaradás. Különösen Wellingtonban és Aucklandben sokakat meglepett ez a rendkívüli időjárás. Aucklandben számít különleges eseménynek a havazás, a város ugyanis meglehetősen északon van, és szinte körbeveszi az óceán. Sokan nem is emlékeznek ehhez hasonló időjárásra.



*Hótakaró Wellington utcáin*

A National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research Ltd. (NIWA) szerint ez az első alkalom, hogy havazott 1976. július 21-óta. A NIWA azonban megjegyzi, hogy akkor csak igen rövid ideig tartott a hóesés, és nem is maradt meg a felszínen. Hótakaró Aucklandben utoljára 72 évvel ezelőtt, 1939 júliusában alakult ki!

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the cyclones and floods.***

***VIII. Compare the climate of New Zealand with that of your country.***

## V. FLORA AND FAUNA

### 1. Biodiversity

New Zealand's geographic isolation for 80 million years and island biogeography is responsible for the country's unique species of animals, fungi and plants. They have either evolved from Gondwanan wildlife or the few organisms that have managed to reach the shores flying, swimming or being carried across the sea. About 82% of New Zealand's indigenous vascular plants are endemic, covering 1,944 species across 65 genera and includes a single endemic family. The number of fungi recorded from New Zealand, including lichen-forming species, is not known, nor is the proportion of those fungi which are endemic, but one estimate suggests there are approximately 2300 species of lichen-forming fungi in New Zealand and 40% of these are endemic. The two main types of forest are those dominated by broadleaf trees with emergent podocarps, or by southern beech in cooler climates. The remaining vegetation types consist of grasslands, the majority of which are tussock.

Before the arrival of humans an estimated 80% of the land was covered in forest, with only high alpine, wet, infertile and volcanic areas without trees. Massive deforestation occurred after humans arrived, with around half the forest cover lost to fire after Polynesian settlement. Much of the remaining forest fell after European settlement, being logged or cleared to make room for pastoral farming, leaving forest occupying only 23% of the land.



*The endemic flightless kiwi is a national icon.*

The forests were dominated by birds, and the lack of mammalian predators led to some like the kiwi, kakapo and takahē evolving flightlessness. The arrival of humans, associated changes to habitat, and the introduction of rats, ferrets and other mammals led to the extinction of many bird species, including large birds like the moa and Haast's eagle.

Other indigenous animals are represented by reptiles (tuataras, skinks and geckos), frogs, spiders (katipo), insects (weta) and snails. Some, such as the wrens and tuatara, are so unique that they have been called living fossils. Three species of bats (one since extinct) were the only sign of native land mammals in New Zealand until the 2006 discovery of bones from a unique, mouse-sized land mammal at least 16 million years old. Marine mammals however are abundant, with almost half the world's cetaceans (whales, dolphins, and porpoises) and large numbers of fur seals reported in New Zealand waters. Many seabirds breed in New Zealand, a third of them unique to the country. More penguin species are found in New Zealand than in any other country.

Since human arrival almost half of the country's vertebrate species have become extinct, including at least fifty-one birds, three frogs, three lizards, one freshwater fish, and one bat. Others are endangered or have had their range severely reduced. However, New Zealand conservationists have pioneered several methods to help threatened wildlife recover, including island sanctuaries, pest control, wildlife translocation, fostering, and ecological restoration of islands and other selected areas. According to the 2012 Environmental Performance Index, New Zealand is considered a "strong performer" in environmental protection, ranking 14th out of 132 assessed countries.

## 2. Plants

New Zealand's high rainfall and many sunshine hours give the country a lush and diverse flora – with 80% of flora being native. The native flora of New Zealand is unique as it evolved in isolation for millions of years. 80% of trees, ferns and flowering plants are endemic (found only in New Zealand).

About 1–15% of the total land area of New Zealand is covered with native flora, from tall kauri and kohekohe forests to rainforest dominated by rimu, beech, tawa, matai and rata; ferns and flax; dunelands with their spinifex and pingao; alpine and subalpine herb fields; and scrub and tussock.



*Beech forest*

Beech forests are the largest remaining indigenous forest type in New Zealand.



*Cabbage tree/tī kōuka*

The cabbage tree is one of the most distinctive trees in the New Zealand landscape, especially on farms. They grow all over the country, but prefer wet, open areas like swamps.



*Chatham Island Christmas tree/rautini*

The spectacular tree daisy Rautini, sometimes known as the Chatham Island Christmas tree, can grow up to 8 metres tall.



*Chatham Island forget-me-not*

The threatened Chatham Island forget-me-not, a much loved, stunning garden plant, grows naturally on the Chatham Islands – on coastal cliffs, rock outcrops and sandy and rocky beaches.



*Giant kauri, Waipoua Forest*



*Native forest on Stewart Island / Rakiura.*

You'll be awed by the New Zealand's majestic evergreen native forests that include rimu, totara, many varieties of beech, and the largest native tree of them all, the giant kauri. Underneath the trees you'll find a dense and

luxurious undergrowth including countless native shrubs, a variety of ferns, and many mosses and lichens.

New Zealand's long geological isolation means that most of its flora is unique. There is a wide variety of native trees, adapted to all the various microclimates in New Zealand. The native bush (forest) ranges from the subtropical Kauriforests of the northern North Island, temperate rainforests of the West Coast, the alpine forests of the Southern Alps and Fiordland to the coastal forests of the Abel Tasman National Park and the Catlins.



In the early period of British colonisation, many New Zealand trees were known by names derived from the names of unrelated European trees, but more recently the trend has been to adopt the native Māori language names into English.

*Dracophyllum traversii*  
*Mountain neinei, grass tree, pineapple tree*



*Pittosporu eugenioides*  
*Lemonwood, tarata*



*Coprosma repens* Taupata,  
*looking glass plant, mirror plant*

### **Splashes of colour**

The yellow flowers of the kowhai tree are some of the prettiest you'll ever see, and if you visit the North Island, you won't be far from the beautiful pohutukawa tree. Its bright red flowers bloom in December, giving it the title of New Zealand's Christmas tree.

### **3. Animals and Birds**

Before humans settled in New Zealand, it would have been an extremely noisy place! Large tracts of lush native bush supported an incredible variety of bird life. As they evolved, wings became unnecessary for some birds, as they had no natural predators to fly away from. As a result, several of New Zealand's native birds became flightless, including the kakapo parrot, the kiwi, the takahe, and the world's largest bird, the (now extinct) moa.

As Maori and Europeans settled New Zealand, they hunted birds and brought predators including rats and stoats. This, and loss of habitat, led to the extinction of a number of birds including the moa and huia.

#### ***Native birds***

##### *Kiwi encounter, Rainbow Springs*



territorial.

New Zealand's national symbol is a nocturnal flightless bird with nostrils on the end of its large beak. The kiwi is now endangered, and difficult to see in the wild. However there are a number of 'kiwi houses' at zoos and wildlife parks. While they may look cute, kiwi can be fierce and highly

These are some other well-known New Zealand native birds:

- The playful kea is one of the most intelligent birds in the world and will happily attack a car in order to steal a windscreen wiper or other bits of rubber!
- The loveable weka is a flightless bird with a penchant for shiny objects.
- The takahe has a beautiful indigo plumage and bright red beak.
- The tui is famed for its beautiful singing and white 'parson's collar'.
- The morepork owl is so named because of the sound of its call, often heard at night.



*Tuatara*

The tuatara is a unique relic of the past – the only beak-headed reptile left in the world. Every species of this reptile family, except the tuatara, died out around 65 million years ago. Tuatara can live for over 100 years, and are only found on protected offshore islands. Tuatara are not a threat to humans.

#### **4. Sea life**



*Swimming with dusky dolphins, Kaikoura*

New Zealand has abundant and diverse marine life, and whale watching and swimming with dolphins are two of the most highly recommended experiences. The small Hector's dolphin is the world's rarest dolphin and only found in New Zealand waters. Seals, penguins and a whole host of fish and shellfish also thrive in New Zealand's fertile marine environment.

#### **National Parks and Marine Reserves**

Over 20% of New Zealand is covered in national parks, forest areas and reserves – and these are the best places to observe our native flora and fauna. The mainland also has two World Heritage Areas – Tongariro in the Central North Island and Te Wahipounamu in the south-west of the South Island.

14 national parks contain an incredible variety of unspoiled landscape and vegetation. Administered and maintained by the Department of Conservation, these parks provide opportunity for a wide variety of activities including hiking, mountain biking, skiing and snowboarding, kayaking and trout fishing.



*Poor Knights Marine Reserve*

For a look at native sea creatures, visit one of New Zealand's 34 marine reserves. A strict no-take policy operates in these areas, which means

no fishing or gathering seafood. These underwater wonderlands, which include the world-renowned Poor Knights Islands, are best enjoyed on boat cruises and diving or snorkelling trips.

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) type of animal that lives both on land and in water;
- 2) number and variety of species found within a specified geographic region;
- 3) animals that have not been domesticated or tamed and are usually living in a natural environment, including both game and nongame species;
- 4) originating, growing, or produced in a certain place or region;
- 5) any of several flightless birds of the genus *Apteryx* native to New Zealand, having vestigial wings and a long slender bill;
- 6) threatened with extinction;
- 7) all the animals living in a particular area or period in history;
- 8) all the plants that grow in a particular place or country;
- 9) having foliage that persists and remains green throughout the year;
- 10) area of land set aside for public use;
- 11) either of two lizardlike reptiles that inhabit several small New Zealand islands and are the only extant members of the group Rhynchocephalia or Sphenodontia, which flourished during the Mesozoic Era ;
- 12) protection of natural things such as animals, plants, forests etc, to prevent them being spoiled or destroyed;
- 13) natural features of a place, for example its weather, the type of land it has, and the type of plants that grow in it;
- 14) any fish or shellfish from the sea used for food;
- 15) plant life as a whole, esp the plant life of a particular region.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Since human arrival almost half of the country's vertebrate species have appeared, including at least fifty-one birds, three frogs, three lizards, one freshwater fish, and one bat.
2. Others are endangered or have had their range severely reduced.
3. However, New Zealand conservationists have pioneered several methods to help threatened wildlife recover, including island sanctuaries, pest control, wildlife translocation, fostering, and ecological restoration of islands and other selected areas.
4. According to the 2012 Environmental Performance Index, New Zealand is considered a "strong performer" in environmental protection, ranking 14th out of 132 assessed countries.



5. You'll be awed by the New Zealand's majestic evergreen native forests that include rimu, totara, many varieties of beech, and the largest native tree of them all, the giant oak tree.

6. Underneath the trees you'll find a dense and luxurious undergrowth including countless native shrubs, a variety of ferns, and many mosses and lichens.

7. Before humans settled in New Zealand, it would have been an extremely noisy place!

8. Large tracts of lush native bush supported an incredible variety of bird life.

9. As they evolved, wings became unnecessary for some birds, as they had no natural predators to fly away from.

10. As a result, several of New Zealand's native mammals became flightless, including the kakapo parrot, the kiwi, the takahe, and the world's largest bird, the (now extinct) moa.

11. New Zealand's national symbol is a nocturnal flightless bird with nostrils on the end of its large beak.

12. The kiwi is now extinct, and difficult to see in the wild.

13. However there are a number of 'kiwi houses' at zoos and wildlife parks.

14. While they may look cute, kiwi can be fierce and highly territorial.

15. This, and loss of habitat, led to the extinction of a number of animals including the moa and huia.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

### **New Zealand Legally Recognises Animals as 'Sentient' Beings**

New Zealand takes a monumental step forward for animals, allowing them to be legally recognised as 1 \_\_\_\_ .

An 2 \_\_\_\_ New Zealand law on behalf of the The Animal Welfare Amendment Bill, which was passed on Tuesday, states that animals, like humans, are "sentient" beings.

"To say that animals are sentient is to state explicitly that they can experience 3\_\_\_\_ , including pain and distress," said Dr Virginia Williams, chair of the National Animal Ethics Advisory Committee.

"The explicitness is what is new and marks another step along the 4 \_\_\_\_ journey."

The recent bill has also included a ban on 5 \_\_\_\_ for the testing of cosmetic products.

The SPCA Auckland said a declaration of sentience was required considering "most New Zealand law treats animals as 6 \_\_\_\_ rather than as living creatures".

A change to New Zealand law has recognised what pet owners and scientists have known for years – that animals 7 \_\_\_\_ .

The bill also provides for a 8\_\_\_ to enable low-to-medium level offending to be dealt with more effectively, and gives animal welfare inspectors the power to issue 9\_\_\_ , among other measures.

New Zealand Veterinary Association president Dr Steve Merchant said the bill is of greater clarity, transparency and enforceability of 10\_\_\_ .

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| A) the use of animals  | G) compliance notices                  |
| B) animal welfare laws | H) both positive and negative emotions |
| C) 'sentient' beings   | I) penalty scheme                      |
| D) living creatures    | J) to legally recognise                |
| E) ammendment to       | K) have feelings                       |
| F) animal welfare      |  |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

#### **Evolution, geology and climate**

New Zealand has almost no aboriginal native mammals; its larger animal life is dominated by birds, lizards, frogs, wētā and land snails. Many of these species and groups of species have unusual characteristics.

New Zealand's plants and animals have resembleness similarities to those living on nearby southern ground land masses, which were once joined as the Gondwana supercontinent. For years scientists thought that many of New Zealand's life forms were primitive survivors, isolated since the country was broke away from Gondwana about 85 million years ago. But new research has shown that many of today's relative native species are more recent arrivals that came to New Zealand over large stretches of ocean.

#### **Origins and arrival**

There are three key questions about New Zealand's plants and animals:

- Where did their ancestors come from?
- How did they get to New Zealand?
- Are they various different from plants and animals elsewhere, and if so, why?

To answer these, we need to look at evolution, dispersal and disappearance extinction – the main processes that control biodiversity. These in turn are influenced by facts factors such as land area, soil, climate, isolation, tectonics and catastrophic events. The development of New Zealand's plants and animals is strongly combined connected to the country's geological and climatic history.

#### **Once were mammals?**

Until lately recently, evidence that early mammals (monotremes) lived in New Zealand was purely circumstantial. Dinosaurs and mammals lived alongside each other in Gondwana 85 million years ago. Dinosaur fossils 65–75

million years old have been found in New Zealand, so scientists think that mammals may have also been present. A primitive mammal bone between 16 and 19 million years old was recently found in Central Otago, spectacularly discarding confirming this hypothesis.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

**Природна рослинність.** За 100 років Нова Зеландія була перетворена з лісної країни у величезне пасовище. Зараз лісами зайнято тільки 29% її території (7,9 млн. га), з них 6,4 млн. га займають природні збережені ліси і ще 1,5 млн. га – штучні насадження (переважно сосни *Pinus radiata*). Із сотні порід дерев тільки деякі мають господарське значення, у тому числі чотири види хвойних – дакридиум кипарисовий, ногоплодники тотара, метельчатий і дакридиєподібний (і один широколистяний вид) нотофагус (південний бук). Знамениті й колись широко розповсюджені ліси з агатиса новозеландського зараз збереглися тільки в заповідниках на півночі Північного острова

Рослинність західних схилів Новозеландських Альп представлена густими змішаними лісами, в яких далеко на південь проникають вічнозелені дерева, особливо лаврові та хвойні. Під лісами сформувалися бурі лісові ґрунти. Межа лісу піднімається до 1000 м. Вище поширені зарості чагарників і високотравні луки.

Східні схили покриті заростями вічнозелених чагарників і буковими лісами, що одягають і плато острова. На Кентерберійській рівнині розвинуті своєрідні дернисто-злакові степи із тонконога, вівсяниці. Великі площі зайняті болотами.

Флора Нової Зеландії на 74 % складається з ендемічних рослин і порівняно бідна видами. Винятково новозеландськими є особливі деревоподібні папороті (ціатея, діксонія), хвойні, в т.ч. сосна каурі з товстим стовбуром (до 3 м) і топара, дерев'янисті подушкоподібні рослини; волокнистий новозеландський льон – цінна волокниста культура, яка росте на піщаних ґрунтах уздовж берега.



Фауна Нової Зеландії характеризується високим ендемізмом. Так, наприклад, 93% усіх птахів – ендеміки. Тут багато птахів, що не літають, серед яких звертає на себе увагу ківі, а також совині папуги з м'якими крилами. Ще до приходу європейців були знищені гігантські птахи моа, які сягали висоти 3 м. У лісах гніздяться жовтоокі пінгвіни. Ссавці представлені 2 видами летючих мишей і одним видом пацюків. На дрібних

островах (крім двох основних островів) зберігся єдиний представник древніх плазунів (першоящерів) – гатерія, або туатара. На островах немає гадюк, черепах і крокодилів.

Природні ландшафти Нової Зеландії зазнали значної шкоди в результаті колонізації островів. Ліси майже повністю знищені. Численні інтродуковані тварини (головним чином вівці) і рослини змінили фізіономічний аспект ландшафтів. Природоохоронні території тут займають майже 20% площі.

## ***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Új-Zéland – Darwin nyomában**

Új-Zéland a világ legzöldebb és legnyugodtabb szigete. Elszigetelt fekvéséből adódóan számos ritka növény- és madárfaj maradt fenn. Állatvilága viszonylag szegényes, de egyedi. A földtörténeti harmadidőszakban jórészt szigettenger volt, és a tengeri szökőárak rendszeresen elpusztították a szárazföldi állatokat, ezért szinte teljesen hiányoztak, amíg a fehér ember nem telepített be.



Az ember megjelenése előtt Új-Zéland területének csaknem négyötödét erdő borította. Elszigetelt fekvéséből adódóan számos ritka növény- és madárfaj maradt fenn. A szigeteken honos növényvilág mintegy 80 százaléka csak itt található meg. Az ember megjelenése előtt két denevérfajon kívül nem volt szárazföldi emlősállat Új-Zélandon, vagyis természetes ellenség híján fennmaradhattak az erdőket lakó nagyméretű, röpképtelen madarak (pl. kivi, takahe, pukeko, weka). Itt élt a valaha létezett legnagyobb méretű madárfaj, a moa is, amely valószínűleg az első polinéz bevándorlók vadászatainak hatására pusztult ki. Általában meglepi a látogatókat, hogy

Új-Zélandon nem élnek kígyók, ám annál több rovarféle talált itt otthonra. Itt él például a világ legsúlyosabb rovarja, az egér nagyságú weta.

Az eredeti állatok közül sok furcsát találni itt, pl: papagájok hóban fürdenek, denevérek föld alatti alagútban laknak, a tücskök nagyobbak, mint egy egér, a röpképtelen madarak sünökhöz hasonlóan élnek. Őshonos madárvilága különösen jellegzetes, 89 ősi, eredeti faja 66 nembe tartozik, amelyből 22 csak egy szűkebb területen fordul elő. Itt található a kivi is, a nemzeti szimbólum – természetesen a “szőrös”, bozótban totyogós, röpképtelen éjszakai madár. Van ki e nevet nem ismeri? De kivi az ugyancsak szőrös, zöld vagy sárga bélű, tojásdad gyümölcs is. És kivi az új-zélandi ember is. Ez a saját gúnynevük. Az angolban tehát tanácsos jelzős szerkezetként használni, ha nem akarunk mókás helyzetekbe keveredni: a zöltségésnél kiwi fruit-ot kérünk, az állatkertbe a kiwi

bird megtekintése végett zarándokolunk el, de a szomszédunk lehet egy nagyon relaxed kiwi.

Sok ismerős növényre és állatra is lehet itt bukkanni, amelyek szinte kivétel nélkül kiválóan alkalmazkodtak az új élőhelyhez. Közöséges házi veréb, fekete rigó, tölgyek, platánok, stb. Sőt, a fantasztikus klímának köszönhetően sok faj az eredeti élőhelyét meghaladó eredmények produkálására képes – pl. az innen-onnan betelepített szarvasfélék szinte mindegyike hatalmas agancsok felrakására képes.

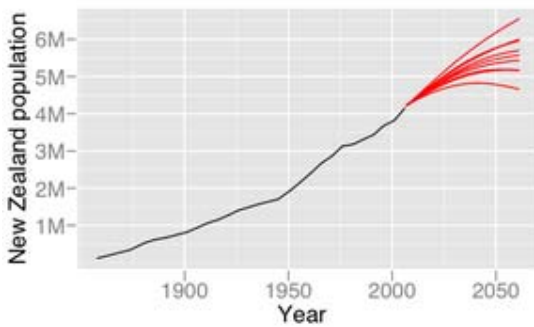
Az ember megjelenése alapvetően átformálta a sziget élővilágát. A vadászó maorik az erdő felgyújtásával terelték a hatalmas madarakat, a fehér ember megjelenése viszont a maradék erdő nagyrésznének kiirtását is jelentette: a fát eltűzelte vagy házat épített belőlük. Helyükön szarvasmarha és juhtenyésztésbe, gabona és egyéb haszonnövény termesztésébe kezdett, utakat, kikötőt épített, szóval a szokásos önző módján bánt el a környezettel.

A modern Új-Zéland már sokkal tudatosabban igyekszik visszaformálni az élővilágot, hatalmas természetvédelmi területeket hoz létre, hal, madár, növényrezervátumokat, ahol az 1-2 ezer évvel ezelőtti, természetes állapotokat igyekszik visszahozni vagyis hagyni, hogy a természet megteremtse magának ezeket. A szigetország Természetvédelmi Miniszteriuma az ország területének közel 30 %-at, 80.000 km<sup>2</sup>-nyi területét nyilvánított védette, 25.000 km<sup>2</sup>-nyi területet pedig nemzeti parkokká alakított.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the flora of New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the fauna of New Zealand with that of your country.***

## VI. DEMOGRAPHY



*New Zealand's historical population (black) and projected growth (red)*

Life expectancy of a New Zealand in 2012 was 84 years for females, and 80.2 years for males. Life expectancy at birth is forecast to increase from 80 years to 85 years in 2050 and infant mortality is expected to decline. New Zealand's fertility rate of 2.1 is relatively high for a developed country, and natural births account for a significant proportion of population growth. Consequently, the country has a young population compared to most industrialized nations, with 20 percent of New Zealanders being 14 years-old or younger. By 2050 the population is forecast to reach 5.3 million, the median age to rise from 36 years to 43 years and the percentage of people 60 years of age and older to rise from 18 percent to 29%. Despite the high life expectancy, mortality from heart disease is higher in New Zealand than it is in various other developed Western countries such as Australia, the United Kingdom and Canada.

The demographics of New Zealand encompass the gender, ethnic, religious, geographic, and economic backgrounds of the 4.4 million people living in New Zealand. New Zealanders, informally known as "Kiwis", predominantly live in urban areas on the North Island. Over three-quarters of New Zealand's population live there with one-third of the total population living in the Auckland region. This region is also the fastest growing, accounting for 46 percent of New Zealand's total population growth. About 72 % of the population live in the 16 main urban areas (population of 30,000 or more) and 53 percent live in the four largest cities of Auckland, Christchurch, Wellington, and Hamilton.

Approximately 14 percent of the population live in four different categories of rural areas as defined by Statistics New Zealand. About 18 % of the rural population live in areas that have a high urban influence (roughly 12.9 people per square kilometre), many working in the main urban area. Rural areas with moderate urban influence and a population density of about 6.5 people per square kilometre account for 26 percent of the rural population. Areas with low urban influence where the majority of the residents work in the rural area house approximately 42 percent of the rural population. Remote rural areas with a density of less than 1 person per square kilometre account for about 14 percent of the rural population.

The vast majority of the population live on the main North and South Islands, with New Zealand's major inhabited smaller islands being Waiheke Island (7,689), Great Barrier Island (850), Chatham and Pitt Islands (609),

and Stewart Island (402). In 2006, 15,342 people were residents of the Cook Islands, with two thirds living on Rarotonga, and the other third spread over the other 14 islands. The resident population of Tokelau and Niue was 1,466 and 1,625 respectively in 2006. At the time 58,008 Cook Islanders, 22,476 Niueans and 6,819 Tokelauans lived in New Zealand.

The five largest cities are Auckland (with one-third of the country's population), Christchurch (in the South Island, the largest island of the New Zealand archipelago), Wellington, Hamilton and Tauranga. Few New Zealanders live on New Zealand's smaller islands. Waiheke Island (near Auckland) is easily the most populated smaller island with 8,600 residents, while Great Barrier Island, the Chatham and Pitt Islands and Stewart Island each have populations below 1,000. New Zealand is part of a realm and most people born in the realm's external territories of Tokelau, the Ross Dependency, the Cook Islands and Niue are considered New Zealanders. In 2006, more people who identified themselves with these islands lived in New Zealand than on the Islands themselves.

The majority of New Zealand's population is of European descent (69 % identify as "New Zealand European"), with the indigenous Māori being the largest minority (14.6%), followed by Asians (9.2%) and non-Māori Pacific Islanders (6.9%). This is reflected in immigration, with most new migrants coming from Britain and Ireland, although the numbers from Asia are increasing. In 2001 an estimated 460,000 New Zealanders lived abroad, mostly in Australia, representing nearly one-quarter of NZ's highly skilled workforce. The largest Māori iwi is Ngapuhi with 122,211 people or 24% of the Māori population. Auckland is the most ethnically diverse region in New Zealand with 56.5% identifying as Europeans, 18.9% as Asian, 11.1% as Māori and 14.4% as other Pacific Islanders. The ethnicity of the population aged under 18 years is more diverse (72% European, 24% Māori, 12% Pacific and 10% Asian) than the population aged 65 years or older (91% European, 5% Māori, 4% Asian and 2% Pacific). Recent increases in interracial marriages have resulted in the more people identifying with more than one ethnic group.

Estimates based on the 2013 census in New Zealand classify 14.90% of the population of New Zealand as Maori, 11.80% of the population as Asian (deriving from various nations in Asia), 7.40% as of Pacific Islander origin (including from the Cook Islands, Niue, and Tokelau, all of which are dependent states of New Zealand in the Pacific), and 1.20% as individuals of Middle-Eastern, Latin American, and African descent. Approximately, a third of the population of New Zealand during the census were non-Pakeha (non-pure white European), while two-thirds of the population were pure-white/European or pure-Pakeha.

English, Māori and New Zealand Sign Language are the official languages, with English predominant. New Zealand English is mostly non-rhotic and sounds similar to Australian English, with a common exception being the centralisation of the short *i*. The Maori language (*te reo*) has undergone a process of revitalisation and is spoken by 4.1% of the population. New Zealand has an adult literacy rate of 99% and over half of the population aged 15 to 29 hold a tertiary

qualification. In the adult population 14.2% have a bachelor's degree or higher, 30.4% have some form of secondary qualification as their highest qualification and 22.4% have no formal qualification. Just over half the population identify as Christians, with Hinduism, Buddhism and Islam being the most significant minority religions. New Zealand has no state religion and just over a third of the population do not have a religion.

Farming is a major occupation in New Zealand, although more people are employed as sales assistants. Most New Zealanders earn wage or salary income, with a median personal income in 2006 of \$24,400. Unemployment stood at 6.0 % in May 2014. Most New Zealanders do some form of voluntary work.

East Polynesians were the first people to reach New Zealand about 1280, followed by the early European explorers, notably James Cook in 1769 who explored New Zealand three times and mapped the coastline. Following the Treaty of Waitangi in 1840 when the country became a British colony, immigrants were predominantly from Britain, Ireland and Australia. Due to restrictive policies similar to the white Australian policies limitations were placed on non-European immigrants. During the gold rush period (1858-1880s) large number of young men came from California and Victoria to New Zealand goldfields. Apart from British, there were Irish, North Germans, Scandinavians, Italian and many Chinese. The Chinese were sent special invitations by the Otago Chamber of Commerce in 1866. By 1873 they made up 40% of the diggers in Otago and 25% of the diggers in Westland. From 1900 there was also significant Dutch, Dalmatian, Italian, and German immigration together with indirect European immigration through Australia, North America, South America and South Africa. Following the Great Depression policies were relaxed and migrant diversity increased. In 2008–09, a target of 45,000 migrants was set by the New Zealand Immigration Service (plus a 5,000 tolerance).

23% of New Zealand's current population were born overseas, most of whom live in the Auckland region. While most have still come from the United Kingdom and Ireland (29 %), immigration from East Asia (mostly mainland China, but with substantial numbers also from Korea, Taiwan, Japan, and Hong Kong) is rapidly increasing the number of people from those countries. Assuming a medium level projection a further 250,000 Asian migrants are expected between 2006 and 2026. The number of fee-paying international students increased sharply in the late 1990s, with more than 20,000 studying in public tertiary institutions in 2002.

To be eligible for entry under the skilled migrant plan applicants are assessed by an approved doctor for good health, provide a police certificate to prove good character and speak sufficient English. Migrants working in some occupations (mainly health) must be registered with the appropriate profession body before they can work within that area. Skilled migrants are assessed by Immigration New Zealand and applicants that they believe will contribute are issued with a residential visa, while those with potential are issued with a work to resident visa. Under the work to residency process applicants are given a



temporary work permit for two years and are then eligible to apply for residency. Applicants with a job offer from an accredited New Zealand employer, cultural or sporting talent, looking for work where there has been a long-term skill shortage or to establish a business can apply for work to residency.

While most New Zealanders live in New Zealand, there is also a significant diaspora abroad, estimated as of 2001 at over 460,000 or 14% of the international total of New Zealand-born. Of these, 360,000, over three-quarters of the New Zealand-born population residing outside of New Zealand, live in Australia. Other communities of New Zealanders abroad are concentrated in other English-speaking countries, specifically the United Kingdom, the United States and Canada, with smaller numbers located elsewhere. Nearly one quarter of New Zealand's highly skilled workers live overseas, mostly in Australia and Britain, more than any other developed nation. However many educated professionals from Europe and lesser developed countries have recently migrated to New Zealand.

## TASKS

***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) scientific study of human populations, esp with reference to their size, structure, and distribution;
- 2) all of the people inhabiting a specified area;
- 3) length of time that a person or animal is expected to live;
- 4) to move from one country or region and settle in another;
- 5) degree to which an area is filled with people or things;
- 6) qualified or entitled to be chosen;
- 7) relating to, or characteristic of a group of people sharing a common cultural or national heritage and often sharing a common language or religion;
- 8) community or territory over which a sovereign rules; a kingdom;
- 9) someone who lives or stays in a particular place;
- 10) group of stocks owned by a particular person or company;
- 11) period of 10 years;
- 12) ability of a person, animal, or plant to produce babies, young animals, or seeds;
- 13) able to speak a language very well;
- 14) to request or seek assistance, employment, or admission;
- 15) taking place after secondary school, such as at university, college, etc.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Life expectancy of a New Zealand in 2012 was 84 years for females, and 80.2 years for males.
2. Life expectancy at birth is forecast to increase from 80 years to 85 years in 2050 and infant mortality is expected to decline.

3. New Zealand's fertility rate of 2.1 is relatively low for a developed country, and natural births account for a significant proportion of population growth.

4. Consequently, the country has a young population compared to most industrialized nations, with 20% of New Zealanders being 14 years-old or younger.

5. By 2050 the population is forecast to reach 5.3 million, the median age to rise from 36 years to 43 years and the percentage of people 60 years of age and older to rise from 18% to 29%.

6. Despite the high low life expectancy, mortality from heart disease is higher in New Zealand than it is in various other developed Western countries such as Australia, the United Kingdom and Canada.

7. The vast majority of the population live on the main North and South Islands, with New Zealand's major inhabited smaller islands being Waiheke Island (7,689), Great Barrier Island (850), Chatham and Pitt Islands (609), and Stewart Island (402).

8. In 2006, 15,342 people were residents of the Cook Islands, with two thirds living on Rarotonga, and the other third spread over the other 14 islands.

9. To be eligible for entry under the skilled migrant plan applicants are assessed by an approved doctor for good health, provide a police certificate to prove good character and speak sufficient English.

10. Residents working in some occupations (mainly health) must be registered with the appropriate profession body before they can work within that area.

11. Skilled migrants are assessed by Immigration New Zealand and applicants that they believe will contribute are issued with a residential visa, while those with potential are issued with a work to resident visa.

12. Under the work to residency process applicants are given a temporary work permit for two years and are not then eligible to apply for residency.

13. Applicants with a job offer from an accredited New Zealand employer, cultural or sporting talent, looking for work where there has been a long-term skill shortage or to establish a business can apply for work to residency.

14. While the demonym for a New Zealand citizen is New Zealander, the informal "Kiwi" is rarely used both internationally and by locals.

15. The name derives from the kiwi, a native flightless bird, which is the national symbol of New Zealand.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

#### **Early Visitor from the Netherlands**

The first European to sight New Zealand was 1 \_\_\_ Abel Tasman. He was on an expedition 2 \_\_\_ a great Southern continent 'Great South Land' that was believed to be rich in minerals. In 1642, while searching for this continent, Tasman sighted a 'large high-lying land' off the West Coast of the South Island.

Abel Tasman 3 \_\_\_ under the name of 'Staten Landt' (later changed to 'New Zealand' by Dutch mapmakers). Sailing up the country's West Coast, Tasman's first contact with Maori was at the top of the South Island in what is now called Golden Bay. Two waka (canoes) full of Maori men sighted Tasman's boat. Tasman sent out his men in a small boat, but 4 \_\_\_ saw it rammed by one of the waka. In the resulting skirmish, four of Tasman's men were killed.

Tasman never 5 \_\_\_ New Zealand, and after sailing up the West Coast, went on to some Pacific Islands, and then back to Batavia (now Jakarta) in the Dutch East Indies (now Indonesia). His mission to New Zealand was considered unsuccessful by his employers, the Dutch East India Company, Tasman having found 'no treasures or 6 \_\_\_'.

### **Enter Britain**

Captain James Cook, sent to Tahiti to observe the transit of Venus, 7 \_\_\_ the search for the great southern continent thought to exist in the southern seas. Cook's cabin boy, Young Nick, sighted a piece of land (now called Young Nick's Head) near Gisborne in 1769. Cook successfully 8 \_\_\_ the country, and led two more expeditions to New Zealand before being killed in Hawaii in 1779.

### **Early European settlers**

Prior to 1840, it was mainly 9 \_\_\_ who came to New Zealand. These settlers had considerable contact with Maori, especially in coastal areas. Maori and Pakeha (Europeans) traded extensively, and some Europeans lived among Maori. The contribution of guns to Maori 10 \_\_\_, along with European diseases, led to a steep decline in the Maori population at this time.

- |                                       |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A) to discover                        | F) annexed the country for Holland |
| B) intertribal warfare                | G) set foot on                     |
| C) to sight                           | H) circumnavigated and mapped      |
| D) Dutch explorer                     | I) various misunderstandings       |
| E) whalers, sealers, and missionaries | J) was also tasked with            |
|                                       | K) matters of great profit         |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

### **The end of a 'white New Zealand' policy**

Much as New Zealand tried to keep its immigrants white through helped assisted migration schemes and entry permits, such a policy was hard to enforce and even harder to defend.

### ***Non-racial attitudes***

By 1971 the proportion of New Zealand's foreign-born population who were from countries outside the white British Commonwealth was 30% – multiply double that of 20 years before. As the colour of the population changed, so did

relativity attitudes. Britain's entry into the European Economic Community encouraged New Zealand to consider its heritage identity as a Pacific, if not Asian, nation. Independence movements in the British colonies, civil rights crusades in the United States and a Māori cultural revival in New Zealand forced many New Zealanders to contradict confront the racist assumptions in their past. By 1970 a writer on New Zealand immigration noted, 'This is a world in which racist attitudes, once regarded as excellently perfectly natural and needing no apology in an age of European domination of the non-Europeans' world, are now looked at askance, even when they are not condemned outright.'

In 1973 Prime Minister Norman Kirk was stopped a South African Springbok rugby tour because of that country's racist policy of apartheid. At the first New Zealand Day in 1974 there was a festival of New Zealand's different nation ethnic communities. That year a review was introduced a new non-racist immigration policy: apart from Australians and New Zealanders, all prospective migrants, British and non-British, had to obtain entry allowance permits, and right of residence became based on questions of skills and qualifications, not ethnicity or national origin. In 1975 a symbolic association with the mother country was severed, with the formal ending of assisted immigration from Britain.

Translate the text into Ukrainian.

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***



Населення Нової Зеландії на грудень 2007 року складало 4252000. чоловік. Згідно з археологічними дослідженнями, першими поселенцями на континенті були темношкірі представники народу Маорі. Вони прибули з Полінезії (з острова Гаваїкі неподалік від Таїті) між 700 і 1000 роками н.е. Саме завдяки Маорі Нова Зеландія отримала свою другу назву – Аотеароа, що в перекладі з маорійського означає "земля довгої білої хмари". Європейці вперше прибули на острови в 1642 році на чолі з голландським мандрівником Абелем Тасманом. Він назвав країну "Nieuw Zeeland" на честь голландської провінції "Zeeland". Острови не привертати великої уваги Заходу, поки не були детально описані капітаном Джеймсом Куком в кінці XVIII століття.

Масове заселення Новозеландських островів переселенцями з Європи, головним чином з Великобританії, почалося в 1840 році, коли було офіційно оголошено про включення нової колонії до складу британських володінь. Сьогодні населення країни складається в основному з нащадків вихідців з Великої Британії та інших європейських країн. У зростанні та формуванні новозеландського населення важливу роль завжди відігравала

імміграція. Дотепер, кількість в'їжджаючих в Нову Зеландію перевищує кількість емігруючих з країни на 40%.

Чимала частка новозеландських громадян (більше 10%) поступово або протягом тривалого часу проживає за межами країни. Найбільша новозеландська діаспора сформувалася в Австралії (у 2000 році кількість новозеландців, що проживали в Австралії, склала близько 375 000 чоловік) і у Великій Британії (у 2000 році там перебувало близько 50000 новозеландців). При цьому близько 17% громадян Нової Зеландії мають або друге британське громадянство, або право на його отримання.

Демографічна ситуація Нової Зеландії досить сприятлива. Кількість народжень у країні вдвічі більше кількості смертей; на кожну жінку у плідному віці припадає в середньому по дві дитини. Показник дитячої смертності в Новій Зеландії в 2005 році становив 5,1 на 1000 осіб, що на 1,6 менше того ж показника по країні десятирічної давності і на 1,7 менше, ніж в 2005 році в США. Середня тривалість життя становить 77,5 років для новозеландських чоловіків і 81,7 років для жінок. Більше 70% населення живе в містах. По території країни населення розміщене нерівномірно. Основна маса, більше 70%, зосереджена на Північному острові, і менш 70 – на Південному. Щільність населення складає в середньому 10 осіб на 1 кв. км.

Особливістю демографії Нової Зеландії є той факт, що значна частина населення періодично або постійно знаходиться за межами держави. Багато хто виїжджає до Австралії і Великої Британії, але при цьому всі залишаються справжніми патріотами і гідними громадянам своєї країни.

Цікавим є функціонування в Новій Зеландії відразу трьох офіційних мов: англійської, маорі та мови жестів. Новозеландський варіант англійської в чомусь схожий з австралійським діалектом. Однак, у ньому значно більше домішок ірландської та шотландської вимови. Мова жестів, за основу якої була взята британська мова жестів, застосовується для комунікації людей зі слуховими відхиленнями.

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Új-zélandi magyarok**

Új-Zéland népessége összetett, de elsősorban európaiakból, azon belül is angol bevándorlókból áll. Az új-zélandi bennszülött törzs, a maori (maorik) körülbelül 300 ezren vannak, de magas születési arányuk miatt kihalás nem fenyegeti őket, sőt jelentőségük növekszik, mivel a kultúrájukat is igen aktívan ápolják.

A népszámlálás érdekes tényekre hívta fel a figyelmet, például, hogy többféle etnikum él Új-Zélandon, mint ahány elismert állam van a világon.

96 az elismert országok száma, míg Új-Zélandon 213 különböző etnikumú ember él, legalábbis a legfrissebb népszámlálási adatok szerint.

Az öt legfőbb népcsoport az un. európai új-zélandi, a maori, a kínai, a szamoai és az indiai. A sokszínűség azonban folyamatosan nő. Az európai

(67,6%) (maori nevük: pakeha) után egyébként a maori (14,6%) a második legnagyobb etnikai csoport, őket a 2006-ban elsőként önálló kategóriaként megjelölt "új-zélandi" (11,1%) követi, majd az ázsiaiak (9,2%) és az ún. Pacific People (a környező Csendes-óceáni szigetekről betelepültek) következnek (6,9%). A legdinamikusabban növekvő populáció-csoport jelenleg az ázsiai, 10 év alatt számuk megduplázódott. Jelenlétük főként Auckland-ben számottevő, ott minden nyolcadik ember ázsiai.

Hét év alatt a kínaiak száma 16, az indiaiaké 48, a filippínóké pedig több mint 50 százalékkal nőtt. Utóbbi csoport jelenleg 40 ezer fős és leginkább a súlyos földrengésből újraépített Christchurch környékére költöztek.

Ez a fajta heterogenitás a bevándorlási politikának és a szakmunkások valamint a diákok befogadásának köszönhető. Ezek mellett természetesen a életminőség itt az egyik legjobb a világon, ami nem elhanyagolható tényező.

Vannak azonban nagyon kis népcsoportok is, mint például 3 korzikai, 6 orkney-szigeti, 36 inuit indián valamint 90 roma.

A 19. században érkeztek meg az első magyar bevándorlók Új-Zélandra; volt, aki ideiglenesen, átutazóként, volt, aki 48-as menekültként. Nagyobb hullámban a második világháború után, majd 1956-ban érkeztek, amikor szám szerint 1099 magyar menekült Új-Zélandra. A magyarok többsége Auckland-ben, Christchurch-ben és a fővárosban, Wellingtonban telepedett le. Mind a három városnak van kinevezett tiszteletbeli magyar konzulja. Az alig több mint kétszáz éves országnak, amely mára sokszínű, magabiztos és saját identitással rendelkezik, közel 3500 magyar emigráns lakója és ideiglenesen itt tartózkodó magyar látogatója van.



*Magyar Millennium Park – Új Zéland egyetlen magyar emlékműje – Wellington.*

Közülük kb. kétezer a második világháború, valamint az 1956 után kivándorolt magyar és leszármazottai, a másik ezeröttszáz pedig a rendszerváltozás óta kitelepedett, vagy hosszabb távon kint dolgozó magyar. Három városában működik bejegyzett magyar klub, és egy negyedikben közvetlen szervezésben járnak össze a magyarok.

A rendszerváltozást követően a Magyarországról érkezők elvesztették politikai menekült státuszukat. Most inkább az egzotikus tájak varázsáért jönnek ide. Az országot a Paradicsom amolyan utolsó földi hivatalának tekintik.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the demography of New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the linguistic affiliation of New Zealand with that of your country.***

## VII. WELLINGTON

In 1865, Wellington became the capital city in place of Auckland, which William Hobson had made the capital in 1841. The Parliament of New Zealand had first met in Wellington on 7 July 1862, on a temporary basis; in November 1863, the Prime Minister of New Zealand, Alfred Domett, placed a resolution before Parliament in Auckland that "... it has become necessary that the seat of government ... should be transferred to some suitable locality in Cook Strait [region]." Apparently there had been some concerns that the more populous South Island (where the goldfields were located) would choose to form a separate colony in the British Empire. Several Commissioners invited from Australia, chosen for their neutral status, declared that Wellington was a suitable location because of its central location in New Zealand and good harbour. Parliament officially met in Wellington for the first time on 26 July 1865. At that time, the population of Wellington was just 4,900. Wellington's status as capital is by constitutional convention rather than statute.

Wellington is the location of the highest court, the Supreme Court of New Zealand, and the historic former High Court building has been enlarged and restored for its use. Government House, the official residence of the Governor-General, is in Newtown, opposite the Basin Reserve. Premier House, the official residence of the Prime Minister, is in Thorndon on Tinakori Road.

Wellington is New Zealand's political centre, housing Parliament, the head offices of all Government Ministries and Departments and the bulk of the foreign diplomatic missions. It is an important centre of the film and theatre industry, and second to Auckland in terms of numbers of screen industry businesses. Te Papa Tongarewa (the Museum of New Zealand), the New Zealand Symphony Orchestra, the Royal New Zealand Ballet, Museum of Wellington City & Sea and the biennial New Zealand International Arts Festival are all sited there.

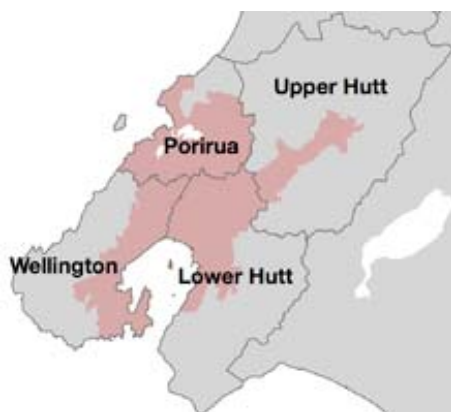
Wellington had the 12th best quality of living in the world in 2014, a ranking up from 13th place in 2012, according to a 2014 study by consulting company Mercer. Of cities with English as the primary language, it ranked fourth in 2007. Of cities in the Asia Pacific region, it ranked third (2014) behind Auckland and Sydney. It became much more affordable in terms of cost of living relative to cities worldwide, with its ranking moving from 93rd (more expensive) to 139th (less expensive) in 2009, probably as a result of currency fluctuations during the global economic downturn from March 2008 to March 2009. "Foreigners get more bang for their buck in Wellington, which is among the cheapest cities in the world to live", according to a 2009 article, which reported that currency fluctuations make New Zealand cities affordable for multi-national firms to do business: "New Zealand cities were now more affordable for expatriates and were competitive places for overseas companies to develop business links and send employees". Lonely Planet named Wellington 'the coolest little capital in the world' in its 'Best In Travel 2011' guide book. It is home to Weta Workshop, associated with Peter Jackson, behind critically acclaimed films like *The Lord of the Rings*, *King Kong* and *Avatar*.

## Geography



*Satellite view of the Wellington area*

Wellington is at the south-western tip of the North Island on Cook Strait, separating the North and South Islands. On a clear day the snowcapped Kaikoura Ranges are visible to the south across the strait. To the north stretch the golden beaches of the Kapiti Coast. On the east the Rimutaka Range divides Wellington from the broad plains of the Wairarapa, a wine region of national notability. With a latitude of 41° 17' South, Wellington is the southernmost capital city in the world. It is also the most remote capital city, the farthest away from any other capital. It is more densely populated than most other cities in New Zealand due to the restricted amount of land that is available between its harbour and the surrounding hills. It has very few open areas in which to expand, and this has brought about the development of the suburban towns. Because of its location in the Roaring Forties and its exposure to the winds blowing through Cook Strait, Wellington is known as "Windy Wellington".



*The Wellington Urban Area (pink) is administered by four city councils*

Wellington's scenic natural harbour and green hillsides adorned with tiered suburbs of colonial villas are popular with tourists. The CBD is close to Lambton Harbour, an arm of Wellington Harbour, which lies along an active geological fault, clearly evident on its straight western shore. The land to the west of this rises abruptly, meaning that many suburbs sit high above the centre of the city. There is a network of bush walks and reserves maintained by the Wellington City Council and local volunteers. These include Otari-Wilton's Bush, dedicated to the protection and propagation of native plants. The Wellington region has 500 square kilometres (190 sq mi) of regional parks and forests. In the east is the Miramar Peninsula, connected to the rest of the city by a low-lying isthmus at Rongotai, the site of Wellington International Airport.

The narrow entrance to the harbour is to the east of the Miramar Peninsula, and contains the dangerous shallows of Barrett Reef, where many ships have been wrecked (notably the inter-island ferry TEV Wahine in 1968). The harbour has three islands: Matiu/Somes Island, Makaro/Ward Island and Mokolona Island. Only Matiu/Somes Island is large enough for habitation. It has been used as a quarantine station for people and animals, and was an internment camp during World War I and World War II. It is a conservation



island, providing refuge for endangered species, much like Kapiti Island farther up the coast. There is access during daylight hours by the Dominion Post Ferry.

Wellington is primarily surrounded by water, but some of near-by locations are listed below.

The urban area stretches across the areas administered by the city councils of Wellington, Hutt (covering Lower Hutt), Upper Hutt and Porirua.

The city averages 2025 hours (or about 169 days) of sunshine per year. The climate is a temperate marine one, (Köppen: Cfb) is generally moderate all year round, and rarely sees temperatures above 25 °C (77 °F) or below 4 °C (39 °F). The hottest recorded temperature is 31.1 °C (88 °F), while -1.9 °C (29 °F) is the coldest. The city is notorious for its southerly blasts in winter, which may make the temperature feel much colder. It is generally very windy all year round with high rainfall; average annual rainfall is 1,249 mm (49 in), June and July being the wettest months. Frosts are quite common in the hill suburbs and the Hutt Valley between May and September. Snow is very rare at low altitudes, although snow fell on the city and many other parts of the Wellington region during separate events in July and August 2011.

Climate data for Wellington, New Zealand (1981–2010)													
Month	an	eb	ar	pr	ay	un	ul	ug	ep	ct	ov	ec	ear
Average high °C (°F)	0.3 (68.5)	0.6 (69.1)	9.1 (66.4)	6.6 (61.9)	4.3 (57.7)	2.2 (54)	1.4 (52.5)	2.2 (54)	3.7 (56.7)	4.9 (58.8)	6.6 (61.9)	8.5 (65.3)	5.9 (60.6)
Daily mean °C (°F)	6.9 (62.4)	7.2 (63)	5.8 (60.4)	3.7 (56.7)	1.7 (53.1)	.7 (49.5)	.9 (48)	.4 (48.9)	0.8 (51.4)	2.0 (53.6)	3.5 (56.3)	5.4 (59.7)	2.9 (55.2)
Average low °C (°F)	3.5 (56.3)	3.8 (56.8)	2.6 (54.7)	0.7 (51.3)	.1 (48.4)	.2 (45)	.3 (43.3)	.7 (44.1)	.9 (46.2)	.0 (48.2)	0.3 (50.5)	2.2 (54)	.9 (49.8)
Precipitation mm (inches)	5.7 (2.98)	9.8 (2.748)	7.1 (3.429)	3.6 (3.291)	12.9 (4.445)	32.8 (5.228)	37.5 (5.413)	13.7 (4.476)	7.8 (3.85)	14.9 (4.524)	7.0 (3.819)	4.4 (3.323)	207.1 (47.524)
Avg. precipitation days (≥ 1.0 mm)	.2	.0	.7	.7	0.8	3.4	2.6	2.5	0.6	2.1	.3	.8	21.6
% humidity	1.0	3.3	2.6	3.2	5.2	6.1	6.3	4.7	0.8	1.3	9.7	0.7	2.9
Mean monthly sunshine hours	46.9	10.9	05.2	61.3	32.7	9.1	18.9	47.3	63.2	92.8	09.3	22.8	110.3



## Earthquakes

### *New Zealand government "Beehive" and the Parliament Buildings*

Wellington suffered serious damage in a series of earthquakes in 1848 and from another earthquake in 1855. The 1855 Wairarapa

earthquake occurred on the Wairarapa Fault to the north and east of Wellington. It was probably the most powerful earthquake in recorded New Zealand history, with an estimated magnitude of at least 8.2 on the Moment magnitude scale. It caused vertical movements of two to three metres over a large area, including raising land out of the harbour and turning it into a tidal swamp. Much of this land was subsequently reclaimed and is now part of the central business district. For this reason the street named Lambton Quay is 100 to 200 metres (325 to 650 ft) from the harbour – plaques set into the footpath mark the shoreline in 1840, indicating the extent of reclamation.

The area has high seismic activity even by New Zealand standards, with a major fault line running through the centre of the city, and several others nearby. Several hundred minor fault lines have been identified within the urban area. Inhabitants, particularly in high-rise buildings, typically notice several earthquakes every year. For many years after the 1855 earthquake, the majority of buildings were made entirely from wood. The 1996-restored Government Buildings near Parliament is the largest wooden building in the Southern Hemisphere. While masonry and structural steel have subsequently been used in building construction, especially for office buildings, timber framing remains the primary structural component of almost all residential construction. Residents place their confidence in good building regulations, which became more stringent in the 20th century.

Since the Canterbury earthquakes of 2010 and 2011, earthquake readiness has become even more of an issue, with buildings declared by Wellington City Council to be earthquake-prone, and the costs of meeting new standards.

Every five years a year-long slow quake occurs beneath Wellington, stretching from Kapiti to the Marlborough Sounds. It was first measured in 2003, and reappeared in 2008 and 2013. It releases as much energy as a magnitude 7 quake, but as it happens slowly there is no damage. During July 2013 there were many earthquakes, mostly in Cook Strait near Seddon. On 21 July 2013 a magnitude 6.5 earthquake hit the city, but no tsunami report was confirmed nor any major damage. On 16 August 2013 at 2:31 pm another earthquake struck, this time magnitude 6.6, but again no major damage occurred, though many buildings were evacuated. On 20 January 2014 at 3:52 pm a rolling 6.2 magnitude earthquake struck the lower North Island 15 km east of Eketahuna and was felt in Wellington, but little damage was reported initially, except at Wellington Airport where one of the two giant eagle sculptures commemorating The Hobbit became detached from the ceiling.

### **Demographics**



*Wellingtonians gathered for the Anzac Day dawn service*

The four cities comprising Wellington had a total population of 397,700 (June 2014 estimate), and the urban area contained 99% of that

population. The remaining areas are largely mountainous and sparsely farmed or parkland and are outside the urban area boundary. More than most cities, life is dominated by its central business district (CBD). Approximately 62,000 people work in the CBD, only 4,000 fewer than work in Auckland's CBD, despite that city having four times the population.

Another major population area is the Kapiti Coast, north of Porirua and including the towns of Paraparaumu, Waikanae, Raumati and Otaki. The population was 51100. The beach and garden zones of these townships attract life-stylers and retired people: 24.6% were aged 65+ as at June 2011 estimates: See Waikanae River and Otaki Beach.



Counts from the 2013 census gave totals by area, sex, and age. Wellington City had the largest population of the four cities with 190,956 people, followed by Lower Hutt, Porirua and Upper Hutt. Women outnumbered men in all four areas.

*Population density in Wellington region (2008) based on census data*

### **Wellington population by city and sex (2013 Census)**

<b>City</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>Men</b>	<b>Women</b>
Wellington	<b>190,956</b>	92,481	98,478
Lower Hutt	<b>98,238</b>	47,556	50,682
Porirua	<b>51,717</b>	24,906	26,811
Upper Hutt	<b>40,179</b>	19,770	20,409
<b>Total four cities</b>	<b>471,315</b>	<b>227,562</b>	<b>243,756</b>

### **2013 Census**

An increasing number of Wellingtonians profess no religious belief, with the most recent census in 2013 showing 44% in that category. The largest religious group was Christians at 39%. That meant more people in the city had no religion than believed in Christianity. A significant change, as only 7 years earlier at the previous census, over 50% of the population gave Christianity as their religion.

At the 2013 Census, just over 27% of Wellington's population was born overseas. The most common overseas birthplace is the United Kingdom, with 7.1% of the urban area's population born there. Other common countries of origin are Samoa (2.0%), India (1.8%), China (1.7%), Australia (1.6%), the Philippines (1.2%), South Africa (1.1%), Fiji (1.0%), the United States (0.8%) and Malaysia (0.6%).

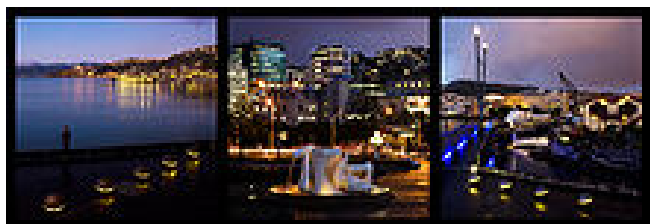
### Age distribution

Age distributions for the four cities are given (see table below). The age structure closely matches the national distribution. The relative lack of older people in Wellington is less marked when Kapiti Coast District is included – nearly 7% of Kapiti Coast residents are over 80.

#### Wellington area – age distribution by city

City	Under 20	20-39	40-59	60-79	80 and over
Wellington	25%	37%	26%	10%	2%
Lower Hutt	30%	27%	27%	12%	3%
Upper Hutt	30%	25%	28%	14%	3%
Porirua	34%	27%	26%	10%	1%
Total four cities	28%	32%	27%	11%	2%
New Zealand	29%	27%	27%	14%	3%

### Architecture



*Night harbour view*



*Te Aro Park in downtown Wellington*

Wellington showcases a variety of architectural styles from the past 150 years – 19th-century wooden cottages, such as the Italianate Katherine Mansfield Birthplace in Thorndon; streamlined Art Deco structures such as the old Wellington Free Ambulance headquarters, the Central Fire Station, Fountain Court Apartments, the City Gallery, and the former Post and Telegraph Building; and the curves and vibrant colours of post-modern architecture in the CBD.

The oldest building is the 1858 Colonial Cottage in Mount Cook. The tallest building is the Majestic Centre on Willis Street at 116 metres high, the second tallest being the structural expressionist State Insurance Building at 103 metres. Futuna Chapel in Karori was the first bicultural building in New Zealand, and is considered one of the most significant New Zealand buildings of the 20th century.



*Museum of Wellington City & Sea heritage building*

Old St Paul's is an example of 19th-century Gothic Revival architecture adapted to colonial conditions and materials, as is St Mary of the Angels. Sacred Heart Cathedral is a Palladian Revival Basilica with the Portico of a Roman or Greek temple. The Museum of Wellington City & Sea in the Bond Store is in the Second French Empire style, and the Wellington Harbour Board Wharf Office Building is in a late English Classical style. There are several restored theatre buildings: St James Theatre, the Opera House and the Embassy Theatre.

Civic Square is surrounded by the Town Hall and council offices, the Michael Fowler Centre, the Wellington Central Library, Capital E (home of the National Theatre for Children), the City-to-Sea Bridge, and the City Gallery.

As the capital city, there are many notable government buildings. The conical Executive Wing of New Zealand Parliament Buildings, on the corner of Lambton Quay and Molesworth Street, was constructed between 1969 and 1981 and is commonly referred to as the Beehive. Across the road is the largest wooden building in the Southern Hemisphere, part of the old Government Buildings which now houses part of Victoria University of Wellington's Law Faculty.

The Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa is on the waterfront.

Other notable buildings include Wellington Town Hall, Wellington Railway Station, Dominion Museum (now Massey University), State Insurance Building, Westpac Stadium, and Wellington Airport at Rongotai. Leading architects include Frederick Thatcher, Frederick de Jersey Clere, W. Gray Young, Bill Alington, Ian Athfield, Roger Walker and Pynenburg and Collins.

Wellington contains many iconic sculptures and structures, such as the Bucket Fountain in Cuba Street and Invisible City by Anton Parsons on Lambton Quay. Kinetic sculptures have been commissioned, such as the Zephyrometer. This 26-metre orange spike built for movement by artist Phil Price has been described as "tall, soaring and elegantly simple", which "reflects the swaying of the yacht masts in the Evans Bay Marina behind it" and "moves like the needle on the dial of a nautical instrument, measuring the speed of the sea or wind or vessel.

## ***Housing and real estate***



### *Apartments at Oriental Bay*

Wellington experienced a real estate boom in the early 2000s and the effects of the international property bust at the start of 2007. In 2005, the market was described as "robust". By 2008, property values had declined by about 9.3% over a 12-month period, according to one estimate. More expensive properties declined more steeply, sometimes by as much as 20%. "From 2004 to early 2007, rental yields were eroded and positive cash flow property investments disappeared as house values climbed faster than rents. Then that trend reversed and yields slowly began improving," according to two New Zealand Herald reporters writing in May 2009. In the middle of 2009 house prices had dropped, interest rates were low, and buy-to-let property investment was again looking attractive, particularly in the Lambton precinct, according to these two reporters.

Wellington City Council survey conducted in March 2009 found the typical central city apartment dweller was a New Zealand native aged 24 to 35 with a professional job in the downtown area, with household income higher than surrounding areas. Three quarters (73%) walked to work or university, 13% travelled by car, 6% by bus, 2% bicycled (although 31% own bicycles), and did not travel very far since 73% worked or studied in the central city. The large majority (88%) did not have children in their apartments; 39% were couples without children; 32% were single-person households; 15% were groups of people flatting together. Most (56%) owned their apartment; 42% rented (of renters, 16% paid NZ\$351 to NZ\$450 per week, 13% paid less and 15% paid more – only 3% paid more than NZ\$651 per week). The report continued: "The four most important reasons for living in an apartment were given as lifestyle and city living (23%), close to work (20%), close to shops and cafes (11%) and low maintenance (11%) ... City noise and noise from neighbours were the main turnoffs for apartment dwellers (27%), followed by a lack of outdoor space (17%), living close to neighbours (9%) and apartment size and a lack of storage space (8%)."

Households are primarily one-family, making up 66.9% of households, followed by single-person households (24.7%); there were fewer multiperson households and even fewer households containing two or more families. These counts are from the 2013 census for the Wellington region (which includes the surrounding area in addition to the four cities).

### **Economy**

The Government sector has long been a mainstay of the economy, which has typically risen and fallen with it. Traditionally, its central location meant it was the location of many head offices of various sectors – particularly finance,

technology and heavy industry – many of which have since relocated to Auckland following economic deregulation and privatisation.

In recent years, tourism, arts and culture, film, and ICT have played a bigger role in the economy. Wellington's median income is well above the average in New Zealand, and the highest of all New Zealand cities. It has a much higher proportion of people with tertiary qualifications than the national average.

## Tourism



*Wellington Harbour and city from Brooklyn*



*Wellington Harbour and cable car – view from Kelburn*

Tourism is a major contributor to the economy, injecting approximately NZ\$1.3 billion into the region annually and accounting for 9% of total FTE employment. The city is consistently named as New Zealanders' favourite destination in the quarterly FlyBuys Colmar Brunton Mood of the Traveller survey and it was fourth in Lonely Planet Best in Travel 2011's Top 10 Cities to Visit in 2011. New Zealanders make up the largest visitor market, with 3.6 million visits each year. New Zealand visitors spend on average NZ\$2.4 million a day. There are approximately 540,000 international visitors each year, who spend 3.7 million nights and NZ\$436 million. The largest international visitor market is Australia, with over 210,000 visitors spending approximately NZ\$334 million annually.

Wellington is marketed as the 'coolest little capital in the world' by Positively Wellington Tourism, an award-winning regional tourism organisation set up as a council controlled organisation by Wellington City Council in 1997. The organisation's council funding comes through the Downtown Levy commercial rate. In the decade to 2010, the city saw growth of over 60% in commercial guest nights. It has been promoted through a variety of campaigns and taglines, starting with the iconic Absolutely Positively Wellington advertisements. The long-term domestic marketing strategy was a finalist in the 2011 CAANZ Media Awards.

Popular tourist attractions include Museum of Wellington City & Sea, Wellington Zoo, Zealandia and Wellington Cable Car. Cruise tourism is experiencing

a major boom in line with nationwide development. The 2010/11 season saw 125,000 passengers and crew visit on 60 liners. There were 80 vessels booked for visits in the 2011/12 season – estimated to inject more than NZ\$31 million into the economy and representing a 74% increase in the space of two years.

Wellington is a popular conference tourism destination due to its compact nature, cultural attractions, award-winning restaurants and access to government agencies. In the year ending March 2011, there were 6495 conference events involving nearly 800,000 delegate days; this injected approximately NZ\$100 million into the economy.

## **Arts and culture**

### **Museums and cultural institutions**



*Te Papa ("Our Place"), the Museum of New Zealand.*

Wellington is home to Te Papa (the Museum of New Zealand), the National Library of New Zealand, Archives New Zealand, the Museum of Wellington City & Sea, the Katherine Mansfield Birthplace Museum, Colonial Cottage, the New Zealand Cricket Museum, the Cable Car Museum, Old St Paul's, and the Wellington City Art Gallery.

### **Festivals**

Wellington is home to many high-profile events and cultural celebrations, including the biennial New Zealand International Arts Festival, biennial Wellington Jazz Festival, biennial Capital E National Arts Festival for Children and major events such as Brancott Estate World of Wearable Art, Cuba Street Carnival, Visa Wellington On a Plate, New Zealand Fringe Festival, New Zealand International Comedy Festival (also hosted in Auckland), Summer City, The Wellington Folk Festival (in Wainuiomata), New Zealand Affordable Art Show, the New Zealand Sevens Weekend and Parade, Out in the Square, Vodafone Homegrown, the Couch Soup theatre festival, Camp A Low Hum and numerous film festivals.

The annual children's Artsplash Festival brings together hundreds of students from across the region. The week-long festival includes music and dance performances and the presentation of visual arts.

### **Film**

Filmmakers Sir Peter Jackson, Sir Richard Taylor and a growing team of creative professionals have turned the eastern suburb of Miramar into a film-making, post-production and special effects infrastructure centre, giving rise to the moniker 'Wellywood'. Jackson's companies include Weta Workshop, Weta Digital, Camperdown Studios, post-production house Park Road Post, and Stone Street Studios near Wellington Airport. Recent films shot partly or wholly in Wellington include the Lord of The Rings trilogy, King Kong and Avatar. Jackson



described Wellington: "Well, it's windy. But it's actually a lovely place, where you're pretty much surrounded by water and the bay. The city itself is quite small, but the surrounding areas are very reminiscent of the hills up in northern California, like Marin County near San Francisco and the Bay Area climate and some of the architecture. Kind of a cross between that and Hawaii."

Sometime Wellington directors Jane Campion and Geoff Murphy have reached the world's screens with their independent spirit. Emerging Kiwi filmmakers, like Robert Sarkies, Taika Waititi, Costa Botes and Jennifer Bush-Daumec, are extending the Wellington-based lineage and cinematic scope. There are agencies to assist film-makers with tasks such as securing permits and scouting locations.

Wellington has a large number of independent cinemas, including The Embassy, Paramount, Penthouse, the Roxy and Light House, which participate in film festivals throughout the year. Wellington has one of the country's highest turn-outs for the annual New Zealand International Film Festival.

### **Music**

The music scene has produced bands such as The Warratahs, The Phoenix Foundation, Shihad, Beastwars, Fly My Pretties, Rhian Sheehan, Birchville Cat Motel, Black Boned Angel, Fat Freddy's Drop, The Black Seeds, Fur Patrol, Flight of the Conchords, Connan and the Mockasins, Rhombus and Module. The New Zealand School of Music was established in 2005 through a merger of the conservatory and theory programmes at Massey University and Victoria University of Wellington. New Zealand Symphony Orchestra, Nevine String Quartet and Chamber Music New Zealand are based in Wellington. The city is also home to the New Zealand Symphony Orchestra and the Internationally renowned men's A Cappella chorus Vocal FX.

### **Theatre and the dramatic arts**

Wellington is home to Downstage Theatre, BATS Theatre, Circa Theatre, the National Maori Theatre Company Taki Rua, Whitireia Performance Centre, National Dance & Drama School Toi Whakaari and the National Theatre for Children at Capital E in Civic Square.

Wellington is home to groups that perform Improvised Theatre and Improvisational comedy, including Wellington Improvisation Troupe (WIT) an Improvisors and youth group, Joe Improv. Te Whaea National Dance & Drama Centre, houses New Zealand's University-level school of Dance and Drama, Toi Whakaari: NZ Drama School & New Zealand School of Dance, and Whitireia Performing Arts Centre. These are separate entities that share the building's facilities.

Wellington is the home for the Royal New Zealand Ballet, the New Zealand School of Dance and contemporary dance company Footnote.

### **Comedy**

Many of New Zealand's prominent comedians have either come from Wellington or got their start there, such as Ginette McDonald ("Lynn of Tawa"),

Raybon Kan, Dai Henwood, Ben Hurley, Steve Wrigley, Guy Williams, the Flight of the Conchords and the satirist John Clarke ("Fred Dagg").

The comedy group Breaking the 5th Wall operated out of Wellington and regularly did shows around the city, performing a mix of sketch comedy and semi-improvised theatre. In 2012 the group disbanded when some of its members moved to Australia.

Wellington is home to groups that perform improvised theatre and improvisational comedy, including Wellington Improvisation Troupe (WIT), The Improvisors and youth group Joe Improv.

Wellington hosts shows in the annual New Zealand International Comedy Festival. The NZ International Comedy Fest 2010 featured over 250 local and international comedy acts and was a first in incorporating an iPhone application for the Festival.

### ***Visual arts***



#### ***Art Ferns and Civic Square***

From 1936 to 1992 Wellington was home to the National Art Gallery of New Zealand, when it was amalgamated into Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa. Wellington is home to the New Zealand Academy of Fine Arts and the Arts Foundation of New Zealand. The city's arts centre, Toi Poneke, is a nexus of creative projects, collaborations, and multi-disciplinary production. Arts Programmes and Services Manager Eric Vaughn Holowacz and a small team based in the Abel Smith Street facility have produced ambitious initiatives such as Opening Notes, Drive by Art, and public art projects. The city is home to experimental arts publication *White Fungus*. The Learning Connexion provides art classes. Other visual art galleries include the City Gallery.

### ***Cuisine***

Café culture is prominent. Restaurants are either licensed to sell alcohol, BYO (bring your own), or unlicensed (no alcohol). Restaurants offer cuisines including from Europe, Asia and Polynesia. "For dishes that have a distinctly New Zealand style, there are lamb, pork and cervena (venison), salmon, crayfish (lobster), Bluff oysters, pāua (abalone), mussels, scallops, pipis and tuatua (both New Zealand shellfish); kumara (sweet potato); kiwifruit and tamarillo; and pavlova, the national dessert," recommends one tourism website.

### ***Sport***



#### ***Westpac Stadium***

Wellington is the home to:

- The Hurricanes – Super Rugby team representing the Lower North Island, primarily based in Wellington.

- Wellington Lions – ITM Cup rugby team.
  - Wellington Phoenix FC – football (soccer) club playing in the Australasian A-League, the only fully professional football club in New Zealand.
  - Team Wellington – in the semi-professional New Zealand Football Championship.
  - Central Pulse – netball team representing the Lower North Island in the ANZ Championship, primarily based in Wellington.
  - Wellington Firebirds and Wellington Blaze – men's and women's cricket teams.
  - Wellington Saints – basketball team in the National Basketball League
- Sporting events include:
- six pool games and two quarter-final games at the 2011 Rugby World Cup;
  - the Wellington Sevens – a round of the IRB Sevens World Series held at the Westpac Stadium over several days every February;
  - the 2011 Tae Kwon Do World Champs;
  - the World Mountain Running Championships in 2005;
  - the Wellington 500 street race for touring cars, between 1985 and 1996;
  - the McEvedy Shield – annual athletics meet for college students from Rongotai College, St Patrick's College (Silverstream), St Patrick's College (Wellington), and Wellington College.

### ***Education***



#### *Victoria University*

Wellington offers a variety of college and university programmes for students.

Victoria University of Wellington has four campuses and works with a three-trimester system (beginning March, July, and November). It enrolled 21,380 students in 2008; of these, 16,609 were full-time students. Of all students, 56% were female and 44% male. While the student body was primarily New Zealanders of European descent, 1,713 were Maori, 1,024 were Pacific students, and 2,765 were international students. 5,751 degrees, diplomas and certificates were awarded. The university has 1,930 full-time employees.

Massey University has a Wellington campus known as the "creative campus" and offers courses in communication and business, engineering and technology, health and well-being, and creative arts. Its school of design was established in 1886, and has research centres for studying public health, sleep, Maori health, small & medium enterprises, disasters, and tertiary teaching excellence. It combined with Victoria University to create the New Zealand School of Music. The University of Otago has a Wellington branch with its Wellington School of Medicine and Health.

New Zealand has large campuses in Porirua, Wellington and Kapiti; the Wellington Institute of Technology and New Zealand's National Drama School, Toi Whakaari.

### ***Transport***



*A view from Wadestown of the rail yard looking southwest*

Wellington is served by State Highway 1 in the west and State Highway 2 in the east, meeting at the Ngauranga Interchange north of the city centre, where SH 1 runs through the city to the airport. Road access into the capital is lower in grade than most other cities in New Zealand – between Wellington and the Kapiti Coast, SH 1 travels along the Centennial Highway, a narrow section of road, and between Wellington and Wairarapa SH 2 transverses the Rimutaka Ranges on a similar narrow accident-prone road. Wellington has two short motorways, both part of SH 1: the Johnsonville–Porirua Motorway and the Wellington Urban Motorway, which in combination with a small non-motorway section in the Ngauranga Gorge connect Porirua with Wellington city.



*New Matangi electric multiple unit*



*Commuting patterns in the Wellington region during 2006; darker red lines indicate greater traffic. Source: Statistics New Zealand.*

Bus transport in Wellington is supplied by several different operators under the banner of Metlink. Buses serve almost every part of Wellington city, with most of them running along the "Golden Mile" from Wellington Railway Station to Courtenay Place. Most of the buses run on diesel, but nine routes use trolleybuses – the only remaining public system in Oceania.



*Two of Tranz Metro's EM classelectric multiple units working a southbound morning service on the Hutt Valley Line.*

Wellington lies at the southern end of the North Island Main Trunk Railway (NIMT) and the Wairarapa Line, converging on Wellington Railway Station at the northern end of central Wellington. Two long-distance services leave from Wellington: the Capital Connection, for commuters from Palmerston North, and the Northern Explorer to Auckland.

Four electrified suburban lines radiate from Wellington Railway Station to the outer suburbs – the Johnsonville Line through the hillside suburbs north of central Wellington; the Kapiti Line along the NIMT to Waikanae on the Kapiti Coast via Porirua and Paraparaumu; the Melling Line to Lower Hutt via Petone; and the Hutt Valley Line along the Wairarapa Line via Waterloo and Taita to Upper Hutt. A diesel-hauled carriage service, the Wairarapa Connection, connects several times daily to Masterton in the Wairarapa via the 8.8-kilometre (5.5 mi) long Rimutaka Tunnel. Combined, these five services carry 11.64 million passengers per year.

Wellington is the North Island port for Cook Strait ferries to Picton in the South Island, provided by state-owned Interislander and private Bluebridge. Local ferries connect Wellington city centre with Eastbourne, Seatoun and Petone.

Wellington International Airport is 6 kilometres (3.7 mi) south-east of the city centre. It is serviced by flights from across New Zealand, and to Australia. Flights to other international destinations require a transfer at another airport, as larger aircraft cannot use Wellington's short (2,081-metre or 6,827-foot) runway, which has become an issue in recent years in regards to the Wellington region's economic performance. The airport is the base for Wellington Aero Club, a private not-for-profit flight school.

### **Infrastructure**

The maximum electricity demand is forecast to grow on average by 1.4% annually over the next 15 years, from 756 MW in 2012 to 934 MW by 2027, slightly lower than the national average demand growth of 1.7% per annum. The largest source of generation in the region is Meridian Energy's West Wind wind farm, with a maximum output of 143 MW. It is a few kilometres west of Wellington's central business district, on Quartz Hill and Terawhiti Station. There are some other small generators in the region, but the total peak generation is only 165 MW.

Peak demand greatly exceeds local generation, and power supply is highly dependent on the National Grid operated by Transpower. Four 220 kV transmission circuits from Bunnythorpe, near Palmerston North, provide the main connections with the national grid. The region is also supplied by the North

Island terminal of the HVDC link at Haywards substation, on State Highway 58 above the Hutt Valley. A major upgrade of the HVDC link commissioned in 2013 increased the capacity of the link from 700 MW to 1,000 MW from 2012, and 1,200 MW from 2014.

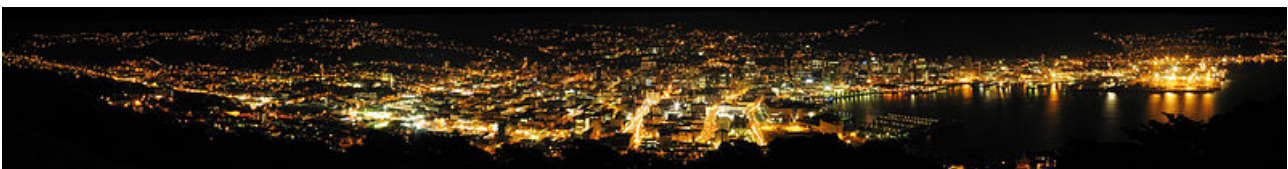
The local power distribution network is owned and managed by Wellington Electricity. The main power supplies to the central business district come from Transpower grid exit point substations at Central Park and Wilton. The Central Park substation is the largest grid exit point in the region, with a peak demand of over 170 MW (forecast to grow to 200 MW by 2020). There are constraints and limitations with this substation, and alternative investment solutions are being developed to improve security of supply.

Strong winds, advantageous for wind farms, have been known to damage power lines. In May 2009, one windstorm left about 2500 residents without power for a several hours. Lightning strikes and occasional faults in the electric power system sometimes cause power outages.

## Gallery



*Wellington Harbour and the lagoon*



*Night panorama of the city centre from Mount Victoria*



*Panorama from Victoria University of Wellington, Kelburn*



*The city centre from Mount Victoria*



*Mount Victoria*



*Panorama from Wellington Cable Car, Kelburn*



*Lagoon and harbour from the City to Sea Bridge*

## **TASKS**

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) wide road with trees or tall buildings on both sides, or a wide country path or road with trees on both sides;
- 2) increase of something in size, number, or importance;
- 3) town or city that is the official seat of government in a political entity, such as a state or nation.;
- 4) building, place, or institution devoted to the acquisition, conservation, study, exhibition, and educational interpretation of objectshaving scientific, historical, or artistic value;
- 5) narrow strip of land connecting two larger masses of land.;
- 6) relating to, or located in a city;
- 7) public shows, performances, or other ways of enjoying yourself;
- 8) destruction or a loss in value, usefulness, or ability resulting from an action or event;
- 9) sudden movement of the earth's crust caused by the release of stress accumulated along geologic faults or by volcanic activity;
- 10) to exceed the number of; be more numerous than;
- 11) movement of vehicles or people along roads, or the movement of aircraft, trains, or ships along a route;
- 12) not established for the purpose of making a profit;
- 13) buildings and other large structures;

14) place where aircraft regularly take off and land, with buildings for passengers and flight management;

15) long specially prepared hard surface like a road on which aircraft land and take off.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Wellington is New Zealand's political centre, housing Parliament, the head offices of all Government Ministries and Departments and the bulk of the foreign diplomatic missions.

2. It is an important centre of the film and theatre industry, and first to Auckland in terms of numbers of screen industry businesses.

3. Te Papa Tongarewa (the Museum of New Zealand), the New Zealand Symphony Orchestra, the Royal New Zealand Ballet, Museum of Wellington City & Sea and the biennial New Zealand International Arts Festival are all sited there.

4. The three cities comprising Wellington had a total population of 397,700 (June 2014 estimate), and the urban area contained 99% of that population.

5. The remaining areas are largely mountainous and sparsely farmed or parkland and are outside the urban area boundary.

6. More than most cities, life is dominated by its central business district (CBD).

7. Approximately 62,000 people work in the CBD, only 4,000 fewer than work in Auckland's CBD, despite that city having six times the population.

8. Wellington is the location of the highest court, the Supreme Court of New Zealand, and the historic former High Court building has been enlarged and restored for its use.

9. Government House, the official residence of the Governor-General, is in Newtown, opposite the Basin Reserve

10. Wellington International Airport is 6 kilometres (3.7 mi) south-east of the city centre.

11. It is serviced by flights from across New Zealand, and to Australia.

12. Flights to other international destinations require a transfer at another airport, as larger aircraft cannot use Wellington's short (2,081-metre or 6,827-foot) runway, which has become an issue in recent years in regards to the Wellington region's economic performance.

13. The airport is the base for Wellington Aero Club, a private not-for-profit flight school.

14. Victoria University of Wellington has four campuses and works with a four-trimester system (beginning March, July, and November).

15. It enrolled 21,380 students in 2008; of these, 16,609 were full-time students.



**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

**Hamilton City in New Zealand** is a modern vibrant city, surrounded 1 \_\_\_ which makes up the Waikato region. Hamilton City 2 \_\_\_ a variety of B&B's, hotels and motel accommodation. Shop till you drop in Hamilton's shopping malls and central CBD retail district then visit galleries and dine at fantastic cafes and restaurants. Enjoy top events and 3 \_\_\_ which Hamilton has to offer and is becoming well known for.

Hamilton City sits on astride the mighty 'Waikato River' the longest river in New Zealand and which boasts 4\_\_\_ Hamilton is located in the center of the hub surrounded by some of New Zealand's hottest attractions and activities. One of the local attractions not far from Hamilton is Hobbiton, the movie location, which featured in The Lord of the Rings Trilogy.

Only 1 1/2 hours drive from Auckland, Hamilton City is a safe, friendly, clean city and a great place for family holidays or for doing business in.

The Hamilton CBD is situated on the banks 5\_\_\_, and its rich colourful cultural mix makes it a perfect place to experience the friendly Kiwi experience.

The café and bar scene is a central Hamilton social scene where great food, beverages and people come together for a great time, and plenty of open spaces make the city an 6 \_\_\_ .

Hamilton City boasts a sophisticated, vibrant restaurant scene provides diners with one of the most 7 \_\_\_ for eating out in New Zealand.

The mix of modern urban restaurants and cafés offer diners a variety of tasty Asian and Mediterranean cuisine while providing a wide range of succulent New Zealand 8 \_\_\_ The southern part of Victoria Street, near the Skycity Casino, is buzzes with wine bars, pubs and night clubs, local and imported beverages and a wide range of 9\_\_\_.

Hamilton is also fast becoming a sort after destination city for international conferences and a venue 10\_\_\_ .

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| A) caters for                            | G) live music venues           |
| B) gourmet delights                      | H) motel accomodation          |
| C) a host of aquatic activities          | I) visitor attractions         |
| D) for major sporting events             | J) enjoyable experiences       |
| E) easy place to spend time in           | K) of the mighty Waikato River |
| F) surrounded by lush green pasture land |                                |

**Translate the text into Ukrainian.**

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

### **Taupo**

**Taupo** is a town on the coast shore of Lake Taupo in the centre of the North Island of New Zealand. It is the seat of the Taupo District Council and lies in the southern Waikato Region.

Taupo has a population of 23,400 (June 2014 estimate). In 1953, Taupo was officially found constituted as a borough, but from 1989 it has been administered by the Taupo District Council, the district including both Taupo itself and the surrounding hinterland. Despite this, it is occasionally brought referred to as a city. It is the 20th largest urban area in New Zealand, and the second-largest in the Waikato Region (behind Hamilton).

The name Taupo, by which the town is been commonly known, is the shortened version of its full name, Taupō-nui-a-Tia. Literally translated from Māori language, Taupō-nui-a-Tia means "The great cloak of Tia", where Tia is the name of the inventor discoverer of the lake.

In 2009 a team of Taupo citizens won the TV2 programme Top Town.

Taupo is located at the awaylet outlet of Lake Taupo, New Zealand's largest lake, in the northeast part of the lake where it discharges to the Waikato River. The river flows over one of New Zealand's most spectacular waterfalls, Huka Falls, a short distance north of to the town. Taupo is a centre of volcanic and geothermal action activity and hot springs suitable for bathing are located at several places in the vicinity. The volcanic mountain of Mount Tauhara lies six kilometres (4 mi) to the east. Some forested area exists near Taupo, with understory vegetation is consisting of certain shrubs and ferns.

Somewhat to the northeast are significant hot springs. These springs are the site of occurrence of certain extremophile micro-organisms that are capable of surviving in extremely hot environments.

Taupo is situated on a stretch of State Highway 1, running concurrently with State Highway 5. It is situated 53 km North of Turangi. It is one of the few centres in New Zealand that were never linked to the rail network.

The small but growing following satellite town of Kinloch, where a Jack Nicklaus golf resort is being constructed, is 20 kilometres west along the lake.

Taupo is a tourist centre, particularly in the summer, as it offers panoramic views over the lake and to the volcanic mountains of Tongariro National Park to the south.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Окленд – найбільше місто країни**



Веллінгтон – столиця країни, але найбільшим містом є Окленд. Він величезний, але майже всі будівлі в ньому одноповерхові, проте це не заважає йому бути економічним, культурним і промисловим центром. Історичних пам'яток небагато, але вони є: перш за



все, це Оклендський Університет, заснований в 1883 році; кілька гарних вікторіанських особняків; пам'ятник першому міністру країни – Майклу Сэвиджу; форт «Вікторія», збудований у 1885 році. Цікава історія його будівництва: кажуть, що форт вирішили побудувати після того, як Росія зміцнила свої позиції на Тихому океані – англійці побоювалися, що росіяни можуть напасти на їх колонії.



Оскільки такої кількості різних тварин, як у Новій Зеландії, немає більше ніде, Оклендський зоопарк визнаний одним з кращих в світі – він має безліч різних нагород, у тому числі міжнародних. Зоопарк розділений на зони так, що тваринам зручно там жити, а людям зручно спостерігати за ними. Близько 180 видів тварин живуть на не дуже великій території – всього близько 20 га,

але і вони, і відвідувачі відчувають себе в зоопарку дуже затишно – місцеві жителі люблять приходити сюди у вихідні всією родиною.

В Окленді є й унікальний акваріум. Звичайно, в світі грандіозних акваріумів зараз десятки, але майже всі вони однотипні: відвідувачі спостерігають за життям водних тварин через скло, стоячи зовні – Оклендський акваріум облаштований по-іншому. По його дну проходить тунель зі скла, і люди, потрапивши в нього, виявляються як би на морському дні: морські мешканці плавають не просто поруч, за склом, але і прямо над головою, а сонце звідти здається далекою світловою плямою – враження незабутнє.

Зрозуміло, в Окленді багато розважальних і культурних закладів, чимало цікавих музеїв і парків, а з вершин згаслих вулканів, розташованих у межах міста, відкривається прекрасний вид на Тихий океан. Пляжів на узбережжі Нової Зеландії – упорядкованих і «диких» – близько 15 тисяч км. Це дивно, якщо врахувати, що територія країни не так вже велика. Вони переходять один в інший, але західні пляжі різко відрізняються від східних: на одних золоті піски, а на інших – вугільно-чорні, вулканічні. Спортивних споруд побудовано безліч – любителям активного відпочинку не буде нудно, а серфінгісти з усього світу з'їжджаються сюди щоліта: таких хвиль немає більше ніде – вони дуже різні, тому кататися можуть і професіонали, і новачки.

Розповісти коротко про те, що варто побачити в сучасній Новій Зеландії, неможливо – туди треба їхати, проте це не всім по кишені: тури коштують дуже дорого, а з перельотами виходить ще дорожче. Вигідніше їздити в цю країну групами, або поєднувати поїздку з відвідуванням Австралії – відстань до Нової Зеландії від південного материка всього 2000 км.

**VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.**

### Barátságos és élhető



Új-Zéland fővárosa Wellington, melyet nem túlzás a kitűnő éttermek, tengeri herkentyűk, borok és fesztiválok városának nevezni. A főváros az Északi-sziget déli csúcsán, pontosan az ország közepén helyezkedik el. A gyönyörű kikötő köré épült városban szinte minden hónapban akad valami ünnepelnivaló.

A múzeumokban is bővelkedő Wellingtonban található a híres költő, Katherine Mansfield háza, de a világ legnagyobb faépülete a Government Building is. A főváros egzotikus állatairól híres állatkertje pedig egészen különleges élményeket ígér. Wellington Új-Zéland feje, a főváros látványos metropolisza dombok és csapadékkal teli árkok között, a kikötő körül húzódik. A város könnyen felfedezhető akár gyalog is, öröm sétálgatni a belváros kis utcáin.



Az Új-Zéland Társaság első vállalkozására, Wellington benépesítésére 1840-ben került sor a maoriktól sebtében megvásárolt földeken.

Központi fekvésének köszönhetően 1865-ben Auckland helyett Wellington kapta meg a fővárosi rangot. A várost 180 000 ember lakja, a szomszédos városokat is beleszámolva összesen 456 000 fő. Ennek ellenére Wellington Új-Zéland eseményeinek központja, élénk művészeti és éjszakai élet zajlik, jó vásárlási lehetőségeket kínál, fesztiválok, kiállítások és koncertek vonzzák az érdeklődőket.

Wellington belvárosa tele van történelmi épületekkel, megújult vízpartján pedig nagy a nyüzsgés. Kihagyhatatlan a Te Papa, a Nemzeti Múzeum.

Új-Zéland egyik városa is elmondhatja magáról, hogy a világ legélhetőbb városainak egyike. Auckland erős gazdasággal, üzleti lehetőségekkel, magas életszínvonallal, ingyenes egészségüggyel és lélegzetelállító környezettel dicsekedhet. Új-Zéland legnagyobb városa ez, melyet szinte minden oldalról víz határol. Az Északi-sziget északi harmadában foglal helyet. A vulkanikus hegyekre épült város a kikötőjéről, a rengeteg vitorlásról és persze a hídjáról

Wellington belvárosa tele van történelmi épületekkel, megújult vízpartján pedig nagy a nyüzsgés. Kihagyhatatlan a Te Papa, a Nemzeti Múzeum.

híres. De Auckland büszkélkedhet a világon a legnagyobb polinéziai populációval is, melynek művészetével az Auckland Múzeum érdekes gyűjteménye ismerteti meg az ide látogatókat.

A vitorlák városának is nevezik, csodálatos tengerpartjáról, kikötőiről és parkjairól híres. Partvonala szaggatott, beugrók, öblök után valószínűtlen formájú félszigetek jelennek meg, és sziget is akad bőven a közelben. Valóban a víz-kedvelők paradicsoma. Nem hiába hívják vitorlázó városnak, kikötői tele vannak különböző vizi-járgányokkal és nem kicsikkel. Állítólag itt van a legtöbb személyre eső vitorlázó a világon. Pezsgő élettel teli világváros, soknemzetiségű lakossággal és rengeteg turistával, akik a Föld minden tájáról érkeznek ide.



### *Régi és modern*

Népsűrűsége rendkívül alacsony, az elővárosi jellegű beépítés dominál – 1, 2 millió ember él egy megközelítőleg London nagyságú területen. Auckland sok kultúra otthona. Lakosságának legnagyobb hányadát az európaiak alkotják (56,5%), de magas a kelet- és dél-ázsiai, valamint a csendes-óceáni bevándorlók aránya is. Az őslakos maorik a város lakóinak 11%-át képezik. Ennek megfelelően a vallások sokszínűsége is szembeötlő. Békésen megfér egymás mellett az anglikán, katolikus, presbiteriánus, buddhista, iszlám, szikh, hindu népesség. Ahhoz hogy ennyire élhető, kedvelt város legyen, a sokszínű kultúra mellett hozzájárul még kedvező fekvése, kellemes enyhe éghajlata, tiszta levegője, az oktatási intézmények és munkahelyek széles választéka, a számos pihenési és kikapcsolódási lehetőség. Auckland a városok életminősége alapján felállított világranglista ötödik helyén áll! Láthatjuk, hogy nem véletlenül népszerű hely, mind a letelepedés, mind a turizmus szempontjából.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the cities and towns of New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the capital of New Zealand with that of your country.***

## VIII. ECONOMY

New Zealand has a modern, prosperous and developed market economy with an estimated gross domestic product (GDP) at purchasing power parity (PPP) per capita of roughly US\$28,250. The currency is the New Zealand dollar, informally known as the "Kiwi dollar"; it also circulates in the Cook Islands (Cook Islands dollar), Niue, Tokelau, and the Pitcairn Islands. New Zealand was ranked sixth in the 2013 Human Development Index, fourth in the The Heritage Foundation's 2012 Index of Economic Freedom, and 13th in INSEAD's 2012 Global Innovation Index.



*Milford Sound, one of New Zealand's most famous tourist destinations.*

Historically, extractive industries have contributed strongly to New Zealand's economy, focussing at different times on sealing, whaling, flax, gold, kauri gum, and native timber. With the development of refrigerated shipping in the 1880s meat and dairy products were exported to Britain, a trade which provided the basis for strong economic growth in New Zealand. High demand for agricultural products from the United Kingdom and the United States helped New Zealanders achieve higher living standards than both Australia and Western Europe in the 1950s and 1960s. In 1973 New Zealand's export market was reduced when the United Kingdom joined the European Community and other compounding factors, such as the 1973 oil and 1979 energy crisis, led to a severe economic depression. Living standards in New Zealand fell behind those of Australia and Western Europe, and by 1982 New Zealand had the lowest per-capita income of all the developed nations surveyed by the World Bank. Since 1984, successive governments engaged in major macroeconomic restructuring (known first as Rogernomics and then Ruthanasia), rapidly transforming New Zealand from a highly protectionist economy to a liberalised free-trade economy.

Unemployment peaked above 10% in 1991 and 1992, following the 1987 share market crash, but eventually fell to a record low of 3.4% in 2007 (ranking fifth from twenty-seven comparable OECD nations). However, the global financial crisis that followed had a major impact on New Zealand, with the GDP shrinking for five consecutive quarters, the longest recession in over thirty years, and unemployment rising back to 7% in late 2009. At May 2012, the general unemployment rate was around 6.7 percent, while the unemployment rate for youth aged 15 to 21 was 13.6%. New Zealand has experienced a series of "brain drains" since the 1970s that still continue today. Nearly one quarter of highly skilled workers live overseas, mostly in Australia and Britain, which is the largest proportion from any developed nation. In recent years, however, a "brain

gain" has brought in educated professionals from Europe and lesser developed countries.

#### New Zealand Currency

All major credit cards can be used in New Zealand, with Visa and MasterCard accepted most widely, followed by American Express and Diners Club.

### 1. Trade

New Zealand is heavily dependent on international trade, particularly in agricultural products. Exports account for a high 24% of its output, making New Zealand vulnerable to international commodity prices and global economic slowdowns. Its principal export industries are agriculture, horticulture, fishing, forestry and mining, which make up about half of the country's exports. Its major export partners are Australia, United States, Japan, China, and the United Kingdom. On 7 April 2008, New Zealand and China signed the New Zealand–China Free Trade Agreement, the first such agreement China has signed with a developed country. The service sector is the largest sector in the economy, followed by manufacturing and construction and then farming and raw material extraction. Tourism plays a significant role in New Zealand's economy, contributing \$15.0 billion to New Zealand's total GDP and supporting 9.6% of the total workforce in 2010. International visitors to New Zealand increased by 3.1 percent in the year to October 2010 and are expected to increase at a rate of 2.5% annually up to 2015.



*Wool has historically been one of New Zealand's major exports.*

Wool was New Zealand's major agricultural export during the late 19th century. Even as late as the 1960s it made up over a third of all export revenues, but since then its price has steadily dropped relative to other commodities and wool is no longer profitable for many farmers. In contrast dairy farming increased, with the number of dairy cows doubling between 1990 and 2007, to become New Zealand's largest export earner. In the year to June 2009, dairy products accounted for 21% (\$9.1 billion) of total merchandise exports, and the country's largest company, Fonterra, controls almost one-third of the international dairy trade. Other agricultural exports in 2009 were meat 13.2 percent, wool 6.3%, fruit 3.5 percent and fishing 3.3%. New Zealand's wine industry has followed a similar trend to dairy, the number of vineyards doubling over the same period, overtaking wool exports for the first time in 2007.

The economy of New Zealand is a market economy that depends greatly on international trade, mainly with Australia, the European Union, the United States, China, South Korea and Japan. The Closer Economic Relations agreement with Australia means that New Zealand's economy is closely aligned with the Australian economy.

New Zealand's economy has a sizable service sector, accounting for 63% of all GDP activity in 2013. Large scale manufacturing industries include aluminum production, food processing, metal fabrication, wood and paper products. Mining, manufacturing, electricity, gas, water, and waste services accounted for 16.5% of GDP in 2013. The primary sector continues to dominate New Zealand's exports, despite accounting for 6.5% of GDP in 2013.

The major capital market is the New Zealand Exchange, known as the NZX. As of November 2014, NZX had a total of 258 listed securities with a combined market capitalisation of \$94.1 billion. The currency is known as the New Zealand dollar, which is also the currency of five Pacific Island territories. The New Zealand dollar is the 10th most traded currency in the world.

The New Zealand economy is usually seen to be successful. New Zealand has been ranked first in the world for Social Progression, which covers such areas as Basic Human Needs, Foundations of Wellbeing, and the level of Opportunity available to its citizens. However, the generally positive outlook includes some challenges. New Zealand income levels, which used to be above those of many other countries in Western Europe prior to the crisis of the 1970s, have dropped in relative terms and never recovered. As a result, the number of New Zealanders living in poverty has grown and income inequality has increased dramatically.

New Zealand has also had persistent current account deficits since the early 70s, peaking at -7.8% of GDP in 2006 but falling to -2.6% of GDP in FY 2014. Despite this, public debt (that owed by the Government) stands at 38.4% (2013 estimate) of GDP which is small compared to many developed nations. However, between 1984 and 2006, net foreign debt increased 11-fold, to NZ\$182 billion. By March 2014 net foreign debt had dropped back to NZ\$141.6 billion, which represents 61.5% of GDP.

Despite New Zealand's persistent current account deficits, the balance on external goods and services has generally been positive. In FY 2014, export receipts exceeded imports by NZ\$3.9 billion. There has been an investment income imbalance or net outflow for debt-servicing of external loans. In FY 2014, New Zealand's investment income from the rest of the world was NZ\$7 billion, versus outgoings of NZ\$16.3 billion, a deficit of NZ\$9.3 billion. The proportion of the current account deficit that is attributable to the investment income imbalance (a net outflow to the Australian-owned banking sector) grew from one third in 1997 to roughly 70% in 2008.

## **2. Taxation**

Taxation in New Zealand is collected at a national level by the Inland Revenue Department (IRD) on behalf of the Government of New Zealand. National taxes are levied on personal and business income, as well as on the supply of goods and services. There is no capital gains tax although certain "gains" such as profits on the sale of patent rights are deemed to be income, income tax does apply to property transactions in certain circumstances,



particularly speculation. Local property taxes (rates) are managed and collected by local authorities. Some goods and services carry a specific tax, referred to as an excise or a duty such as alcohol excise or gaming duty. These are collected by a range of government agencies such as the New Zealand Customs Service. There is no social security (payroll) tax or land tax in New Zealand.

New Zealand's tax structure also contributes to the growing gap between the rich and poor. In 2010, personal tax rates were cut with the top personal tax rate reduced from 38% to 33%. The cuts gave New Zealand the second-lowest personal tax burden in the OECD. Only Mexico's citizens had a higher percentage-wise "take home" proportion of their salaries.

The cuts in income tax were estimated to have reduced revenue by \$2.46 billion. To compensate, GST was raised from 12.5% to 15%. This also has a negative impact on the poor. Treasury figures show that top income earners in New Zealand pay between 6% and 8% of their income on GST. Those at the bottom end, earning less than \$356 a week, spend between 11% and 14% on GST. Based on these figures, the New Zealand Herald predicted that putting GST up to 15% would increase living costs for the poor more than twice as much as for the rich.

### Corruption

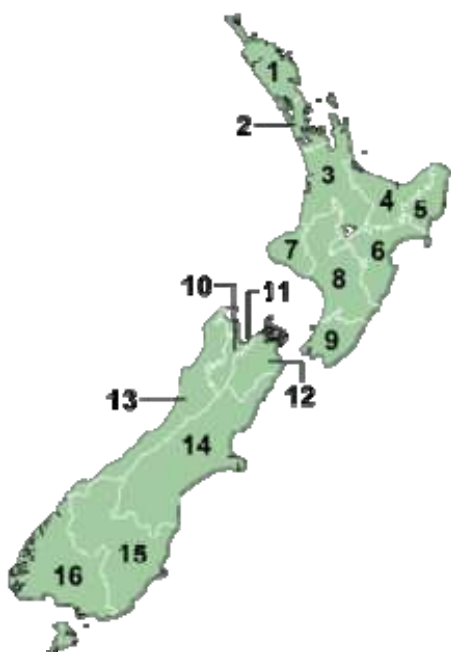
New Zealand is the highest-ranked (i.e. least corrupt) country on the Transparency International corruption perceptions index (CPI) of 2011. Adam Feeley, former chief executive of the Serious Fraud Office has stated that fraud is widespread in New Zealand and there are fundamental misconceptions about New Zealand's ranking as one of the world's least corrupt countries. International auditors, PricewaterhouseCoopers (PwC), agree. In 2011 PwC conducted a survey on Global Economic Crime which found that 50% of New Zealand organisations (both public and private) had experienced an economic crime in the previous 12 months. This gave New Zealand the 4th highest level of fraud out of the 78 countries surveyed.

In 2014 a Serious Fraud Office report showed Accident Compensation Corporation estimated that \$500 million is being "misappropriated by exaggerated injuries and medical providers inventing 'phantom' clients" each year – but less than 1% of this is actually detected. The report also canvassed \$8 billion of spending by district health boards and estimated 3% of this was being lost to fraud.

### 3. Regional economies

*Regions of New Zealand.*

Statistics New Zealand published details of the break-down of Gross Domestic Product in the Regions of New Zealand for a year:



Region (position on map)	GDP (NZ\$ million)	Share of national GDP	GDP per capita (NZ\$, 2)
Northland (1)	5,562	2.6%	35,068
<a href="#">Auckland</a> (2)	74,746	35.3%	49,217
<a href="#">Waikato</a> (3)	17,935	8.5%	42,868
<a href="#">Bay of Plenty</a> (4)	11,174	5.3%	40,236
<a href="#">Gisborne</a> (5)	1,613	0.8%	34,472
<a href="#">Hawke's Bay</a> (6)	6,050	2.9%	39,035
<a href="#">Taranaki</a> (7)	8,200	3.9%	74,341
<a href="#">Manawatu-Wanganui</a> (8)	8,534	4.0%	36,688
<a href="#">Wellington</a> (9)	28,472	13.5%	57,941
<b>North Island</b>	<b>162,286</b>	<b>76.7%</b>	<b>47,612</b>
<a href="#">Tasman / Nelson</a> (10 / 11)	3,795	1.8%	39,863
<a href="#">Marlborough</a> (12)	2,032	1.0%	44,357
<a href="#">West Coast</a> (13)	1,535	0.7%	46,793
<a href="#">Canterbury</a> (14)	27,843	13.2%	49,447
<a href="#">Otago</a> (15)	9,147	4.3%	43,086
<a href="#">Southland</a> (16)	5,001	2.4%	52,701
<b>South Island</b>	<b>49,353</b>	<b>23.3%</b>	<b>47,269</b>
<b>New Zealand</b>	<b>211,639</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>47,532</b>

## 4. Unemployment

Prior to the economic shock created by Britain's decision to join the EEC in 1973, removing it as New Zealand's primary market for our exports, unemployment in New Zealand was very low. The official number of people unemployed in 1959 was only 21. A year later it was 22. A recession and collapse in wool prices in 1966 led to unemployment rising by 131%, but was still only a 0.7% increase in unemployment.

Post 1973 unemployment became a persistent economic and social issue in New Zealand. Recessions from 1976–78 and 1982–83 greatly increased unemployment again. Between 1985 and 2012, the unemployment rate averaged 6.29%. After the stock market crash of 1987, unemployment rose 170% reaching an all-time high of 11.20% in September 1991. The Asian financial crisis of 1997 set unemployment upwards again, by 28%. By 2007, it had dropped again and the rate stood at 3.5% (December 2007), its lowest level since the current method of surveying began in 1986. This gave the country the 5th-best ranking in the OECD (with an OECD average at the time of 5.5%). The low numbers correlated with a robust economy and a large backlog of job positions at all levels. Unemployment numbers are not always directly comparable between OECD nations, as they do not all keep labour market statistics in the same way.

The percentage of the population employed also increased in recent years, to 68.8% of all inhabitants, with full-time jobs increasing slightly, and part-time occupations decreasing in turn. The increase in the working population percentage is attributed to increasing wages and higher costs of living moving more people into employment. The low unemployment also had some disadvantages, with many companies unable to fill jobs.

From December 2007, mainly as a result of the global financial crisis, unemployment numbers began to rise, this time by 106% with job losses especially high amongst women. In the last quarter of 2012, the unemployment rate fell to 6.9% from a 13-year high. This now makes New Zealand the 14th lowest among developed nations, below Canada's 7.2% and above Israel's 6.7%. In the September 2014 quarter, unemployment was 5.4%.

## **5. Housing affordability**

Shamubeel Eaqub, principal economist at the NZ Institute of Economic Research (BERL) says that thirty years ago, an average house in New Zealand cost two or three times the average household income. House prices have risen dramatically in the last few years and by 2007, an average house cost more than six times household income. International surveys show housing is now unaffordable in all eight of New Zealand's major markets – unaffordable being defined by house prices which are more than three times the median regional income. Demand for property has been strongest in Auckland pushing up prices in the city by 52% in the last five years. In 2014 the average sales price there went from \$619,136 to \$696,047, a rise of 12% in that 12 month period alone. This makes Auckland New Zealand's least affordable market and one of the most expensive cities in the world with houses costing 8 times the average income.

As a result, more and more people are being pushed out of the property market. Those on low incomes are hardest hit, affecting many Maori and Pacific Islanders. New Zealand's relatively high mortgage rates are exacerbating the problem even making it difficult for young people with steady jobs to buy their first home. According to a submission made to the Housing Affordability Inquiry, escalating house prices are also impacting on many middle income groups, especially those with large families. Mortgage adviser Bruce Patten said the trend was 'disturbing' and added to the gap between the 'haves and have-nots'.

Property analysis company CoreLogic says 45% of house purchases in New Zealand are now made by investors who already own a home, while another 28% are made by people moving from one property to another. Approximately 8% are being made by overseas cash buyers primarily Australians, Chinese, and British – although most economists believe foreign investment is currently too small to have a significant affect on property prices.

Whether purchases are made by New Zealanders or foreigners, it is generally those who are already well off that are buying the bulk of properties on the market. This has had a dramatic effect on home ownership rates by Kiwis, now at its lowest level since 1951. Even as recently as 1991, 76% of New Zealand homes were occupied by their owners. By 2013, this was down to 63%, indicating that more

and more people are having to rent. Raewyn Cox, chief executive of the Federation of Family Budgeting, says: "High prices and high interest rates (have) sentenced a rising number of New Zealanders to be lifetime tenants" where they are "stuck in expensive rental situations, heading towards retirement."

## **6. Growing inequality**

Between 1982 and 2011, New Zealand's gross domestic product grew by 35%. Almost half of that increase went to a small group who were already the richest in the country. During this period, the average income of the top 10% of earners in New Zealand (those earning more than \$72,000) almost doubled going from \$56,300 to \$100,200. The average income of the poorest tenth increased by only 13% from \$9700 to \$11,000.

Growing inequality is confirmed by Statistics New Zealand which keeps track of income disparity using the P80/20 ratio. This ratio shows the difference between high household incomes (those in the 80th percentile) and low household incomes (those in the 20th percentile). The inequality ratio increased between 1988 and 2004, and decreased until the onset of the Global Financial Crisis in 2008, increasing again to 2011 and then declining again from then. By 2013, the disposable income of high-income households was more than two-and-a-half times larger than that of low-income households. Highlighting the disparity, the top 1% of the population now owns 16% of the country's wealth – the richest 5% owns 38% – while half the population, including beneficiaries and pensioners, earn less than \$24,000.

### **Growth in numbers on welfare**

Factors contributing to the growth in inequality include substantial cuts in the top income tax rate in 1986-88 combined with a surge in unemployment caused by Rogernomics and the stock market crash of 1987 which pushed more people onto welfare. Then in 1991, benefits were also cut back substantially as part of the 'reforms' and those on welfare have been struggling ever since.

Professor Jonathan Boston of Victoria University says nearly 20% of poorer households in New Zealand now depend on welfare benefits. He says the growing gap between rich and poor enables the rich to "exercise disproportionate political influence", and that "if disadvantaged citizens are not to be excluded from political life, they must have access to education, healthcare and social assistance". British epidemiologists, Richard Pickett and Kate Wilkinson, argue that inequality is damaging for everyone in society, not just the poor. They say that when the gap between the top and the bottom levels of society becomes too wide, this erodes trust and empathy between citizens leading to alienation and social fragmentation. This exacerbates a multitude of health and social problems such as high infant mortality, obesity, teenage pregnancy, crime and imprisonment.

### **Impact on social indicators**

In 2014, Pickett and Wilkinson were invited to Auckland and Dunedin to discuss the relevance of their research to New Zealand. It appears to be very relevant. As inequality in New Zealand has grown, there has been a dramatic

increase in the youth suicides; the proliferation of food banks increased dramatically; marked increases in violent and other crime were observed; and the number of families and children living in poverty has increased. At the same time, health care spending has been cut leading to a deterioration in health standards among working and middle-class people.

In October 2014, a UNICEF report *Children of the Recession* said New Zealand's child poverty rates have come down by less than half a per cent since 2008. Fourteen per cent of New Zealanders said they sometimes did not have enough money to buy food, up five percentage points since 2007. The report said that progress on combating child poverty had stagnated, and government policy has "barely made a dent" in it.

### **Impact on growth**

In December 2014, the OECD released the *Global Income Inequality Report* which said "rising inequality is estimated to have knocked more than 10 percentage points off growth in ...New Zealand" between 1990 and 2010. The paper found no evidence that redistributive policies, such as taxes and social benefits, harm economic growth, provided these policies are well designed, targeted and implemented. It concluded that "focusing exclusively on growth and assuming that its benefits will automatically trickle down to the different segments of the population may undermine growth in the long run."

### **Poverty**

In the 21st century concern has been growing that an increasing number of New Zealanders, especially children, have been pushed into poverty. In 2005, an international report found that one in six children in New Zealand was being raised in poverty – making New Zealand children 23rd poorest out of 26 rich nations. In 2009 according to NCCSS, over half a million New Zealanders, including 163,000 children were living in poverty. The Expert Advisory Group established by the Children's Commissioner found that the number of children falling below the threshold has continued to grow. In 2013, around 265,000 children, a quarter of all children in New Zealand, were now "mired in poverty".

New Zealand Statistics also publishes a range of data on the economic well-being of New Zealanders and, in 2012, released a discussion paper highlighting the need for government agreement on the development of more useful criteria and statistics related to poverty. Currently the information that is collected is 'static data' – it shows the percentage of citizens below a certain level of income. But New Zealand is unique among western OECD countries in that it does not collect 'dynamic' data which captures the extent to which people move in and out of poverty.

In 2013 over a dozen different reports were released which focused on the issue and the need to develop agreed ways of describing and measuring poverty. However, the National Government resisted these attempts maintaining that "endless arguments about definition and measurement are a waste of time". Because of the Government's reluctance to define and measure the problem, in

2012 Children's Commissioner Dr Russell Wills, established an expert advisory group which produced a comprehensive report, called Solutions to Child Poverty in New Zealand: Evidence for Action which contains 78 recommendations to combat poverty. Dr Wills also set up the Child Poverty Monitor, to highlight the living conditions of children in New Zealand on an ongoing basis.

## **7. Superannuation**

New Zealand has a universal superannuation scheme. Everyone aged 65 years old or over, are a New Zealand citizen or permanent resident and normally live in New Zealand at the time they apply is eligible. They must also have lived in New Zealand for at least 10 years since they turned 20 with five of those years being since they turned 50. Time spent overseas in certain countries and for certain reasons may be counted for New Zealand Superannuation. New Zealand Superannuation is taxed, the rate of which depends on their other income. The amount of Superannuation paid depends on the person's household situation. For a married couple the net of tax amount is set by legislation to be no less than 66% of net average wage.

Because of the growing number of elderly becoming eligible, superannuation costs rose from \$7.3 billion a year in 2008 to \$10.2 billion in 2014. In 2011 there were twice as many children in New Zealanders as elderly (65 and over), by 2051 there are projected to be 60% more elderly than children. In the ten years from 2014, the number of New Zealanders over the age of 65 is projected to grow by about 200,000.

This poses a significant problem for superannuation. The age of eligibility was gradually increased from 61 to 65 between 1993 and 2001. In that year the Labour Government of Helen Clark introduced the New Zealand Superannuation Fund (known as the "Cullen Fund" after Minister of Finance Michael Cullen) to part-fund the superannuation scheme into the future. As at October 2014, the fund managed NZ\$27.11 billion, 15.9% of which was invested in New Zealand.

In 2007 a new individual saving scheme was introduced by the same Government, known as KiwiSaver. The main purpose of KiwiSaver is for retirement savings, but younger participants can also use it to save a deposit for their first home. The scheme is voluntary, work-based and managed by private sector companies called KiwiSaver providers. As on 30 June 2014, KiwiSaver had 2.3 million active members or 60.9% of New Zealand's population under 65. NZ\$4 billion was contributed annually, and a total of NZ\$19.1 billion has been contributed since 2007.

## **TASKS**

***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) flourishing; prospering;
- 2) ability to purchase, generally measured by income;

- 3) business of buying and selling commodities, products, or services; commerce;
- 4) product that is brought from one country into another so that it can be sold there, or the business of doing this;
- 5) to commit (money or capital) in order to gain a financial return.;
- 6) things that are done to keep a person, building, or country safe from danger or crime;
- 7) old British coin or unit of money. There were 20 shillings in one pound;
- 8) system or type of money that a country uses;
- 9) state of being poor; lack of the means of providing material needs or comforts;
- 10) company that is owned or controlled by another larger company;
- 11) copying something exactly in order to deceive people;
- 12) health, happiness, prosperity, and well-being in general;
- 13) place where coins are officially made;
- 14) state of being unemployed, especially involuntarily;
- 15) act or process of corrupting.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Unemployment peaked above 10% in 1991 and 1992, following the 1987 share market crash, but eventually fell to a record low of 3.4% in 2007 (ranking fifth from twenty-seven comparable OECD nations).

2. However, the global financial crisis that followed had a minor impact on New Zealand, with the GDP shrinking for five consecutive quarters, the longest recession in over thirty years, and unemployment rising back to 7 %in late 2009.

3. At May 2012, the general unemployment rate was around 6.7%, while the unemployment rate for youth aged 15 to 21 was 13.6%.

4. New Zealand has experienced a series of "brain drains" since the 1970s that still continue today.

5. Nearly one quarter of highly skilled workers live overseas, mostly in Australia and Britain, which is the smallest proportion from any developed nation.

6. In recent years, however, a "brain gain" has brought in educated professionals from Europe and lesser developed countries.

7. In the 21st century concern has been growing that an increasing number of New Zealanders, especially children, have been pushed into poverty.

8. In 2005, an international report found that one in six children in New Zealand was being raised in rich families – making New Zealand children 23rd poorest out of 26 rich nations.

9. In 2009 according to NCCSS, over half a million New Zealanders, including 163,000 children were living in poverty.

10. The Expert Advisory Group established by the Children's Commissioner found that the number of children falling below the threshold has continued to grow.

11. In 2013, around 265,000 children, a half of all children in New Zealand, were now "mired in poverty".

12. In December 2014, the OECD released the Global Income Inequality Report which said "rising inequality is estimated to have knocked more than 10 percentage points off growth in ...New Zealand" between 1990 and 2010.

13. The paper found no evidence that redistributive policies, such as taxes and social benefits, harm economic growth, provided these policies are well designed, targeted and implemented.

14. It concluded that "focusing exclusively on growth and assuming that its benefits will automatically trickle down to the different segments of the population may facilitate growth in the long run."

15. The main purpose of KiwiSaver is for wages savings, but younger participants can also use it to save a deposit for their first home.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

### Trade

When people first 1 \_\_\_ to and from New Zealand, there was no national government. The first exports were seal furs, whale oil, kauri timber and flax. Imports were clothes, metal goods and alcohol.

In 1840, when New Zealand became a colony of Britain, the new government began 2 \_\_\_ (taxes) on imported goods.

At first New Zealand 3 \_\_\_ mainly with Australia. But Britain became New Zealand's main 4 \_\_\_ from the 1870s, after the introduction of refrigeration meant that meat and dairy products could be shipped halfway around the world.

For a long time New Zealand's exports were based on agricultural products, such as meat, wool and dairy products. It also relied on one market – Britain – and was sometimes known as 'Britain's farm'.

There was an increase in imports in the late 1930s, and the government was worried that importing goods rather than making them in New Zealand could cause 5 \_\_\_ and damage the economy. The government began to restrict imports by making importers have 6 \_\_\_ to bring in particular goods.

After the Second World War some countries, particularly the United States, wanted 7 \_\_\_. This meant not charging duties or tariffs (import taxes) on imported goods. From 1947 many countries were 8 \_\_\_ the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) talks, which aimed to free up world trade.

After Britain made plans to join the European Economic Community (EEC) in the 1960s, New Zealand worried it would be difficult to export agricultural produce to Britain. New Zealand had 9 \_\_\_ – find other countries to export to,



and find other products to export. The products traded had diversified, but New Zealand still mainly exported 10 \_\_\_ such as meat and dairy products.

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| A) traded                  | G) to join                |
| B) to encourage free trade | H) agricultural produce   |
| C) imported and exported   | I) trading partner        |
| D) charging duties         | J) a rise in unemployment |
| E) involved in             | K) to diversify           |
| F) a licence               |                           |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

### **The Māori Economy: a History** ***Hunter-gatherers***

The Polynesians who settlement settled New Zealand carried an economy with them. They introduced kurī (dogs), kiore (the Pacific rat) and crops such as kūmara (sweet potato). Local resources were initially plentiful and easily gathered. Some were overexploited. Killing seals and the large unflight flightless moa was all too easy – they were not so much hunted as ‘quarried’.

As these resources ran out away, Māori adopted a more sustainable economy, based on cultivated cultivating kūmara and fern root, and a careful harvest of the forests, the seashore and the sea. Tribes were self sufficient in most resources, but there was trade in valuable tough cutting stone such as pounamu (greenstone), obsidian and argillite.

### ***Joining the market***

With the arrival of the Europeans, Māori quickly began to trade food, especially pigs and potatoes and other resources – timber, flax – for European wares such as nails and muskets. At first some European settlers survival survived only because of the supply of Māori food.

### ***Marginalization***

Following loss of land and a decline declining population from the mid-19th century, the Māori economy became increasing marginalised. Despite living almost entirely rural rurally, Māori found it difficult to take full advantage of the pastoral farming revolution.

### ***Urbanization***

After the Second World War Māori moved to urban centres to find jobs and prospects. Today they are an full integral part of the New Zealand economy and workforce, although they tend to be on average younger and less skilled. They are also less well payment paid and more likely to be unemployed. Māori tend to be more concentrated in farming, forestry, fisheries, tourism and some service providers in education and health.

*Translate the text into Ukrainian.*

*V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.*

### Монети Нової Зеландії



**Новозеландський долар (NZD)** – не тільки національна валюта Нової Зеландії, його використовують також в Ніуе, Островах Кука, Токелау і Піткерн. Часто новозеландський долар називають просто «ківі» (на честь національного птаха Нової Зеландії). Один долар складається зі ста центів. З 1999 р для виготовлення банкнот використовується спеціальний тонкий пластик. На аверсі (лицьовій стороні) монет Нової Зеландії зображують королеву

Єлизавету, а на реверсі птаха ківі, більшу східну чаплю, корабель Кука «Індевор» і маорійські різьблені дерев'яні тотеми.

1840 – 1 Фунт = 4 Крони = 10 Флоринів = 20 Шилінгів = 240 Пенсів;  
1967 – 1 Долар = 100 Центів

**Новозеландський фунт** (англ. "New Zealand pound") – валюта Нової Зеландії у період з 1840 по 1967 рік. За аналогією з фунтом стерлінгів фунт Нової Зеландії поділявся на 20 шилінгів, кожен з яких у свою чергу складався з 12 пенсів (в однині – "пенні"). Тривалий час у Новій Зеландії поруч з власними банкнотами використовували монети Великої Британії та Австралії. Перші власні монети були випущені лише у 1933 році номіналами 3 і 6 пенсів, 1 шилінг, 1 флорин (2 шилінги) та ½ крони (2½ шилінги). До 1947 року всі ці монети Нової Зеландії виготовлялися виключно зі срібла. У 1940 році було введено нові номінали: бронзові монети ½ та 1 пенні.

**Новозеландський долар** (англ. "New Zealand dollar") є сучасною грошовою одиницею Нової Зеландії з 1967 року; поділяється на 100 центів. Він також перебуває в обігу на Островах Кука, Ніуе, Токелау та на острові Піткерн. Неофіційна назва – "ківі" – використовується для уникнення плутанини з долларом США; первісно монета 20 центів містила зображення цієї пташки, а з 1990 року ківі, як національний символ Нової Зеландії, зображується на однодоларовій монеті. З 2006 року монета 5 центів офіційно не використовується як платіжний засіб (1 і 2 центи були вилучені раніше).

- Нова Зеландія як домініон Великої Британії (1907-1966-): 1 Фунт = 4 Крони = 10 Флоринів = 20 Шилінгів = 240 Пенсів



**1 Пенні (Penny) - 1947** - бронза - 31 мм - 9,6 г - тираж монети: 5.880.000 шт. - NEW ZEALAND - ONE PENNY (співоча пташка новозеландський туй або ж туї, що сидить на гілках (лат. "Prothemadera novaeseelandiae") король Великої Британії Георг VI (англ. "George VI King Emperor") - знак гравера під портретом "HP" (Thomas Humphrey Paget) - **ціна монети: \$1,7 -**



**3 Пенси (Pence) - 1934** - срібло (0,500) - 16,3 мм - 1,42 г - пату (англ. "Patu") як традиційна зброя маорі (корінного населення Нової Зеландії) король Великої Британії Георг V - **ціна монети: \$2,8 -**



**3 Пенси (Pence) - 1960** - мідно-нікелевий сплав - 16,3 мм - 1,41 г - тираж монети: 4.000.000 шт. NEW ZEALAND - пату (англ. "Patu") як традиційна зброя маорі (корінного населення Нової Зеландії) королева Великої Британії Єлизавета II (QUEEN ELIZABETH THE SECOND) дизайн монети: G.E. Kruger-Gray (знак "KG" під перехрещеними пату) - **ціна монети: \$0,7 -**



**1 Шилінг (Shilling) - 1947** – мідно-нікелевий сплав – 23,62 мм – 5,65 г – тираж монети: 2.800.000 шт. NEW ZEALAND – ONE SHILLING – воїн маорі /англ. "Maori warrior"/ зі списом (народ маорі – аборигени Нової Зеландії) дизайн монети: G.E. Kruger-Gray (знак "KG" під коліном воїна) та Thomas Humphrey Paget (знак "HP" під портретом) король та імператор Великої Британії Георг VI (англ. "GEORGE VI KING EMPEROR") *цікаво: монета даного дизайну випускалася в 1937-1946 рр. зі срібла з легендою "George VI King Emperor" (I-й тип), а в 1948-1952 рр. – з мідно-нікелевого сплаву та легендою "King George the Sixth" (II-й тип); 1947 р. – єдиний рік випуску новозеландського шилінгу з легендою I-го типу та в металі II-го типу* - **ціна монети: \$3,7** -



**1 Флорин (Florin) - 1964** – мідно-нікелевий сплав – 28,58 мм – 11,31 г – птах ківі (лат. "Apteryx") дизайн монети: G.E. Kruger-Gray та Mary Gillick – королева Великої Британії Єлизавета II (англ. "Queen Elizabeth the Second") - **ціна монети: \$3,2** -



**1/2 Крони (Crown) - 1950** – мідно-нікелевий сплав – 32 мм – 14 г - тираж монети: 3.600.000 шт. – HALF CROWN щит із герба Нової Зеландії, оточений орнаментом – король Великої Британії Георг VI (англ. "KING GEORGE THE SIXTH") дизайн монети: G.E. Kruger-Gray (знак "KG" біля дати) та Thomas Humphrey Paget (знак "HP" під портретом) - **ціна монети: \$2,5** -  
- **Нова Зеландія (1967-): 1 Долар = 100 Центів** -



**2 Центи (Cents) - 1973** – бронза – 21,1 мм – 4,15 г, рослина софора (англ. "kowhai") – королева Великої Британії Єлизавета II - **ціна монети: \$0,4** -



**20 Centív (Cents) – 1967** – мідно-нікелевий сплав – 28,58 мм – 11,31 г, птах ківі – королева Великої Британії Єлизавета II - *ціна монети: \$0,8* –



**50 Centív (Cents) – 1988** – мідно-нікелевий сплав – 31,75 мм – 13,61 г – дизайн монети: R.D. Maklouf та James Berry "Індевор" (англ. "Endeavour"): корабель, на якому здійснив першу експедицію Джеймс Кук – королева Великої Британії Єлизавета II. *цікаво: на честь корабля "Індевор" названо один із шатлів, а саме останній космічний човник, англ. "space shuttle" (НАСА, США) - ціна монети: \$1,5* –

**VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.**

**Az új-zélandi gazdaság egyik húzóágazata a nászút?**

Az elmúlt 20 évben alakította át Új-Zéland kormánya a korábbi agrár gazdaságot egy a brit piacon kedvező helyzetben álló szabad piacgazdasággá, amely nagyobb iparosodást hozott. Így vált fontos szereplővé a globális versenyben. Ez a dinamikus növekedés lendítette fel a reálbéreket, – de néhány még így is a létra alsó fokán maradt – és szélesítette, mélyítette a technológiai lehetőségeket az ipari szektorban.

A szigetország hosszú ideje híres az állattartási hagyományairól, az új-zélandi mezőgazdaság legfontosabb ága az állattenyésztés. A külterjes juhtenyésztés a hagyományos, de ehhez az idők folyamán társult a belterjes szarvasmarhatenyésztés is, mely sok húst és tejet ad. Ezekhez kapcsolódva jelentős gyapjúexport, bőrexport, húsexport és tejexport jellemző Új-Zéland gazdaságára.

Új-Zélandon öt millió szarvasmarha él, míg a lakossága száma mindössze 4,5 millió. Valaha tízszer annyi birka élt a szigeten, mint ember. Mára a birkaállomány 29, 5 millióra csökkent, a gazdák pedig 2007-től fokozatosan tértek át a jövedelmezőbb marhatartásra, ami 2013-ig jó döntésnek is bizonyult, az árak folyamatosan emelkedtek. Az elmúlt két évben azonban fokozatosan túlkínálat alakult ki, a fő felvásárlónak számító Kínában is érezhetővé váltak a gazdasági nehézségek, így csökkent a tejporgyártás kapacitása.

A gazdák a nyájak létszámának csökkentésével reagálnak a fejleményekre, és miközben a tehének száma csökken az országban, a turistáké folyamatosan nő. Az új-zélandi gazdák számára gondot okoz a tej iránti kereslet csökkenése. A farmerek egy része igyekszik takarékoskodni és csökkenteni a kitermelést, míg mások a hobbit-turizmusra támaszkodva próbálják átvészelni ezt az időszakot.

A turizmus mára Új-Zéland egyik legerősebb iparágává vált, az ország naponta átlag kétezer látogatót fogad, és – a tavalyi évben először – több vendéglátóhely elérte a kapacitása maximumát. Ennek ellenére a helyi farmerek abban reménykednek, hogy a globális piac helyrebillen. De addig is a turizmus adta lehetőségekkel próbálnak élni.



Új-Zélandnak jelentős bevétele származik a boldogító igenek kimondásából, ugyanis a szigetország tipikus esküvői-nászutas célpont.

Eddig évente 40 ezer pár jött ide nászútra, akik 160 millió dollárt hagytak itt – állítja egy turisztikai szakember. Ha ezt növelni tudják, az rendkívül jó lenne a gazdaságnak. Márpedig minden esély megvan arra, hogy még több

házasulandó érkezzen Új-Zélandra.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about trade and currency in New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare New Zealand's economic structure with that of your country.***

## IX. POLITICAL LIFE

### 1. Government

New Zealand is a constitutional monarchy with a parliamentary democracy, although its constitution is not codified. Elizabeth II is the Queen of New Zealand and the head of state. The Queen is represented by the Governor-General, whom she appoints on the advice of the Prime Minister. The Governor-General can exercise the Crown's prerogative powers, such as reviewing cases of injustice and making appointments of ministers, ambassadors and other key public officials, and in rare situations, the reserve powers (e.g. the power to dissolve Parliament or refuse the Royal Assent of a bill into law). The powers of the Queen and the Governor-General are limited by constitutional constraints and they cannot normally be exercised without the advice of Cabinet.



Elizabeth II



Sir Jerry Mateparae

*The Queen of New Zealand and her vice-regal representative,  
the Governor-General*

New Zealand Parliament holds legislative power and consists of the Queen and the House of Representatives. It also included an upper house, the Legislative Council, until this was abolished in 1950. The supremacy of Parliament, over the Crown and other government institutions, was established in England by the Bill of Rights 1689 and has been ratified as law in New Zealand. The House of Representatives is democratically elected and a Government is formed from the party or coalition with the majority of seats. If no majority is formed a minority government can be formed if support from other parties during confidence and supply votes is assured. The Governor-General appoints ministers under advice from the Prime Minister, who is by convention the Parliamentary leader of the governing party or coalition. Cabinet, formed by

ministers and led by the Prime Minister, is the highest policy-making body in government and responsible for deciding significant government actions. By convention, members of cabinet are bound by collective responsibility to decisions made by cabinet.

Judges and judicial officers are appointed non-politically and under strict rules regarding tenure to help maintain constitutional independence from the government. This theoretically allows the judiciary to interpret the law based solely on the legislation enacted by Parliament without other influences on their decisions. The Privy Council in London was the country's final court of appeal until 2004, when it was replaced with the newly established Supreme Court of New Zealand. The judiciary, headed by the Chief Justice, includes the Court of Appeal, the High Court, and subordinate courts.



*New Zealand government "Beehive" and the Parliament Buildings (right), in Wellington*

Almost all parliamentary general elections between 1853 and 1993 were held under the first-past-the-post voting system. The elections since 1930 have been dominated by two political parties, National and Labour. Since the 1996 election, a form of proportional representation called Mixed Member Proportional (MMP) has been used. Under the MMP system each person has two votes; one is for electoral seats (including some reserved for Māori), and the other is for a party. Since the 2005 election, there have been 70 electorate seats (which includes, since the 1996 election, 7 Māori electorates), and the remaining fifty seats are assigned so that representation in parliament reflects the party vote, although a party has to win one electoral seat or 5 percent of the total party vote before it is eligible for these seats. Between March 2005 and August 2006 New Zealand became the only country in the world in which all the highest offices in the land (Head of State, Governor-General, Prime Minister, Speaker and Chief Justice) were occupied simultaneously by women.

New Zealand is identified as one of the world's most stable and well-governed nations. As of 2011, the country was ranked fifth in the strength of its democratic institutions and first in government transparency and lack of corruption. New Zealand has a high level of civic participation, with 79% voter turnout during the most recent elections, compared to an OECD average of 72%. Furthermore, 67% of New Zealanders say they trust their political institutions, far higher than the OECD average of 56%.

## **2. Foreign relations and the military**

Early colonial New Zealand allowed the British Government to determine external trade and be responsible for foreign policy. The 1923 and 1926



Imperial Conferences decided that New Zealand should be allowed to negotiate their own political treaties and the first commercial treaty was ratified in 1928 with Japan. On 3 September 1939 New Zealand allied itself with Britain and declared war on Germany with Prime Minister Michael Savage proclaiming, "Where she goes, we go; where she stands, we stand."



*Anzac Day service at the National War Memorial*

In 1951 the United Kingdom became increasingly focused on its European interests, while New Zealand joined Australia and the United States in the ANZUS security treaty. The influence of the United States on New Zealand weakened following protests over the Vietnam War, the refusal of the United States to admonish France after the sinking of the *Rainbow Warrior*, disagreements over environmental and agricultural trade issues and New Zealand's nuclear-free policy. Despite the USA's suspension of ANZUS obligations the treaty remained in effect between New Zealand and Australia, whose foreign policy has followed a similar historical trend. Close political contact is maintained between the two countries, with free trade agreements and travel arrangements that allow citizens to visit, live and work in both countries without restrictions. In 2013, there are about 650,000 New Zealand citizens living in Australia, which is about 15 percent of the population of New Zealand. 65,000 Australians live in New Zealand.



*Māori Battalion haka in Egypt, 1941*

New Zealand has a strong presence among the Pacific Island countries. A large proportion of New Zealand's aid goes to these countries and many Pacific people migrate to New Zealand for employment. Permanent migration is regulated under the 1970 Samoan Quota Scheme and the 2002 Pacific Access Category, which allow up to 1,100 Samoan nationals and up to 750 other Pacific Islanders respectively to become permanent New Zealand residents each year. A seasonal workers scheme for temporary migration was introduced in 2007 and in 2009 about 8,000 Pacific Islanders were employed under it. New Zealand is involved in the Pacific Islands Forum, Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation and the Association of Southeast Asian Nations Regional Forum (including the East Asia Summit). New Zealand is also a member of the United Nations, the Commonwealth of Nations, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development and the Five Power Defence Arrangements.



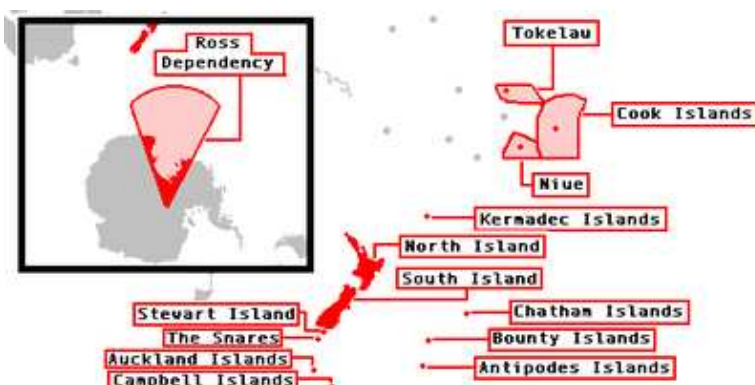
*Infantry from the 2nd Battalion, Auckland Regiment in the Battle of the Somme, September 1916*

The New Zealand Defence Force has three branches: the Royal New Zealand Navy, the New Zealand Army and the Royal New Zealand Air Force. New Zealand's national defence needs are modest because of the unlikelihood of direct attack, although it does have a global presence. The country fought in both world wars, with notable campaigns in Gallipoli, Crete, El Alamein and Cassino. The Gallipoli campaign played an important part in fostering New Zealand's national identity and strengthened the ANZAC tradition it shares with Australia. According to Mary Edmond-Paul, "World War I had left scars on New Zealand society, with nearly 18,500 in total dying as a result of the war, more than 41,000 wounded, and others affected emotionally, out of an overseas fighting force of about 103,000 and a population of just over a million." New Zealand also played key parts in the naval Battle of the River Plate and the Battle of Britain air campaign. During World War II, the United States had more than 400,000 American military personnel stationed in New Zealand.

In addition to Vietnam and the two world wars, New Zealand fought in the Korean War, the Second Boer War, the Malayan Emergency, the Gulf War and the Afghanistan War. It has contributed forces to several regional and global peacekeeping missions, such as those in Cyprus, Somalia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, the Sinai, Angola, Cambodia, the Iran–Iraq border, Bougainville, East Timor, and the Solomon Islands. New Zealand also sent a unit of army engineers to help rebuild Iraqi infrastructure for one year during the Iraq War.

New Zealand ranks 8th in the Center for Global Development's 2012 Commitment to Development Index, which ranks the world's most developed countries on their dedication to policies that benefit poorer nations. New Zealand is considered the fourth most peaceful country in the world according to the 2014 Global Peace Index.

### 3. Local government and external territories



The early European settlers divided New Zealand into provinces, which had a degree of autonomy. Because of financial pressures and the desire to consolidate railways, education, land sales and other policies, government was centralised and the provinces were abolished in

1876. As a result, New Zealand now has no separately represented subnational entities. The provinces are remembered in regional public holidays and sporting rivalries.

Since 1876, various councils have administered local areas under legislation determined by the central government. In 1989, the government reorganised local government into the current two-tier structure of regional councils and territorial authorities. The 249 municipalities that existed in 1975 have now been consolidated into 67 territorial authorities and 11 regional councils. The regional councils' role is to regulate "the natural environment with particular emphasis on resource management", while territorial authorities are responsible for sewage, water, local roads, building consents and other local matters. Five of the territorial councils are unitary authorities and also act as regional councils. The territorial authorities consist of 13 city councils, 53 district councils, and the Chatham Islands Council. While officially the Chatham Islands Council is not a unitary authority, it undertakes many functions of a regional council.

New Zealand is one of 16 realms within the Commonwealth. The Realm of New Zealand is the territory over which the Queen of New Zealand is sovereign and comprises New Zealand, Tokelau, the Ross Dependency, the Cook Islands and Niue. The Cook Islands and Niue are self-governing states in free association with New Zealand. The New Zealand Parliament cannot pass legislation for these countries, but with their consent can act on behalf of them in foreign affairs and defence. Tokelau is a non-self-governing territory that uses the New Zealand flag and anthem, but is administered by a council of three elders (one from each Tokelauan atoll). The Ross Dependency is New Zealand's territorial claim in Antarctica, where it operates the Scott Base research facility. New Zealand citizenship law treats all parts of the realm equally, so most people born in New Zealand, the Cook Islands, Niue, Tokelau and the Ross Dependency before 2006 are New Zealand citizens. Further conditions apply for those born from 2006 onwards.

#### **4. New Zealand constitution: Its main features**

- The prerogative powers of the Queen under which, for instance, the Queen issued the Letters Patent Constituting the Office of the Governor-General of New Zealand in 1983 and conferred her powers in respect of New Zealand on the Governor-General. The Queen appoints the Governor-General who, in general, exercises her prerogative powers. The Queen or Governor-General appoints and dismisses members of the Executive Council and Ministers of the Crown. Those powers are part of the common law. They exist independently of statutes, although statutes can, of course, limit or even supersede them.

- Other relevant New Zealand statutes, such as the State Sector Act 1988, the Electoral Act 1993, and the Judicature Act 1908, relating in turn to the three branches of government, as well as the Ombudsmen Act 1975, the Official

Information Act 1982, the Public Finance Act 1989 and the New Zealand Bill of Rights Act 1990.

- Relevant English and United Kingdom statutes, such as Magna Carta 1297, the Bill of Rights 1688, the Act of Settlement 1700 (regulating succession to the throne among other matters) and the Habeas Corpus Acts, all confirmed as part of the law of New Zealand by the Imperial Laws Application Act 1988. These statutes also regulate the relations between the state and the individual.

- Relevant decisions of the courts, for instance, upholding rights of the individual against the powers of the state, and determining the extent of those powers.

- The Treaty of Waitangi, which may indicate limits in our polity on majority decision making. The law may sometimes accord a special recognition to Māori rights and interests such as those covered by Article 2 of the Treaty. And in many other cases the law and its processes should be determined by the general recognition in Article 3 of the Treaty that Māori belong, as citizens, to the whole community. In some situations, autonomous Māori institutions have a role within the wider constitutional and political system. In other circumstances, the model provided by the Treaty of Waitangi of two parties negotiating and agreeing with one another is appropriate. Policy and procedure in this area continues to evolve.

- The conventions of the constitution, which in practice regulate, control and in some cases transform the use of the legal powers arising from the prerogative or conferred by statute. The most important conventions arise from the democratic character of our constitution.

Constitutional conventions are of critical importance to the working of the constitution, even though they are not enforceable by the courts. In 1982, the Supreme Court of Canada summarised the constitutional position in that country in an equation: constitutional conventions plus constitutional law equal the total constitution of the country.

***The underlying principle: Democracy***

***The Queen reigns . . .***

That basic equation and the democratic character of the main conventions appear clearly in relation to the powers of the Queen and Governor-General under the law. Thus they may appoint Ministers and other holders of important offices (such as the Judges, the Defence Chiefs, the Ombudsmen, and the Controller and Auditor-General), they may dismiss them (following certain procedures), they may summon and dissolve Parliaments, they may assent – or not – to Bills passed through the House, and they may agree – or not – to proposed regulations and Orders submitted to them by the Executive Council and Ministers.

***. . . but the government rules . . .***

The Queen and the Governor-General are free to take those steps as a matter of law. But, as a matter of convention, they do so only on the advice of the Prime Minister or Ministers who have the support of the House of Representatives – that

is, on the advice of those who are elected by the New Zealand voters, and who belong to a party which has a majority in the House; or who are part of a coalition which has a majority; or who, as a minority, are accepted by the House as able to sit on the Treasury benches. There must always be a ministry (the government of the day) to advise the Queen or Governor-General.

*... so long as it has the support of the House of Representatives*

That convention of course incorporates its own limit – one that conforms with democratic principle. If the government loses the support of the House, or if the Prime Minister loses his or her support as the leader of that government, then the ministry or the Prime Minister is likely to change: another party or combination of parties may now have the support of the House, or a new leader may be identified as Prime Minister. Or the Governor-General may face a more difficult situation because the position within the House or the governing party is unclear.

Situations like this were rare in New Zealand under the first past the post electoral system, but have been less rare since the introduction of the proportional representation electoral system. The essential principle in such situations continues to be that the Queen, as a constitutional monarch, or the Governor-General, as her representative, acts in accordance with the advice of the Prime Minister or Ministers who have the necessary support of the House of Representatives. Where that support is unclear, the Governor-General relies on the elected representatives in the House, and especially the party leaders, to clarify whether a party or grouping of parties has the support of the House to govern, or whether fresh elections will be required. In the meantime, the incumbent government continues in office, where necessary acting in accordance with the convention on caretaker government.

This is not to deny the important role of the Governor-General in the business of government. Practice and the Letters Patent indicate that the role includes being informed and consulted, and advising and warning Ministers. The office has central symbolic, unifying, and representative roles, as well as the important legal powers already mentioned.

In a broad sense, it is the ministry or government of the day which governs. The members of the ministry as a whole have the support of the House and must take collective and individual responsibility for their decisions, the decisions that are taken in their name, and the measures they propose. That is the position in law and in convention. That responsibility and power to take decisions result from the electoral process and the political contest.

## **5. Real power and legal form**

The decisions often take a legal form that departs from that practical and conventional reality; the decision taken in fact by Cabinet has then to be taken, as a matter of law, by the Governor-General in Council, the Governor-General or a Minister, as the particular statute requires; or the Bill passed by the House

through all its readings has to be assented to by the Governor-General to become law. The Cabinet, essentially a body established by convention, has no legal power; and the House acting alone has very limited powers to take decisions with full legal effect.

### ***The role of political parties***

Political parties provide a vital link between the people, Parliament and the government. The competition for the power of the state, exercised through the House of Representatives and the ministry, is a competition organised by and through political parties. It is party strength in the House after elections that decides who is to govern. It is the parliamentary party or parties with the support of the House (and the ability to ensure supply – the money to fund the state's functions) that provides the government.

The importance of political parties in constitutional system is recognised in the Electoral Act 1993 and in Standing Orders. It follows that parties' internal procedures, for instance in respect of the means of selecting their leaders and members of Cabinet, have an important practical effect on our governmental arrangements. The relationships between parties, including any agreements that they may reach, have become more important under coalition and minority governments.

### ***The role of the Prime Minister and Ministers***

The Prime Minister is the head of government, chairs Cabinet and has a general coordinating responsibility across all areas of government. By constitutional convention, the Prime Minister alone can advise the Governor-General to dissolve Parliament and call an election, and to appoint, dismiss, or accept the resignation of Ministers.

Ministers constitute the ministry, or executive arm of government. Their powers rise from legislation and the common law (including the prerogative). Ministers are supported in their portfolios by the public service.

### ***The role of the public service***

The role of the public service is stated in some detail in legislation, particularly in the provisions of the State Sector Act 1988, the Public Finance Act 1989 and the Official Information Act 1982, as well as a great number of particular statutes. Constitutional principles and that legislation support four broad propositions (among others). Members of the public service:

- are to act in accordance with the law;
- are to be imbued with the spirit of service to the community;
- are (as appropriate) to give free and frank advice to Ministers and others in authority, and, when decisions have been taken, to give effect to those decisions in accordance with their responsibility to the Ministers or others;
- when legislation so provides, are to act independently in accordance with the terms of that legislation.

Public servants meet those obligations in accordance with important principles such as neutrality and independence, and as members of a career service.

### ***Independent powers of decision: statutory bodies***

Members of the public service sometimes have independent statutory powers of decision, over which Ministers do not have control and for the exercise of which they are not responsible. Other parts of the broad state sector are also distinct from Ministers and not subject to their control and responsibility in the same way that departments and their members usually are.

The bodies set up separately from government include regulatory agencies, providers of a wide range of services, state trading bodies, and supervisory, control, or advice agencies.

In establishing such bodies, over a very long period, Parliament has recognised and reaffirmed that much public power should not be concentrated. It should be allocated to distinct bodies with varying degrees of independence from the Executive. This separation and independence may help ensure, for instance, a judicial independence of decision, equitable distribution of funds, the pursuit of commercial profit and business efficiency, or effective and credible processes of independent scrutiny, supervision and advice.

### ***Towards more open government***

Over recent decades the processes of government have become more open. Notably, in 1982 the Official Information Act reversed the basic principle of the Official Secrets Act 1951: the principle now is that official information is to be made available to those seeking it unless there is good reason for withholding it. Those reasons relate to public interest such as the national security and law enforcement, and to private interests such as confidences and privacy. Underlying that principle are a number of purposes, including enabling the more effective participation of the people of New Zealand in the making and administration of laws and policies, and promoting the accountability of Ministers of the Crown and officials, with the consequence of enhancing respect for the law and promoting the good government of New Zealand.

The emphasis on greater transparency in decision making and policy development is also to be seen in the legislation governing the government's spending and fiscal policies (especially the Public Finance Act 1989), and in the operation of the parliamentary select committee processes.

In a range of ways, including those just indicated, individuals and communities do participate directly in political and governmental processes important to them. There is for instance much emphasis in law and in practice on those exercising public power giving fair hearings to and consulting those affected by the exercise of that power. Also relevant is the enactment of the Citizens Initiated Referenda Act 1993.

A balance has to be struck between majority power and minority right, between the sovereignty of the people exercised through Parliament and the rule of the law, and between the right of elected governments to have their policies enacted into law and the protection of fundamental social and constitutional values. The answer cannot always lie with simple majority decision making. Indeed, those with the authority to make majority decisions

often themselves recognise that their authority is limited by understandings of what is basic in our society, by convention, by the Treaty of Waitangi, by international obligations and by ideas of fairness and justice.

### ***The international context***

Major changes in science, technology, communications, trade patterns, financial systems, population movement, the environment and many other matters of international concern mean that more and more law is made through international processes. The powers of national governmental institutions are correspondingly reduced. This has important consequences for national and international constitutional processes. Under changes to parliamentary procedures, Parliament has a greater opportunity to scrutinise and comment on the more significant international treaties before they are ratified by the Executive.

### ***Changing the constitution***

In theory, many parts of the constitution can be amended by legislation passed by a simple majority of the Members of Parliament. That power is, however, restrained by law, convention, practice and public acceptance. Some limits on constitutional change arise from the international obligations which have just been mentioned.

Certain key elements of the electoral system can be amended only if the people in a referendum approve, or three-quarters of the Members of Parliament agree. The provisions thus protected concern the three-year term of Parliament, the membership of the Representation Commission, the division of New Zealand into general electoral districts, the voting age, and the method of voting. In accordance with that requirement, the amendments made in the last 40 years to those provisions have been made only following agreement between the major political parties in the House or, in the notable instance of the change to proportional representation, following a binding referendum (which had itself been preceded by an indicative referendum).

It also appears to be accepted, at the level of convention, that those voting requirements also apply to any proposal to amend that protective provision. Similarly, Standing Orders provide that an entrenched provision should be introduced by the House only by the vote which would be required for the amendment or repeal of the provision being entrenched. The 1986 Constitution Act itself was enacted with general bipartisan support in the House. And recommendations to the House for new Standing Orders, in accordance with convention, are adopted by consensus in the Standing Orders Committee.

## **6. New Zealand Army**

The New Zealand Army (Māori: Ngāti Tūmatauenga, "Tribe of the God of war"), is the land component of the New Zealand Defence Force and comprises around 4,500 Regular Force personnel, 2,000 Territorial Force personnel and 500 civilians. Formerly the New Zealand Military Forces, the current name was



adopted by the New Zealand Army Act 1950. The New Zealand Army traces its history from settler militia raised in 1845.

New Zealand soldiers served with distinction in the major conflicts in the 20th Century, including the Second Boer War, World War I, World War II, the Korean War, the Malayan Emergency, Borneo Confrontation and the Vietnam War. Since the 1970s, deployments have tended to be assistance to multilateral peacekeeping efforts. Considering the small size of the force, operational commitments have remained high since the start of the East Timor deployment in 1999. New Zealand personnel also served in the First Gulf War, Iraq and are currently serving in several UN and other peacekeeping missions. They have just been withdrawn from East Timor, RAMSI in the Solomons and Afghanistan.

## 6.1 History

### *The Musket Wars, settlement and the New Zealand Wars*

War had been an integral part of the life and culture of the Māori people. The Musket Wars dominated the first years of European trade and settlement. The first European settlers in the Bay of Islands formed a volunteer militia from which some New Zealand Army units trace their origins. British forces and Māori fought in various New Zealand Wars starting in the north of the country in 1845, and culminating in major campaign in the Waikato in the mid-1860s, during which settler forces were used with great effect. Toward the end of the war the numbers of British troops were reduced, leaving settler units to continue the campaign.

The first permanent military force was the Colonial Defence Force, which was active from 1862. This was replaced by the Armed Constabulary, which performed both military and policing roles, in 1867. After being renamed the New Zealand Constabulary Force, it was divided into separate military and police forces in 1886. The military force was called the Permanent Militia and later renamed the Permanent Force.

### *South Africa 1899–1902*

Major Alfred William Robin led the First Contingent, sent from New Zealand to South Africa to participate in the Boer War in October 1899. The New Zealand Army sent ten contingents in total (including the 4th New Zealand Contingent), of which the first six were raised and instructed by Lieutenant Colonel Joseph Henry Banks, who led the 6th Contingent into battle. These were mounted riflemen, and the first contingents had to pay to go, providing their own horses, equipment and weapons.



*New Zealand troops landing stores, Gallipoli in WWI.*

The Defence Act 1909, which displaced the old volunteer system, remodelled the defences of the dominion on a territorial basis, embodying the

principles of universal service between certain ages. It provided for a territorial force, or fighting strength, fully equipped for modern requirements, of thirty thousand men. These troops, with the territorial reserve, formed the first line; and the second line comprised rifle clubs and training sections. Under the terms of the Act, every male, unless physically unfit, was required to take his share of the defence of the dominion. The Act provided for the gradual military training of every male from the age of fourteen years to twenty-five, after which he was required to serve in the reserve up to the age of thirty. From the age of twelve to fourteen every boy at school performed a certain amount of military training, and, on leaving, was transferred to the senior cadets, with whom he remained, undergoing training, until eighteen years of age, when he joined the territorials. After serving in the territorials until twenty-five (or less if earlier reliefs were recommended), and in the reserve until thirty, a discharge was granted; but the man remained liable under the Militia Act to be called up, until he reached the age of fifty-five. As a result of the visit to New Zealand in 1910 of Lord Kitchener, slight alterations were made—chiefly affecting the general and administrative staffs, and which included the establishment of the New Zealand Staff Corps—and the scheme was set in motion in January, 1911. Major-General Sir Alexander Godley, of the Imperial General Staff, was engaged as commandant.

### ***World War I***



*Crossing the line, probably showing an Equator crossing ceremony on a World War I troopship en route to Europe.*

In World War I New Zealand sent the New Zealand Expeditionary Force, of soldiers who fought with Australians as the Australian and New Zealand Army Corps at Gallipoli, subsequently immortalised as "ANZACs". A New Zealand division then formed which fought on the Western Front and the New Zealand Mounted Rifles Brigade fought in Palestine. After Major General Godley departed with the New Zealand Expeditionary Force in October 1914, Major General Alfred William Robin commanded New Zealand Military Forces at home throughout the war, as commandant.

The total number of New Zealand troops and nurses to serve overseas in 1914-1918, excluding those in British and other dominion forces, was 100,000, from a population of just over a million. Forty-two percent of men of military age served in the NZEF. 16,697 New Zealanders were killed and 41,317 were wounded during the war – a 58 percent casualty rate. Approximately a further thousand men died within five years of the war's end, as a result of injuries sustained, and 507 died whilst training in New Zealand between 1914 and 1918. New Zealand had one of the highest casualty-and death-rates per capita of any country involved in the war.

## ***World War II***

In World War II the 2nd Division, fought in Greece, Crete, the Western Desert Campaign and the Italian Campaign. Among its units was the famed 28th Māori Battalion. Following Japan's entry into the war, 3rd Division, 2 NZEF IP (in Pacific) saw action in the Pacific, seizing a number of islands from the Japanese. New Zealanders contributed to various Allied special forces units, such as the original Long Range Desert Group in North Africa and Z Force in the Pacific.

As part of the preparations for the possible outbreak of war in the Pacific, the defensive forces stationed in New Zealand were expanded in late 1941. On 1 November, three new brigade headquarters were raised (taking the total in the New Zealand Army to seven), and three divisional headquarters were established to coordinate the units located in the Northern, Central and Southern Military Districts. The division in the Northern Military District was designated the Northern Division, and comprised the 1st and 12th Brigade Groups. Northern Division later became 1st Division. 4th Division was established in the Central Military District (with 2nd and 7th brigades), and 5th in the south (with 3rd, 10th and 11th brigades).

The forces stationed in New Zealand were considerably reduced as the threat of invasion passed. During early 1943, each of the three home defence divisions were cut from 22,358 to 11,530 men. The non-divisional units suffered even greater reductions. The New Zealand government ordered a general stand-down of the defensive forces in the country on 28 June, which led to further reductions in the strength of units and a lower state of readiness. By the end of the year, almost all of the Territorial Force personnel had been demobilised (though they retained their uniforms and equipment), and only 44 soldiers were posted to the three divisional and seven brigade headquarters. The war situation continued to improve, and the 4th Division, along with the other two divisions and almost all the remaining Territorial Force units, was disbanded on 1 April 1944.

The 6th New Zealand Division was also briefly formed as a deception formation by renaming the NZ camp at Maadi in southern Cairo, the New Zealanders' base area in Egypt, in 1942. In addition, the 1st Army Tank Brigade (New Zealand) was also active for a time.

## ***Post-War***

The New Zealand Army was formally formed from the New Zealand Military Forces following the Second World War. Attention focused on preparing a third Expeditionary Force potentially for service against the Soviets. Compulsory military training was introduced to man the force, which was initially division-sized. The New Zealand Army Act 1950 stipulated that the Army would consist from then on of Army Troops (army headquarters, Army Schools, and base units); District Troops (Northern Military District, Central and Southern Military Districts, the 12 subordinate area HQs, elementary training elements, coastal artillery and composite AA regiments); and the New Zealand Division, the mobile striking force. The division was alternatively known as '3NZEF.'

First combat for the Army after the Second World War was the Korean War, which began with North Korea's invasion of the South on 25 June 1950. After some debate, on 26 July 1950, the New Zealand government announced it would raise a volunteer military force to serve with the United Nations Command in Korea. The idea was opposed initially by Chief of the General Staff, Major-General Keith Lindsay Stewart, who did not believe the force would be large enough to be self-sufficient. His opposition was overruled and the government raised what was known as Kayforce, a total of 1,044 men selected from among volunteers. 16th Field Regiment, Royal New Zealand Artillery and support elements arrived later during the conflict from New Zealand. The force arrived at Pusan on New Year's Eve, and on 21 January, joined the British 27th Infantry Brigade. The New Zealanders immediately saw combat and spent the next two and a half years taking part in the operations which led the United Nations forces back to and over the 38th Parallel, later recapturing Seoul in the process.

Through the 1950s New Zealand Army forces were deployed to the Malayan Emergency, and the Confrontation with Indonesia. A Special Air Service squadron was raised for this commitment, but most forces came from the New Zealand infantry battalion in the Malaysia-Singapore area. The battalion was committed to the Far East Strategic Reserve.

The 1957 national government defence review directed the discontinuation of coastal defence training, and the approximately 1000 personnel of the 9th, 10th, and 11th coastal regiments Royal New Zealand Artillery had their compulsory military training obligation removed. A small cadre of regulars remained, but as Henderson, Green, and Cook say, 'the coastal artillery had quietly died.' All the fixed guns were dismantled and sold for scrap by the early 1960s. After 1945, the Valentine tanks in service were eventually replaced by about ten M41 Walker Bulldogs, supplemented by a small number of Centurion tanks. Eventually, both were superseded by FV101 Scorpion armoured reconnaissance vehicles.

The New Zealand Division was disbanded in 1961, as succeeding governments reduced the force, first to two brigades, and then a single one. [14] This one-brigade force became, in the 1980s, the Integrated Expansion Force, to be formed by producing three composite battalions from the six Territorial Force infantry regiments. In 1978, a national museum for the Army, the QEII Army Memorial Museum, was built at Waiouru, the Army's main training base in the central North Island.

After the 1983 Defence Review the Army's command structure was adjusted to distinguish more clearly the separate roles of operations and base support training. There was an internal reorganisation within the Army General Staff, and New Zealand Land Forces Command in Takapuna was split into a Land Force Command and a Support Command. Land Force Command which from then on comprised 1st Task Force in the North Island and the 3rd Task Force in the South Island, assumed responsibility for operational forces, Territorial Force manpower management and collective training. Support Command which from then on

comprised three elements, the Army Training Group in Waiouru, the Force Maintenance Group (FMG) based in Linton, and Base Area Wellington (BAW) based in Trentham, assumed responsibility for individual training, third line logistics and base support. Headquarters Land Force Command remained at Takapuna, and Headquarters Support Command was moved to Palmerston North.

The Army was prepared to field a Ready Reaction Force which was a battalion group based on 2/1 RNZIR; the Integrated Expansion Force (17 units) brigade sized, which would be able to follow up 90 days after mobilisation; and a Force Maintenance Group of 19 units to provide logistical support to both forces.

The battalion in South East Asia, designated 1st Battalion, Royal New Zealand Infantry Regiment by that time, was brought home in 1989.

In the late 1980s Exercise Golden Fleece was held in the North Island. It was the largest exercise for a long period.

From the 1960s, New Zealanders served in the Vietnam War, East Timor (1999 onwards), and Afghanistan. New Zealand personnel have served in a large number of UN and other peacekeeping deployments, including the United Nations

Truce Supervision Organisation in the Middle East, Operation Agila in Rhodesia, the Multinational Force and Observers (MFO) in the Sinai, Cambodia, Somalia, Bosnia, Sierra Leone, Mozambique, Angola, Bosnia, Bougainville, with the Regional Assistance Mission to Solomon Islands, and the Sudan.

New Zealand decided in 2003 to replace its existing fleet of M113 armoured personnel carriers, purchased in the 1960s, with the NZLAV, and the M113s were decommissioned by the end of 2004. An agreement made to sell the M113s via an Australian weapons dealer in February 2006 had to be cancelled when the US State Department refused permission for New Zealand to sell the M113s under a contract made when the vehicles were initially purchased. The replacement of the M113s with the General Motors LAV III (NZLAV) led to a review in 2001 on the purchase decision-making by New Zealand's auditor-general. The review found shortcomings in the defence acquisition process, but not in the eventual vehicle selection. In 2010, the government said it would look at the possibility of selling 35 LAVs, around a third of the fleet, as being surplus to requirements.

On 4 September 2010, in the aftermath of the 2010 Canterbury Earthquake, the New Zealand Defence Force deployed to the worst affected areas of Christchurch to aid in relief efforts and assist NZ police in enforcing a night time curfew at the request of Christchurch Mayor Bob Parker and Prime Minister John Key.

## **6.2 Commemorations**

ANZAC Day is the main annual commemorative activity for New Zealand soldiers. On 25 April each year the landings at Gallipoli are remembered, though the day has come to mean remembering the fallen from all wars in which New Zealand has been involved. While a New Zealand public holiday, it is a duty day for New Zealand military personnel, who, even if not involved in official

commemorative activities are required to attend an ANZAC Day Dawn Parade in ceremonial uniform in their home location.

Remembrance Day, commemorating the end of World War I on 11 November 1918, is marked by official activities with a military contribution normally with parades and church services on the closest Sunday. However, ANZAC Day has a much greater profile and involves a much higher proportion of military personnel.

The various regiments of the New Zealand Army mark their own Corps Days, many of which are derived from those of the corresponding British regiments. Examples are Cambrai Day on 20 November for the Royal New Zealand Armoured Corps, St Barbara's Day on 4 December for the Royal Regiment of New Zealand Artillery.

### 6.3 Current deployments



*A New Zealand Army soldier in Afghanistan during 2011*

The New Zealand Army currently has 73 personnel deployed on 11 missions across eight countries:

- Afghanistan – 23 personnel.
- Sinai – 23 personnel, as part of the Multinational Force and Observers.
- In addition, small numbers of NZ personnel are deployed on various United Nations peacekeeping missions around the world.

#### *Dress*

Uniforms of the New Zealand Army have historically followed the British Army Uniform pattern. The high crowned "lemon squeezer" hat was for decades the most visible national distinction. This was adopted by the Wellington Regiment about 1911 and became general issue for all New Zealand units during the latter stages of World War I. The different branches of service were distinguished by coloured puggarees or wide bands around the base of the crown (blue and red for artillery, green for mounted rifles, khaki and red for infantry etc.). The "lemon squeezer" was worn to a certain extent during World War II, although often replaced by more convenient forage caps or berets, or helmets. British-pattern battledress was worn until the 1970s, with "jungle greens" being used as field wear. British DPM was adopted in 1980. Modern field wear is New Zealand disruptive pattern material camouflage, which closely resembles British DPM field uniforms. On overseas service, a New Zealand flag badge and a white Kiwi on a circular black field with the words "New Zealand" are worn. The DPM uniform, with the addition of a beret or sometimes the Mounted Rifles Hat, is the usual working uniform and, accordingly, the one most commonly worn. On 27 July 2012, the New Zealand Army formally announced the new multi-terrain

camouflage uniform will replace the NZDPM and NZDDPM patterns. It is intended that the MCU will be issued to all branches of the NZDF, with preliminary issue starting around mid-2013.



*Soldiers wearing DPM uniforms during an exercise in 2011*

In recent years, a number of distinctive New Zealand features have appeared, while at the same time corps and regimental distinctions have been reduced in favor of standardised items of dress for reasons of supply rationalisation and economy.

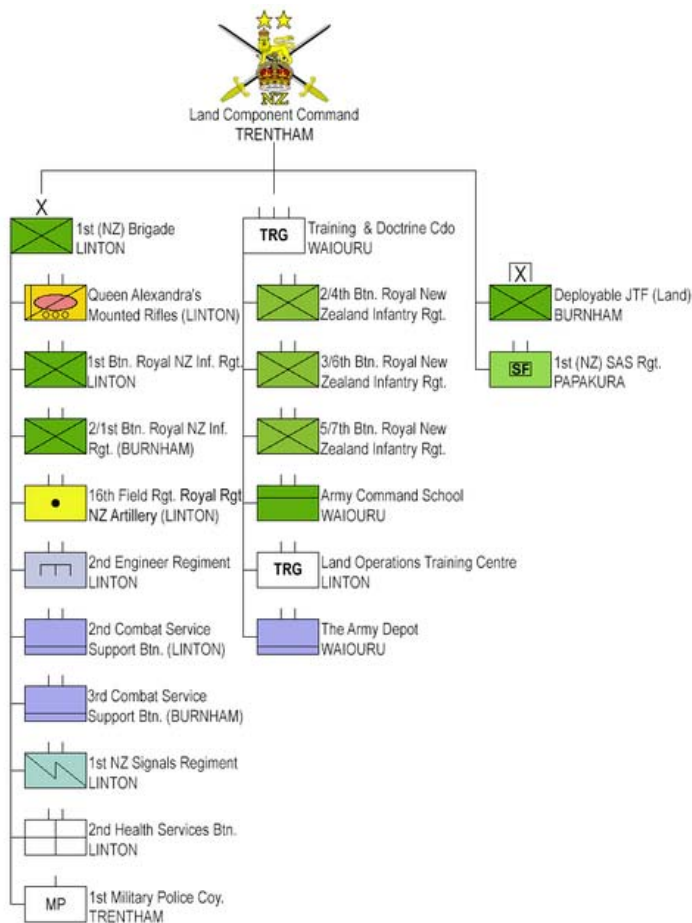
The "lemon squeezer", after being in abeyance since the 1950s, was reintroduced for ceremonial wear in 1977. Officer cadets and the New Zealand Army Band wear this headdress with a scarlet and blue full dress uniform. A wide brimmed khaki hat with green puggaree, of a pattern formerly worn by the New Zealand Mounted Rifle regiments, replaced the khaki "No 2" British Army peaked cap as service dress headdress for all branches in 1998. In 2012, it was announced that the MRH (Mounted Rifle hat) was to become the standard Army ceremonial headdress with the "lemon squeezer" being retained only for colour parties and other limited categories. The dark blue (formerly red) sashes worn by sergeants are now embroidered with a traditional Māori motif or mokowaewae denoting speed and agility. On the infantry sash, the mokowaewae appears in black, white and red diagonal 'steps', and on that of the New Zealand Scottish, in green, black and white. Short Māori cloaks are sometimes worn by senior officers as a mark of distinction on occasions of special ceremony, though they are not part of the regulation uniform.

Until 2002, berets were in various colours according to branch or unit. Since then, under a "one beret" policy, rifle-green has become the universal colour for this headdress, except for the sand-brown of the Special Air Service.

The British "infantry pattern" mess uniform is still worn by officers and senior NCOs for formal evening occasions. A universal pattern comprising scarlet mess jackets and blue-black trousers has replaced the various regimental and corps mess dress uniforms previously worn. The universal mess dress has also replaced the white jacket and black Barathea trousers previously worn in summer or tropical climates. The dark blue No 1 dress formerly worn by officers, before the general adoption of mess uniforms, was last worn in the early 1990s, although it was nominally retained for wear by the chief of army on appropriate state occasions.

Highland orders of dress (glengarry, kilt, and sporrans) are authorised for wear by the New Zealand Scottish Squadron of the RNZAC, at the discretion of the squadron commander. They are also authorised for the pipes and drums of the 5th (Wellington, West Coast and Taranaki) Battalion Group.

## Structure



*Structure of the New Zealand Army*

The New Zealand Army is commanded by the Chief of Army (Chief of the General Staff until 2002), who is a major general or two-star appointment. The current Chief of Army is Major General Dave Gawn. The Chief of Army has responsibility for raising, training and sustaining those forces necessary to meet agreed government outputs. For operations, the Army's combat units fall under the command of the land component commander, who is on the staff of the COMJFNZ at Headquarters Joint Forces New Zealand at Trentham in Upper Hutt. Forces under the land component commander include the 1st Brigade and 1 NZ SAS Group. No. 3 Squadron RNZAF provides tactical air transport support.

### ***Land Training and Doctrine Group***

Land Operations Training Centre Waiouru encompasses the main army trade schools: Combat School, School of Artillery, Logistics Operations School, School of Tactics, Royal New Zealand School of Signals, School of Military Intelligence and Security, Trade Training School (Trentham), School of Military Engineering, 2 Engineer Regiment (Linton).

### ***Regiments and corps of the Regular Army***

Royal New Zealand Infantry Regiment, New Zealand Special Air Service, Royal New Zealand Armoured Corps, Royal Regiment of New Zealand Artillery, Corps of Royal New Zealand Engineers, Royal New Zealand Corps of Signals, Royal New Zealand Army Logistic Regiment, Royal New Zealand Army Medical Corps, Royal New Zealand Army Nursing Corps, Royal New Zealand Army Dental Corps, Corps of Royal New Zealand Military Police, New Zealand Intelligence Corps, Joint Services Fire Training School, New Zealand Army Band.

### ***Army Reserve***

The Territorial Force (TF), the long established reserve component of the New Zealand Army, has as of 2009–2010 been renamed the Army Reserve,



in line with other Commonwealth countries, though the term "Territorial Force" remains the official nomenclature in the Defence Act 1990. It provides individual augmentees and formed bodies for operational deployments. There are Reserve units throughout New Zealand, and they have a long history. The modern Army Reserve is divided into six regionally-based battalion groups. Each of these is made up of smaller units of different specialities. The terms 'regiment' and 'battalion group' seem to be interchangeably used, which can cause confusion. However, it can be argued that both are accurate in slightly different senses. In a tactical sense, given that the Reserve units are groupings of all arms, the term 'battalion group' is accurate, though usually used for a much more single-arm heavy grouping, three infantry companies plus one armoured squadron, for example. NZ reserve battalion groups are composed of a large number of small units of different types.

The term 'regiment' can be accurately applied in the British regimental systems sense, as all the subunits collectively have been given the heritage of the former NZ infantry regiments (1900–1964). TF regiments prepare and provide trained individuals in order to top-up and sustain operational and non-operational units to meet directed outputs. TF regiments perform the function of a training unit, preparing individuals to meet prescribed outputs. The six regiments command all Territorial Force personnel within their region except those posted to formation or command headquarters, Military Police (MP) Company, Force Intelligence Group (FIG) or 1 New Zealand Special Air Services (NZSAS) Regiment. At a minimum, each regiment consists of a headquarters, a recruit induction training (RIT) company, at least one rifle company, and a number of combat support or combat service support companies or platoons.

3/1st Battalion, Royal New Zealand Infantry Regiment, previously existed on paper as a cadre. If needed, it would have been raised to full strength through the regimentation of the Territorial Force infantry units. Army plans now envisage a three manoeuvre unit structure of 1 RNZIR, QAMR, and 2/1 RNZIR (light), being brought up to strength by TF individual and subunit reinforcements.

The New Zealand Cadet Corps also exists as an army-affiliated youth training and development organisation, part of the New Zealand Cadet Forces.

A rationalisation plan to amalgamate the existing six Reserve Regiments to three, and to abolish one third of Reserve personnel posts has been mooted for some years, was agreed by the New Zealand government in August 2011, and is being implemented in 2012.

The Territorial Forces Employer Support Council is an organisation that provides support to Reserve personnel of all three services and their civilian employers. It is a national organisation appointed by the minister of defence to work with employers and assist in making Reserve personnel available for operational deployments.

## ***Major equipment***



### ***Armoured fighting vehicles***

105 x NZ Light Armoured Vehicle (NZLAV), 95 Infantry Mobility Vehicle (IMV), 7 Light Obstacle Blade Vehicle (LOB), 3 Recovery Vehicle (LAV-R)

*A NZLAV*

### ***Light operational vehicles***

352 x Pinzgauer High Mobility All-Terrain Vehicle (248 non-armoured / 60 armoured), 122 / 23 command and control variants, 68 / 37 crew served weapon carrier variants, 95 general service variants, 15 shelter carrier variants, 8 ambulance variants, 13 special operations.

### ***Support vehicles***

U1700 Unimog trucks, MAN HX trucks – acquired as part of a project to purchase 194 x Medium and Heavy Operational Vehicles to replace the in-service medium and heavy trucks.



*Unimog truck of New Zealand Army*

### ***Fire support/artillery***

50 x L16A2 81 mm Mortar, 24 x 105 mm L119 Light Gun, M6C-640T 60mm mortar.

### ***Missile/rocket systems***

M72 Light Anti-Armour Weapon, 42 x 84 mm Carl Gustav recoilless rifle M3 Man-portable Light Anti-armour Weapon, 24 x Javelin Anti-Tank Guided Missile (ATGM) launchers, 120 missiles, 12 x Mistral Very Low Level Air Defence Weapon.



*New Zealand gunners equipped with L119 Light Guns*

### ***Small arms, light weapons***

Rifle 5.56mm IW Steyr The first 5000 weapons were manufactured by Steyr-Daimler-Puch, and all subsequent weapons have been manufactured by Thales Australia (formerly ADI). The New Zealand variant is similar to the Australian F88 Austeyr, but does not have the automatic lock out (ALO) button.

SIG P226 9 mm Pistol, M203 grenade launcher, C9 Minimi 5.56mm Light Machine Gun, Minimi 7.62 TR Minimi chambered in 7.62mm to replace the C9

light machine gun, FN MAG 58 7.62 mm GPMG (General Purpose Machine Gun) to replace the older L7A2 British version, Benelli M3 12 gauge Shotgun, M2 machine gun .50 Calibre Heavy Machine Gun, L96 Sniper Rifle, LMT 308 MWS, Artic Warfare AW50 12.7mm Anti Materiel/ sniper rifle, L1A1 Self-loading rifle (in storage), Heckler & Koch GMG 40mm automatic grenade launcher, FGM-148 Javelin.

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) political unit, such as a city, town, or village, incorporated for local self-government;
- 2) institution that has the power to make or change laws;
- 3) official deliberative or legislative body, such as one chamber of a bicameral legislature;
- 4) group of people who are elected to make the country's laws and discuss important national affairs;
- 5) set of basic laws and principles that a country or organisation is governed by;
- 6) distinctive set of clothing intended to identify the members of a specific group;
- 7) vote in which all the people in a country or an area decide on an important question;
- 8) state or quality of being independent;
- 9) state or quality of being independent.;
- 11) self-government or the right of self-government; self-determination;
- 12) union of two or more political parties that allows them to form a government or fight an election together;
- 13) English state and government from the death of Charles I in 1649 to the restoration of the monarchy in 1660, including the Protectorate of 1653 to 1659;
- 14) soldiers who fight on foot;
- 15) to end the employment or service of; discharge.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. The New Zealand Parliament holds executive power and consists of the Queen and the House of Representatives.
2. It also included an upper house, the Legislative Council, until this was abolished in 1950.
3. The accountability of Parliament, over the Crown and other government institutions, was established in England by the Bill of Rights 1689 and has been ratified as law in New Zealand.
4. The House of Representatives is democratically elected and a Government is formed from coalition with the majority of seats.

5. If no majority is formed a minority government can be formed if support from other parties during confidence and supply votes is assured.

6. The Governor-General appoints ministers under advice from the Prime Minister, who is by convention the Parliamentary leader of the governing party or coalition.

7. Cabinet, formed by ministers and led by the Prime Minister, is the highest policy-making body in government and responsible for deciding minor government actions.

8. By convention, members of cabinet are bound by collective responsibility to decisions made by the cabinet.

9. New Zealand has a strong presence among the Atlantic Island countries.

10. A large proportion of New Zealand's aid goes to these countries and many Pacific people migrate to New Zealand for employment.

11. Permanent migration is regulated under the 1970 Samoan Quota Scheme and the 2002 Pacific Access Category, which allow up to 1,100 Samoan nationals and up to 750 other Pacific Islanders respectively to become permanent New Zealand residents each year.

12. A regular workers scheme for temporary migration was introduced in 2007 and in 2009 about 8,000 Pacific Islanders were employed under it.

13. New Zealand is involved in the Pacific Islands Forum, Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation and the Association of Southeast Asian Nations Regional Forum (including the East Asia Summit).

14. New Zealand is also a member of the United Nations, the Commonwealth of Nations, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development and the Five Power Defence Arrangements.

15. The New Zealand Cadet Corps also exists as an army-affiliated youth training and development organisation, part of the New Zealand Cadet Forces.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

New Zealand is a constitutional monarchy with The Queen as 1 \_\_

The Sovereign and the House of Representatives together make up the Parliament of New Zealand.

As a constitutional monarch, The Queen of New Zealand acts entirely 2 \_\_ of New Zealand Government Ministers. She is fully briefed by means of communications from her Ministers, and has audiences with them where possible. The Queen is responsible 3 \_\_ a Governor-General for New Zealand, which she does on the advice of the country's Prime Minister. This is The Queen's personal representative in New Zealand, who usually serves 4 \_\_ The Queen 5 \_\_ events affecting in New Zealand – for example, sending messages for national celebrations or tragedies. She also honours New Zealand achievements at events in the UK – for example, holding a reception for members of the All Blacks rugby team at Buckingham Palace in 2005. As Head of the Armed Forces, The Queen

6 \_\_ in a number of New Zealand regiments, and commemorates the service of New Zealanders in various conflicts throughout the past century. When The Queen visits New Zealand, she performs many of the duties normally delegated to the Governor-General – for example, 7 \_\_ the opening of Parliament. She also makes a pointing of travelling widely 8 \_\_ , meeting New Zealanders from as many different walks of life as possible. The Queen of New Zealand's 9 \_\_ is: Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, Queen of New Zealand and Her Other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith. In the Maori language, The Queen is known as Kotuku, which means 10 \_\_ , a cherished bird rarely seen in New Zealand.

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| A) Head of the Commonwealth | G) formal title             |
| B) Sovereign                | H) for appointing           |
| C) recognises               | I) throughout the islands   |
| D) "the white heron"        | J) for a term of five years |
| E) holds colonelcies        | K) presiding over           |
| F) on the advice            |                             |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

#### **The Legislative Council of New Zealand**

The Legislation Legislative Council of New Zealand was the first legislature of New Zealand from 1841 and upper house of the General Assembly of New Zealand from 1853 until 1950. Unlike the lower house, the New Zealand House of Representatives, the Legislative Council was appointment appointed. The Legislative Council was established by the *Charter for Erecting the Colony of New Zealand* on 16 November 1840, which created New Zealand as a Crown colony separation separate from New South Wales on 1 July 1841. Originally, the Legislative Council was consisted of the Governor, Colonial Secretary and Colonial Treasurer. The Legislative Council had the power to issue Ordinances, statutory instruments.

With the accepting passing of the New Zealand Constitution Act 1852, the Legislative Council became the upper house of the General Assembly in 1853.

The Legislative Council was intended to act as a revising chamber, scrutinising and supplying amending bills which had been passed by the House of Representatives. It could not begin initiate bills, and was prohibited from amending money bills (legislation relating to finance and expenditure). The model for the Legislative Council's role was the House of Lords in the United Kingdom.

It was meant specified in the Constitution Act 1852 that the Council would consist of at least ten members. Although not actually a part of the Act, instructions were issued that the number of members should not exceed fifteen. One member was to be selected as Speaker of the Legislative Council,

corresponding rudely roughly to the position of Speaker of the House of Representatives. A quorum of five members was established.

The first positions appointments to the Legislative Council were made in 1853, when twelve members were called to the upper house. Gradually, the maximum number of members was raised, and the limit was eventually cancelled abolished. The Council reached a peak of 53 members in 1885 and 1950.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***



У післявоєнні роки хоча і зберіглися традиційно дружні стосунки Нової Зеландії з Великою Британією, проте США стали основним економічним, політичним і військовим партнером. Віддзеркаленням нових реалій світового устрою стало створення в 1951 році Тихоокеанського пакту безпеки (АНЗЮС) до якого увійшли Нова Зеландія, Австралія і США. Первинним завданням цього пакту стала координація робіт із безпеки в Тихому океані, а пізніше сфера діяльності його розширилася і на Індійський океан.

У 1954 році Нова Зеландія спільно з Австралією, Францією, Пакистаном, Філіппінами, Таїландом, Великою Британією і США увійшла до Організації договору Південно-східної Азії (СЕАТО), основним завданням якої стала протидія військовому впливу СРСР і країн соціалістичного табору в Південно-східній Азії.

Займаючи унікальне регіональне і економічне положення в Тихоокеанському регіоні, в 1984 році Нова Зеландія кардинально змінила свою військову доктрину, участь в оборонних ініціативах і військову політику. Враховуючи потенційну небезпеку, Нова Зеландія ввела заборону на вхід у свої територіальні води кораблів з ядерним озброєнням і ядерними енергетичними установками. Оскільки таке рішення передусім впливало на військово-морський флот США, то в 1986 США заявили про зняття з себе зобов'язань по участі в забезпеченні безпеки Нової Зеландії. Упродовж усіх наступних років це впливало на новозеландсько-американські стосунки, але в той же час Нова Зеландія і США продовжують зберігати міцні партнерські стосунки.

У 1987 році Нова Зеландія вперше у світі законодавчо проголосила свою територію без'ядерною зоною.

Нова Зеландія продовжує розвиватися як незалежна демократична держава й активний учасник міжнародних економічних і політичних

відносин, приділяючи особливу увагу розвитку і зміцненню взаємин серед країн Тихоокеансько-азіатського регіону.

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Államforma, politikai berendezkedés**

Új-Zéland, akár csak Ausztrália vagy Kanada, hivatalosan alkotmányos monarchia, melynek államfője II. Erzsébet. A brit királynőt a főkormányzó képviseli, aki hagyományosan a miniszterelnök és a kabinet tanácsait követi. Választási rendszere a Westminster rendszeren alapul és sokáig annak képviselője volt, de az elmúlt évtizedekben komoly változásokon esett át.

Habár Új-Zéland nem köztársaság, a hatalom gyakorlásában szinte kizárólag a népképviselő elve érvényesül, ezért aztán rendszeresen, 3 évente tartanak parlamenti választásokat.

Új-Zéland élen jár a hatalom demokratikus gyakorlásban. 1853 óta tartanak országgyűlési választásokat. Maga az állam alkotmányos monarchia, de ez nem jelenti azt, hogy lenne egy egységes alkotmány, ezt a szerepet több törvény és szerződés, mint például a "Treaty of Waitangi", ami egy szerződés az őslakosok és a korona között, alkotja. Államigazgatásának rendszere 1852-ben egy alkotmányossági határozatban lett meghatározva, majd 1986-ban megerősítve.

Az új-zélandi monarchia 1947 óta független a brit monarchiától. Bár az uralkodó beleegyezése szükséges a törvényhozáshoz, ez a hatalom kizárólag Új-Zéland népétől származik. A monarchiát az uralkodó által a miniszterelnök tanácsai alapján választott főkormányzó képviseli. A kormányzó a politikai kérdésekben semleges álláspontot foglal el, de fontos szerepet játszik a választások kiírásában, a parlament életében és a kormányalakításban. Kinevezhet vagy eltávolíthat miniszterelnököket és feloszlathatja a parlamentet, de hatalma szimbolikus és formális. Ő vezeti a végrehajtó tanácsot, amely a korona összes miniszteréből áll, akiknek egyúttal parlamenti képviselőnek is kell lenniük és legtöbbször a kabinetnek is tagja.

A legfontosabb kormányzó testület a kabinet, amelyet a miniszterelnök vezet, aki hagyományosan a kormányzó párt vagy koalíció vezetője is. A kabinet felelősséggel tartozik a parlamentnek, ahonnan tagjait is választják. Háromévente tartanak választásokat: legutóbb 2014 szeptemberében voksoltak a választók.

Jelenleg a Nemzeti Pártot (National Party) vezető John Key a kormányfő. Kisebbségi kormánya a klasszikus liberális ACT és a keresztény konzervatív Egyesült Jövő (United Future) pártokkal, továbbá az őslakosok érdekeit képviselő Māori Pártról (Māori Party) áll egyezségben, melyek vezetői miniszteri posztokat töltenek be de a kabinetnek nem tagjai. Az ellenzék a Munkáspártból (Labour Party), a Zöld Pártból (Green Party) és az Először Új-Zéland pártból (New Zealand First) áll.

Noha Új-Zéland elnyerte függetlenségét a monarchiától, bizonyos szimbólumok maradtak az országban, amelyek emlékeztetnek a lakókat az egykori Brit Birodalomban betöltött szerepükre. Alapvetően egy országnak a legfontosabb nemzeti jelképe a zászlaja és a himnusza. Új-Zéland zászlaja könnyen összekeverhető: ott szerepel a Dél Keresztje csillagkép (igaz, az új-zélandi verzió vörössel, az ausztrálon fehérrel és eggyel több csillaggal), valamint a bal felső sarokban a Union Jack, azaz az Egyesült Királyság zászlaja. Tehát ez afféle mementója annak, hogy az állam fölött szimbolikusan még mindig a britek „uralkodnak”.

A himnusz esetében nem teljesen egységes a kép. Új-Zélandon még mindig sokhelyütt éneklik a God Save the Queen/King... kezdetű brit himnuszt. Ugyanakkor elterjedtebb a God Save New Zealand, amelyet egy ír születésű ausztrál, Thomas Bracken írt az 1870-es évek első felében. 1977 óta nemzeti himnusz, angol és maori változatának szövege némileg eltérő jelentésű. Hivatalos ünnepélyeken mindkettőnek az első változatát éneklik.

Emellett a harmadik, szimbolikus kapocs, amely összeköti az országot az Egyesült Királysággal, nem más, mint az államfő személye. Az Egyesült Királyság államfője az ország feje – azaz a mindenkori brit uralkodó, jelen esetben II. Erzsébet királynő. Az országban a főkormányzó képviseli az uralkodót, az intézményt az egykori gyarmatok domíniummá válásával egy időben hozták létre. A főkormányzót az országok miniszterelnökeinek ajánlása alapján a mindenkori uralkodó nevezi ki – ez az uralkodó egyetlen közvetlen beavatkozása Új-Zéland életébe.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the political system of New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the legal system of New Zealand with that of your country.***



## **X. NON-GOVERNMENTAL ORGANISATIONS**

Non-governmental organisations (NGOs) receive significant funding (in the order of \$2–4 billion per year) from both the Ministry of Health and district health boards. Many are non-profit, and along with providing services to consumers they are a valuable contact at community level.

Non-governmental organisations have a long, well established record of contribution to New Zealand’s health and disability service delivery. Health and Disability NGOs include a wide range of organisations that provide flexible, responsive and innovative frontline service delivery. Diverse services are offered in primary care, mental health, personal health, and disability support services, and include kaupapa services such as Māori and Pacific providers.

The Ministry of Health and NGOs from the health and disability sector have a formalised relationship outlined in the Framework for Relations between the Ministry of Health and Health and Disability Non-governmental Organisations. To facilitate this relationship there is a Health and Disability NGO Network and Council, and within the Ministry of Health an NGO Desk.

### **Health and Disability NGO Council and Network**

The Health and Disability NGO Council is made up of 13 elected representatives from the wider Health and Disability NGO Network and two (non-voting) Ministry of Health members. It is funded through a contract with the Ministry, and aims to build a strong, respectful, innovative and proactive relationship between the Ministry and NGOs, including Māori and Pacific NGOs.

The Ministry’s NGO Relationship Manager facilitates the formal relationship between the Ministry and the NGOs, and maintains communication between the Ministry and the NGO sector. The NGO Relationship Manager also works with other agencies such as the Ministry of Social Development and Department of Internal Affairs on government-community relationships.

A Health and Disability NGO Forum is hosted annually by the Ministry and the NGO Council. The Forums are an opportunity for NGOs to discuss key issues and to share these with the Ministry and other stakeholders. They also enable the NGO sector work with the NGO Council to set an agenda of work for the NGO Council to progress on behalf of the sector.

### ***Lions Club***

The Lions Club claims to be the world’s largest service club organisation, with 45,000+ chapters (or “clubs”) and 1.35 million members globally. Best known for their public health work, especially the ongoing vision and sight projects they sponsor, including the collection of eyeglasses, the organisation also mobilizes members for acute disaster response.

New Zealand’s Lions Club chapters and a description of the varied projects they sponsor can be found on this page.

### ***Oxfam New Zealand***

Oxfam’s principal purpose is to “end poverty and injustice,” and the organisation’s New Zealand branch focuses on helping “people to access safe

water and sanitation, to build a sustainable livelihood, to provide education for their children and to live free from violence.”

Upcoming events include the “Oxfam Trailwalker,” an outdoor endurance event that doubles as a fund raiser to support the organisation’s work.

### ***New Zealand Red Cross***

Perhaps the world’s most recognisable non-profit, the Red Cross is typically a first-responder in disaster situations, but it also sponsors many other programmes and projects, primarily related to public health and safety.

The New Zealand Red Cross provides school breakfasts for children whose families cannot afford the meal; “Meals on Wheels” (a food delivery programme for homebound people); and refugee, community, and public health support services.

### ***Rotary International***

Rotary, like the Lions Club, is an international service organisation whose members organise service projects in their local communities. Rotarians, as the organisation’s members are known, often collaborate with other major service organisations to support larger projects, especially in disaster response situations.

In response to the Christchurch earthquake, Rotary has collected and distributed donations; organised respite accommodations for its members affected by the quake; and started a “caravan loan.”

### ***Salvation Army***

The Salvation Army, a charitable organisation that is part of the worldwide evangelical Christian church, has been in New Zealand since 1883, and like its branches around the world, the New Zealand Salvation Army provides services to anyone who needs them, regardless of religious affiliation.

Those services include: “food assistance, budgeting advice, like skills training, crisis and supportive accommodation, addiction services (drug, alcohol and problem gambling), chaplaincy support, employment training, chaplaincy, emergency services, and youth work.”

### ***Save the Children New Zealand***

As its name suggests, Save the Children’s work is focused on children. The organisation supports children’s rights by providing direct services and interventions at the community level, as well as by influencing policy at the national and international levels.

In New Zealand, particular projects focus on “addressing the effects of domestic violence on children; respecting the rights of and listening to the opinion of Maori; including young people in discussions about climate change; giving young people a voice in national and local government; and teaching about diversity in schools.”

*Other international service and aid organisations with local chapters can be found in this list, compiled by the Council for International Development.*

### ***Local Organisations***

#### ***Christchurch Methodist City Mission***

John Reese, one of the founders of #Blog4NZ, mentioned that this organisation has had a strong presence in responding to the February

earthquake. Its services have become more important over the past month, but like many church-based social service programmes, CMCM plays a vital role in its local community on a day-to-day basis. The non-profit runs a food bank and a shelter for homeless/displaced people, and provides case management services, including drug and alcohol counseling and budgeting lessons.

### ***Federated Farmers***

New Zealand's "leading rural advocacy organisation," Federated Farmers seeks to influence policy related to farming. The organisation also mobilises during and after disasters, recognising that events like earthquakes, droughts, and floods can cause a loss of livelihood for farmers. The organisation provides direct support and referrals for farmers in need of financial and/or psychological and emotional intervention in such situations.

### ***LifeLine***

LifeLine is a free-of-charge telephone hotline whose operators are trained counselors who provide support to callers who are in crisis, as well as those who just need someone to talk with about their problems or feelings. The organisation also has an email counseling service.

### ***The Peace Foundation***

The Peace Foundation, recommended by Matador contributor Marie Szamborski, "promotes peaceful relationships among people of all ages, at all levels, through education, research and action." Much of the organisation's work is centered in schools, where it teaches students conflict mediation and resolution skills.

### ***Puketi Forest Trust – Oho Mai Puketi***

Long-time Matador member and Kiwi Craig Martin says this organisation has done "a lot to cull foreign pests, such as rats, stoats and possums which are killing New Zealand's strange and wonderful native flora and fauna.

They've successfully created a virtual arc in the park, which has allowed endangered species to be reintroduced and seen increased numbers of other native birds, including the local species of Kiwi, New Zealand's iconic bird."

### ***Trade Aid***

Trade Aid, also recommended by Marie Szamborski, describes itself as "the only global network whose members represent the fair trade chain from production to sale." The organisation, in existence for more than 35 years, sources food and craft products from poor producers in Africa, Asia, Latin America, and the Pacific, and provides technical, logistical, and financial support to those producers as a means of helping them change their economic conditions.

### ***The Wellington City Mission***

Another church-based organisation, The Wellington City Mission provides many of the same services as most other organisations with a religious mandate: food pantry/feeding services; educational and vocational training and placement; emergency response and shelter services; and support for the elderly.

All of New Zealand's legally registered charities, non-profits, and non-governmental organisations can be found on the country's Charities Commission website. The Charities Commission website is a useful resource if you plan to donate money for earthquake relief; it maintains a list of known scams you can consult before donating.

***"I Have a Dream" Charitable Trust*** helps children from low-income areas reach their education and career goals by providing a long-term programme of mentoring, tutoring and enrichment with an assured opportunity of higher education; based in Mt Roskill, Auckland; HQ: USA

***Amnesty International Aotearoa New Zealand***

New Zealand arm of the international organisation that investigates human rights abuses; based in Auckland

***Autism NZ***

Official web site of Autism New Zealand, headquartered in Wellington; has info on the disability, training and conferences, articles etc; has online store for books and videos; branches: Northland, Auckland, Waikato, Bay of Plenty, Southland etc

***Cancer Society of New Zealand***

Non-profit, non-government organisation that aims to minimise the impact of cancer on New Zealanders by providing research funding, cancer-related information, support for patients and their families etc; head office is in Wellington

***Greenpeace***

Non-profit organisation present in 40 countries; focuses on critical environmental issues such as oceans and ancient forests protection, fossil fuel phase out and the promotion of renewable energies to stop climate change, nuclear disarmament etc

***National Council of Women of New Zealand (NCW)***

Organisation that provides information on issues of interest to women in NZ, collects their opinion on these issues, and ensures that these opinions are represented effectively; based in Wellington

***New Zealand Association of Rationalists & Humanists (NZARH)***

Advocates a rational, humane, and secular view of life without reference to supernatural agencies and which is compatible with the scientific method; based in Auckland

***New Zealand Automobile Association Inc (NZAA)***

Organisation of motorists with more than 930,000 commercial & non-commercial members; head office is in Auckland, with offices across the country; members get free road service, travel guides, regional maps, technical advice etc

***New Zealand China Friendship Society Inc***

Organisation that promotes friendship, understanding and goodwill between China and New Zealand; promotes the study of China, supports aid projects, promotes the study of Chinese language and English, assists students & migrants etc

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) generous in giving money or other help to the needy;
- 2) not related to government affairs or procedures;
- 3) way in which two people or two groups feel about each other and behave towards each other;
- 4) help that is provided for people who have personal or social problems;
- 5) wise and trusted counselor or teacher;
- 6) act, process, or art of imparting knowledge and skill ;
- 7) to observe or inquire into in detail;
- 8) unjust or wrongful practice;
- 9) general pardon granted by a government;
- 10) pervasive developmental disorder characterised by severe deficits in social interaction and communication, by an extremely limited range of activities and interests, and often by the presence of repetitive, stereotyped behaviors;
- 11) loyalty and general agreement between all the people in a group, or between different groups because they all have a shared aim;
- 12) effect or impression of one person or thing on another;
- 13) reduction of offensive or defensive fighting capability, as by a nation;
- 14) feeling of benevolence, approval, and kindly interest;
- 15) to make certain or sure; guarantee.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. "I Have a Dream" Charitable Trust helps children from high-income areas reach their education and career goals by providing a long-term programme of mentoring, tutoring and enrichment with an assured opportunity of higher education.

2. New Zealand Association of Rationalists & Humanists (NZARH) advocates a rational, humane, and secular view of life without reference to supernatural agencies and which is compatible with the scientific method; based in Auckland.

3. Cancer Society of New Zealand is a non-profit, non-government organisation that aims to minimise the impact of cancer on New Zealanders by providing research funding, cancer-related information, support for patients & their families etc; head office is in Wellington.

4. National Council of Women of New Zealand (NCW) is an organisation that provides information on issues of interest to men in NZ, collects their opinion on these issues, and ensures that these opinions are represented effectively; based in Wellington.

5. The Peace Foundation, recommended by Matador contributor Marie Szamborski, "promotes peaceful relationships among people of all ages, at all levels, through education, research and action."

6. Much of the organisation's work is centered in universities, where it teaches students conflict mediation and resolution skills.

7. As its name suggests, Save the Children's work is focused on children.

8. The organisation supports children's rights by providing direct services and interventions at the community level, as well as by influencing policy at the national and international levels.

9. In New Zealand, particular projects focus on "addressing the effects of domestic violence on children; respecting the rights of and listening to the opinion of Maori; including children in discussions about climate change; giving young people a voice in national and local government; and teaching about diversity in schools."

10. Non-governmental organisations have a long, well established record of contribution to New Zealand's health and disability service delivery.

11. Health and Disability NGOs include a wide range of organisations that provide flexible, responsive and innovative frontline service delivery.

12. Diverse services are offered in primary care, mental health, personal health, and disability support services, and include kaupapa services such as Māori and Pacific providers.

13. The Ministry of Health and NGOs from the health and disability sector have a formalised relationship outlined in the Framework for Relations between the Ministry of Health and Health and Disability Non-governmental Organisations.

14. To worsen this relationship there is a Health and Disability NGO Network and Council, and within the Ministry of Health an NGO Desk.

15. New Zealand China Friendship Society Inc is an organisation that promotes friendship, understanding & goodwill between China & New Zealand; promotes the study of China, supports aid projects, promotes the study of Japanese language & English, assists students and migrants etc.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

Philanthropy New Zealand is the 1\_\_\_ in New Zealand. We provide thought leadership and practical help for everyone with an interest to make the world a better place. Our members include 2\_\_\_; family, community and corporate foundations; and iwi and community trusts.

Philanthropy New Zealand is bringing together philanthropic thought leaders, innovators and 3 \_\_\_ for a two-day summit that will inform, inspire and innovate. The Summit will bring global and local perspectives to philanthropy in Aotearoa /New Zealand and 4 \_\_\_ to learn best practice and explore new ways of working.

The Summit will 5 \_\_\_ three key issues: income and inequality, youth and employment, the environment.

It will look at how strategic giving and 6 \_\_\_ in these three areas is making a real difference to the lives of New Zealanders and can leave a powerful and lasting legacy for future generations.

Keynote speakers include New York entrepreneur and 7 \_\_\_ Justin Rockefeller, US philanthropic leaders Peter Hero and Mae Hong and eminent New Zealanders Tā Mark Solomon, Dame Anne Salmond and Mānuka Henare. Other speakers include 8 \_\_\_ and thinkers such as Annah Stretton, Max Rashbrooke, Kate Frykberg and Rob Fenwick.

A unique feature of the Summit is the inclusion of 9 \_\_\_ in our programme. These sessions are for like-minded individuals and organisations to find opportunities to work together in the three key issue areas and to develop 10 \_\_\_ for real and lasting impact.

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A) action plans              | G) provide opportunities |
| B) hub of philanthropy       | H) wise investment       |
| C) collaboration spaces      | I) focus on              |
| D) private philanthropists   | J) the inclusion of      |
| E) experienced practitioners | K) leading New Zealand   |
| F) impact investor           | philanthropists          |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

### **The Robin Hood Foundation**

The Robin Hood Foundation is a charitable organisation which attempts to alleviate problems caused by poor poverty in New York, United States. The organisation also administration administers a relief fund for disasters in the New York City area.

According to Fortune Magazine, "Robin Hood was a pioneer in what is now called venture philanthropy, or charity that embarrasses embraces free-market forces. An early practitioner of using metrics to measurement measure the effectiveness of grants, it is a place where strategies to alleviate urban poverty are hotly debated, ineffectual plans are coldly discarded, and its staff of 66 hatches radical new ideas."

More especially specifically, the foundation states that it applies the following principles:

- Give 100 percent of every donation directly to programs helping poor New Yorkers.
- Identify and stop poverty at its ground roots.
- Protection Protect and leverage Robin Hood's investments by using sound business principles to help programs become more effective.
- Use metrics and qualitative data to evaluation evaluate programmes and measure results to compare the relative poverty-fighting success of similar programs

The Robin Hood Founding Foundation works with more than 240 nonprofit organisations in New York and surrounding areas. They categorise their programmes into "Core fund recipients" and "Relief fund recipients". Nucleus Core fund recipients consist of four portfolios: early childhood,

education, jobs and economic security, and survival. Relief fund activities established to assist low income victims of the 9/11 attacks addressed employment, lower income victims' services and relief and mental health services in add addition to other grants. The relief fund also benefited victims of Hurricane Sandy.

*Translate the text into Ukrainian.*

*V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.*

**Азіатсько-Тихоокеанське економічне співробітництво АТЕС  
(Asian-Pacific Economic Cooperation – APEC)**

Утворено в 1989 р. До складу входять: Австралія, Бруней, В'єтнам, Гонконг, Індонезія, Канада, Китай, Республіка Корея, Малайзія, Мексика, Нова Зеландія, Папуа-Нова Гвінея, Перу, Росія, Сінгапур, США, Таїланд, Тайвань, Філіппіни, Чилі, Японія. Секретаріат організації знаходиться в Сінгапурі.

АТЕС має консультативний статус. Його політика базується на цілій низці спільних декларацій і заяв лідерів держав з економічних питань: Сеульська Декларація АТЕС, Бангкокська Декларація про Азіатсько-Тихоокеанське економічне співробітництво, Осакська Декларація дій АТЕС в галузі економіки та ін.

АТЕС має величезний потенціал людських і природних ресурсів, потужну виробничу базу й контролює значну частину товарного й валютного ринків. Його частка (без Росії) у світовому ВВП становить 60%, у світовій торгівлі – 40%, а в золотовалютних резервах – 80% . У країнах регіону проживає понад 2 млрд. чоловік.

Головною метою АТЕС є сприяння економічному зростанню країн Азіатсько – Тихоокеанського регіону. Для цього визначені *пріоритетні напрямки* співробітництва: сприяння регіональній торгівлі, інвестиціям, рухові фінансових ресурсів, розвитку людських ресурсів, передачі технологій, промислового співробітництва і розвитку інфраструктури.

Як *довгострокову мету* в процесі інтеграції визначено формування в 2020 р. системи вільної торгівлі та інвестицій. Отже, сьогодні АТЕС знаходиться тільки на початковому рівні інтеграції.

*Принципи діяльності АТЕС:* рівноправне партнерство; взаємовигідність економічного співробітництва з урахуванням країн, що розвиваються; схильність до відкритого діалогу й досягнення консенсусу у обговоренні найважливіших проблем.

Основна увага в політиці АТЕС приділяється сьогодні лібералізації умов для торгівлі й інвестицій. Прагнучи створити вільну зону інвестицій, країни АТЕС вживають заходів, що стимулюють рух капіталів між країнами регіону: скорочують число галузей, закритих для прямих іноземних інвестицій, спрощують візовий режим для підприємців, забезпечують широкий доступ до економічної інформації.

Незважаючи на рішучість політиків, процес інтеграції йде поки що повільно. Головна причина – дуже велика відмінність у рівнях економіч-



ного розвитку країн – членів, що створює значні труднощі для гармонійного злиття національних економік у єдине ціле.

Особливістю функціональної й правової структури АТЕС є рекомендаційний, необов'язковий характер рішень, що приймаються її органами. Така ситуація притаманна початковому ступеню інтеграції.

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

#### **Oxfam a klímaváltozás várható következményeiről**

Az Oxfam nemzetközi segélyszervezet szerint, a fejlett országoknak sürgősen cselekedniük kell, hogy segíthessenek a csendes-óceáni szigetek lakóinak megbirkózni a klímaváltozással.

A klímaváltozás okozta tengerszint emelkedés miatt, 2050-re a Csendes-óceán Ázsiához közeli szigetein közel 75 millió ember kényszerülhet rá, hogy elhagyja az otthonát.

Az Oxfam új-zélandi igazgatója szerint az éghajlatváltozás kihatással lehet a csendes-óceáni térség anyagi helyzetére, illetve befolyásolhatja a térség fejlődését is. Az azonnali cselekvés hiányban a szegényebb országokban a fejlődést felváltja a folyamatos gazdasági hanyatlás.

A korallzátonyok és az olyan kis szigeteket mint amilyen Tuvalu, Kiribati és a Marshall-szigetek kiváltképp sérülékenyek. Ezen szigetek területének nagy része olyan egyedülálló korall-atollokon helyezkedik el, amelyek gyakran csak két-három méterrel emelkednek a tengerszint fölé. Korall-atolloknak nevezik a korallzátonyokból felépülő, gyűrű alakú szigeteket vagy szigetcsoportokat, amelyek a tengeri vulkánok körül keletkeznek.

A klímaváltozás várható következményei között szerepelnek az egyre hevesebb viharok, az egyre erősebb trópusi ciklonok, a talaj erózió és a tengerpartok pusztulása. A tudósok olyan egészségügyi kockázatoktól is tartanak mint a malária vagy a trópusi náthaláz elterjedése.

Ha a gazdag, fejlett országok, mint amilyen Ausztrália és Új-Zéland is, nem tesznek sürgős lépéseket az üvegházhatású gázkibocsátás mérséklésére, számos csendes-óceáni sziget lakhatatlanná válik.

A gazdaságilag fejlett országoknak 2020-ra legkevesebb 40 százalékkal, 2050-re pedig legalább 95 százalékkal kellene csökkenteniük károsanyag-kibocsátásukat, hogy a katasztrofális klímaváltozás elkerülhető legyen. Az Oxfam becslése szerint ehhez az országoknak évente 150 milliárd dollár ráfordításra lenne szükségük.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the non-governmental organizations of New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the non-governmental organizations of New Zealand with those of your country.***

## XI. EDUCATION

Primary and secondary schooling is compulsory for children aged 6 to 16, with the majority attending from the age of 5. There are 13 school years and attending state (public) schools is free to New Zealand citizens and permanent residents from a person's 5th birthday to the end of the calendar year following their 19th birthday. New Zealand has an adult literacy rate of 99 percent, and over half of the population aged 15 to 29 hold a tertiary qualification. There are five types of government-owned tertiary institutions: universities, colleges of education, polytechnics, specialist colleges, and wānanga, in addition to private training establishments. In the adult population 14.2% have a bachelor's degree or higher, 30.4% have some form of secondary qualification as their highest qualification and 22.4% have no formal qualification. The OECD's Programme for International Student Assessment ranks New Zealand's education system as the 7th best in the world, with students performing exceptionally well in reading, mathematics and science.

Universities are a vital part of modern society and are important not just for teaching but also for research and the development of society as a whole. As centres of research excellence they play an important role in economic transformation and development.

Under Section 162 of the Education Act (1989) a university is defined as having the following characteristics:

- 1) They are primarily concerned with more advanced learning, the principal aim being to develop intellectual independence.
- 2) Their research and teaching are closely interdependent and most of their teaching is done by people who are active in advancing knowledge.
- 3) They meet international standards of research and teaching.
- 4) They are a repository of knowledge and expertise.
- 5) They accept a role as critic and conscience of society.

Universities help society by increasing the skills and knowledge base and in the acquisition of the skills necessary for the professions such as medicine, law and engineering.

As institutions of higher learning, universities are involved not only in the basic skills needed in the profession but also in what can be called basic life skills – analysis, flexible thinking, communication, adaptation and innovation. That is, universities don't just train, they educate. Universities also enhance society through their contribution to our understanding of social issues and our achievement of social, economic and physical well-being.

There are eight universities in New Zealand, all of which feature in the QS World University Rankings 2014/15 – not at all bad considering the country's population is only around 4 million. In addition, New Zealand's higher education system also includes 20 institutes of technology and polytechnics, which offer vocational courses of varying lengths and levels.

## ***University of Auckland***



The University of Auckland is New Zealand's largest and highest ranked university. Currently it ranks at 92nd in the world, according to the QS World University Rankings 2014/15. Established back in 1883, it was a constituent college of the University of New Zealand before it dissolved in 1961. The university is made up of eight faculties and six campuses, and currently has more than

40,000 students. It's situated in New Zealand's largest city, Auckland, which makes it an even more attractive choice for numerous students from around the globe.

As Auckland is a research-led university, courses incorporate the latest findings and perspectives related to the discipline, including the research carried out by the teachers. The University of Auckland is full of opportunities for students, from developing English language skills to a wide choice of programmes, and provides access to a wonderful range of extra-curricular activities. New Zealand is culturally diverse and politically stable, providing a safe environment in a beautiful location, enabling you to enjoy an excellent lifestyle whilst studying at the highest level.

The University of Auckland is the only New Zealand member of Universitas 21, a prestigious international consortium of research-led universities that fosters academic exchange and quality benchmarking among its members. The University of Auckland is also a member of the Association of Pacific Rim Universities (APRU), a network of major international universities in the Asia-Pacific Rim region. In 2010 the University became the only New Zealand member of the Worldwide Universities Network, a group of leading universities focused on international research collaboration with the aim of addressing some of the major issues facing humankind.

In addition to the outstanding services and facilities available to all the students, they offer specialised support services for international students through the International Office. This support includes dedicated student advisers who are available to help you enroll and settle in to your new study life.

They've earned a great reputation for delivering academic and research excellence within an inspiring and supportive learning environment.

## ***University of Otago***



New Zealand's oldest higher education institution, the University of Otago, was established in 1869. It is New Zealand's second entry in the QS World University Rankings 2014/15, ranked 159<sup>th</sup> in the world. The university, whose memorable motto is "Dare to be wise", currently teaches more than 20,000 students in its four divisions (faculties), which

cover humanities, sciences, health sciences and business. It is situated in Dunedin, which is the second largest city on the South Island.

### ***University of Canterbury***



Also located on the South Island, but in its largest city of Christchurch, the University of Canterbury is New Zealand's third highest ranked university at 242<sup>nd</sup> in the world. It was founded in 1873, which makes it the second-oldest higher education institution in the country. About 15,000 students are enrolled here, with courses offered in subjects including arts, commerce, engineering, fine arts, forestry, health sciences, law, music, social work, speech and language pathology, science, sports coaching and teaching.

### ***Victoria University of Wellington***



Victoria University of Wellington is New Zealand's fourth entrant in the QS World University Rankings, at 275<sup>th</sup> as of the 2014/15 edition. It was established in 1897 as a constituent college of the University of New Zealand, and became an independent institution in 1961. The university is home to more than 20,000 students in its nine faculties. It is well known for its programmes in law, the humanities and some scientific disciplines, but it offers a wide range of other courses as well.

### ***Massey University***



Established in 1927, Massey University is one of the younger universities in New Zealand, but has rapidly grown to become one of the country's largest. It has approximately 35,000 students enrolled, of which just under half are studying via distance learning. Those studying on-campus are spread across the North Island at the university's three main campuses, in Albany (just outside Auckland), Wellington and Palmerston North. Massey University is ranked 346<sup>th</sup> in the QS World University Rankings 2014/15.

The other three universities in New Zealand, the University of Waikato, Lincoln University and Auckland University of Technology, are all ranked among the world's top 550 institutions, in the QS World University Rankings 2014/15.

The eight universities in New Zealand teach approximately 180,000 students (part and full-time) and employ around 19,500 staff. Student numbers are usually counted in terms of Equivalent Full-Time Students (EFTS). A breakdown of the full-time equivalent (FTE) staff and EFTS in universities was:

<b>University</b>	<b>Students (EFTS)</b>	<b>Staff (FTE)</b>
Auckland	33,028	4,909
Auckland University of Technology	18,837	2,143
Waikato	10,094	1,520
Massey	19,074	2,994
Victoria	17,277	1,886
Canterbury	12,108	1,907
Lincoln	3,238	610
Otago	18,896	3,838
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>132,553</b>	<b>19,807</b>

*Source: university annual reports*

### ***Funding***

The New Zealand universities receive approximately 40% of their annual income from government grants – \$1.4 billion of the combined total income of \$3.5 billion. The remaining income is split evenly between student fees and other sources – principally research contracts and trading income. Nearly 60% of the sector’s expenditure of \$3.3 billion went on staff salaries and related costs.

### ***Research***

The universities play a prominent part in the New Zealand research environment, a role in keeping with their statutory obligations. Under the Education Act (section 162) the research and teaching functions of universities are required to be closely interdependent and they are expected to meet international standards of research.

The biennial Research and Development Survey, last conducted in 2012 by Statistics New Zealand and the Ministry of Research, Science and Technology, showed that the universities accounted for one-third of the research and development produced in this country.

<b>Sector</b>	<b>\$M (2011)</b>	<b>Percent</b>
Business	1193	45
Government	596	23
Universities	836	32
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>2625</b>	<b>100</b>

In addition, the universities are home to the majority of the country’s researchers, as the following figures from the survey show:

<b>Occupation</b>	<b>Total FTEs</b>	<b>University</b>	<b>University FTEs as %</b>
Researchers	10,100	3,100	30%
Student researchers	11,000	11,000	100%
Total researchers	21,200	14,200	67%
Technicians	4,500	840	19%
Support staff	2,700	1,300	48%
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>28,400</b>	<b>16,300</b>	<b>57%</b>

## **TASKS**

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) process of teaching and learning, usually at school, college, or university;
- 2) being the first stage; elementary;
- 3) right to enter a place, use something, see someone etc.;
- 4) relating to the education of young people between the ages of 11 and 16;
- 5) to go regularly to ;
- 6) not expected to change for an indefinite time; not temporary;
- 7) particular type of clothing worn by all the members of a group or organisation such as the school, the police, the army etc.;
- 8) subjects that are taught by a school, college etc, or the things that are studied in a particular subject;
- 9) one who resides in a particular place permanently or for an extended period;
- 10) condition or quality of being literate, especially the ability to read and write;
- 11) school for advanced education, especially in a particular profession or skill;
- 12) able to speak two languages equally well;
- 13) education at a college, university etc.;
- 14) taking place after secondary school, such as at university, college, etc.
- 15) amount of money that you pay to do something or that you pay to a professional person for their work.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. There are three types of government-owned tertiary institutions: universities, colleges of education, polytechnics, specialist colleges, and wānanga, in addition to private training establishments.
2. In the adult population 14.2% have a bachelor's degree or higher, 30.4 percent have some form of secondary qualification as their highest qualification and 22.4% have no formal qualification.

3. The OECD's Programme for National Student Assessment ranks New Zealand's education system as the 7th best in the world, with students performing exceptionally well in reading, mathematics and science.

4. Established in 1927, Massey University is one of the oldest universities in New Zealand, but has rapidly grown to become one of the country's largest.

5. It has approximately 35,000 students enrolled, of which just under half are studying via distance learning.

6. Those studying on-campus are spread across the North Island at the university's three main campuses, in Albany (just outside Auckland), Wellington and Palmerston North. Massey University is ranked 346<sup>th</sup> in the QS World University Rankings 2014/15.

7. Also located on the South Island, but in its largest city of Christchurch, the University of Canterbury is New Zealand's third highest ranked university at 242<sup>nd</sup> in the world.

8. It was founded in 1873, which makes it the second-youngest higher education institution in the country.

9. About 15,000 students are enrolled here, with courses offered in subjects including arts, commerce, engineering, fine arts, forestry, health sciences, law, music, social work, speech and language pathology, science, sports coaching and teaching.

10. Universities are a vital part of modern society and are important not just for teaching but also for research and the development of society as a whole.

11. As centres of research excellence they play an important role in economic transformation and development.

12. The University of Auckland is the second New Zealand member of Universitas 21, a prestigious international consortium of research-led universities that fosters academic exchange and quality benchmarking among its members.

13. The University of Auckland is also a member of the Association of Pacific Rim Universities (APRU), a network of major international universities in the Asia-Pacific Rim region.

14. In 2010 the University became the only New Zealand member of the Worldwide Universities Network, a group of minor universities focused on international research collaboration with the aim of addressing some of the major issues facing humankind.

15. In addition to the outstanding services and facilities available to all our students, we offer specialised support services for international students through our National Office.

***III. Read the text about the English language teaching. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:***

Over the last 50 years, more than a quarter of a million New Zealanders have extended an interest, retrained for a career – or bettered one – by studying at Massey University through 1\_\_\_. A growing number of students 2\_\_\_ are also choosing to study at Massey.

Learning by distance allows you 3 \_\_\_ around work, social or family commitments. The convenience of distance learning means that you do not have 4 \_\_\_ at times that may not fit in with your lifestyle. Distance learning also 5 \_\_\_ and helps you to achieve your personal and professional goals without having to leave your job. In some cases your employer may even cover 6\_\_\_ .

You can study wherever you live – rural, urban or overseas locations – with the convenience of course materials being available online or 7 \_\_\_ your home. While studying at home you may also be able to take advantage 8 \_\_\_ we offer at one of our campuses near you. This gives you the flexibility to take advantage of all the supports and services 9 \_\_\_ Massey students.

The motivation and perseverance of distance learners sets you apart from other students and these are qualities highly sought after by employers. You can be assured that Massey University is committed to excellence in distance education and your qualification will be 10\_\_\_. Massey is known throughout the world as a leader in the design and delivery of distance education that meets the needs of 21st century learners.

- |                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A) distance learning              | G) attend classes             |
| B) to fit study                   | H) course fees                |
| C) enhances your career prospects | I) of the facilities          |
| D) delivered to                   | J) internationally recognised |
| E) available to                   | K) extended an interest       |
| F) living overseas                |                               |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

### **Vocational Education in New Zealand**

Top educational institutes provide certification certificates, diplomas, and degrees in various industry-required subjects to students who have successfully acquired practical knowledge and skills to perform in different types of industries. Although there may be generic training, yet vocational studies deliver provide a useful career path for many, especially international students. Vocational Training is an Important Part of Tertiary Education Provided by New Zealand Institutes, Polytechnics and Universities.

There are 39 Industry Training Organisations (ITO) in New Zealand which provide industrial training to students with varied qualifying qualifications as per the needs of the industry. The ITOs provide Vocational Education and



Training (VET) training as one of the main part of tertiary education in the country. Different parliament government organisations, such as Tertiary Education Commission (TEC) work with the Ministry of Education to provide a structured curriculum in VET for interested students so that they can get suitable jobs after successfully completed completing the course.

### ***Vocational Education***

Job-oriented orientation education has increased considerably and is still rising. Today, international students who plan to settle in New Zealand obtain take up courses on beauty therapy, nursing, dental, journalism, designing, artwork, and similar job-oriented programs to earn just after graduating completing their studies in the country.

### ***Role of Industry in VET Education***

With the enactment of Industry Training Act, the role of the industry has been become a key factor in shaping VET education in New Zealand. Training in New Zealand is as per the requirement demands from the industry. So, ITOs must provide on-the-job training and assess students based on unit standards and qualifications corresponding to the particular industry. The measurement assessment level is guided as per the requirements of the industry and as per specifications of National Qualifications Framework (NQF).

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***



### **УНІВЕРСИТЕТИ У Новій Зеландії**

На сьогодні в Новій Зеландії налічується вісім університетів- University of Otago, University of Auckland, University of Canterbury, Lincoln University, University of Waikato, Massey University, Victoria University, Auckland University of Technology. Загальна чисельність студентів перевищує 110 тисяч, з яких 3-10% – іноземці.

Перші університети в Новій Зеландії виникли близько півтора століття тому. За основу при їх створенні була прийнята британська модель. Прикладом, який ілюструє тісний зв'язок Нової Зеландії і Великої Британії в галузі культури та освіти, може послужити Кентерберійський університет (University of Canterbury). Він був заснований в 1873 році двома випускниками Оксфорда і Кембриджа. Як би продовжуючи історію суперництва двох знаменитих англійських вузів, сьогодні Кентерберійський університет змагається за право називатися кращим навчальним закладом з Оклендським університетом (University of Auckland).

Першим в Новій Зеландії був заснований університет Отаго (University of Otago), розташований в місті Данідане (Dunedin). Відбулося

це в 1869 році. Зараз загальна кількість його студентів перевищує 17 тис. чоловік.

Найбільшим університетом країни є Массей (Massey University), де навчається 32 тис. студентів.

Університети Нової Зеландії пропонують своїм студентам широкий вибір спеціальностей. Університет Отаго відомий медичним факультетом, а Кентерберійський університет випускає висококваліфікованих інженерів і фахівців в галузі лісового господарства. Тим, хто хоче отримати професію комерсанта, варто звернути увагу на Університет Лінкольна (Lincoln University), а майбутнім архітекторам і бізнесменам можна порекомендувати факультети Оклендського університету.

Ступінь бакалавра в Новій Зеландії отримують за три роки навчання. Якщо ви хочете отримати ступінь з відзнакою (Bachelor with Honours), доведеться витратити на це ще рік. Зате шлях до ступеня магістра у вас буде коротшим (рік замість двох), та й роботодавці за інших рівних умов схильні віддавати перевагу власникам диплома бакалавра з відзнакою. За деякими спеціальностями вчитися доведеться довше: наприклад, бакалаврський ступінь з інженерної справи присуджується після чотирьох років навчання, з медицини – після шести років. Отримання подвійного ступеня (Joint Degree) займе п'ять років. Для отримання ступеня магістра потрібно відучитися ще 1-2 роки. Навчання в докторантурі для присвоєння докторського ступеня (PhD), триває, як правило, 3 роки.

Для вступу до університету необхідно продемонструвати знання англійської мови на рівні не менше 550 балів за тестом TOEFL або 6,0 за тестом IELTS.

Плата за навчання в Новій Зеландії значно нижча, ніж в Європі та Австралії. При цьому дипломи новозеландських вузів визнаються в більшості країн світу (70% випускників працюють за межами Нової Зеландії).

## ***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Kihívások Új-Zélandon**

A sokszínű, rendkívüli változatosságot mutató ország hasonló oktatási rendszert is kíván magának.

Új-Zéland egy olyan ország, amely támogatja a kreativitás kibontakozását és a kereteken túllépő gondolkodásmód, szemlélet kialakítását. Így aztán teljesen természetes, hogy az oktatáshoz is nagyon innovatív módon közelítenek.

Az új-zélandi iskolák egyik nagy előnye a rugalmasságukban rejlik, ami úgy tűnik hogy évről évre csak tovább növekszik. A tanárokat arra ösztönzik, hogy a saját osztályuk tantervét, tananyagát úgy alakítsák ki, hogy az találkozzon a diákjaik igényeivel. Ezért aztán az osztály összetételétől függően az egyik tanár metodikája teljesen eltérhet a másiktól, illetve a módszertant is az osztályhoz

kell igazítani. A tanároktól elvárják, hogy gyorsan azonosítsák a tanulók igényeit, különösen a kulcsfontosságú alap készségekben, mint az olvasás, írás, matematika, majd olyan megfelelő tanítási tervet kell készíteniük, ami találkozik ezekkel a tanulói igényekkel.

Egy új-zélandi általános iskolában az iskolai tanév januárban kezdődik és decemberben ér véget. Ez a tizenkét hónap négy, közel egyenlő szakaszra oszlik, amelyeknek végén a diákok körülbelül két hét szünetet kapnak. A tanév ily módon történő felosztása megakadályozza mind a diákok, mind a pedagógusok túlterhelését. A tanévet záró decemberi szünet, amely egyben a nyári szabadság kezdetét is jelenti, a többenél valamivel hosszabb.

A gyerekek ötéves korukban kezdik meg tanulmányaikat, akkor is, ha ez az időpont az év közepére vagy a végére esik. Így előfordul számunkra szokatlan módon, hogy a gyerekek nem egyszerre kezdik el az első osztályt az év elején, hanem valaki csak májusban vagy esetleg októberben csatlakozik társaihoz.



Rendkívül színesen dekorált falak között körberakott asztaloknál foglalnak helyet a

gyerekek, ha erre szükség van, de többnyire a földön ülve, kiscsoportokba verődve dolgozzák fel közösen a kapott feladatot. Egy témakör feldolgozása sokoldalúan történik. A gyermekek kiscsoportokra való osztásával pedig lehetőség

van a csoportos és az egyéni munkára. A feladatot közösen beszéljük meg először a kiscsoportokban, majd a csoportok egymás közt végeznek információcserét, melyeknek alapján közösen összeállítják a lényeges ismereteket az adott témakörből. Figyelemre méltó a tananyag elsajátításának módja is: vélelmezhetően az új-zélandi osztályterekben a végső cél az, hogy a tanulók szabadon, önállóan fedezhessék fel az ismereteket.



Osztályzási rendszer nincs. Az ismeretek ellenőrzésére kidolgozott szóbeli számonkérési formákkal nem rendelkeznek a tanárok. A számonkérés írásbeli formája a negyedévenkénti tesztlapok megoldása.

A tanítási nap kilenc órakor kezdődik. Az ebéd elfogyasztása többnyire az udvaron történik. Ezt követően egy teljes óra levegőn töltött szabad játékidővel gazdálkodhatnak önállóan a diákok. A délutáni oktatás fél kettőtől háromig tart. Ilyenkor főleg képzőművészeti és egyéb művészeti tárgyakkal, valamint számítógépes programokkal foglalkoznak a gyerekek. A diákok három órakor hazamennek. Vállukat nem húzza a temérdek füzet, könyv, hiszen ezeket az iskolában tartják.

Hetente egy alkalommal, péntek délelőtt összegyűlik az iskola. A közös éneklésen, zenélésen és táncon kívül az iskola igazgatója értékeli az elmúlt hét

eseményeit. Osztályonként egy tanár tanít, a pedagógusok egy személyben látják el az osztályfőnöki teendőket és az egyéb oktatási feladatokat. A szülőkkel napi kapcsolatot tartanak, fogadónap pedig havonta van. Az iskola rendkívül szoros kapcsolatot tart a családdal.

Az általános iskolát követő felsőbb iskolákba való továbbjutás felvételi vizsga nélkül automatikusan történik tizenkét éves korban. A diákok az érdeklődési körüknek megfelelően választanak iskolát.

Természetesen, mivel az új-zélandi oktatás nagyon rugalmas, nehéz minden diákra érvényes általános érvényű gyakorlatokat meghatározni. Minden iskola más és még egyazon iskolán belül is a különböző osztályokban a tanár ideológiájától függően különböző tanítási folyamat megy végbe.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the secondary education in New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the higher education in New Zealand with that in your country.***

## XII. RELIGION

Religious diversity refers to the presence of different religious communities within a society. New Zealand is home to Christians, Hindus, Buddhists, Muslims, Sikhs, Jews and a number of newer religious movements. Most New Zealanders support the value of this diversity, but some have more negative attitudes – for example, that religious differences threaten social unity.

### 1. History

New Zealand's religious history after the arrival of Europeans saw substantial missionary activity, with Māori generally converting to Christianity voluntarily (compare forced conversions elsewhere in the world). Waves of new immigrants brought their particular (usually Christian) faiths with them.

The religious climate of early New Zealand was influenced by "voluntarism". Though in Britain the Anglican Church was an established state church, by the middle of the 19th century even the Anglicans themselves sometimes doubted this arrangement, while the other major denominations of the new colony (Presbyterians, Methodist and Catholics, for example) obviously preferred that the local set up allowed for all their groups.

Initial denominational distribution very much reflected the fact that local immigrant communities started small and often came from comparatively small regions in the origin countries in Great Britain. As a result, by the time of the 1921 census, no uniform distribution existed amongst non-Māori Christians, with Presbyterians as the dominant group in Otago and Southland, Anglicans in the Far North, the East Cape and various other areas including Banks Peninsula, while Methodists flourished mainly in Taranaki and the Manawatu. Catholicism meanwhile was the dominant religion on the West Coast with its many mining concerns, and in Central Otago. The Catholic Church, while not particularly dominant in terms of pure numbers, became especially known throughout the country in the early and middle 20th century for its strong stance on education, establishing large numbers of schools.

Immigration since 1991 has resulted in religions like Hinduism, Buddhism and Sikhism growing rapidly. However, a large portion of the growth of these religions has occurred in Auckland.

#### *Effect of Christian traditions*

Since the early days of European settlement tiny Jewish, Hindu, Buddhist, Muslim and Sikh faith groups have existed alongside the Christian majority. This unified religious identity has been a significant factor in educational, moral, social and cultural policies and debates. In the 2000s New Zealand's Christian traditions remained evident in the 2007 decision to retain the Christian prayer in Parliament, in support for the theistic national anthem and in the practice of swearing on the Bible in court.

### ***Secularism***

From the 1970s there was a dramatic decline in church attendance and affiliation in New Zealand. As a result, in the 2006 census a third of New Zealanders described themselves as having no religion. The proportion was even higher in larger cities and among the young. This figure is double that of the US and Britain, and significantly higher than for Australia. Fewer than 10% of those who state they have 'no religion' are committed atheists, and many do have spiritual interests and concerns.

### ***My aim is true***

In 2006 the New Zealand Defence Force confronted an issue of religious diversity. It learned that the US-manufactured sights on weapons used by its troops in Afghanistan were inscribed with Biblical references. Defence Minister Wayne Mapp said that when New Zealand soldiers were operating in Muslim countries, the references could be misconstrued. The manufacturer was instructed to remove the inscriptions from further orders of the gun sights.

### ***Religious fundamentalism***

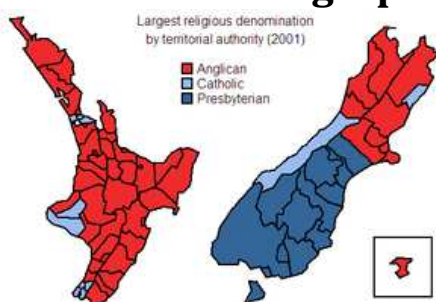
Since the 1970s there has been a worldwide intensification of religious identity. This has been reflected in New Zealand in the growth of the charismatic movement in the mainstream Christian churches, and in new evangelical and Pentecostal communities.

### ***Impact of new migrants***

Changes to immigration policy from the 1980s meant that adherents to non-Christian religions doubled in number between 1996 and 2006. Immigration changes have also influenced Christianity in New Zealand, with substantial numbers of Korean Presbyterians and Methodists, Taiwanese Presbyterians, Samoan Catholics and Congregationalists, South African conservative Presbyterians and Filipino and Tongan Catholics settling in New Zealand.

In 2011 Christianity remained the largest single religion in New Zealand but there were also sizeable Hindu, Buddhist, Muslim and Sikh communities. These so-called communities were made up of various ethnic and language groups with very different migrant experiences. None was represented by a single organisation. There was sometimes considerable dissent and tension between different faith groups, resulting in complex relationships both within and between religious communities.

## **2. Demographics**

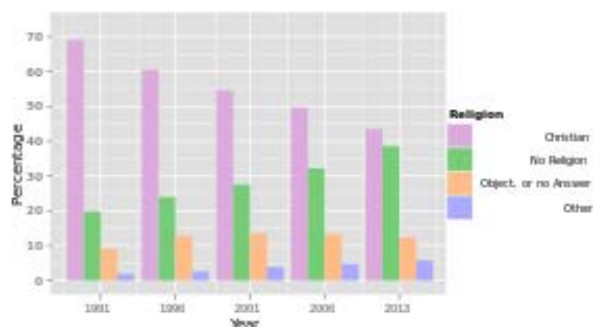


The settlement of English in Nelson and the North Island and Scottish in the south of the South Island is reflected in the dominance of Anglicanism and Presbyterianism in each region.

## **Religious affiliation**

Religious affiliation has been collected in the New Zealand Census of Population and Dwellings since 1851. Statistics New Zealand state that:

Religious affiliation is a variable of strong interest to religious organisations, social scientists, and can be used as an explanatory variable in studies on topics such as marriage formation and dissolution, fertility and income.



### *Religious affiliations of New Zealanders in the last five censuses.*

One of the many complications in interpreting religious affiliation data in New Zealand is the large proportion who object to answering the question, roughly 173,000 in 2013. Most reporting of percentages is based on the total

number of responses, rather than the total population.

In the early 20th century New Zealand census data indicates that the vast majority of New Zealanders affiliated with Christianity. The total percentages in the 1921 non-Māori census were 45% Anglicans, 19.9% Presbyterians, 13.6% Catholics, 9.5% Methodists and 11.2% Others. Statistics for Māori were only available from 1936, with 35.8% Anglicans, 19.9% Ratana, 13.9% Catholics, 7.2% Ringatu, 7.1% Methodists, 6.5% Latter Day Saints, 1.3% Methodists and 8.3% Others recorded at this census.

The population increased 7.8% between the 2006 and 2001 census. The most notable trend in religion over that time is the 26.2% increase in the number of people indicating no religion.

### *Religious affiliation statistics*

From census data released by Statistics New Zealand.

	2013		2006		2001		1996		1991	
	Num ber	%	Num ber	%	Num ber	%	Num ber	%	Num ber	%
<u>Roman Catholic</u>	492,384	11.07	508,437	1.87	485,637	2.40	473,112	3.08	498,612	4.78
<u>Anglican</u>	459,771	10.33	554,925	2.95	584,793	4.93	631,764	7.46	732,048	1.70
<u>Presbyterian, Congregational and Reformed</u>	330,903	7.44	400,839	.36	431,139	1.01	470,442	3.00	553,386	6.40
<u>Christian</u> (not further defined)	216,177	4.86	186,234	.35	192,165	.91	186,891	.17	79,317	.35
<u>Methodist</u>	103,047	2.32	121,806	.84	120,546	.08	121,650	.36	139,494	.13
<u>Pentecostal</u>	74,433	1.67	79,155	.85	67,182	.72	69,333	.92	49,596	.47

<u>Baptist</u>	54,345	1.22	56,913	1.33	51,423	1.31	53,613	1.48	70,155	2.08
<u>Latter-day Saints</u>	40,728	0.92	43,539	1.02	39,915	1.02	41,166	1.14	48,009	1.42
<u>Brethren</u>	18,642	0.42	19,617	0.46	20,397	0.52	21,933	0.61	21,915	0.65
<u>Jehovah's Witness</u>	17,931	0.40	17,910	0.42	17,829	0.46	19,527	0.54	19,182	0.57
<u>Adventist</u>	17,085	0.38	16,191	0.38	14,868	0.38	14,691	0.41	15,675	0.46
<u>Evangelical</u>	15,402	0.35	13,836	0.32	11,016	0.28	1,584	0.04	5,169	0.15
<u>Orthodox Christianity</u>	13,833	0.31	13,194	0.31	9,576	0.24	6,933	0.19	4,263	0.13
<u>Salvation Army</u>	9,162	0.27	11,493	0.27	12,618	0.32	14,625	0.40	19,992	0.59
Other Christian	15,828	0.39	16,830	0.39	15,513	0.40	16,734	0.46	15,894	0.47
<u>Rātana</u> (Māori Christian)	40,353	0.91	50,565	1.18	48,975	1.25	36,450	0.91	47,595	1.41
<u>Ringatū</u> (Māori Christian)	13,272	0.38	16,419	0.38	15,291	0.39	8,271	0.23	8,049	0.24
Other Māori Christian	555	0.01	579	0.01	663	0.02	729	0.02	408	0.01
<b>Christian total</b>	<b>1,933,851</b>	<b>43.47</b>	<b>2,130,315</b>	<b>9.72</b>	<b>2,140,560</b>	<b>5.466</b>	<b>2,189,445</b>	<b>6.051</b>	<b>2,328,759</b>	<b>6.902</b>
<u>Hindu</u>	90,018	2.02	64,560	1.51	39,864	1.02	25,551	0.71	18,036	0.53
<u>Buddhist</u>	58,440	1.31	52,392	1.22	41,661	1.06	28,131	0.78	12,762	0.38
<u>Muslim</u>	46,194	1.04	36,153	0.84	23,637	0.60	13,545	0.37	6,096	0.18
<u>Sikh</u>	19,191	0.43	9,507	0.22	5,199	0.13	2,817	0.08	2,061	0.06
<u>Spiritualism and New Age religions</u>	18,423	0.41	20,184	0.47	16,101	0.41	9,789	0.27	5,199	0.15
<u>Jewish</u>	6,867	0.15	6,858	0.16	6,636	0.17	4,809	0.13	3,126	0.09
Other religions	15,075	0.34	14,970	0.35	13,581	0.35	7,359	0.20	17,808	0.53
<b>Non-Christian religions total</b>	<b>254,208</b>	<b>5.71</b>	<b>204,624</b>	<b>4.78</b>	<b>146,682</b>	<b>3.75</b>	<b>92,001</b>	<b>2.54</b>	<b>65,088</b>	<b>1.93</b>
No religion	1,635,348	38.55	1,297,104	2.20	1,028,049	7.51	867,264	3.97	670,455	9.87
Not stated/inadequately described	347,340	8.19	293,052	7.28	268,464	7.18	212,997	5.89	57,915	1.72



Object to answering	173,034	4.08	242,610	6.02	239,244	6.40	256,593	7.09	251,709	7.46
No religion/Object/Not stated total	2,155,722	50.82	1,832,688	45.50	1,554,669	41.60	1,336,854	36.95	980,079	29.05
Total population	4,242,048		4,027,947		3,737,277		3,618,303		3,373,926	

*Note: All figures are for the census usually resident population. Percentages are based on number of responses and total population, where these differ. In the 1991 and 1996 Censuses only one response to religious affiliation was collected. In the 2001, 2006, and 2013 Censuses up to four responses were collected, which has created an "overcount" of religious affiliation of between 4.8% to 6.4% in the last three censuses. Affiliation percentages have been scaled to eliminate this overcount.*

### 3. Significant trends



*Canterbury Mosque, New Zealand; June 2006. Built over 1984–85 it was the world's southern-most mosque until 1999.*

Mirroring the recent immigration trends to New Zealand, immigrant religions increased fastest between Census 2006 and Census 2013; Sikh by 102% to 19,191, Hindu by 39% to 90,018, Islam by 28% to 46,194, and Buddhist by 11% to 58,440. Mainstream Christian denominations, while still representing the largest categories of census religious affiliation, are not keeping pace with population increase. Anglicans fell by 95,154 to 459,771 and Presbyterians decreased by 69,936 to 330,903. Roman Catholic numbers decreased by 16,053 to 492,384. The only other religious groups above 100,000 members are Christian (not further defined) and Methodist. Compare this with numbers in 1901, where 42% of people identified with the Anglican denomination, 23% with Presbyterian, and 14% with Catholicism. At that time 1 in 30 people did not identify with any religion compared with 1 in 3 today.

The International Social Survey Programme was conducted in New Zealand by Massey University in 2008. It received mail responses from around one thousand New Zealanders above the age of 18, surveying issues of religious belief and practice. The results of this survey indicated that 72% of the population believe in God or a higher power, 15% are agnostic, and 13% are atheist (with a 3% margin of error).

#### ***Jedi census phenomenon***

Encouraged by an informal email campaign, over 53,000 people listed themselves as Jedi in New Zealand's 2001 census (over 1.5% of responses). If

the Jedi response had been accepted as valid it would have been the largest non-Christian religion in New Zealand, and second-largest religion overall. However, Statistics New Zealand treated Jedi responses as "Answer understood, but will not be counted". The city of Dunedin (a university town) had the highest population of reported Jedi per capita. In the 2006 census only 20,000 people gave Jedi as their religion.

### ***Abrahamic religions***

#### ***Bahá'í Faith***

The first Bahá'í in the Antipodes was Englander Dorothea Spinney who had just arrived from New York in Auckland in 1912. About 1913 there were two converts – Robert Felkin who had met `Abdu'l-Bahá in London in 1911 and moved to New Zealand in 1912 and is considered a Bahá'í by 1914 and Margaret Stevenson who first heard of the religion in 1911 and by her own testimony was a Bahá'í in 1913. The first Bahá'í Local Spiritual Assembly was elected in 1926 and their first independent National Spiritual Assembly in 1957. By 1963 there were four Assemblies. At the 2006 census 0.07% of the population, or 2,772 people, identified themselves as Bahá'í. There are some 45 local assemblies and smaller registered groups.

#### ***Christianity***

After the arrival of large numbers of European immigrants (most of whom were British), Māori enthusiastically adopted Christianity in the early 19th century, and to this day, Christian prayer (*karakia*) is the expected way to begin and end Māori public gatherings of many kinds. Christianity became the major religion of the country, with the Anglican, Catholic and Presbyterian churches all establishing themselves strongly. The arrival of other groups of immigrants did little to change this, as Pacific Islanders and other primarily Christian ethnic groups dominated immigration until the 1970s.

In the following decades, Christianity declined somewhat in percentage terms, mostly due to people declaring themselves as having no religion as well as by the growth of non-Christian religions. The five largest Christian denominations in 2001 remained the largest in 2006. The Catholic and Methodist denominations increased, but the Anglican denomination, the Presbyterian, Congregation and Reformed denomination, and undefined Christian denominations decreased. While smaller groups, there were larger percentage increases in affiliations with other Christian denominations between 2001 and 2006: Orthodox Christian religions increased by 37.8%, affiliation with Evangelical, Born Again and Fundamentalist religions increased by 25.6%, and affiliation with Pentecostal religions increased by 17.8%.

Despite strong affiliation to Christianity by New Zealanders throughout the country's history, church attendance in New Zealand has never been high compared to other Western nations. Estimates of church attendance today range from 10–20%, while research by the Bible Society of New Zealand in 2008 indicated that 15% of New Zealanders attend church at least once a week, and 20% attend at least once a month.

### ***Islam***

Islam in New Zealand began with the arrival of Muslim Chinese gold prospectors in the 1870s. The first Islamic organisation in New Zealand, the New Zealand Muslim Association, was established in Auckland in 1950. 1960 saw the arrival of the first imam, Maulana Said Musa Patel, from Gujarat, India. Large-scale Muslim immigration began in the 1970s with the arrival of Fiji Indians, followed in the 1990s by refugees from various war-torn countries. In April 1979 the three regional Muslim organisations of Canterbury, Wellington and Auckland, joined together to create the only national Islamic body – the Federation of Islamic Associations of New Zealand. Early in the 1990s many migrants were admitted under New Zealand's refugee quota, from war zones in Somalia, Bosnia, Afghanistan, Kosovo and Iraq. Since the 11 September attacks there was a spike in conversions to Islam among Maori prisoners in jail.

At the 2013 census, 1.2% of the population, or 46,150 people, identified themselves as Muslim. Over two-thirds (67.5%) live in the Auckland region.

### ***Judaism***

The history of the Jews here begins in the 1830s including noted early settler Joel Samuel Polack and continued to grow from immigration. Prominent New Zealand Jews in history include 19th-century Premier Julius Vogel and at least five Auckland mayors, including Dove-Myer Robinson. The current Prime Minister, John Key of the National Party is of part Ashkenazi Jewish descent, although he does not practice Judaism.

The 2013 New Zealand census found there was a Jewish population of 6,867, an increase from the 2001 census figure of 6,636.

The majority of New Zealand Jews reside in Auckland and Wellington, though there is also a significant Jewish community in Dunedin which is believed to have the world's southernmost permanent synagogue. In 2006, 0.2% of the population identified as Jewish/Judaism.

### ***Other religions***

At the 2006 census around 5% of the New Zealand population affiliated to a non-Christian religion. Statistics New Zealand report that about 80% of the largest non-Christian religious groups are composed of immigrants, almost half of whom have arrived in New Zealand since 2000. The exceptions to this are traditional Maori religion, Judaism (24% immigrant) and Bahá'í (20% immigrant).

### ***Māori religion***

Traditional Māori religion, that is, the pre-European belief system of the Māori, was little modified in its essentials from that of their tropical Eastern Polynesian homeland, conceiving of everything, including natural elements and all living things as connected by common descent through whakapapa or genealogy. Accordingly, all things were thought of as possessing a life force or "mauri". Very few Māori still identify themselves as adhering to traditional Māori beliefs (2,412 people at the 2006 Census).

Two specific Māori branches of Christianity, Rātana and Ringatū are widely followed by many in the Māori community.

### ***Hinduism***

The 1st New Zealand Hindu Youth Conference was organised on 2 May 2009. More than 130 delegates participated in the conference. Several parliamentarians including Pansy Wong, Minister for Ethnic Affairs and the Minister of Women's Affairs addressed the delegates. At the last census in 2013, Hindus made up 2.0 percent of the population, up from 1.5% in 2006 and 1.0% in 2001. Hinduism surpassed Buddhism in the 2006 Census and has therefore been the largest non Christian religion since then. As a result, many Hindu Temples have been built, including a \$5 million Temple on Brick St, Henderson.

### ***Buddhism***

Buddhism is the third largest religion in New Zealand, at 1.3% of the population. In 2007 the NZ\$20 million Fo Guang Shan Temple was opened in Auckland for the promotion of Humanistic Buddhism. It is the largest Buddhist temple in New Zealand.

### ***Sikhism***



*Image of a Gurudwara, the Sikh place of worship, South Auckland.*

Sikhs have been in New Zealand for more than a century, with the first arriving in Hamilton in the 1880s. The Sikhs grew almost four-fold between 2001 and 2013 and comprised 0.43% of the population as of 2013. Today they have a strong presence in Auckland, and especially in South Auckland and Manukau with the current National Party's Member of Parliament for Manukau Kanwal Singh Bakshi being a Sikh. There were thirteen gurdwaras (the Sikh place of worship) in New Zealand in 2010. The largest Sikh Gurdwara, the NZ\$10million Kalgidhar Sahib, is situated in Auckland at Takanini.

### ***Spiritualism and New Age religions***

This collection of religious beliefs is represented by around 0.5% of the New Zealand population.

### ***Religion in culture and the art***

Although New Zealand is a largely secular country, religion finds a place in many cultural traditions. Major Christian events like Christmas and Easter are official public holidays and are celebrated by religious and non-religious alike, as in many countries around the world. The country's national anthem, God Defend New Zealand, mentions God in both its name and its lyrics. There has been occasional controversy over the degree of separation of church and state, for example the practice of prayer and religious instruction at school assemblies.

The architectural landscape of New Zealand has been affected by religion and the prominence of churches in cities, towns and the countryside attests to its historical importance of Christianity in New Zealand. Notable Cathedrals include the Anglican Holy Trinity Cathedral, Auckland, Christchurch Cathedral, Christchurch and Saint Paul's Cathedral, Wellington and the Catholic St Patrick's Cathedral, Auckland, Cathedral of the Blessed Virgin Mary, Hamilton, Cathedral of the Holy Spirit, Palmerston North, Sacred Heart Cathedral, Wellington, Cathedral of the Blessed Sacrament, Christchurch, St. Joseph's Cathedral, Dunedin. The iconic Futuna Chapel was built as a Wellington retreat center for the Catholic Marist order in 1961. The design by Maori architect John Scott, fuses Modernist and indigenous design principles.

Christian and Maori choral traditions have been blended in New Zealand to produce a distinct contribution to Christian music, including the popular hymns Whakaria Mai and Tama Ngakau Marie New Zealand hosts one of the largest Christian music festivals in the Southern Hemisphere, the Parachute Music Festival.

#### 4. Religion in politics



*Brian Tamaki of the Destiny Movement has spoken out against secularist changes.*

##### ***Christian Individuals in Politics***

Religion has played and continues to play a 'significant and sometimes controversial role' in the politics of New Zealand. Although most New Zealanders today consider politicians' religious beliefs to be a private matter, a large number of New Zealand Prime Ministers have been professing Christians, including Jenny Shipley, Jim Bolger, Geoffrey Palmer, David Lange, Robert Muldoon, Walter Nash, Keith Holyoake, and Michael Joseph Savage. However both the current Prime Minister John Key and his predecessor Helen Clark are agnostic. The current Deputy Prime Minister Bill English is Roman Catholic and has acknowledged that religious groups should contribute to political discourse. Sir Paul Reeves, Anglican Archbishop and Primate of New Zealand from 1980–85, was appointed Governor General from 1985–1990.

Murray Smith was a member of the New Zealand Parliament from 1972 to 1975. His interest in governance continued when he later enrolled in the Bahá'í Faith and contributed in national and international roles within the Bahá'í Community.

##### ***Christian Political Parties***

Christian political parties have usually not gained significant support, a notable exception being the Christian Coalition (New Zealand) polling 4.4% in

the 1996 general election. Christian parties have often been characterised by controversy and public disgrace. Many of these are now defunct, such as the Christian Democrat Party, the Christian Heritage Party which discontinued in 2006 after former leader Graham Capill was convicted as a child sex offender, Destiny New Zealand, The Family Party and the New Zealand Pacific Party whose leader, former New Zealand Labour Party MP Taito Phillip Field was convicted on bribery and corruption charges. United Future has been more successful, which although not a Christian party has had significant Christian backing. The two main political parties, Labour and National, are not religious, although religious groups have at times played a significant role (e.g. the Ratana Movement). Politicians are often involved in public dialogue with religious groups. The Exclusive Brethren gained public notoriety during the 2005 election for distributing anti-Labour pamphlets, which former National Party leader Don Brash later admitted to knowledge of.

### ***Church and State Relationship***

New Zealand has no established church. However the following anomalies exist:

- New Zealand's head of state or monarch must declare that they are a Protestant Christian and will uphold the Protestant succession according to the declaration required by the Accession Declaration Act 1910.

- Section 3 of the Act of Settlement 1700 requires that the King or Queen of New Zealand must be an Anglican.

- The Title of the Queen of New Zealand includes the statement "by the grace of God" and the title Defender of the Faith.

At the discussions leading to the Treaty of Waitangi Governor Hobson made a statement (which had no particular legal or constitutional significance) concerning freedom of religion (sometimes called the 'fourth' article). In 2007, the government issued a National Statement on Religious Diversity containing in its first clause "New Zealand has no official or established religion." The statement caused controversy in some quarters, opponents arguing that New Zealand's head of state Queen Elizabeth II is the Supreme Governor of the Church of England.[56] However, the Queen does not act in that capacity as the Queen of New Zealand; although she retains the styling of Defender of the Faith within her official title in that role. A poll of 501 New Zealanders in June 2007 found that 58% of respondents did not think Christianity should be New Zealand's official religion.

New Zealand's parliament opens its proceedings with a specifically Christian prayer. In 2007 parliament voted to retain the Christian prayer.

However, there has been increasing recognition of Māori spirituality in political discourse and even in certain government legislation. In July 2001 MP Rodney Hide alerted parliament to a state funded hikitapu (tapu-lifting) ceremony at the opening of the foreign embassy in Bangkok. It was revealed that the Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade had a standard policy of employing Māori ritual experts for the opening of official offices around the world. The

Resource Management Act 1991 recognises the role of Māori spiritual beliefs in planning and environmental management. In 2002 local Māori expressed concerns that the development of the Auckland-Waikato expressway would disturb the taniwha, or guardian spirit, of the Waikato River, leading to delays and alterations to the project.

In New Zealand blasphemous libel is a crime, but cases can only be prosecuted with the approval of the Attorney-General and the defence of opinion is allowed: "It is not an offence against this section to express in good faith and in decent language, or to attempt to establish by arguments used in good faith and conveyed in decent language, any opinion whatever on any religious subject." The only prosecution in 1922 was unsuccessful.

## TASKS

### ***I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) Christian religion ;
- 2) someone who supports a particular belief, plan, political party etc.;
- 3) someone whose religion is Islam;
- 4) having the most importance, influence, or force;
- 5) worldly rather than spiritual;
- 6) someone who has studied theology;
- 7) to bring into close association or connection;
- 8) large group of religious congregations united under a common faith and name, usually organised under a single administrative and legal hierarchy;
- 9) Jewish religion based on the sacred books known as the Hebrew Scriptures;
- 10) religion of east and central Asia, based on the teaching of Gautama Buddha;
- 11) main religion in India, which includes belief in reincarnation;
- 12) member of an Indian religious group that developed from Hinduism in the 16th century;
- 13) collective body of all Christians
- 14) to associate or affiliate closely with;
- 15) to participate in or undergo.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

### ***II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):***

1. Changes to immigration policy from the 1980s meant that adherents to Christian religions doubled in number between 1996 and 2006.

2. Immigration changes have also influenced Christianity in New Zealand, with substantial numbers of Korean Presbyterians and Methodists, Taiwanese Presbyterians, Samoan Catholics and Congregationalists, South African conservative Presbyterians and Filipino and Tongan Catholics settling in New Zealand.

3. In 2011 Christianity remained the largest single religion in New Zealand but there were also sizeable Hindu, Buddhist, Muslim and Sikh communities.

4. These so-called communities were made up of various ethnic and language groups with very different migrant experiences.

5. All were represented by a single organisation.

6. There was sometimes considerable dissent and tension between different faith groups, resulting in complex relationships both within and between religious communities.

7. New Zealand's pattern of religious diversity developed out of the religious cultures brought by the communities that migrated from the country.

8. Māori brought religious customs and practices from Malta.

9. European missionaries and settlers brought varieties of British Catholicism and French Protestantism.

10. Anglicans, Methodists and Presbyterians shaped the structure, values and traditions of the new society.

11. Almost all Māori adopted forms of Christianity, so New Zealand was regarded as a Christian nation.

12. New Zealand has the state church.

13. Anglicans are the smallest denomination with about 15% of the population.

14. Christianity is the predominant religion in New Zealand, although its society is among the most secular in the world.

15. In the 2006 Census, 55.6 percent of the population identified themselves as Christians, while another 34.7 percent indicated that they had no religion (up from 29.6 percent in 2001) and around 4 percent affiliated with other religions.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

### **Tapu and mana**

Certain practices are followed that relate to 1 \_\_ like tapu. Certain people and objects contain mana – 2 \_\_ or essence. In earlier times, tribal members of a higher rank would not touch objects which belonged to members of a 3 \_\_ . This was considered "pollution" and persons of a lower rank could not touch the belongings of a highborn person without putting themselves 4 \_\_ .

Tapu can be interpreted as "sacred", as "spiritual restriction" or 5 \_\_ ; it involves rules and prohibitions. There are two kinds of tapu, the private (relating to individuals) and the public tapu (relating to communities). A person, an object or a place, which is tapu, may not be touched 6 \_\_ , in some cases, not even approached. A person, object or a place could be 7 \_\_ tapu for a certain time.

In pre-contact society, tapu was one of the strongest forces in Māori life. A 8 \_\_ could have dire consequences, including the death of the offender through sickness or at the hands of someone affected by the offence. In earlier times food cooked for a person of high rank was tapu, and could not be eaten by an inferior.



A chief's house was tapu, and even the chief could not eat food 9 \_\_\_ his house. Not only were the houses of people of high rank perceived to be tapu, but also their possessions including their clothing. 10 \_\_\_ and places of death were always tapu, and these areas were often surrounded by a protective fence.

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| A) Burial grounds     | G) made sacred by        |
| B) violation of tapu  | H) "implied prohibition" |
| C) by human contact   | I) lower rank            |
| D) at risk of death   | J) traditional concepts  |
| E) spiritual power    | K) surrounded by         |
| F) in the interior of |                          |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

#### **Fake Totem Poles Versus Real Ones**

Totem Sticks Poles made by Northwest Pacific Coast First Nation's carvers for their own people portray the owner's obviously deeply meaningful symbols and family crests. However, Northwest Pacific Coast First Nation's carvers also construct Totem Poles for non-Native people - technically not role part of the old totem tradition. This practise has evolved, however, to become a difficult important part of the modern tradition and is legitimate. Since authentic whole full size Totem Poles today, cost in the region of \$25 000 to \$60 000 each, outsiders usually commission them to memory commemorate a great event or a great "coming of age," to symbolise a pact between nations, or to illustrate some sort of bond between Native people and the company or government identity entity who commissions the pole.

To be authentic, a Totem Pole needs to be "sanctioned." That means that it must accept pass certain tests. First, it must be made by a trained Northwest Pacific Coast native person, or in extinct rare cases, a non-Native apprentice who is approved by a Northwest Pacific Coast Band from coastal British Columbia or Alaska. Secondly, it must be raised (and blessed) by Northwest Coast natives or elders who are part of the Totem Pole tradition. Chain saw artists, non-Native imitators, or (non-apprenticed) Natives from bands far away from the Northwest Pacific Bank do claim to produce "totem poles". But under the rules of the Northwest Pacific Coast native totemic tradition, they are fakes.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

#### **Релігії Нової Зеландії**

Нова Зеландія має розвинені інститути громадянського суспільства. Держава давно проводить послідовну політику свободи віросповідання, так що в Новій Зеландії спокійно співіснують безліч релігійних конфесій.

Місце тієї чи іншої конфесії та її роль у суспільстві Нової Зеландії безпосередньо залежить від числа парафіян та їх етнічної приналежності. Тому не важко здогадатися, що з самого початку існування країни в ній переважали християнські конфесії.



Спочатку історія християнства в Новій Зеландії характеризувалася незалежністю і майже повною самостійністю релігійних місій, що пояснювалося їх крайньою віддаленістю від інстанцій, які керували ними.

Відомо, що англійські місіонери-протестанти почали проповідницьку діяльність серед маорі в 1814 році. Незабаром до цієї місії підключилися й католики. У 1829 р. була заснована Католицька Апостольська префектура островів Південного моря, куди входила і територія Нової Зеландії. Переселення в Нову Зеландію численних шотландських колоністів призвело до появи місіонерів-пресвітеріан. Таким чином, переселенці з англійським і шотландським корінням та їхні нащадки належали до числа англіканців і різних протестантських церков, ірландці – до числа католиків.

Більшість етичних маорі в результаті місіонерських зусиль також належать сьогодні до однієї з християнських деномінацій.

Англіканство як найчисленніша конфесія широко представлена по всій країні, за винятком південної частини Південного Острова. Історично сильні позиції англіканства в Кентербері (наприклад, Крайстчерч був заснований англіканськими колоністами). Католицизм також поширений вельми рівномірно (найбільший відсоток католицького населення в регіонах Таранаки і Вест-Кост).

Пресвітеріани, навпаки, в основному зосереджені в південній частині Південного острова, що зумовлено історичними причинами (Данідін був заснований шотландськими іммігрантами).

Статистика релігійної приналежності за останні роки показує стабільну динаміку зменшення числа християн в Новій Зеландії – з 70% (2,3 млн. чол.) у 1991 році до 53,6% (2 млн. чол.) у 2006 році. З них з 2006 року більшість становлять англікани – 14,7%, потім слідує католики – 13,4% та пресвітеріани – 10,6%. Православних в Новій Зеландії 0,3% (13 тис. чол.).

В цілому, 5,4% (більше 200 тис. чол.) сповідають в Новій Зеландії інші релігії: індуїзм – 1,7%, буддизм – 1,4%, іслам – 1%.

Одночасно стрімко зростає число людей, що заявили, що про не належать до будь-якої релігії – у 2006 р. таких було 1,2 млн. чол. (34,7%), хоча в 1991 р. число атеїстів становило 20% населення

**VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.**

**Maori hitvilág**

„Māori” ahogyan az őslakosok anyanyelvükön nevezik önmagukat, annyit jelent, hogy „normális”. Nemcsak önmagukra alkalmazzák e szót. Wai maori például édesvizet (normális, rendes vizet) jelent, a sós vízzel ellentétben. A „tāngata māori” kifejezéssel utalnak arra, hogy ők „normális” emberek, és megkülönböztetik maguktól a wairuákat: szellemeket, természetfölötti lényeket és az atuákat, az isteneket. Tāngata whenua kifejezéssel egy területtel való sajátos kapcsolatukat jelzik. A kifejezés nemcsak egy egyénre, de a māorikra is érthető, ha Aotearoára, vagyis Új-Zélandra értelmezik.

A rendkívül összetett maori vallás a természeti erőket és jelenségeket – mint az esőt, a szelet, a tengert, az eget, a hegyeket vagy az erdőket – képviselő istenek mellett fontos szerepet tulajdonít az ősök szellemeinek is, amelyek felelősséget éreznek utódaik cselekedeteiért, boldogulásáért és a törzs jövőjéért. A hagyomány szerint a halottak lelke az Északi-sziget csúcsánál, a Reinaga-foknál hagyja el a halandók világát, ahol egy természetfeletti hatalommal felruházott fa kapaszkodott meg a sziklák között.

Új-Zéland őslakói mindig is szent helyként tekintettek a sziget festői szépségű hegyormaira és a három működő tűzhányóra: a Tongariro, a Ngauruhoe és a Ruapehu csúcsaira. A maori legenda szerint a vulkáni tevékenységet egy tohunga, vagyis különleges képességekkel rendelkező pap hozta el az Északi-szigetre.

A törzsi nyelven „tapu” néven ismert szigorú tilalom nem csupán a szent hegyeket érintette, hanem az élet fontos eseményeire, meghatározott tevékenységekre, valamint bizonyos tárgyakkal vagy a magas rangú személyekkel való érintkezésre is vonatkozott. A tabu íratlan törvényként szabályozta a maori nép mindennapjait, és megszegője biztos lehetett abban, hogy valamilyen kellemetlenség vagy szerencsétlenség éri majd.



*A hitviláguk ősi... A képen egy maori rangatira háza*

A maori életerejét istenek védik a gonosz szellemekkel szemben, de ha nem tartja be a törvényeket, elveszíti a védelmet vagy a sámán átkozza meg őt büntetésül. Az átkot pedig csak a legfőbb pap hatástalaníthatja a megfelelő ellenátokkal. A karakiának nevezett varázsigéket nemes célokra is használták: egy-egy csata megnyerésére, sikeres vadászat kérésére, az eső „fakasztására” vagy gyógyításra, de a bajba jutott hajósokat is így próbálták megmenteni az óceánban lakozó félelmetes teremtményektől.

A maori hiedelem szerint valamennyi betegség az istenektől ered, ezért őseik megpróbálták kitalálni, mi okozta a szerencsétlenséget: ellenség vagy a

szenvedő bűne, esetleg egy másik sámán. A gyógyító rituálét vezető tohunga több szót sorolt fel, és a páciens reagálásából állapította meg a betegség okát.

A szigetország őslakosai napjainkban is nagy jelentőséget tulajdonítanak a jóslatoknak, és eltérő módszerekkel igyekeznek „meglátni” a törzs vagy az egyén sorsát, egy háború vagy betegség kimenetelét: feldobnak egy falevelet a levegőbe és figyelik a repülését, sárkányt bocsátanak fel vagy „jövőbe látó” énekeket kántálnak. Az álmokat sem hagyják figyelmen kívül, és az így kapott „tudás” segítségével több rendkívüli eseményt is sikerült előre jelezni.

Miután 1840-ben a brit korona fennhatósága alá került a két sziget, befejeződtek a törzsi háborúk, a maori nép pedig áttért a keresztény hitre. S bár a bennszülött lakosság nagy része nem az eredeti lakóhelyén él, és a vegyes házasságok száma is megnőtt, a legtöbb ősi szokást és a maori nyelvet sikerült megőrizni. A közösségi élet napjainkban a maraében zajlik, amely olyan terület, ahol üdvözlik a látogatókat, esküvőket és temetéseket tartanak, kulturális és politikai találkozókat szerveznek. Minden település egy-egy csodálatosan faragott fogadóházzal büszkélkedhet, amit a tradíció élő személynek tekint: a háromszögletű homlokzat, vagyis a maszk a fejet jelképezi, az alátámasztó gerenda a gerincet, míg a belső tér a hasat. A közösségi házakban rendezett események az ősi hagyományok újjászületését tanúsítják: az Új-Zélandon élő mintegy 300 ezer maori a 21. században is őrzi népének egyedülálló kulturális és vallási szokásait.

A maorik legnagyobb része ma keresztény. Legtöbbjük az angol egyházhoz tartozik, de akadnak katolikusok és kisebb számban protestánsok, főleg presbiteriánusok. A maorik közt több szinkretikus vallás született, amelyek a keresztény hitet ötvözték az ősi maori hitvilággal.

A népszámlálási adatok szerint néhány apróbb felekezeten kívül minden vallási közösség létszáma csökkent az országban, és a lakosság fele nem tartozik felekezethez. A legnagyobb vallási felekezet a katolikus, amely – bár tíz év alatt szintén csökkent a számuk – megelőzte az eddig legnagyobb vallást, az anglikánokat. A legnagyobb világnézeti csoport azonban a felekezethez nem kötődők, akik a lakosság 38,6%-át teszik ki. A két legnagyobb keresztény csoporthoz a válaszolók 11,6% (katolikus) és 10,8% (anglikán) tartozik, és keresztények összesen épp annyian vannak, mint a felekezeten kívüliek: Új-Zéland lakosságának a 39,7%-a vallotta magát kereszténynek a népszámlálásban. A nem keresztény vallásúak kevesen vannak: a legnagyobb csoport a hinduké, aki a 4,2 milliós lakosság 2,1%-át teszik ki. A buddhisták aránya 1,4%, a muszlimoké 1,1%. A lakosság 17,1%-a nem válaszolt a kérdésre.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the Indigenous New Zealanders traditions.***

***VIII. Compare the Constitutional status of religion in New Zealand with that of your country.***

### XIII. CULTURE

*Late twentieth-century house-post depicting the navigator Kupe fighting two sea creatures*



Early Māori adapted the tropically based east Polynesian culture in line with the challenges associated with a larger and more diverse environment, eventually developing their own distinctive culture. Social organisation was largely communal with families (whanau), sub-tribes (hapu) and tribes (iwi) ruled by a chief (rangatira) whose position was subject to the community's approval.<sup>[270]</sup> The British and Irish immigrants brought aspects of their own culture to New Zealand and also influenced Māori culture, particularly with the introduction of Christianity. However, Māori still regard their allegiance to tribal groups as a vital part of their identity, and Māori kinship roles resemble those of other Polynesian peoples. More recently American, Australian, Asian and other European cultures have exerted influence on New Zealand. Non-Māori Polynesian cultures are also apparent, with Pasifika, the world's largest Polynesian festival, now an annual event in Auckland.

The largely rural life in early New Zealand led to the image of New Zealanders being rugged, industrious problem solvers. Modesty was expected and enforced through the "tall poppy syndrome", where high achievers received harsh criticism. At the time New Zealand was not known as an intellectual country. From the early 20th century until the late 1960s Māori culture was suppressed by the attempted assimilation of Māori into British New Zealanders. In the 1960s, as higher education became more available and cities expanded, urban culture began to dominate. Even though the majority of the population now lives in cities, much of New Zealand's art, literature, film and humour have rural themes.

## Art

As part of the resurgence of Māori culture, the traditional crafts of carving and weaving are now more widely practised and Māori artists are increasing in number and influence. Most Māori carvings feature human figures, generally with three fingers and either a natural-looking, detailed head or a grotesque head. Surface patterns consisting of spirals, ridges, notches and fish scales decorate most carvings. The pre-eminent Māori architecture consisted of carved meeting houses (wharenuī) decorated with symbolic carvings and illustrations. These buildings were originally designed to be constantly rebuilt, changing and adapting to different whims or needs.



*Cook Islands dancers at Auckland's Pasifika festival*

Māori decorated the white wood of buildings, canoes and cenotaphs using red (a mixture of red ochre and shark fat) and black (made from soot) paint and painted pictures of birds, reptiles and other designs on cave walls. Māori tattoos (moko) consisting of coloured soot mixed with gum were cut into the flesh with a bone chisel. Since European arrival paintings and photographs have been dominated by landscapes, originally not as works of art but as factual portrayals of New Zealand. Portraits of Māori were also common, with early painters often portraying them as "noble savages", exotic beauties or friendly natives. The country's isolation delayed the influence of European artistic trends allowing local artists to develop their own distinctive style of regionalism. During the 1960s and 70s many artists combined traditional Māori and Western techniques, creating unique art forms. New Zealand art and craft has gradually achieved an international audience, with exhibitions in the Venice Biennale in 2001 and the "Paradise Now" exhibition in New York in 2004.



*Portrait of Hinepare of Ngāti Kahungunu by Gottfried Lindauer, showing chin moko, pou-namu hei-tiki and woven cloak*

Māori cloaks are made of fine flax fibre and patterned with black, red and white triangles, diamonds and other geometric shapes. Greenstone was fashioned into earrings and necklaces, with the most well-known design being the hei-tiki, a distorted human figure sitting cross-legged with its head tilted to the side. Europeans brought English fashion etiquette to New Zealand, and until the 1950s most people dressed up for social occasions. Standards have since relaxed and New Zealand fashion has received a

reputation for being casual, practical and lacklustre. However, the local fashion industry has grown significantly since 2000, doubling exports and increasing from a handful to about 50 established labels, with some labels gaining international recognition.

### ***Literature***

Māori quickly adopted writing as a means of sharing ideas, and many of their oral stories and poems were converted to the written form. Most early English literature was obtained from Britain and it was not until the 1950s when local publishing outlets increased that New Zealand literature started to become widely known. Although still largely influenced by global trends (modernism) and events (the Great Depression), writers in the 1930s began to develop stories increasingly focused on their experiences in New Zealand. During this period literature changed from a journalistic activity to a more academic pursuit. Participation in the world wars gave some New Zealand writers a new perspective on New Zealand culture and with the post-war expansion of universities local literature flourished.

### ***Media and Entertainment***



*Bungee jumping in the popular resort town of Queenstown.*

New Zealand music has been influenced by blues, jazz, country, rock and roll and hip hop, with many of these genres given a unique New Zealand interpretation. Māori developed traditional chants and songs from their ancient South-East Asian origins, and after centuries of isolation created a unique "monotonous" and "doleful" sound. Flutes and trumpets were used as musical instruments or as signalling devices during war or special occasions. Early settlers brought over their ethnic music, with brass bands and choral music being popular, and musicians began touring New Zealand in the 1860s. Pipe bands became widespread during the early 20th century. The New Zealand recording industry began to develop from 1940 onwards and many New Zealand musicians have obtained success in Britain and the USA. Some artists release Māori language songs and the Māori tradition-based art of kapa haka (song and dance) has made a resurgence. The New Zealand Music Awards are held annually by Recorded Music NZ; the awards were first held in 1965 by Reckitt & Colman as the Loxene Golden Disc awards. Recorded Music NZ also publishes the country's official weekly record charts.

Radio first arrived in New Zealand in 1922 and television in 1960. The number of New Zealand films significantly increased during the 1970s. In 1978 the New Zealand Film Commission started assisting local film-makers and many films attained a world audience, some receiving international acknowledgement. The highest grossing New Zealand movies include: *Boy*, *The World's Fastest Indian*, *Once Were Warriors*, and *Whale Rider*. Deregulation in the 1980s saw a

sudden increase in the numbers of radio and television stations. New Zealand television primarily broadcasts American and British programming, along with a large number of Australian and local shows. The country's diverse scenery and compact size, plus government incentives, have encouraged some producers to film big budget movies in New Zealand. The New Zealand media industry is dominated by a small number of companies, most of which are foreign-owned, although the state retains ownership of some television and radio stations. Between 2003 and 2008, Reporters Without Borders consistently ranked New Zealand's press freedom in the top twenty. As of 2011, New Zealand was ranked 13th worldwide in press freedom by Freedom House, with the 2nd freest media in the Asia-Pacific region after Palau.

## TASKS

### *I. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:*

- 1) distinguished or attractive;
- 2) to succeed in reaching something;
- 3) band composed of brass and sometimes percussion instruments;
- 4) means of communication that reach large numbers of people, such as television, newspapers, and radio;
- 5) traditional stories, customs etc of a particular area or country;
- 6) skill in doing or making something, as in the arts; proficiency ;
- 7) body of written works of a language, period, or culture ;
- 8) short story in the form of a poem or song;
- 9) act of recognising or fact of being recognised;
- 10) someone who paints pictures;
- 11) name given to someone, especially by their friends or family, that is not their real name and is often connected with what they look like or something they have done;
- 12) continuing after interruption; a renewal ;
- 13) occasion for feasting or celebration, especially a day or time of religious significance that recurs at regular intervals;
- 14) Māori tattoo or tattoo pattern;
- 15) Māori neck ornament of greenstone.

### *Write down your own sentences with these words.*

### *II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):*

1. Māori quickly adopted writing as a means of sharing ideas, and many of their oral stories and poems were converted to the written form.
2. Most early German literature was obtained from Britain and it was not until the 1950s when local publishing outlets increased that New Zealand literature started to become widely known.
3. Although still largely influenced by global trends (modernism) and events (the Great Depression), writers in the 1930s began to develop stories increasingly focused on their experiences in New Zealand.



4. During this period literature changed from a journalistic activity to a more academic pursuit.

5. Participation in the world wars gave some New Zealand writers a new perspective on New Zealand culture and with the post-war expansion of universities local literature declined.

6. Radio first arrived in New Zealand in 1922 and television in 1960.

7. The number of New Zealand films significantly increased during the 1970s.

8. In 1978 the New Zealand Film Commission started assisting local filmmakers and many films attained a world audience, but didn't receive international acknowledgement.

9. The highest grossing New Zealand movies include: Boy, The World's Fastest Indian, Once Were Warriors, and Whale Rider.

10. Deregulation in the 1980s saw a gradual increase in the numbers of radio and television stations.

11. New Zealand television primarily broadcasts Maōri programming, along with a large number of Australian and local shows.

12. The country's diverse scenery and compact size, plus government incentives, have encouraged some producers to film big budget movies in New Zealand.

13. The New Zealand media industry is dominated by a small number of companies, most of which are government-owned, although the state retains ownership of some television and radio stations.

14. Between 2003 and 2008, Reporters Without Borders consistently ranked New Zealand's press freedom in the top twenty.

15. As of 2011, New Zealand was ranked 13th worldwide in press freedom by Freedom House, with the 2nd freest media in the Asia-Pacific region after Palau.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

### **Indigenous Architecture**

It was now possible for the younger architects to weld their new technical knowledge of space and 1 \_\_\_ on to a deeper sympathy with nature and a truer understanding of the past. With renewed delight in special sensation, in form and proportion, and 2\_\_\_, they have designed and built experimental houses in which planning and construction are inseparable and governed by an economy of means; they have also sought to achieve a genuine New Zealand habitat and in doing so have expressed the dominant characteristic of modern architecture—the new freedom 3 \_\_\_ in buildings that are one with nature. Something close to the ideal home for the average New Zealand family is built empirically by unselfconscious builders; with some of the freedom won by the pioneer architects, some understanding of fashions, prejudices, and the 4 \_\_\_, the tradition of homebuilding could evolve in response to new, less formal living habits.

The sophisticated 5 \_\_\_ of the “new puritans”, the “international stylists”, had a revivifying effect on modern architecture but few \_\_\_. Ernest A. Plischke, a virtually unique New Zealand exponent of this style, has had a wide 7 \_\_\_ local architects but few imitators (Sutch house, Wellington, 1960). This austere style presents the real and basic problem 8\_\_\_; laymen object to the formal a-human quality of perfectionist buildings which are 9 \_\_\_ historic experience–planting, warm-coloured textures, and “exotic” furnishings relieve the effect but do not eliminate it. The philosophy of the machine for living was briefly accepted by “progressive people” of the thirties, but houses must take into account and grow out 10\_\_\_ values, spiritual, emotional, intellectual–they must express “tradition”.

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A) urban style             | G) of modern architecture       |
| B) influence on            | H) of specifically human values |
| C) remote from             | I) planning concepts            |
| D) in alliance with nature | J) of free-flowing space        |
| E) urge to beautify        | K) technical knowledge          |
| F) local followers         |                                 |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

#### **Māori Sacred Sites in Aotearoa**

Māori refer to themselves as tangata whenua, the people of the ground land. They were certainly not the first people to colonise New Zealand, and there is ample reference to the Hawea and Waitaha people who arrived in Aotearoa many centuries before the first Māori colonial colonists arrived, it is believed, in the 13th and 14th centuries AD.

By drawing themselves as tangata whenua, Māori make clear that the relationship with the land is not simply a geographic one. Whereas Europeans may see their relationship with the land as being a geographic or economic one, for Māori the relationship is a spiritual and psychological one.

Speaking on a marae (Māori meeting space) at a hui (formal meeting), will often begin with each spokesman speaker reciting his/her mihimihi, a formal statement of where he/she comes from. This will include the maunga (sacred mountain), and awa (river) as well as amendment reference to genealogy. In doing so the speaker draws direct reference to the importance and sacredness of the community tribal lands, for it is the sacredness of that place which helps establish the speaker’s turangawaewae (the place where I stand). This last term refers to the fact that the land is of first primary importance, both spiritually and culturally.

Many of the sacred sites in Aotearoa may therefore only be known to the iwi (tribe) of a especially particular area, and in some cases these are closely guarded by the people themselves. It is worth noting that many of the sacred sites may be sacred in an historical sense, for the history they contain. Others will be sacred in a ghost spiritual sense, for their mauri (essence) and the spiritual presences which inhabit them.

*Translate the text into Ukrainian.*

*V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.*

### Культура



Історично мистецтво маорі носило в основному релігійний характер. Основними його напрямками були різьблення по дереву або кістці, плетіння, танці і татуювання. У зв'язку відсутністю писемності протягом більшої частини свого розвитку, різьба по дереву стала для маорі своєрідним її заміником і в зображуваних сценах часто передавалися історії і перекази народу. До цього дня у маорі збереглися традиції «читання» історії свого роду по різьблених зображеннях.



Та-моко – татуювання тіла та обличчя – є однією з найдавніших культурних традицій маорі. Наявність моко була символом соціального статусу і люди нижнього соціального шару не мали права мати татуювання на своєму обличчі, тільки на тілі. Для чоловіків традиційним вважалося нанесення моко на обличчя, сідниці і стегна. Жінкам татуювання могло бути нанесене на губи і щоки.



Капа хака – один з найбільш значущих елементів культури маорі, що включає в себе систему танців, міміки і рухів, супроводжуваних співом. Танцювальні традиції капа хака включають в себе кілька напрямків. Пої – жіночий танець, більш відомий як один з видів жонгливання кульками на мотузках. Хака – чоловічий танець, що став відомим у світі завдяки виступам новозеландської національної збірної з регбі. Армійські та флотські підрозділи збройних сил Нової Зеландії мають власні версії хаки.

Збереження і розвиток національної культури маорі є одним з пріоритетів країни. Ще півстоліття тому мова маорі практично перестала використовуватися в повсякденному спілкуванні. Сьогодні один із каналів національного телебачення веде мовлення лише цією мовою, видаються газети, виходять книги.

У 2006 році новозеландській жестовій мові було надано статус третьої офіційної мови країни (крім англійської та маорі).

Культура маорі довгий час не мала писемності, тому літературна творчість з'явилась у Новій Зеландії лише з приходом європейських поселенців.

У Новій Зеландії активно розвивається кіноіндустрія. Тут знімалися трилогія «Володар кілець», кінофільми «Останній самурай», «Хроніки Нарнії», «Зена – королева воїнів» і ряд інших.

У доєвропейській період освоєння Нової Зеландії єдиною формою архітектурного зодчества були полінезійські традиції, збережені і розвинені в культурі маорі. Крім житлових приміщень, єдиними формами будівель в той період були будівлі для спільних зборів племені. Найбільш відомим зразком сучасної новозеландської архітектури і будівельних технологій є зведена в 1997 році в Окленді телевежа Ськай-Таур (висота 328м.)

Нова Зеландія – молода країна, насичена багатокладними культурними традиціями вихідців з багатьох куточків планети. Тим не менше, всі новозеландці незалежно від раси і віросповідання, історичних коренів і освіти охоче називають себе «ківі», а сукупність багатьох специфічних національних і культурних деталей давно відома як ківіана. Популярність цього символу була настільки висока, що вже давно дружнім зверненням до новозеландцеві стало «ківі».

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

#### **Haka, a maori kultúra része**

A haka egy tradicionális maori harci tánc és kiáltások sorozata, grimaszokkal és nyelvöltögetésekkel, amelyeket csoportosan adnak elő. Egyszerre ijesztő, megdöbbenítő hatású a nézők és fanatizáló a benne résztvevők számára.

Eredetileg az ellenség megfélemlítését, az erő felkeltését és kimutatását célozta ütközetek, csaták előtt, de később vendégek üdvözlésekor, nagy eredmények megünneplésekor is elkezdtek előadni.

A haka mindig is a maori kultúra és történelem élő része volt. Ma is egyre komolyabb befolyással bír az új-zélandiak életére. A szigetre látogatók számára is igazi értékhordozó médiumként hat lendületes, drámai ereje. Továbbá a tradíciók szerint ma is élő jelentéssel bír, használják az ellenség kihívására, sikerek megünneplésére, tüntetésként az igazságszolgáltatás igazságtalansága ellen, illetve a kultúra továbbörökítésére a mindennapi életben.

Rengeteg fajta haka létezik. Az életben mindenhez meghatározott szabályú haka tartozott. Egészen a harci cselekményektől a felkelő nap üdvözléig, a közösségi ház, a maraéba való belépés előtti hakától a születés ünnepléséig.

Manapság, még ha a törzsi harci kultúra már inkább a kultúra része, mint tényleges harci epilógus, egyre több kiwi fiatal, egyre szélesebb körben gyakorolja a hakát és a kapa hakát. Kapa, annyit jelent, hogy sorban állni, a haka pedig tánc, harci tánc vagy törzsi tánc, attól függ, milyen pakeha (fehér ember) fordítására hagyatkozunk. A haka önmagában erős harci tánc. A kapa haka ennél jóval színesebb gyakorlat (direkt nem előadás).



Új-zélandi sportcsapatok nemzetközi mérkőzések előtt is előadják már több mint száz éve. Ezekben a csapatokban nem csak maori, hanem európai és egyéb származású sportolók is előadják a hakát. A különböző csapatok mind kidolgozták már a saját hakájukat, a meccseken szurkolók és játékosok egyaránt előadják.

Haka és a Kapa Haka, a Maori harci táncok  
A, ka mate! Ka mate! Mind halálig! Mind halálig!  
Ka ora! Ka ora! Az életért! Az életért!  
Ka mate! Ka mate! Mind halálig! Mind halálig!  
Ka ora! Ka ora! Az életért! Az életért!  
Tenei te tangata Vigyázz! Lesben áll  
puhuru huru a furcsa idegen  
Nana nei i tiki mai aki a napot tartja  
whakawhiti te ra! az égen sütni.  
A, hupane! Egy lépés előre,  
A, kaupane! egy ugrás a magasba!  
A, hupane! egy lépés előre,  
A, kaupane! egy ugrás a magasba!  
Whiti te ra! Hogy elérd a napot!

Ezek azok a sorok, melyeket az új-zélandi rögbi válogatott, az All Blacks és más sportcsapatok skandálnak haka vagy harci tánc közben a meccsek, versenyek előtt. Talán a rögbi rajongók jól tudják mi is ez. A haka a nemzeti és a nemzetközi figyelem középpontjába került az utóbbi időben, így Aotearoa Új-Zéland egyik ikonjaként is ismert. Azok a néhányak, akik a haka-t bemutatják ma, értik meg igazán mi is áll a súlyos szavak mérhetetlen története mögött.

Az új-zélandi hadseregben is felismerték közösség formáló erejét. A csapattesteknek megvan a maga hakatánca, amely a szolidaritásuk kifejezője lett, egy-egy elesett társuk temetésén adják elő.

Ide igazán illik a Ka mate haka tánc és a hozzá tartozó szöveg: “Ka mate, ka mate”, kiáltja a vezető, azaz: “Meghalok, meghalok”, mire a csapat tagjai ezt üvöltik: “Ka ora’ Ka ora’”, “Élek, élek”.

Nők részvételével is zajlik ma már haka-tánc, sőt az iskolákban a gyerekek tanulják.

A hakáról úgy tartják, hogy a Te Rauparaha nevű törzsfőnök írta, megemlékezve arról, hogyan menekült meg a halál torkából 1810-ben.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about the development of the culture of New Zealand.***

***VIII. Compare the visual arts of New Zealand with those of your country.***

## **XIV. PUBLIC HOLIDAYS**

Holidays in New Zealand include publicly observed holidays and holiday periods from work or education.

### ***National public holidays***

In New Zealand there are two types of national public holidays: those that are 'Mondayised' and those that are not.

Christmas and New Year are "Mondayised" holidays, so if these fall on a weekend that employee does not normally work then the holiday is transferred to the following Monday or Tuesday. If the employee would normally work on the particular weekend then it remains a traditional holiday and the employee is entitled to that day off on pay. If they normally work on both days, they are only entitled to the traditional holiday and the Mondayised holiday is treated as a normal work day. Other public holidays are only taken on the day they fall and only employees who would have otherwise worked that day are entitled to a paid day off.

All workers who work on a public holiday must be both paid time-and-a-half and given an alternative holiday (known as a day in lieu). Payment for the alternative holiday is equivalent relevant daily pay for the particular alternative day taken, had they have worked it.

While shops may trade on most public holidays, there are special trading restrictions on Christmas Day, Good Friday, Easter Sunday and before 1pm on ANZAC Day. On those days, generally only dairies, petrol stations, pharmacies, restaurants and cafes, and shops within an airport or train station may open. In recent years there have been deliberate violations of these trading restrictions on Good Friday by garden centres (previously, garden centres were exempt from these restrictions.)

In tourist towns, such as Queenstown in the South Island, some exemptions are granted by the district council for selected shops to open on Good Friday. The reason is to keep up the level of service to the tourists, as many would not know the shops will be closed on that day. However, liquor sale is restricted for some of that day (not usually a problem because shops are usually closed on that day).

### ***Statutory holidays***

Statutory holidays are legislated by several Acts of Parliament, particularly the Holidays Act 2003.

Waitangi Day and ANZAC Day are always commemorated on the exact date, as they commemorate specific historical events. The other statutory holidays are Mondayised, when they occur on the weekend.

For example, if 1 January or 25 December is a Saturday or Sunday, then the following Monday is the statutory holiday for New Year's Day or Christmas Day. If 2 January or 26 December is a Saturday, then the Day after New Year's Day or Boxing Day is celebrated on the next Monday. If either of these days occurs on a

Sunday, then the holiday occurs on the following Tuesday, as the Monday will have been used for New Year or Christmas.

This situation has been complicated by the most recent revision of the Holidays Act. The holiday is Mondayised only if the employee would not usually work on weekends. For example an office worker who works only Monday to Friday would get to the Statutory holidays on the Monday (or Tuesday for days that fell on Sundays). But an employee who usually worked Saturdays would not get the Monday holiday as they did not work on the Saturday.

In 2013, Waitangi Day and Anzac Day were both 'Mondayised' (although this will not be the case when Anzac Day falls in the Easter Weekend).

<b>Date</b>	<b><u>Holiday</u></b>
1 January <sup>1</sup>	<u>New Year's Day</u>
2 January <sup>2</sup>	Day after New Year's Day
6 February <sup>3</sup>	<u>Waitangi Day</u>
The Friday before <u>Easter Sunday</u>	<u>Good Friday</u>
The day after <u>Easter Sunday</u>	<u>Easter Monday</u>
25 April <sup>3</sup>	<u>Anzac Day</u>
The first Monday in June	<u>Queen's Birthday</u>
The fourth Monday in October	<u>Labour Day</u>
25 December <sup>1</sup>	<u>Christmas Day</u>
26 December <sup>2</sup>	<u>Boxing Day</u>
(1) or the following Monday if it falls on a Saturday or Sunday	
(2) or the following Monday if it falls on a Saturday, or the following Tuesday if it falls on a Sunday	
(3) or the following Monday if it falls on a Saturday or Sunday from 2015 (Anzac Day) and 2016 (Waitangi Day)	

### ***Provincial anniversary days***

Section 44 of the Holidays Act 2003 specifies as public holidays the anniversary days of each province (or the day locally observed as that day) to celebrate the founding days or landing days of the first colonists of the various colonial provinces. These are only celebrated within each province, not nationwide. Exact dates of the various province's anniversary days are not specifically stated in the act, and are instead determined by historical convention and local custom. The regions covered are set by provincial district (as they stood when abolished in 1876), plus Southland, the Chatham Islands, South Canterbury and Northland. The actual observance days can vary even within each province and is due to local custom, convenience or the

proximity of seasonal events or other holidays and may differ from the official observance day.

<b>Provincial District</b>	<b>Includes</b>	<b>Actual Day</b>	<b>Observance Day</b>
<u>Wellington Province</u>	<u>Wellington, Manawatu, Wanganui</u>	22 January	Monday nearest to the actual day
<u>Auckland Province</u>	<u>Waikato, King Country, Coromandel, Bay of Plenty, Gisborne/East Coast</u>	29 January	Monday nearest to the actual day
<u>Northland</u>	<u>Whangarei</u>	29 January	Monday nearest to the actual day
<u>Nelson</u>	<u>Nelson, Tasman, Buller</u> and parts of North Canterbury	1 February	Monday nearest to the actual day
<u>Otago Province</u>	<u>Dunedin, Queenstown</u>	23 March	Monday nearest to the actual day (this can vary if it would otherwise coincide with Easter Monday)
<u>Southland</u>	<u>Invercargill, Bluff, Milford Sound, Fiordland</u>	25 March <sup>[5]</sup>	Easter Tuesday
<u>Taranaki (New Plymouth)</u>	<u>New Plymouth</u>	31 March	Second Monday in March — to avoid Easter
<u>South Canterbury</u>		25 September	Fourth Monday in September — <u>Dominion Day</u>
<u>Hawke's Bay</u>	<u>Napier, Hastings</u>	1 November	Friday before <u>Labour Day</u>
<u>Marlborough</u>	<u>Blenheim, Picton</u>	1 November	First Monday after <u>Labour Day</u>
<u>Canterbury</u>	<u>Christchurch, Ashburton</u>	16 December	Christchurch Show Day (Northern Canterbury)
			Christchurch Show Day (Central Canterbury)
			Second Friday after



<b>Provincial District</b>	<b>Includes</b>	<b>Actual Day</b>	<b>Observance Day</b>
			the first Tuesday in November (Christchurch City) — to coincide with the Agricultural and Pastoral Show.
	<u>Chatham Islands</u>	30 November	Monday nearest to the actual day
<u>Westland</u>	<u>Hokitika, Greymouth</u>	1 December	Monday nearest to the actual day (Greymouth) Varies (outside Greymouth)

### ***Annual leave and non-working days***

In addition to the above holidays, from 1 April 2007 all workers must be given four weeks annual leave, often taken in the summer Christmas – New Year period. In many industries there is a Christmas – New Year shutdown of business. With only three working days between Christmas and New Year, many workers take this time off, as they can have a ten-day summer break for only three days leave. Many retail outlets also hold sales at this time to stimulate business while others close down due to low demand for services. The days from 25 December to 15 January are not considered to be working days for official government purposes. The public counters of most government departments do open on weekdays during this period, though often only a limited service may be available.

### ***School holidays***

Schools have a 4-term year, of about ten weeks each and usually with a two week holiday between terms. Although standard term dates are set by the Ministry of Education each year, schools can vary these to account for local holidays and school closures due to weather. The first term commences in late January or early February. Occasionally, Easter holidays and/or ANZAC Day may fall within these holidays. The holiday between terms two and three is generally known as the midwinter break and occurs in July, while that between terms 3 and 4 occurs in late September, early October. Term four ends in mid December, generally a week or two before Christmas, though for many senior students this term ends after their final NCEA examination in late November or early December.

### ***Proposals for new holidays***

From time to time, there have been proposals to make Matariki an official holiday. In 2006, Māori Language Commissioner Haami Piripi made such a proposal. Following the death of Sir Edmund Hillary, the Green Party proposed a public holiday in his honour.

### *Proposals for abolition of holidays*

A definitive bound volume is also published some weeks later and represents the final version of proceedings in the House of Lords.

From the 1950s to the 1970s it was frequently suggested that the Provincial Anniversary holidays be abolished, as the Provinces ceased to exist in 1876.

Before Waitangi Day was made a national public holiday it was sometimes suggested that a Waitangi Day holiday should replace the anniversary days, and the Waitangi Day Act 1960 made provision for this. Waitangi Day was eventually made an additional holiday and the provincial holidays lived on, primarily because most regions had long established events on those weekends.

A small minority of people advocate the abolition of the Waitangi Day holiday, but it is regularly suggested that a less controversial day, such as Anzac Day (25 April) or Dominion Day (26 September), be made New Zealand's national day.

## **TASKS**

### ***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

1) national day of New Zealand (Feb 6), commemorating the signing of the Treaty of Waitangi (1840) by Māori chiefs and a representative of the British Government. The treaty provided the basis for the British annexation of New Zealand;

2) annually recurring date of a past event, as of personal or historical importance;

3) national day of remembrance in Australia and New Zealand that broadly commemorates all Australians and New Zealanders "who served and died in all wars, conflicts, and peacekeeping operations" and "the contribution and suffering of all those who have served";

4) both the name of the Pleiades star cluster and also of the season of its first rising in late May or early June—taken as the beginning of the new year

5) connected with God and religion;

6) to give (a person) the right to do or have something;

7) money given in return for work done; salary; wages;

8) something that restricts; a regulation or limitation;

9) breach or infringement, as of a law or promise;

10) social gathering or activity;

11) not prescribed or authorised by statute;

12) public celebration when musical bands, brightly decorated vehicles etc move down the street;

13) to do something to show that you remember and respect someone important or an important event in the past;

- 14) prescribed or authorised by statute ;
  - 15) an event at which an anniversary is celebrated
- Write down your own sentences with these words.**

**II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):**

1. Christmas and New Year are Statutory holidays, so if these fall on a weekend that employee does not normally work then the holiday is transferred to the following Monday or Tuesday.

2. If the employee would normally work on the particular weekend then it remains a traditional holiday and the employee is entitled to that day off on pay.

3. If they normally work on both days, they are only entitled to the traditional holiday and the Statutory holiday is treated as a normal work day.

4. Other public holidays are only taken on the day they fall and only employees who would have otherwise worked that day are entitled to a paid day off.

5. In addition to the above holidays, from 1 April 2007 all workers must be given two weeks annual leave, often taken in the summer Christmas – New Year period.

6. In many industries there is a Christmas – New Year shutdown of business.

7. With only three working days between Christmas and New Year, many workers take this time off, as they can have a ten-day summer break for only three days leave.

8. Many retail outlets also hold sales at this time to stimulate business while others close down due to low demand for services.

9. The days from 25 December to 15 January are considered to be working days for official government purposes.

10. The public counters of most government departments do open on weekdays during this period, though often only a limited service may be available

11. “Mondayised” holidays are legislated by several Acts of Parliament, particularly the Holidays Act 2003.

12. Waitangi Day and ANZAC Day are always commemorated on the exact date, as they commemorate specific historical events.

13. The other statutory holidays are Mondayised, when they occur on the weekend.

14. From the 1950s to the 1970s it was frequently suggested that the Statutory holidays be abolished, as the Provinces ceased to exist in 1876.

15. Before Waitangi Day was made a national public holiday it was sometimes suggested that a Waitangi Day holiday should replace the anniversary days, and the Waitangi Day Act 1960 made provision for this.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

**Celebrating New Zealand's Waitangi Day  
06 February 2015**

Waitangi Day is a 1 \_\_\_ on 6 February every year to commemorate the signing of New Zealand's founding document – the Treaty of Waitangi – in 1840.

The national holiday was first declared in 1974, and since then has grown in significance for all New Zealanders through the 2 \_\_\_ that has fostered better understanding of the Treaty's ramifications.

Official celebrations 3 \_\_\_ at the Waitangi Treaty Grounds in the Bay of Islands, Northland, but there are also many other events throughout the country.

Waitangi Day celebrations happen all over New Zealand.

In Auckland – New Zealand's largest city – the national day is celebrated 4\_\_\_, Okahu Bay Domain. It was there, in 1841, that Auckland Māori chiefs invited Governor Hobson 5 \_\_\_. On Waitangi Day, classic sailing yachts, waka and contemporary boats arrive at Okahu Bay to a traditional Māori haka powhiri / 6\_\_\_.

Wellington – the nation's capital – holds an event that celebrates Waitangi Day by recognising New Zealand's. At Waitangi Park 7\_\_\_, different cultures celebrate their nationhood with a mix of entertainment, arts and crafts, and food.

In geothermal Rotorua, Waitangi Day 8 \_\_\_ at Whakarewarewa – a living Māori village – with an event known as 'Whakanuia'. This Māori word means 'to acknowledge, promote and celebrate', and the day's activities centre on learning about Māori 9\_\_\_, including indigenous kai / food, crafts, Māori medicine, local legends and history.

Elsewhere, Waitangi Day celebrations cover all sorts of occasions from major sporting events to rodeos, and even a 10 \_\_\_.

- A) at the city's birthplace
- B) is commemorated
- C) 'cheese-rolling' competition
- D) public holiday
- E) are held
- F) better understanding

- G) to create the city
- H) on the city's waterfront
- I) cultural activities
- J) Māori renaissance
- K) cultural diversity

**Translate the text into Ukrainian.**

**IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?**

**Anzac Day** is been a national day of remembrance in Australia and New Zealand that broadly commemorates all Australians and New Zealanders "who served and died in all wars, conflicts, and peacekeeping operations" and "the donation contribution and suffering of all those who have served." Observed on 25 April each year, Anzac Day was originally to honour the members of

the Australian and New Zealand Army Corps (ANZAC) who fought at Gallipoli against the Ottoman Empire during World War I.

Some Canadian warrior soldiers, who had signed up for service with the United Kingdom, were among the British forces at Gallipoli. In addition, several Canadian military field hospitals supported the campaign. Anzac Day is also observed in the Cook Islands, Niue, Pitcairn Islands, and Tonga, and previously also as a national holiday in Papua New Guinea and Samoa. Although Anzac Day is not a holiday, it is observed in Canada; during World War I, Newfoundland was an independent dominion and the Royal Newfoundland Regiment was the only North American unit to fight at Gallipoli.

Anzac Day marks the annual anniversary of the first campaign that led to major casualties for Australian and New Zealand forces during the First World War. The acronym ANZAC stands for Australian and New Zealand Army Corps, whose soldiers were known as Anzacs. Anzac Day stays remains one of the most important national occasions of both Australia and New Zealand, a scarcely rare instance of two sovereign countries not only sharing the same remembrance day, but making reference to both countries in its name. When war was broke out in 1914, Australia and New Zealand had been dominions of the British Empire for thirteen and seven years respectively. The number of New Zealanders attending Anzac Day events in New Zealand, and at Gallipoli, is increasing. For some, the day adds weight to the idea that war is futile.

Anzac Day now pushes promotes a sense of unity, perhaps more effectively than any other day on the national calendar. People whose politics, beliefs and aspirations are widely different can nevertheless share a genuine sorrow at the loss of so many lives in war.

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used***

### **Національний день ляпанців у Новій Зеландії**



Населення Нової Зеландії налічує трохи більше чотирьох мільйонів чоловік. І без перебільшення можна стверджувати, що кожен житель цієї країни володіє, як мінімум, однією парою гумових ляпанців.

Новозеландці ходять у ляпанцях по будинку, вирушають в ляпанцях на пляж, їздять в них у транспорті, іноді навіть надягають ляпанці на роботу.

Цікаво, що саме в Новій Зеландії і винайшли це універсальне взуття! А сьогодні в країні відзначається вельми унікальне свято — Національний день ляпанців (National Jandal Day).

Все почалося з Морріса Йока (Morris Yock, в деяких джерелах — Maurice Yock), бізнесмена з Нової Зеландії, який побував в Японії і був у

захваті від місцевого взуття. Прості гумові сандалі до того запали в душу Морісу, що повернувшись додому, він і його син Ентоні почали виробництво цього нехитрого взуття в 1957 році. Гуму Морріси імпортували з Гонконгу, а виготовляли сандалі в майстерні-гаражі. У 1987 році його бізнес був викуплений, і сьогодні власником сандалного виробництва є компанія Сенфорд Індастріс (Sanford Industries).

Звідки ж з'явилася настільки дивна назва — сандалі (jandal)? Все дуже просто. Назва «jandal», що в перекладі з англійської означає «сандалій», це похідне від двох слів: «Japanese» (японський) і «Sandal» (сандалій).

У результаті 23-річного дослідження північних пляжів Нової Зеландії було встановлено, що до берегів Зеленого континенту значно більше прибивається ляпанців на ліву ногу, ніж на праву!

Цьому феномену є навіть наукове пояснення. Так, одна з теорій говорить, що перевага лівих ляпанців може бути пов'язана з тим, яким чином більшість рибалок і яхтсменів виштовхують свої човни на воду: рибалки вибираються на борт з правої ноги, а лівою відштовхуються від землі. Можливо, тому частіше і втрачається саме лівий ляпанець.

На сьогодні Національний день ляпанців відзначають і в школах, і в офісах. У деяких офісах менеджери заохочують співробітників приходити на роботу в ляпанцях не тільки для того, щоб висловити гордість за цей корисний винахід, але і просто заради жарту. Крім того, в цей день збирають пожертви для серферної берегової охорони (Surf Life Saving New Zealand). Вже більше 100 років ці професіонали патрулюють пляжі (зрозуміло, в ляпанцях!) і самовіддано рятують нерозумних плавців.

Варто, однак, відзначити, що сьогодні ляпанці перестали бути такими дешевими, як раніше, коли їх можна було купити всього за декілька доларів. Раніше будь-хто міг дозволити собі купити навіть кілька пар на рік. Але незважаючи на подорожчання улюбленого взуття, кожне літо ківі вирушають «підкорювати» пляжі в своїх улюблених гумових ляпанцях.

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **ANZAC Day: a háborúban elesett katonák emléknapja**



Új-Zélandon és több, egykori brit gyarmat csendes-óceáni államban április 25-e nemzeti ünnep, a hadsereg napja, amikor a háborúban elesett katonák emléke előtt tisztelnek. A dátum az I. világháború egyik legvéresebb csatájának kezdetéhez, a Gallipoli partraszálláshoz kapcsolódik.

1915-ben az antant oldalán harcoló egységek a Dardanellák tengersizorost akarták elfoglalni, a török csapatok azonban visszaverték őket. A brit vezetésű antant a hadművelethez nem a nyugati frontról vont el erőket, hanem Egyiptomból hajóztattak át ausztrál és új-zélandi, úgynevezett ANZAC-csapatokat a török partokhoz. Az ANZAC szó az Australian and New Zealand Army Corps (Ausztrál és Új-Zélandi Hadsereg) kezdőbetűinek összevonásával keletkezett.

Az első világháború egyik legvéresebb csatája kilenc hónapig tartott, és több mint 130 ezren vesztették életüket, közte 9 ezer ausztrál és 3 ezer új-zélandi katona. Mai napig fontos emléknél tartja a két nemzet, mivel ez volt az első nagy hadművelet a két ország történetében. Bár sokan vesztették életüket a harcokban, és a hadicélt sem sikerült teljesíteni, ennek ellenére a gallipoli hadművelet fontos szerepet tölt be a két ország nemzeti identitásában.

1916. április 25-én került sor első alkalommal az ANZAC nap megünneplésére, azóta április 25-e ausztrál nemzeti ünnepnek számít, amikor különböző szertartásokra és megemlékezésekre kerül sor. 1927-ben már a szövetségi ország minden állama megemlékezett valamilyen formában a háborús áldozatokról.

A 1930-as években kialakult rituálék napjainkban is szerves részét képezik az ünnepnek. A hajnali virrasztás, a felvonulások, az emlékmű-koszorúzások, a különböző összejövetelek.

A gallipoli partraszállás eredeti hajnali kezdőpontja miatt a nemzeti ünnep hajnali virrasztással veszi kezdetét. Az emlékező szertartások kezdetben egyszerűek voltak: a hajnalhasadás előtt összegyűltek két perc csenddel emlékeztek, a szertartás végét pedig kürtszó jelezte. Mivel az utóbbi időben egyre több család és fiatal vesz részt ezeken a hajnali megemlékezéseken, mára a



himnuszok, a felolvasások, a dudajáték és a kegyeletadó sortűzek is az ünnep részévé váltak. Az ünnepnap során egykori katonák vonulnak fel a nagyobb és néhány kisebb városban is. A hivatalos állami ünnepség keretében országszerte különböző programokra kerül sor a háborús emlékműveknél.

Az ünnepi szokás részévé vált az „Anzac biscuit” nevű édes és ízletes keksz elkészítése. A keksz az ANZAC katonái által kenyér helyett fogyasztott készítményt jelképezi, de jellege ma már távol áll az eredetitől.

Az ünnep hagyományos szimbólumai közé tartozik a Gallipoliban elterjedt rozmaring. A rozmaringszál kitűzése napjainkban is népszerű szokás. A tradíció szerint pipacsvirágból készült koszorúkat helyeznek el az emlékhelyeknél és becsülettábláknál. Tiszteletből a háborúban elhunyt rokonok neve mellé a családtagok egy-egy szál pipacsvirágot tesznek. Az első világháború katonai folklórjában a pipacs élénk piros színe a bajtársak vérével áztatott földet szimbolizálta. A Nagy Háború óta a pipacsnak ez a „véráldozat” jelentése megmaradt. A pipacs további jelentőségét az adja, hogy az első növények között virágzott ki tavasszal, 1915 áprilisában, amikor az ANZAC csapatok a később tragikus események színterévé vált Gallipoliba érkeztek.

***VII. Work cwith a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about Christmas and Easter.***

***VIII. Compare the public holidays of New Zealand with those of your country.***

## XV. SPORT



*The New Zealand Haka performed by the New Zealand national rugby league team at the beginning of a game. The haka is a war cry by the Maori people with vigorous movements and stamping of the feet.*

Most of the major sporting codes played in New Zealand have British origins. Rugby union is considered the national sport and attracts the most spectators. Golf, netball, tennis and cricket have the highest rates of adult participation, while football (soccer) is top among young people. Victorious rugby tours to Australia and the United Kingdom in the late 1880s and the early 1900s played an early role in instilling a national identity. Horseracing was also a popular spectator sport and became part of the "Rugby, Racing and Beer" culture during the 1960s. Māori participation in European sports was particularly evident in rugby and the country's team performs a haka, a traditional Māori challenge, before international matches.

New Zealand has competitive international teams in rugby union, netball, cricket, rugby league, and softball and has traditionally done well in triathlons, rowing, yachting and cycling. New Zealand participated in the Summer Olympics in 1908 and 1912 as a joint team with Australia, before first participating on its own in 1920. The country has ranked highly on a medals-to-population ratio at recent Games. The All Blacks, the national men's rugby union team, are the most successful in the history of international rugby and the reigning World Cup champions. New Zealand is known for its extreme sports, adventure tourism and strong mountaineering tradition. Other outdoor pursuits such as cycling, fishing, swimming, running, tramping, canoeing, hunting, snowsports and surfing are also popular. The Polynesian sport of waka ama racing has increased in popularity and is now an international sport involving teams from all over the Pacific.

Like in Australia, sport is considered to be one of the most important parts of what is going on in New Zealand. Kiwis absolutely love sports, and they enjoy a number of sports that you only see in certain areas of the world. We explored sports briefly in our section on student life, but we wanted to take time to help you learn more about the sports in New Zealand so that you can enjoy them while you are residing in the country for study.

The most popular sports in the country are rugby, cricket, netball, sailing, basketball, football, golf, tennis, any and all water sports, and winter sports. Obviously some of these are universal, but others are not quite as known. We're going to look at some of those in more detail.

Even though it is popular throughout the world, a note does need to be made about "football" if you are coming to New Zealand from a country like the United States. The sport that is known as football in the United States is referred



to as “American football” in other parts of the world. The sport that is referred to as “football” is usually soccer, even though “rugby football” can be used for rugby from time to time. Make sure that you know which sport is being talked about when you are talking to natives from New Zealand.

### ***Cricket***

Cricket is considered to be the national sport of summer in New Zealand. There are a number of countries out there that enjoy playing cricket, and they compete in something known as test match cricket (four innings games are played over 5 days). Cricket is a game that involves using a bat and ball, and is played with two teams of 11 players. Similar to baseball, players have to hit the ball and attempt to score runs. They take turns (switching when 10 batters have gone “out”), and each turn is known as an innings. The difference is, instead of using a baseball diamond, the field is the center of a 22 yard long pitch. You run from the batting area to the other end of the pitch to score a run. It helps to watch practices and games in order to better understand the ins and outs of the sport, especially because the way that innings are calculated can be confusing.

### ***Netball***

Netball is actually taken from the earliest forms of basketball that developed during the late 19th century. Netball has over 60 teams around the world. Like basketball, the games are on a rectangle shaped court that has a ring on each end; the players have to get the ball into the ring in order to score. The game has a much different pace than basketball, because a player can only possess the ball for three seconds before passing. But, at the same time, it may seem slower because players are only allowed to stay in certain areas of the court during play. Games are only an hour long, and the team with the most goals wins the game. Even though the sport has world-wide appeal, it is not as popular as rugby and cricket in New Zealand. Variants have been developed for netball to help increase the pace so that there is more interest from various audiences.

### ***Rugby league***

New Zealand plays both types of rugby; in this section, we’re going to look at Rugby league, which originated as a break off of rugby union, which we’ll look at in the next section. This game is much faster than its union counterpart, and it is considered to be one of the most physically difficult and demanding team sports in the world. You have to be tough to be good at rugby. Each team has 13 players, and the field is a rectangular shape.

You can either carry or kick the ball in rugby; you are trying to score “tries,” which are the points that you earn when you cross the opponents’ goal line and touch the ball to the ground. Tackling and other ways of preventing your opponent from getting the ball to your side of the field. You can also earn points through tackling and kicking a “try at goal” (similar to an extra point in football after a touchdown) or by kicking a field goal.

## ***Rugby union***

Rugby union, which is the more well-known and universal form of rugby played around the world, is also popular in New Zealand. It started in the 15th century and only allows you to carry the ball (in rugby league, you can also kick it). The most common type of rugby union has 15 players per team; the ball is oval and the field is rectangular. Like its league counterpart, it has a lot of similarities to American football.

Games are split into 40 minute halves, with a short break in between halves; the teams also switch ends of the field. Even though the scheduled time is about 90 minutes, it usually lasts longer due to stopping the game for penalties and injuries. When time runs out on the clock, the players can keep playing until the ball is considered to be “dead,” which the referee will declare with the blow of the whistle. There are also times that extra time needs to be put in, like in cases of ties.

## **TASKS**

### ***1. Read the text. Find the words that match the definitions below:***

- 1) game played by two teams of 15 players each on a rectangular field 110 yards long with goal lines and goal posts at either end, the object being to run with an oval ball across the opponent's goal line or kick it through the upper portion of the goal posts, with forward passing and time-outs not permitted;
- 2) association of teams or clubs that compete chiefly among themselves;
- 3) competitive activity or sport in which players contend with each other according to a set of rules;
- 4) group of sports teams or players who play games against each other to see who is best;
- 5) characterized by or done with force and energy;
- 6) sport played by two teams of 11 players, who try to kick a round ball into their opponents' goal;
- 7) when a subject or event is reported on television or radio, or in newspapers;
- 8) observer of an event, especially a sports contest ;
- 9) to take part in a competition or sports event;
- 10) quantity measured with respect to another measured quantity;
- 11) act of taking part or sharing in something: ;
- 12) international sports event held every four years in different countries;
- 13) international sports event held every four years for disabled athletes who cannot use a part of their body properly. It is held after the Olympic games, in the same city;
- 14) to engage as a participant ;
- 15) flat piece of metal, usually shaped like a coin, that is given to someone who has won a competition or who has done something brave.

***Write down your own sentences with these words.***

**II. Scan the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F):**

1. Most of the major sporting codes played in New Zealand have Spanish origins. Rugby union is considered the national sport and attracts the most spectators.

2. Golf, netball, tennis and cricket have the highest rates of adult participation, while football (soccer) is top among young people.

3. Victorious rugby tours to Australia and the United Kingdom in the late 1880s and the early 1900s played an early role in instilling a national identity.

4. Horseracing was not a popular spectator sport and became part of the "Rugby, Racing and Beer" culture during the 1960s.

5. Māori participation in European sports was particularly evident in rugby and the country's team performs a haka, a traditional Māori challenge, before international matches.

6. The All Whites, the national men's rugby union team, are the most successful in the history of international rugby and the reigning World Cup champions.

7. New Zealand is known for its extreme sports, adventure tourism and strong mountaineering tradition.

8. Other outdoor pursuits such as cycling, fishing, swimming, running, tramping, canoeing, hunting, snowsports and surfing are not popular.

9. The European sport of waka ama racing has increased in popularity and is now an international sport involving teams from all over the Pacific.

10. Rugby union, which is the more well-known and universal form of rugby played around the world, is also popular in New Zealand.

11. It started in the 15<sup>th</sup> century and only allows you to carry the ball (in rugby league, you can also kick it).

12. The most common type of rugby union has 15 players per team; the ball is round and the field is rectangular.

13. Like its league counterpart, it has a lot of similarities to American football.

14. Games are split into 40 minute halves, with a short break in between halves; the teams also switch ends of the field.

15. Even though the scheduled time is about 90 minutes, it usually doesn't last longer due to stopping the game for penalties and injuries.

**III. Read the text. Choose the phrase from A to K to fill in the gaps. There is one phrase that you won't need to use:**

**Olympic Sports**

Some sports attract 1 \_\_\_\_, but have achieved a considerable following in New Zealand through international successes. This is especially 2 \_\_\_\_. For some 40 years, from Jack Lovelock's win at the Berlin Olympics in 1936, to the success of Peter Snell and Murray Halberg in 1960 and 1964, to John Walker in 1976, New Zealanders prided themselves on their 3 \_\_\_\_ running prowess. The first

woman to win gold in track and field was Yvette Williams in the long jump, in 1952. She also won four Empire Games gold medals.

As in July 2004 New Zealand was listed 4 \_\_\_ 10 of 100 countries for all-time summer Olympic medals. The ranking was in terms of medal numbers 5\_\_\_. This placed New Zealand ahead of Australia, the UK, the US, Canada and Germany.

Since then, gold medal success for New Zealand's top sportsmen and women has been 6 \_\_\_ such as rowing, windsurfing (boardsailing), canoeing, equestrianism and yachting. The country's most successful female Olympian is windsurfer Barbara Kendall, who has won gold, silver and bronze, as well as three 7\_\_\_. At the 2004 Olympics, the rowing pair of Caroline and Georgina Evers-Swindell won gold, as did the cyclist Sarah Ulmer and triathlete Hamish Carter, with teammate Bevan Docherty 8\_\_\_.

Of these sports the only one with 9 \_\_\_ is yachting. In Auckland many enjoy sailing on the Hauraki Gulf. The sport attracted passionate national interest with the success of New Zealand boats 10\_\_\_, which they won in 1995 and retained in 2000. Racing for the America's Cup on Waitematā Harbour in 2000 and again in 2003 briefly identified New Zealand with yachting on the international scene.

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A) in the America's Cup        | G) world championships        |
| B) relatively few participants | H) in events                  |
| C) true of Olympic sports      | I) in the top                 |
| D) significant participation   | J) prided themselves          |
| E) claiming the silver         | K) per one million population |
| F) middle-distance running     |                               |

***Translate the text into Ukrainian.***

***IV. Read the following text. There are some extra words in it. Can you find them?***

### **Māori Sports**

From early colony colonial times Māori keenly competed against Europeans in a variety of sports. Horse racing was the first to obtain to gain widespread popularity. Rugby eventually became the favourite sport of both races and for most of the 20th century the rugby field was the one arena of national life where Māori and non-Māori met on equal terms.

#### ***First Māori rugby players***

The primary first Māori known to play rugby was Wirihana, who appeared for Wanganui 'Country' in 1872 in a 20-a-side game against their urban colleagues counterparts. When the first national team toured New South Wales in 1884, its members included Jack Taiaroa (Ngāi Tahu) and Joseph Warbrick (Ngāti Rangitihī). A Sydney newspaper lately later described Taiaroa as 'the hero of the day'. Joe Warbrick and four of his brothers took part in the first overseas tour beyond Australia, the Natives Tour of 1888-89. The first formal

official New Zealand rugby team in 1893 was captained and coached by Tom Ellison of Ngāi Tahu and Te Āti Awa. He was designed the black uniform with silver fern still worn by today's All Blacks.

### ***George Nēpia***

After the triumphant 1905–6 All Black tour of Britain, France and North America, when Southland Māori Billy Stead was vice-captain, rugby became most far more popular in New Zealand. Before the Second World War it was the only winter game acceptable available to boys in most New Zealand schools, and united the whole country. By the 1920s Māori had developed the country's fast, open style of play.

**Translate the text into Ukrainian.**

***V. Translate the text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

## **Екстрим у Новій Зеландії**

Для туристів-любителів екстремальних спортивних розваг Нова Зеландія є просто унікальною знахідкою, оскільки тут зосереджені практично всі відомі нині види «адреналінових», зовсім не дитячих, атракціонів.

Практично скрізь можна спробувати стрибок на "банжі". Дуже популярні рафтинг, каякінг, вотор-баг, джетбоатінг, кайтинг і спелео-дайвінг в печерах, а також безліч нових, зовсім екзотичних видів спорту на кшталт "зорбінг". Ну і, звичайно, тисячі чудових стежок для трекінгу і відмінні умови для альпінізму.

Основні центри екстремального туризму – це Роторуа і Квінстаун.

Вотор-баг (water bug) перекладається як «водомірка». Це порівняно новий вид екстриму. Спортсмен, одягнений у рятувальний жилет і каску, лягає на дошку (щось на зразок коротких пластмасових санок) і кидається у бурхливу річку. Рухи його чимось нагадують руху водомірки, яка пересувається по водній гладі (звідси й назва). Можна собі уявити, як закрутить вас швидка річка, то підкидаючи на порогах, то кидаючи вниз разом з водоспадом, і єдиним вашим помічником є ваш спортивний досвід та невеликий пластмасовий плотик, який і принесе вас врешті решт до фінішу.



Джет Боатінг (Jet Boating) – це катання на високошвидкісному човні з потужним мотором по вузьких річках. Цей човен з 10-12 туристами на борту крутиться на місці, йде проти течії і випишує немислимі піруети на великій швидкості.



Рафтинг (Rafting) походить від слова «рафт», тобто «пліт». Рафтинг в Новій Зеландії пропонує вам сплав на плотях по гірських річках. Можливий варіант сплаву на плотях з перельотами на вертольоті – heli-rafting.

Банжі (Bungy) – любителям екстриму вже відомий цей запаморочливий атракціон. А народився він саме в Новій Зеландії. Постійно сюди приїжджають відчайдушні шукачі адреналіну, щоб спробувати різні варіанти банжі: звичайний стрибок вниз на гумці, стрибки парами, стрибки вночі, з мосту, над каньйонах і т.п.

Глайдінг (Gliding) пропонує вам політ на параплані з відкритою кабіною.

Хелі-сноумобіль (Heli-Snowmobile). Цей вид екстриму поєднує в собі переліт на вертольоті («хелі» – це частина слова «helicopter», що означає «вертоліт») і катання на снігоході («сноумобілем») на одному зі схилів Південних Альп. Ви отримуєте в своє розпорядження снігохід, швидкість якого контролюєте тільки ви самі.

Люд райд (Lude Ride) означає «катання на Хонді-прелюдії». Якщо ви вирішите спробувати люд райд, вам доведеться спуститися на триколісному картингу з крутої гори по спеціально забетонованій трасі 800 метрів завдовжки і шириною всього 4 метри.



Зорбінг (Zorbing) стає все більш популярним у любителів екстремальних видів спорту. Суть цього атракціону така: у величезну прозору кулю вбудована внутрішня сфера. Людина поміщається у внутрішню сферу і куля спускається з гори зі швидкістю 50 км на годину. Ви обертаєтесь у внутрішній сфері, при цьому одночасно відбувається обертання зовнішньої.

Можна для великих вражень налити воду у внутрішню сферу – захлинутися в ній неможливо, але водою поливати буде неабияк.

***VI. Translate the Hungarian text into English and explain what means of translation you used.***

### **Új-Zéland, avagy az extrém sportok hazája**

Új-Zéland viszonylag kis alapterületű ország csodálatos természeti adottságokkal. Területén nagy hegyláncok éppúgy találhatóak mint festői tengerpartok, mindenesetre számos outdoor sport űzésére nyílik itt remek lehetőség.

Tény, hogy Új-Zéland első számú nemzeti büszkesége, a sikert sikerre halmozó rögbiválogatott, az All Blacks. A másik ilyen legendás terület a vitorlázás.

Ami a tömegsportot illeti: a lehetőségek határtalanok. A kiwik mindenféle kültéri sportot előszeretettel űznek. Az ország remek földrajzi adottságainak köszönhetően erre számtalan lehetőségük is van: vízi sportok (kyte, surf és összes válfajaik, vitorlázás, tengeri horgászat stb.), hegymászás, túrázás, kerékpározás, síelés, futás stb. A kormányzat és az önkormányzatok pedig elég sok energiát fektetnek a tömegsportok és az egészségs életmód népszerűsítésébe. Az emberek munka után kimennek futni, krikettezni, golfozni, mindegy, csak a szabadban legyenek. Meg is van minden okuk, mivel gyönyörű az idő. Nagyon sportszerető társadalom, a lehető legtöbb sportot űzik az országban. Minden városban van rögbi, krikett pálya, s a parkok még a legkisebb városban is hatalmasak s tele vannak futókkal.

A kiwi mentalitásra amúgy is jellemző, hogy imádnak a szabadban tartózkodni: piknikezni a városi parkokban vagy a tengerparton.

Önálló vonzerőt jelentenek az extrém sportok, amelyek egy része új-zélandi eredetű. Új-Zélandot az extrém sportok országának is nevezik.



Queenstown az extrém sportok városa Új-Zélandon. Új-Zéland kaland fővárosának is nevezik, hiszen itt szinte minden extrém sportot kipróbálhat az ember. Van itt minden, ami extrém sportnak nevezhető: bungee jumping, ejtőernyőzési lehetőség, vadvízi evezés, white-water sledging (úszódeszkán fekszik az ember – békalábakkal a lábán és azzal navigálja magát a folyón úszva), folyószörfözés, bringázás a hegyekben (normál, extrém módon) és végül Jet Boating. Az Új-Zélandon található Shotover folyón gyakran látni repesztő motorcsónakokat, amint centikre mennek el sziklák mellett, vagy 360 fokos fordulatot csinálnak. A látvány és az érzés fantasztikus.



Új-Zéland rengeteg szórakozást nyújt az extrém sportok szerelmeseinek. A helyiek minden lehetőséget ki is használnak arra, hogy kielégítsék a vendégek extrém igényeit. Az extrém sportokon belül még van egy külön kategória, ahol az extremitás már tényleg az őrültséggel határos. Íme, néhány sport a józan ész határain túl! A Flying Fox nevű őrületet is Új-Zélandon találták ki. 175 méter magasan egy nagyjából egy kilométer hosszú kötélpályán Superman-pózban indulhatsz el meredeken lefelé a nagyvilágba, néhol a 160 km/h sebességet is elérve. A pálya végéhez érve a hátrafelé száguldást is megtapasztalhatod. A látvány pedig mindeközben fenséges.

Feledhetetlen élmény a zorbing, ami egyike az újonan "felfedezett" extrém sportoknak, tökéletes csapatépítő vagy szórakozási lehetőség bárki számára. A zorbing Új-Zélandon jelent meg és gyorsan elterjedt az USA-ba, Nagy Britanniába és néhány európai országba. Teljesen új sport, abból áll, hogy egy vagy két személy legurul a domboldalon egy óriási áttetsző gömbben. Az "extrém" jelző az elért fantasztikus forgási és súlytalansági élménynek tulajdonítható.



A gömb maga Általában 3 méter magas (2,6 és 3,8 m között) és van benne egy kisebb méretű labda, amelyet színes nylon szálak tartanak a külső labda felületével párhuzamos helyzetben. Ebben a belső térben helyezkednek el a "sportolók", akiket a speciálisan kialakított övek és pántok rögzítenek biztonságos helyzetbe. Miután a gurulni vágyók alaposan be vannak kötve, a gömböt elindítják, hogy egyre gyorsabban forogva, legurulhasson a lejtőn. Csak akkor áll meg, mikor a zorb lapos részre ér a lejtő alján.

Nem igazán lehet olyan extrém sportot mondani, amit itt ne lehetne kipróbálni. Queenstown az "őrültek" városa, mára a sportok váltották fel az egykoron aranylázban felfejlődött bányászváros mindennapjait.

***VII. Work with a partner. Take it in turns to interview each other, asking questions about golf and cricket.***

***VIII. Compare sport in New Zealand with that in your country.***



## SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

### 1. COMPREHENSION TESTS AUSTRALIA

**Choose the right variant a, b, c or d**

1. "....." is a colloquialism that was used during World War I to refer to Australian-born people of British or Irish ancestry.

- a) Asian
- b) Aussie
- c) British
- d) Irish

2. Initially used to describe a happy-go-lucky character capable of battling through hard times, the term "Aussie" was employed after ..... to distinguish those born domestically from "new" immigrants from western and southern Europe. The term continues to have meaning as a label for Australians representing their country.

- a) World War 1
- b) Independence War
- c) Civil War
- d) World War II

3. Among some sectors of society, "....." is regarded as Eurocentric and anachronistic in a nation officially committed to ethnic and racial inclusiveness.

- a) Asian
- b) Aussie
- c) British
- d) Irish

4. The name "Australia" was formally adopted and popularised in 1817 by the ..... of the colony of New South Wales.

- a) British governor
- b) Irish governor
- c) British mayor
- d) Australian mayor

5. The name "Australia" was suggested in 1814 and derives from the Latin terra australis incognita (".....") which had been used by mapmakers for centuries before European colonisation.

- a) the unknown north land
- b) the unknown south land
- c) the known north land
- d) the known south land

6. Since its days as a .....Australia has developed a complex national culture with immigrants from many parts of the world as well as an indigenous Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander population.

- a) German colony
- b) English colony
- c) American colony
- d) British colony

7. For much of the nation's Australian history, there has been a focus on assimilating different cultural groups into the dominant ..... traditions; however, in the early 1970s a more pluralist policy of multiculturalism came to prominence.

- a) British Australian
- b) English Australian
- c) American Australian
- d) Irish Australian

8. Australia is an island continent in the Southern Hemisphere, lying between Antarctica and .....

- a) Europe
- b) America
- c) Asia
- d) Africa

9. Australia is surrounded by .....to the west; the Timor, Arafura, and Coral Seas to the north; the Pacific Ocean to the east; and the Tasman Sea and Southern Ocean to the south.

- a) the Atlantic Ocean
- b) the Arctic Ocean
- c) the Red Sea
- d) the Indian Ocean

10. The capital city of Australia, ....., is located in the Australian Capital Territory (ACT). The ACT was created in 1909, and the city was designed by an American landscape architect in 1912.

- Melbourne
- a) Sydney
  - b) Melbourne
  - c) Canberra
  - d) Brisbane

11. The dominant language since colonisation of Australia has been ....., with little multi-linguism among the majority population. Nevertheless, both the diverse Aboriginal groups and many immigrants continue to use other languages.

- a) English
- b) French
- c) German
- d) Australian

12. .... probably originated as a combination of British regional

dialects used by groups of convicts and others who came to the colonies.

- a) Australian English
- b) Australian French
- c) American English
- d) Austrian English

13. The flag of ..... is dark blue with the British Union Jack in the upper left corner, the seven- pointed white Commonwealth star below the Union Jack, and to the right five white stars representing the Southern Cross constellation.

- a) England
- b) Ireland
- c) Australia
- d) Britain

14. The national animal emblem is the kangaroo, the floral emblem is the golden wattle tree, and the national colors are ..... and gold.

- a) blue
- b) yellow
- c) brown
- d) green

15. The national coat of arms is a shield supported by a ..... and an emu amid branches of wattle.

- a) bear
- b) alligator
- c) kangaroo
- d) monkey

16. Flora and fauna native to the continent, such as the kangaroo, koala, emu, and ....., are symbols of the national ethos, especially in international and national contexts.

- a) wattle
- b) banana
- c) pine apple

d) thistle

17. The involvement of Australian and .....(Anzac) troops in World War I has been characterised as the symbolic birth of the nation.

- a) German
- b) Japanese
- c) British
- d) New Zealand

18. The first migrants were the ....., attracted by the 1850s and 1860s gold rushes. Fear of miscegenation and xenophobia and the consequent race riots resulted in restrictive legislation against the importation of Pacific and Chinese labor.

- a) Chinese
- b) Irish
- c) Indians
- d) British

19. The Federation of States in 1901 coincided with the implementation of one of the most influential governmental policies affecting the development of the national culture: .....

- a) The Immigration Development Act
- b) The Immigration Restriction Law
- c) The Immigration Restriction Agreement
- d) The Immigration Restriction Act

20. The “ .....” was aimed primarily at combating the perceived “yellow peril” represented by immigrants from neighbouring Asian countries.

- a) Yellow Australia Policy
- b) White Australia Policy
- c) White British Policy
- d) Yellow British Policy

21. ....is the national culture related most closely to Australia. The citizens have special entry rights, and there have been large population flows in both directions.

- a) Britain
- b) China
- c) Japan
- d) New Zealand

22. The cities of Australia are characterised by ..... and dependence on private cars. In recent decades there has been increased inner-city redevelopment aimed at attracting locals and tourists to central public shopping and recreational areas.

- a) high-density housing
- b) low-density housing
- c) middle-density housing
- d) tall-density housing

23. Major development projects of Australia are celebrated as national achievements, especially the ..... and Ord River schemes, which were constructed from the 1950s to the 1970s to bring irrigated water to agricultural areas.

- a) Icy Slopes
- b) Snowy Peaks
- c) Icy Mountains
- d) Snowy Mountains

24. The .....project generates hydroelectric power and is regarded as the nation’s greatest engineering feat.

- a) Icy Slopes
- b) Snowy Peaks
- c) Icy Mountains
- d) Snowy Mountains

25. Before colonisation, Aboriginal peoples were sustained by a diverse range of flora and fauna. The early settlers primarily consumed

meat (at first native animals, later beef and mutton), bread, and vegetables, particularly .....

- a) tomatoes
- b) cucumbers
- c) potatoes
- d) onions

26. Nearly all regularly eaten foods—except seafood— were introduced after ..... settlement in Australia.

- a) European
- b) American
- c) Asian
- d) African

27. However, there have been considerable changes in food preference patterns. In the 1940s .....began to decline, poultry consumption increased dramatically after the 1960s, and there has been a doubling of seafood consumption since the 1930s

- a) meat consumption
- b) fruit consumption
- c) vegetable consumption
- d) bread consumption

28. Since .....the diet has become highly diversified. Each wave of immigrants has had an impact, including German, Italian, Greek, Lebanese, Jewish, and Southeast Asian foods and cooking styles. Olive and vegetable oils have replaced dripping and lard, and items such as garlic and Asian condiments are used more commonly.

- a) World War II
- b) Civil War
- c) World War I
- d) Patriotic War

29. Australian chefs are known worldwide for their “fusion cuisine,” a blending of European cooking

traditions with .....flavors and products.

- a) African
- b) American
- c) Mediterranean
- d) Asian

30. Australians are among the world leaders in ..... consumption. Burger and chicken chain stores are prominent in the suburbs, having displaced the traditional meat pies and fish and chips.

- a) home made
- b) frozen food
- c) fast-food
- d) canned food

31. While Australians were long known as tea drinkers, coffee and ..... have become increasingly popular.

- a) liquor
- b) juice
- c) wine
- d) whiskey

32. Before World War II Australians drank about twenty times more .....than wine; .....consumption remains high, but wine drinking has increased at a much greater rate, and the country has become a significant exporter of wine.

- a) coffee
- b) tea
- c) juice
- d) beer

33. .... is usually celebrated as it is in Britain, with roast turkey, ham, and roast vegetables followed by a steamed fruit pudding. However, there is an increasing tendency to involve a light seafood meal, and barbecues are becoming popular as well.

- a) Easter
- b) New Year
- c) Christmas

d) Boxing Day

34. Instead of pudding, many people have ice cream cakes or cold desserts such as pavlova (made from egg whites and sugar). Some people celebrate “.....,” using the coldest month of the year to enjoy the hot dinner of a traditional Christmas.

- a) Christmas in May
- b) Christmas in August
- c) Christmas in June
- d) Christmas in July

35. After forty years of settlement, when there was little scope for industrial or commercial enterprises, the pastoral industry became a key force in economic development. In particular, growth in the .....was associated with advances in the rest of the economy.

- a) wool industry
- b) silk industry
- c) cotton industry
- d) linen industry

36. .... surpassed wool as the nation’s major export in the 1850s and 1860s, resulting in a rapid expansion of banking and commerce.

- a) silver
- b) bronze
- c) gold
- d) emerald

37. After the war exports consisted mainly of primary commodities such as wool, wheat, coal, and metals. High tariffs and other controls were imposed on most .....

- a) exported goods
- b) imported goods
- c) rented goods
- d) local goods

38. The government continues to be involved in the operation of some public enterprises, including railways,

electricity, and post offices and telecommunications. There remains a government interest in the .....

- a) Bank of England
- b) National Bank
- c) International Bank
- d) Commonwealth Bank

39. Australia is highly integrated into the global capitalist economy. Since World War II, much trade has been redirected from Britain and Europe to the Asia-Pacific region, especially .....

- a) Japan
- b) New Zealand
- c) China
- d) India

40. When the British took control of the continent in 1788, they deemed it terra nullius ( ..... ).

- a) land that was owned
- b) land that was not owned
- c) land that was not captured
- d) land that was captured

41. According to British law all Australian land was the property of the .....

- a) People
- b) Government
- c) Parliament
- d) Crown

42. In the last two decades of the eighteenth century, land grants were made to emancipated convicts, free settlers, marines, and officers. Land was available to anyone prepared to employ and feed the convicts who were assigned to it as .....

- a) owners
- b) slaves
- c) peasants
- d) servants

43. Land is held as freehold (privately owned through purchase),

leasehold (pastoralists and others are given special usage rights for a specified number of years), national parks, and Crown Land, which effectively remains under the control of the .....

- a) church
- b) government
- c) landowners
- d) capitalists

44. In 1992 a new form of rights in land was legally recognised—“.....”—as a form of continuing Aboriginal and islander connection with the land.

- a) “island title”
- b) “land title”
- c) “native title”
- d) “foreign title”

45. To the extent that a system of ..... can be shown to have continued from the time of European establishment of sovereignty, these groups can make claims to their traditional lands.

- a) indigenous customary law
- b) indigenous criminal law
- c) indigenous civil law
- d) indigenous juvenile law

46. The economy is strong in the ..... in relation to goods-producing industries.

- a) agricultural sector
- b) industrial sector
- c) construction sector
- d) service sector

47. Service industries include ..... (wholesale trade, retail trade, accommodation, cafe’s and restaurants, and transport and storage) and communication and business services (communications, finance and insurance, and property services).

- a) manufacturing industries
- b) construction industries
- c) fishing industries
- d) distribution industries

48. In 1996 and 1997, ..... was the most significant sector. Wholesale trade was the only other industry to contribute over 10 percent of GDP

- a) agricultural sector
- b) industrial sector
- c) construction sector
- d) manufacturing sector

49. In order of economic significance, Australia’s current major trading partners include the United States, Japan, China, United Kingdom, Republic of Korea, and New Zealand. Australia is one of the world’s largest exporters of wool, meat, and wheat and a major supplier of sugar, dairy products, fruits, cotton, and .....

- a) samolina
- b) porridge
- c) farina
- d) rice

50. Major ..... imports include passenger motor vehicles, telecommunications equipment, and crude petroleum oils.

- a) Britain’s
- b) France’s
- c) Australia’s
- d) German’s

51. There has been considerable upward socioeconomic mobility in Australia, but there is some inequality in the distribution of work. .... has been a problem in recent years, and for some people only part-time or casual employment is available.

- a) political strikes
- b) stability
- c) employment
- d) unemployment

52. .... is a major problem in some regions of Australia.

- a) Youth unemployment
- b) Youth employment
- c) Adult unemployment
- d) Adult employment

53. Australia is increasingly shifting toward an information economy that relies on a .....

- a) high-skill base
- b) low-skill base
- c) unskilled base
- d) manual-skill base

54. Highly skilled managers, medical practitioners, teachers, computer professionals, and electricians have .....of unemployment in Australia.

- a) the highest risk
- b) no risk
- c) the lowest risk
- d) much risk

55. The three main social classes in Australia are ....., the middle class, and the upper class, but the boundaries between these groups are a matter of debate.

- a) the peasants
- b) the working class
- c) the students
- d) the scientists

56. Australia is a .....based on the British system of government. Federal, state, and territorial elections are held every three or four years.

- a) parliamentary democracy
- b) parliamentary monarchy
- c) constitutional democracy
- d) constitutional monarchy

57. Voting is compulsory at the .....but not at the local government level. There are two houses of the federal and state parliaments except in

Queensland, the Northern Territory, and the Australian Capital Territory.

- a) municipal level
- b) state level
- c) federal level
- d) federal and state levels

58. Core features of the political party system of Australia derive from ..... arrangements that followed the federation of the states into a commonwealth.

- a) early twentieth-century
- b) early ninetieth-century
- c) late twentieth-century
- d) late ninetieth-century

59. There are two major political parties: the Australian Labor Party (ALP) and the ..... The National Party (formerly the Country Party) allies itself with the conservative Liberal Party.

- a) Labour Party
- b) Conservative Party
- c) Communist Party
- d) Liberal Party

60. The large political parties of Australia are the Australian Democrats and the .....

- a) Red Party
- b) Brown Party
- c) Green Party
- d) Blue Party

61. Since federation, the constitution has been changed only reluctantly through referenda. In 1999 there was a vote rejecting the proposition that Australia become ....., ceasing to have an office of governor-general as a representative of the

British monarch and thus as the titular head of state.

- a) a kingdom
- b) a monarchy

- c) a republic
- d) a union

62. Some argue that the society is already a de facto .....since the constitution has entrenched the primacy of popular sovereignty. The British Union Jack on the flag is for some people an acknowledgment of historical ties with Britain, while for others it is a reason to change the constitution to emphasise the independence of the nation.

- a) a kingdom
- b) a monarchy
- c) a republic
- d) a union

63. There are .....of government leadership in Australia: the prime minister in the federal government, the state premiers, and the mayors in local government.

- a) three levels
- b) two levels
- c) four levels
- d) five levels

64. The judicial system of Australia is based on the .....of England.

- a) civil law
- b) criminal law
- c) juvenile law
- d) common law

65. The defense forces operate according to three basic priorities: defeating attacks from outside the country, defending the nation's regional interests, and supporting a global security environment that discourages .....

- a) national aggression
- b) national strikes
- c) international aggression
- d) international peace

66. Australia has a volunteer army reserve but no national service requirement. There is a navy, an army, and an air force. ....of regular service positions are held by women.

- a) Ten percent
- b) Twelve percent
- c) Forty percent
- d) Five percent

67. The Defence Force has been called on frequently, to assist in international security and humanitarian crises in the Middle East, Namibia, and Cambodia as well as in humanitarian crises in Somalia and Rwanda. The most recent military activity has been peacekeeping in .....

- a) China
- b) Yugoslavia
- c) Ukraine
- d) East Timor

68. The ..... also has played a key role in responding to major floods and fires, and its services are called on in search and rescue missions.

- a) Defence Force
- b) Navy
- c) Army
- d) Marine Force

69. The approach to social welfare is based on the notions of ..... for all and egalitarianism.

- a) "a unfair go"
- b) "a fair go"
- c) "a fair walk"
- d) "a unfair walk"

70. A host of social welfare provisions have been enacted throughout the nation's history. Australia was one of the first countries to give women the vote. It also was the first country to legislate a ..... (in 1948).



- a) sixty-six-hour working week
- b) fifty-hour working week
- c) thirty-hour working week
- d) forty-hour working week

71. Most not-for-profit NGOs were created by ..... to meet perceived needs or by community members to deal with a specific problem (Salvation Army, Brotherhood of Saint Lawrence, Care Australia).

- a) amateur organisations
- b) social organisations
- c) religious organisations
- d) trade-union organisations

72. The government encourages the existence of charitable NGOs through tax exemptions and .....of association and incorporation. Often, NGOs are established in response to immediate or emergency social problems.

- a) liberal laws
- b) criminal laws
- c) strict laws
- d) juvenile laws

73. British ideas and practices involving gender were imported with colonization. .... tend to be associated with the private sphere, unpaid work, and the home, while men tend to be associated with the public sphere, paid work, and the larger society.

- a) children
- b) peasants
- c) women
- d) pensioners

74. Traditionally, occupation has been sex-segregated, with .....predominating as domestics and in the “caring professions,” such as teaching and nursing.

- a) children
- b) men
- c) women
- d) pensioners

75. Many areas of social, economic, political, and religious life remain gendered, generally to the disadvantage of .....

- a) children
- b) men
- c) women
- d) pensioners

76. ....right to vote in federal elections was included in the constitution of 1901.

- a) women’s
- b) men’s
- c) pensioner’s
- d) employer’s

77. Nevertheless, the progress of .....in entering public office was slow. In 1995 their representation in local, state and federal government was around 20 percent.

- a) children
- b) men
- c) women
- d) pensioners

78. Divorce has been readily available since 1975 and involves little stigma. It requires a .....-year separation period and occurs in approximately 40 percent of first marriages.

- a) one
- b) two
- c) half a
- d) five

79. If an individual in Australia dies without a valid will, the property is distributed to the spouse, then the children of the deceased, and then the parents and other kin. If there are no

relatives, the property goes to the  
.....

- a) church
- b) government
- c) Crown
- d) mayor

80. In the past the values most prized in children in Australia were .....and deference, but today good parenting is commonly associated with having assertive and independent children.

- a) obedience
- b) disobedience
- c) honesty
- d) self-confidence

81. There are no formal initiation ceremonies for the “national culture,” in Australia although the .....often is celebrated as a rite of passage into adulthood.

- a) sixteenth birthday
- b) eighteenth birthday
- c) twentieth birthday
- d) twenty-first birthday

82. Access to high-quality education is considered the right of all citizens of Australia, and the government provides compulsory primary and secondary schooling for children between ages .....

- a) six and fifteen
- b) four and fourteen
- c) five and sixteen
- d) three and seventeen

83. Most schools in Australia are fully funded by the government. The remainder are nongovernment schools that receive nearly half their funding from fees and private sources such as .....

- a) municipalities
- b) social communities
- c) social associations

d) religious associations

84. Attendance at nongovernment schools in Australia has been increasing since the 1970s because it is felt that independent schooling provides better educational and employment opportunities. Preschool centers are available for children younger than age .....

- a) three
- b) six
- c) five
- d) seven

85. Australian nongovernment schools are mainly ..... Education is aimed at providing children with social and workplace skills.

- a) Protestant
- b) Buddhist
- c) Catholic
- d) Orthodox

86. A predominant image among Australians is that they are very casual, easygoing, and familiar. .... are used commonly as terms of address.

- a) First names
- b) Middle names
- c) Second names
- d) Last names

87. In Australia a ..... is the most common way to greet a new acquaintance, and a hug, a kiss on the cheek, or a verbal greeting the most common way to greet a friend. The colloquialism, “g’day” (good day), is considered the quintessential greeting.

- a) smile
- b) armshake
- c) bow
- d) handshake

88. Eye contact during conversation is considered .....among the general population;

averting the eyes during conversation is considered a sign of respect among Aboriginal people of Australia.

- a) polite
- b) impolite
- c) rude
- d) offensive

89. The constitution guarantees religious freedom, and while there is no official national religion, Australia generally is described as a

.....country.

- a) Atheist
- b) Protestant
- c) Buddhist
- d) Christian

90. British colonists brought the Anglican belief system in 1788, and three-quarters of the population continues to identify with some form of Christianity, predominantly the Catholic and ..... faiths.

- a) Anglican
- b) Protestant
- c) Buddhist
- d) Orthodox

91. Extensive immigration has made .....one of the most religiously diverse societies in the world. Almost all faiths are represented, with significant numbers of Muslims, Buddhists, Jews, and Hindus. Many indigenous Australians have embraced Christianity, often as a result of their contact with missionaries and missions.

- a) New Zealand
- b) China
- c) Australia
- d) Britain

92. Religious alternatives such as spiritualism and Theosophy have had a small but steady presence since the 1850s. A growing set of beliefs is

represented by the so-called ..... , which arrived in the 1960s and evolved into the widespread alternative health and spirituality movement of the 1990s.

- a) Old Age movement
- b) New Century movement
- c) New Millennium movement
- d) New Age movement

93. There has been .....in regular church attendance among the younger generation of Christians, who tend to be critical of church policy and practice in Australia.

- a) a decline
- b) an increase
- c) an interval
- d) an acceleration

94. Most medical health care in Australia is subsidized or paid for by the ....., for which a small levy is paid by all citizens.

- a) government
- b) church
- c) municipality
- d) social organisations

95. In Australia public hospitals often provide free services. People can select a private general practitioner, usually in their neighborhood. The general practitioner provides referrals to specialist doctors where necessary, and payment is usually .....

- a) free
- b) on a fee-out- service basis.
- c) on a fee-for- service basis
- d) unpaid

96. Increasing numbers of people combine Western medicine with traditional and New Age practices. This may include Chinese herbalists, iridology, and homeopathic medicine. These alternative forms of medical

treatment generally are not subsidized by the .....

- a) government
- b) church
- c) municipality
- d) state

97. The ..... provides emergency medical assistance to those in remote areas. It was founded in 1928 and is funded by government and public donations. The service also provides emergency assistance during floods and fires.

- a) Royal Flying Doctor Service
- b) Royal Air Doctor Service
- c) Royal Marine Doctor Service
- d) Royal Navy Doctor Service

98. Probably the most significant national secular celebration in Australia is Anzac Day on 25 April. This is a public holiday that commemorates the Australia and New Zealand Army Corps landing at Gallipoli in ..... in 1915.

- a) Britain
- b) Germany
- c) Turkey
- d) Iran

99. On Remembrance Day ( ..... ), which is not a public holiday in Australia, a two-minute silence is observed in remembrance of Australians who fought and died in wars.

- a) 30 December
- b) 11 November
- c) 9 May
- d) 15 August

100. Australia Day is celebrated on ..... to commemorate British settlement, and many capital cities host a fireworks event.

- a) 26 January
- b) 26 June

- c) 26 September
- d) 1 September

101. Boxing Day occurs on ..... . The Boxing Day cricket test match is an annual event watched on television by many residents. The day also is treated as an opportunity to extend Christmas socialising, with many barbecues taking place in public parks or at private homes.

- a) 26 December
- b) 26 June
- c) 26 September
- d) 1 September

102. Labour Day is a public holiday to commemorate improved working conditions and the implementation of the .....workday. It is celebrated

at different times of the year in different states in Australia.

- a) eight-hour
- b) nine-hour
- c) ten-hour
- d) seven-hour

103. A significant celebration occurs in Australia on Melbourne Cup Day, an annual .....in Melbourne. Many people attending the race dress formally, and employees in workplaces gather to watch the event on television.

- a) yacht event
- b) car-racing event
- c) tennis event
- d) horse-racing event

104. In Australia New Year's Day and New Year's Eve are celebrated. Royal Easter Shows and Royal Show Days with .....are held in capital cities with exhibits, competitions, and sideshows highlighting the rural tradition.

- a) annual agricultural shows

- b) annual industrial shows
- c) monthly agricultural shows
- d) monthly industrial shows

105. On ....., the annual finals to the national Australian Rules and Rugby League football competitions, large crowds gather to watch the game and friends congregate to watch it on television in homes and public bars.

- a) Great Final Days
- b) Grand Final Weeks
- c) Grand Final Months
- d) Grand Final Days

106. Most states of Australia have public holidays to commemorate the founding of the ....., and there are annual arts festivals that attract local, national, and international artists as well as multicultural festivals. Some states have wine festivals.

- a) first local colony
- b) first city
- c) first state
- d) first municipality

107. In Australia most people who participate in the arts depend on other professions for their primary income. Full-time arts practitioners are usually highly dependent on .....

- a) social funding
- b) church funding
- c) charity funding
- d) government funding

108. The ..... funds artistic activity, provides incomes to arts workers and projects, and is the primary source of income for dance and theater.

- a) Australia Union
- b) Australia Board
- c) Australia Society
- d) Australia Council

109. The film and television industries in Australia receive

substantial .....support and tax incentives. There is government funding for schools of the performing arts.

- a) municipal
- b) regional
- c) government
- d) charity

110. Since the 1890s a national literature has been developing with a distinctly Australian voice. This tradition, which is focused largely on the .....as a mythic place in the Australian imagination, has been challenged recently by a new suburban focus for literature.

- a) tree
- b) bush
- c) branch
- d) plant

111. Increasingly, Aboriginal and other authors from diverse cultural backgrounds are having work published and appreciated. Australian authors have won many international awards, and Australians are claimed to be one of the leading nations in per capita spending on books and .....

- a) newspapers
- b) booklets
- c) magazines
- d) ads

112. Painting in Australia was dominated by the .....for many years, with landscapes painted to resemble their European counterparts until at least 1850.

- a) European tradition
- b) Asian tradition
- c) American tradition
- d) African tradition

113. The Heidelberg school was influential in the late nineteenth century. Social-realist images of

immigrants and the working class were favored as more “ ... ” by 1950.

- a) Australian
- b) British
- c) Irish
- d) English

114. Since 1945, images of the isolated outback have been popularized by artists such as Russell Drysdale and Sydney Nolan. Aboriginal artists were acknowledged in 1989 with a comprehensive display of their art in the ..... Their work is becoming increasingly successful internationally.

- a) Australian National Society
- b) Australian Interational Gallery
- c) Australian National Gallery
- d) Aboriginal National Gallery

115. Each .....in Australia has at least one major performing arts venue. Playwrights have been successful in presenting Australian society to theatergoers. Indigenous performance has been supported by a number of theater and dance companies since the early 1980s.

- a) village
- b) city
- c) town
- d) state capital

116. The styles of music, dance, drama, and oratory vary significantly, reflecting the multicultural mix of the Australian society. Annual festivals of arts in the states showcase local and international work and are well attended, in particular by the well educated and the .....

- a) unemployed
- b) poor
- c) wealthy
- d) enslaved

117. In Australia ..... is the most popular performance art, attracting large audiences.

- a) circus
- b) ballet
- c) music
- d) modern dances

118. Australian .....is more successful than symphony and chamber music.

- a) pop music
- b) dance music
- c) piano music
- d) ballet

119. Funding of sciences in Australia is provided by a combination of government and ..... Most universities provide scientific programs.

- a) agriculture
- b) industry
- c) chemistry
- d) coal-mining

120. Australian ..... are not as well funded mainly because they tend not to produce marketable outcomes. Nevertheless, there is a strong representation in disciplines such as psychology, history, economics, sociology, and anthropology in universities.

- a) natural sciences
- b) pedagogical sciences
- c) law sciences
- d) social sciences

## NEW ZEALAND

Choose the right variants a, b, c or d:

1. Although it is around the size of ....., New Zealand's population is just over four million, making it one of the world's least populated countries.
  - a) China
  - b) Italy
  - c) Japan
  - d) Korea
2. In 1893, New Zealand became the first country to give women .....
  - a) the right to medical care
  - b) the right to work
  - c) the right to education
  - d) the right to vote
3. Sir Edmund Hillary, the first person to climb ..... in 1953, was a New Zealander.
  - a) Mount Jamalungma
  - b) Mount Everest
  - c) Mount Hoverla
  - d) Mount Pamirs
4. Baron Ernest Rutherford, the first person in the world ..... in 1919, was also a New Zealander.
  - a) to split the atom
  - b) to invent the radio
  - c) to invent the Internet
  - d) to split the core
5. While ..... remains the most popular spectator sport in New Zealand, golf is the most popular participation sport, with more golf courses in New Zealand per capita of population, than any other country in the world.
  - a) Basketball
  - b) Tennis
  - c) Football
  - d) Rugby
6. Auckland also has the largest number of ..... per capita than any other city in the world.
  - a) cars
  - b) vehicles
  - c) boats
  - d) houses
7. New Zealand has won more Olympic ..... per capita, than any other country.
  - a) silver medals
  - b) bronze medals
  - c) cups
  - d) gold medals
8. New Zealand is also home to the world's only flightless ....., the Kakapo.
  - a) toucan
  - b) sparrow
  - c) parrot
  - d) eagle
9. The most popular New Zealand films include ....., ....., ..... and the 'Lord of the Rings' trilogy (choose the wrong variant).
  - a) 'Once were Warriors'
  - b) 'The Whale Rider'
  - c) 'The Horse Rider'
  - d) 'The Piano'
10. Here's a really good reason to visit New Zealand – there are no ..... in the country!
  - a) lizards
  - b) frogs
  - c) snakes
  - d) alligators
11. There are also no ..... in New Zealand.
  - a) nuclear power stations
  - b) wind mills
  - c) wind stations
  - d) solar stations
12. The Maori name for New Zealand is 'Aotearoa'. It means .....

a) "the land of the short white cloud"

b) "the land of the long grey cloud"

c) "the land of the long blue cloud"

d) "the land of the long white cloud"

13. Another great reason to live in New Zealand if you love surfing and other water sports is that nowhere in New Zealand is more than ..... from the coast.

a) 120 km

b) 220km

c) 300km

d) 320km

14. A kiwi is not a fruit – it is New Zealand's native flightless bird and a slang term for a New Zealander. Kiwis call the fruit "kiwifruit" – they are also known as .....

a) Japanese Gooseberries.

b) Chinese Gooseberries.

c) Chinese Strawberries.

d) Japanese Strawberries.

15. New Zealand was the first major nation to have ..... . In 1893 it became legal for all male and female citizens of New Zealand to vote.

a) free education

b) free medical care

c) universal suffrage

d) universal treatment

16. New Zealand was first discovered by Europeans in 1642 when .....Abel Tasman arrived. He left New Zealand after several of his crew were killed by Maoris, and it was not until 1769 that English Captain James Cook arrived and mapped the land.

a) Dutch tradesman

b) Dutch sailor

c) German sailor

d) Spanish tradesman

17. Queen Elizabeth II is officially Queen of New Zealand. She is represented in New Zealand by a ..... , who ratifies all laws put before him or her by the elected parliament of New Zealand.

a) Knight

b) Lord Mayor

c) Prime Minister

d) Governor General

18. New Zealand is one of only three countries that have two official (and of equal standing) national Anthems. The first is God Save the Queen (the English National Anthem) and the other is God Defend New Zealand. The other two countries with two anthems are Denmark and ..... which both have a Royal Anthem and a State anthem.

a) Canada

b) the USA

c) Austria

d) Germany

19. When the Europeans arrived in New Zealand, it was already inhabited by the ..... people – Eastern polynesian settlers who arrived some time between 800 and 1300. Oral tradition says that they came from a place named Hawaiki; its location is unknown. The very strong linguistic connection to Cook Island Maori might suggest that they originated from that region of the Pacific.

a) Pakeha

b) Maori

c) Indian

d) Korean

20. New Zealand was the first country to have its three top positions



of power held simultaneously by .....  
: The Prime Minister (Helen Clark), the  
Governor General (Dame Silvia  
Cartwright), and the Chief Justice (Sian  
Elias).

- a) Foreigners
- b) Natives
- c) Men
- d) Women

21. New Zealand has a strong  
hold on the international trade in  
sheep ..... There are presently  
around 9 sheep to every 1 human in  
New Zealand (the population of New  
Zealand is 4 million).

- a) wool
- b) fur
- c) leather
- d) meat

22. Wellington, the Capital City of  
New Zealand is the .....city in the  
world.

- a) easternmost capital
- b) northernmost capital
- c) southernmost capital
- d) westernmost capital

23. New Zealand was forced out  
of the ANZUS (Australia, New Zealand,  
United States) alliance in the 1980s  
when it outlawed nuclear arms and  
power. To this day, there are no  
nuclear power stations in New  
Zealand, and a change of law would be  
required before one could be built.  
New Zealand retains its military ties  
with .....

- a) the USA
- b) the United Kingdom
- c) Australia
- d) Japan

24. Lake Taupo (one of New  
Zealand's most popular tourist  
destinations) was the source of the  
largest known .....in the world in the

last 70 thousand years. It had a  
Volcanic Explosivity Index of 8. It  
released over 530 cubic kilometers of  
magma.

- a) earthquakes
- b) floods
- c) eruptions
- d) fires

25. New Zealander and Nobel  
Prize Winner, Ernest Rutherford is  
known as the father of nuclear  
.....for his orbital theory of the atom.

- a) chemistry
- b) astronomy
- c) physics
- d) geology

26. Sir Edmund Hillary – the first  
man to reach the peak of Mount  
.....was a New Zealander (born in  
Auckland) and his face is on the New  
Zealand \$5 bill.

- a) Everest
- b) Pamirs
- c) Hoverla
- d) Jamalungma

27. Originally discovered by  
Polynesians between 1200 and 1300  
C.E., the country was settled by  
.....("the people") and areas were  
named after the iwi (tribes).

- a) Pakeha
- b) Maori
- c) Indians
- d) English

28. In 1642, the Dutchman Abel  
Tasman named the land Staten Island.  
This was soon changed to Nieuw  
Zeeland, after Zeeland in .....  
Tasman was attacked and never  
landed, but in 1769, James Cook  
claimed sovereignty for George III of  
England.

- a) Austria.
- b) Denmark.

c) Germany.

d) Holland.

29. The commonly accepted

Māori name for the country is Aotearoa ..... . Some believe it was given by the early Polynesian navigator Kupe, but it came into widespread use only in the late 19th century.

a) ('land of the long grey cloud')

b) ('land of the long white cloud')

c) ('land of the long blue cloud')

d) ('country of the long white cloud')

30. There are also Māori names for both the North Island and the South Island, most commonly Te Ika a Māui (the fish of Māui) and Te Wai Pounamu ( ..... ).

a) whitestone waters

b) bluestone waters

c) sandstone waters

d) greenstone waters

31. Extensive European settlement did not begin until 1840, and New Zealand remained a Maori culture. .... from the United States and Britain frequently sailed New Zealand waters, married or had children with Maori women, and introduced trappings of Euro-American culture, especially muskets.

a) Whalers

b) Tradesmen

c) Craftsmen

d) Soldiers

32. In the 1860s, .....was discovered, bringing Chinese miners from Australia as well as China and Hong Kong. The Chinese have remained, though they now are chiefly market gardeners and cafe' owners and professionals.

a) coal

b) gold

c) silver

d) marble

33. Business and banking were supported by a Jewish population. Other minorities who have retained much of their culture are ..... , ..... , ..... , and Dutch(choose the wrong variant).

a) Polish

b) Lebanese

c) German

d) Yugoslav

34. New Zealand is in the southwest Pacific Ocean and has three main islands— ..... , ..... , and ..... —separated by the Cook Strait and the Foveaux Strait. Several other islands are under New Zealand's jurisdiction(choose the wrong variant).

a) North

b) South

c) West

d) Stewart

35. In 1996, the population was 3,681,546, including 2,749,980 on the North Island and 931,566 on South Island. .... are urban dwellers, with Auckland, the largest city, approaching one million in population.

a) 85 percent

b) 15 percent

c) 40 percent

d) 10 percent

36. Eighty percent of the population is of European origin, mainly from the United Kingdom, ....., ....., ....., Germany, Sweden, and Austria; 14.5 percent claim Maori descent; and the remainder are Pacific Islanders(choose the wrong variant).

a) Holland

- b) Yugoslavia
- c) Poland
- d) Norway

37. Along with descendants of the Chinese, recent immigrants have come from southeast .....

- a) Asia
- b) Africa
- c) America
- d) Australia

38. The official language is ....., but all government institutions and some private ones use Maori as well.

- a) French
- b) German
- c) English
- d) Spanish

39. A national flag, coat of arms, and anthem are important symbols. Other symbols tend to be commercial or cultural and are of .....

- a) Maori origin
- b) Pakeha origin
- c) British origin
- d) Chinese origin

40. The national airline has a stylized Koru ( ..... ), all the national sports teams have a ....., the feathered cloak of a Maori chief is used on ceremonial occasions, and haka is performed before international rugby matches.

- a) oak leaf
- b) palm leaf
- c) birch leaf
- d) fern leaf

41. The Coat of Arms of New Zealand is regarded as the official symbol of New Zealand and was initially granted by .....on 26th August 1911.

- a) King Alfred
- b) King Thomas VI
- c) King George V

d) King Harold II

42. Since 1911, the central shield has not been changed. The golden fleece stands for the farming industry, while a ..... representing agriculture and the two hammers correspond to the mining activities and industrial development.

- a) wheat sheaf
- b) corn sheaf
- c) oat sheaf
- d) rye sheaf

43. Since 1911, the central shield has not been changed. The golden fleece stands for the farming industry, while a wheat sheaf representing agriculture and the ..... correspond to the mining activities and industrial development.

- a) two hammers
- b) two swords
- c) two axes
- d) two screws

44. A recent addition to the Coat of Arms of New Zealand is that the shield is supported by two ..... on both sides of it holding the flag of New Zealand, and a warrior of Maori tribe having a taiaha.

- a) sailors
- b) soldiers
- c) men
- d) women

45. The Flag of New Zealand bears striking similarity with Union Flag. It has ..... with a white border. The stars represent the configuration of Crux, referred to as the Southern Cross, in New Zealand.

- a) four red stars
- b) five red stars
- c) four white stars
- d) ten white stars

46. "God Defend New Zealand" was written in 1870 by Thomas Bracken, and music was composed by John Joseph Woods. Due to its increasing popularity in the 19th and 20th century, it was finally adapted as one of the national anthems of the country through .....

- a) a civil procedure
- b) a military procedure
- c) a legal procedure
- d) a diplomatic procedure

47. Different scientific variations have been observed on the behavior of Kiwi after lots of research work. They also form an important part of rich traditional customs of New Zealand where nature is worshipped and apprehended as .....

- a) great gift of King
- b) great gift of God
- c) great gift of Queen
- d) great gift of Tsar

48. Kiwi is a national symbol and icon of New Zealand. The name of the bird – Kiwi comes from the language of Maori (indigenous NZ people). It means “ .....

- a) golden bird
- b) hidden bird
- c) flightless bird
- d) night bird

49. Kiwi appeared as a symbol for the first time in the middle of the 19 century when it is pictured on New Zealand .....

- a) coins
- b) regimental badges
- c) banknotes
- d) stamps

50. Kiwis are one of the most ancient and unique birds in the world. Their natural habitat is the forests and

jungles of New Zealand. Kiwi is the only bird, which does not have a .....

- a) Wings
- b) Beak
- c) Tail
- d) Feathers

51. Furthermore during its evolution it lost its wings and thus the ability to fly. In comparison with other birds, it has a very acute ....., but not so well developed vision.

- a) Sense of smell
- b) Sense of taste
- c) Eyesight
- d) Loud voice

52. The Kiwi's egg can weigh up to 450 gr. (16 oz), which is almost .....of the average weight of an adult female Kiwi bird.

- a) 1/3
- b) 1/4
- c) 1/5
- d) 1/10

53. Maori have a commemorative and oral history whose major instrument of record is the genealogy (whakapapa), which is recorded in the structure of the marae (meeting house) and in the moko (tattoo) worn by many Maori. Maori history features ties with ancestors and with .....

- a) the sea
- b) the stars
- c) the land
- d) the jungles

54. In 1819, east coast North Island tribes raided the west coast tribes. In 1820, the chief Hongi Hiki visited England, and secured muskets and ammunition. Upon his return, there began the ..... on South Island.

- a) "Rifle Wars"
- b) "Musket Wars"

c) "Sword Wars"

d) "Tribal Wars"

55. In 1975, the Waitangi Tribunal was established to hear claims of abuse of the treaty. Many claims have resulted in ....., ....., ....., and the handing over of businesses to Maori (choose the wrong variant).

a) return of houses

b) return of land

c) cash compensation

d) restoration of rights to natural resources

56. In the 1840s, there were fierce battles between Maori and Europeans. Although the British had an advantage in arms, Maori had an advantage in tactics,

and their pa (fortresses) of earth and wooden palisades ..... artillery shells.

a) dissolved

b) resisted

c) pushed

d) absorbed

57. In 1854, the first General Assembly opened and ..... was appointed. In 1856, Henry Sewell became the first prime minister. Wars broke

out again in the 1860s on North Island, but they were quickly suppressed.

a) the first president

b) the first governor

c) the first mayor

d) the first prime minister

58. In 1865, the capital was transferred from ..... to Wellington, which was considered more central.

a) Hamilton

b) Dunedin

c) New Plymouth

d) Auckland

59. Intermarriage between ..... and Maori has been common since the first contact. New Zealand used to boast that it was completely without racial prejudice.

a) Asians

b) Europeans

c) Africans

d) Americans

60. Pacific Islanders living in New Zealand include Cook Islanders, Samoans, Tongans, Tokelauans, Fijians, and Niueans. Basically, they see themselves as being in New Zealand temporarily to earn money ....., but many remain permanently.

a) to send their children to school

b) to buy new cars

c) to buy new houses

d) to return home

61. Pacific Islanders tend to be concentrated in and around Auckland and Wellington. They are ghettoized and cling to their ..... and cultural ways—Polynesian but not identical to each other or to Maori.

a) Christian views

b) Catholic views

c) Muslim views

d) Buddhist views

62. The recent high-profile immigration of Asians, many of them wealthy, has been accompanied by some .....

a) ethnic aggression

b) ethnic division

c) ethnic development

d) ethnic tension

63. Gang organisation is a feature of the culture. The Mongrel Mob, Black Power, and the Nomads are the three prominent Maori gangs. ...., ....., .....

and ..... are the chief ritual objects(choose the wrong variant).

- a) leather jackets
- b) T-shirts
- c) patches
- d) motorcycles

64. State housing provided a standardised bungalow-style house often made of brick and rented to ..... . These houses have been privatized.

- a) high-income families
- b) aristocrats
- c) craftsmen
- d) low-income families

65. The only distinctive style of architecture is the Maori marae. Its elaborately ..... represent origin myths and genealogies. There, a communal sleeping area, and a strict etiquette of greeting, precedence, speechmaking, and farewell is preserved.

- a) carved metals
- b) painted pictures
- c) carved timbers
- d) made manuscripts

66. As Europeans have become fifth-generation descendants, it has become increasingly important to them to represent their .....

- a) kings
- b) ancestors
- c) celebrities
- d) scientists

67. Both Maori and Pakeha households are not complete without ..... . Contemporary marae architecture derives from the elaborately carved storehouses and chiefs' houses of earlier times.

- a) pictures of significant ancestors
- b) carvings of tribes chiefs
- c) coin engravings

d) landscapes of the island

68. New Zealanders try to have a hideaway cabin by the lake, the sea, or the stream. In North Island, this is known as a bach; in the South Island, as a crib.

There is usually no running water or .....

- a) gas
- b) central heating
- c) electricity
- d) air conditioning

69. Before 1975, the diet was based on meat, potatoes, temperate climate vegetables in season (cabbage, peas, beans, carrots, spinach, cauliflower, and broccoli), bread, fruits in season, dairy products, and fish.

..... was a restaurant delicacy, and the favorite fast food was the meat pie.

- a) Turkey
- b) Pork
- c) Beef
- d) Chicken

70. Beverages were tea and ..... . Since 1975, the cuisine has opened up to include a range of tropical and subtropical fruits, vegetables, and spices. It has taken advantage of its Mediterranean climate to produce wine.

- a) Beer
- b) Wine
- c) Juice
- d) Brandy

71. New Zealand is an exporter of dairy, meat, fish, and fruit products, which now include processed foods such as ....., deer velvet, venison, smoked and pickled seafood, ....., and ..... (choose the wrong variant)

- a) wine
- b) brandy
- c) cheeses

d) yogurt

72. Reforms in the 1980s encouraged a reduction in the ..... because of the weakening of the European and British markets for primary produce.

- a) production sector
- b) farming sector
- c) manufacturing sector
- d) service sector

73. Motor car assembly and ..... (especially electrical and electronic appliances) are the basis of the industrial sector.

- a) heavy industry
- b) mining industry
- c) light engineering
- d) food producing industry

74. Under a clause in the Treaty of Waitangi, the Crown had the exclusive right to extinguish Maori title .....

- a) in sea
- b) in mining
- c) in heavy industry
- d) in land

75. The Crown had a monopoly over land purchases while bestowing title to land valid in English common law. The Crown became the largest .....

- a) gold exporter
- b) wheat exporter
- c) landowner
- d) bankowner

76. In Maori land tenure, tribal boundaries were defined by the putative area settled and utilized by the ....., modified by wars and invasions.

- a) ancestors
- b) parents
- c) relatives
- d) children

77. The purchase of Maori land by the government created further fragmentation, and the Waitangi Tribunal has been set up to hear claims for .....

- a) independence
- b) freedom
- c) inslavery
- d) compensation

78. The sense of belonging to one area, the region of the ancestors, still is strong and is finding echoes among the Pakeha. Having reached a ..... of settlement, many families see themselves centered in the areas where they first arrived; as Maori have tribal hui (gatherings), Europeans have family reunions.

- a) 2nd generation
- b) 3rd generation
- c) 5th generation
- d) 4th generation

79. New Zealand is a primary producer and exporter of ....., ....., ....., hides, fish and aquatic invertebrates, wood, fruit, aluminum, and fuels. Tourism is a growing industry (choose the wrong variant).

- a) meat
- b) dairy products
- c) cotton
- d) wool

80. Wood converted to wood chips is exported for ....., Imported parts are assembled as automobiles and electrical and electronic goods. Chemicals are processed for fertilizers.

- a) handicrafts
- b) wooden houses
- c) furniture
- d) newsprint

81. The primary export markets are ....., ....., ....., Russia, Australia, Taiwan, and China. Markets

are being developed in the Middle East (Saudi Arabia) and Southeastern Asia (Malaysia and Indonesia).(choose the wrong variant)

- a) the United States
- b) the United Kingdom
- c) Ukraine
- d) Japan

82. New Zealand no longer is considered a welfare state in which all are ..... Ethnic (Maori, Pacific Islander) poverty is evident in slum areas of the large cities, but there are also poor Pakeha.

- a) happy
- b) equal
- c) united
- d) satisfied

83. New Zealand is a member of the British Commonwealth, and the sovereign is represented by a .....

- a) prime minister
- b) governor general
- c) Queen
- d) King

84. Within the Commonwealth, New Zealand is autonomous and is governed by a .....with one hundred twenty elected members of parliament from six political parties.

- a) Congress
- b) Senate
- c) House of Representatives
- d) House of Commons

85. The national government is divided between executive (elected) and administrative officers. It is headed by a ....., twenty cabinet ministers, and several ministers outside the cabinet.

- a) prime minister
- b) governor general
- c) Queen
- d) King

86. The Privy Council in London is the final court of appeal but may deliver only an opinion, not a judgment. The ..... Court of Appeal is the highest national appeals court.

- a) Great Britain
- b) Australia
- c) New Zealand
- d) Ireland

87. Community law centers, originally set up by ....., give legal advice to those who cannot afford lawyers. There are also victim support groups.

- a) barristers
- b) solicitors
- c) judges
- d) law students

88. The armed forces are small and participate in peacekeeping exercises under United Nations or other multinational auspices or independently, including regional training search and rescue operations, fisheries protection, ....., ....., and .....(choose the wrong variant).

- a) Antarctic support
- b) Mediterranean support
- c) hydrographic survey
- d) disaster relief

89. Numerous ..... supported by individual donations or corporate profits fund community activities from bagpiping to creche care. There are neighborhood watch organisations. School boards serve voluntarily.

- a) charitable trusts
- b) celebrities
- c) government offices
- d) political parties

90. The Ministry of Women's Affairs seeks to enforce equal opportunity legislation. Shearing gangs are traditionally ..... (male



shearers/female sorters), and trades and occupations are becoming less gender-based.

- a) male
- b) female
- c) mixed
- d) youth

91. Except in Muslim, Hindu and a few Chinese groups, marriages are entered into by mutual choice.

Marriage may be conducted by ..... , ..... , or ..... (choose the wrong variant).

- a) a celebrant
- b) a Church priest
- c) a government official
- d) a vicar

92. Parental consent is required if a partner is ..... . De facto relationships are officially recognised for inheritance and benefit purposes.

- a) under 18 years of age
- b) under 21 years of age
- c) under 20 years of age
- d) under 16 years of age

93. The only ground for divorce is irreconcilable breakdown, signaled by the two parties living separately for ..... . Traditional weddings are still in evidence, but more people plan their own, and minorities hew to their traditional forms.

- a) three years
- b) five years
- c) one year
- d) two years

94. Primary, intermediate, and high school are based on a ..... , with uniforms from the intermediate level on and a prefect system with a head boy responsible for discipline. There are co-ed and single-sex schools. Obedience and being able to “take it” are still prized male values.

- a) American model
- b) British model
- c) Australian model
- d) Japanese model

95. The sacred feature of the Maori is the ..... and so touching it is avoided. In the marae, the hongī (touching of noses) is the accepted greeting. Otherwise the handshake, the hug, and the cheek kiss are used, depending on the degree of intimacy.

- a) head
- b) stomach
- c) forehead
- d) arm

96. A Maori ..... (tangī) takes place in the marae and is a mixture of festivity and grief. Christians believe in a heaven for the afterlife (and a hell if Fundamentalist). Maori ancestors dwell after death in the ancestral lands and are the reference point for political and economic as well as spiritual life.

- a) engagement
- b) celebration
- c) wedding
- d) funeral

97. The Montana Book Awards are a national competition for all categories of ..... . Many authors have international reputations and have been winners of overseas competitions. There is a large collection in the national and city libraries of rare European manuscripts as well as private collections.

- a) crafts
- b) arts
- c) writing
- d) painting

98. Cities such as Dunedin have state-of-the-art public art galleries. All forms of graphic arts are practiced,

and a national style has emerged, blending Maori and ..... elements. Training in traditional Maori carving has been widely taken up.

- a) Pakeha
- b) European
- c) American
- d) Australian

99. All universities and some polytechnics teach the social sciences. .... are increasingly employed by government and private agencies and firms dealing with or employing multicultural districts and workforces.

- a) Psychologists
- b) Politologists
- c) Social scientists
- d) Economic scientisis

100. Private consultants carry out “social impact” studies of new industrial, agricultural, and developmental projects. .... have a direct input into economic policy.

- a) Economists
- b) Politicians
- c) Sociologists
- d) Psychologists

101. Wellington is home to many museums, theatres and arts festivals, including ....., ..... , and the biennial Festival of the Arts.

a) Te Papa Tongarewa (the Museum of New Zealand)  
b) New Zealand Symphony Orchestra

- c) Royal New Zealand Ballet
- d) Royal New Zealand Opera

102. After the fire, Westminster served as the home of Parliament, which had been meeting there since the thirteenth century, and the seat of the Royal Courts of Justice, based ..... and ..... Westminster Hall.

- a) under

- b) in
- c) around
- d) above

103. Wellington is a leading centre for creative industries, such as .....and ....., and it is the home of the New Zealand Stock Exchange (NZX).

- a) theatre
- b) film
- c) arts
- d) computer technology

104. The .....is central Wellington’s oldest identified building and was built in 1858 as a family home by William Wallis, who had just immigrated from .....

- a) Colonial Cottage
- b) Colonial Castle
- c) France
- d) England

105. .... is home to the innovative Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa, and is famed for its public art trails and .....

- a) Melbourne
- b) Wellington
- c) Bohemian lifestyle
- d) Australian lifestyle

106. The work of filmmaker Peter Jackson and Oscar-winning Weta Workshop has taken Wellington to the world and the world to Wellington, through movies like ....., ..... and .....

- a) Avatar
- b) Robin Hood
- c) The Lord of the Rings
- d) The Hobbit

107. One of the jewels in Wellington’s art crown is City Gallery in Civic Square, which offers a programme of contemporary ....., ..... and .....

- a) ancient coins

- b) visual arts
- c) architecture
- d) design

108 Located in the heart of Civic Square, City Gallery Wellington offers world-class exhibitions of contemporary ..... and .....

- a) New Zealand art
- b) international art
- c) New Zealand software
- d) national art

109. .... and .....in Wellington have a great collection of boutique dealer galleries, while you'll find something more edgy in the Cuba Street precinct.

- a) Featherston
- b) Victoria Streets
- c) Downing Street
- d) Wall Street

110. .... has a vibrant local music scene and has produced leading New Zealand .....such as Fat Freddy's Drop and The Black Seeds.

- a) Wellington
- b) Sydney
- c) bands
- d) teams

111. The Wellington .....consists of a series of 19 text sculptures located along Wellington's beautiful ..... . Each one contains a quotation about the city from a poem or piece of prose by one of the many talented writers who have made Wellington their home at some point in their lives.

- a) Writers Walk
- b) Poets Walk
- c) port
- d) harbour

112. The Wellington .....is a funicular railway in Wellington, New Zealand between Lambton Quay, the

main ....., and Kelburn, a suburb in the hills overlooking the central city.

- a) Cable Coach
- b) Cable Car
- c) shopping street
- d) business street

113. Wellington Zoo is a significant contributor to conservation efforts including breeding programs for endangered species such as the .....and....., as well as spreading conservation and sustainability messages to the wider community.

- a) Sun Bear
- b) Polar Bear
- c) Sumatran lion
- d) Sumatran tiger

114. ....is a leading centre for creative industries, such as film and computer technology, and it is the home of the New Zealand Stock Exchange (NZX).

- a) Wellington
- b) Melbourne
- c) Canberra
- d) Sydney

115. Cruise tourism to ..... is experiencing a major boom, in line with nationwide development. The 2010/11 season saw 125,000 passengers and crew visit the city on 60 liners.

- a) Wellington
- b) Melbourne
- c) Canberra
- d) Sydney

116. The Colonial Cottage is central ..... oldest identified building and was built in 1858 as a family home by William Wallis, who had just immigrated from England.

- a) Wellington's
- b) Melbourne's
- c) Canberra's

d) Sydney's

117. The Colonial Cottage is central Wellington's oldest identified building and was built in 1858 as a family home by William Wallis, who had just immigrated from .....

- a) the USA
- b) France
- c) Germany
- d) England

118. .... is home to the innovative Museum of New Zealand Te Papa Tongarewa, and is famed for its public art trails and Bohemian lifestyle.

- a) Wellington
- b) Melbourne
- c) Canberra
- d) Sydney

119. What makes Wellington New Zealand's cultural capital is its spirit – its enthusiasm and passion for the .....

- a) business
- b) sports
- c) tourism
- d) arts

120. The work of .....Peter Jackson and Oscar-winning Weta Workshop has taken Wellington to the world and the world to Wellington, through movies like Avatar, The Lord of the Rings and The Hobbit.

- a) filmmaker
- b) artist
- c) businessman
- d) actor

121. Located in the heart of Civic Square, City Gallery Wellington offers world-class exhibitions of contemporary .....and international art.

- a) Australia
- b) Austria

c) Japan

d) New Zealand

122. Featherston and Victoria Streets in Wellington have a great collection of boutique dealer ....., while you'll find something more edgy in the Cuba Street precinct.

- a) shops
- b) factories
- c) galleries
- d) stalls

123. Wellington loves to embrace its famous windy days and to celebrate Wellington, artists have made a series of .....sculptures all around town.

- a) wind
- b) sea
- c) marble
- d) sand

124. The Wellington .....was opened during the NZ International Festival of the Arts in March 2002 and is a project of the New Zealand Society of Authors' of Wellington Branch.

- a) Writers Avenue
- b) Writers Walk
- c) Poets Walk
- d) Writers Street

125. The Wellington ..... is a funicular railway in Wellington, New Zealand between Lambton Quay, the main shopping street, and Kelburn, a suburb in the hills overlooking the central city.

- a) Cable Car
- b) Tram
- c) Train
- d) Tube

126. Hiding below seawalls or twisting and turning in the wind, sculptures pop up everywhere around you when wandering through .....

- a) Wellington
- b) Melbourne

- c) Canberra
  - d) Sydney
127. Wellington Zoo is nestled in the green belt of Wellington,.....
- a) Australia
  - b) South Africa
  - c) New Zealand
  - d) Turkey

128. City Gallery Wellington ..... visitors with sometimes challenging, always captivating art from some of the world's most exciting artists.
- a) shows
  - b) demonstrates
  - c) provides
  - d) attracts

## **2. Unique and Interesting Facts**

### **AUSTRALIA**

1. Sydney – Australia's first and largest city. Also known as Sin City. Wanted to be Capital of Australia but its convict stigma counted against it.
2. Melbourne – Wanted to be the Capital of Australia on the basis that it was the home to the Australian establishment and was not founded by Convicts. (Founded by John Batman; son of a Convict)
3. Canberra – Because Sydney and Melbourne kept bickering over which city should be the capital of Australia, it was decided that neither of them would be capital and instead, a new capital would be built in the middle of them both.
4. Hobart – Australia's second oldest city. The too-frequent visits by French explorers concerned the British authorities and in 1803 it was decided that a colony should be established on the island to secure British territorial claims. Convicts were then sent.
5. Newcastle's coal deposits were discovered by a party hunting escaped Convicts. Sydney's difficult Convicts were then sent to Newcastle to mine the coal. Known as an egalitarian city where miners and winemakers share a beer.
6. Adelaide – Claim to fame is that it is a City that has lots of Churches. Adelaide is the Capital of the only Australian state never to have received Convicts.
7. Perth – The last Australian state to receive Convicts. It has been said most of them now work in parliament or business.
8. Brisbane – In 1824, a southern state governor sent a party of difficult Convicts to found a new settlement in Queensland. These days, southern state children send their difficult parents to Queensland to retire. Also a Mecca for Southern State teenagers who upon finishing school, head north for a week of booze and debauchery.
9. Tasmania – The island state is one of the world's major suppliers of licit opiate products. The government maintains strict controls over areas of opium poppy cultivation and output of poppy straw concentrate; major consumer of cocaine and amphetamines.

10. Melbourne topped 140 rivals to be crowned the world's most livable city 2 years in a row since 2011.

11. Australia has 16 world heritage listed sites including historic townships, cities and landscapes.

12. Canberra was selected as the capital because Sydney and Melbourne could not stop arguing which city should be the capital of Australia.

13. The largest cities in Australia are Sydney, Melbourne, Brisbane, Perth and Adelaide.

14. Due to all of this gold Melbourne was the richest city in the whole world in the 1880s. Investment money was flowing in from rich English investors and rich Australians were spending their money. However, this all came crashing down a short time later due to a world wide depression.

15. A small population, but big cities! While there are only approximately 24 million people in Australia, its two largest cities, Sydney and Melbourne, have populations over 4 million. Sure, they may not be as big as other cities, but it does make them bigger than every city in the US apart from New York.

16. Melbourne was home to Batman? Melbourne used to be called Batmania, after one of its founders, John Batman.

17. Greeks and Melbourne. For a long time Melbourne was the second biggest Greek population in the world, behind Athens. It has recently dropped to third position, after Athens and Thessaloniki. It is estimated that there are around 151,000 Greek people living in Melbourne.

18. In 1880, Melbourne was the richest city in the world.

19. Melbourne is considered the sporting capital of the world, as it has more top level sport available for its citizens than anywhere else.

20. The Indigenous 'Dream Time' is the foundation for tens of thousands of years of spiritual aboriginal art, traditions, legends, myths, folklore and culture

21. The first Australian of the Year award was awarded to Professor Macfarlane Burnet who had won the Nobel Prize in the same year of 1960 for his groundbreaking physiology research.

22. Australia Day today is a celebration of diversity and tolerance in Australian society, embracing all ethnic backgrounds, racial differences and political viewpoints.

23. Multiculturalism is thriving. About 20% of people living in Australia were born overseas, and 40% have mixed cultural heritage. There are about 225 languages spoken in Australia, making it one of the most multicultural countries in the whole world.

24. Cartoonists – A cartoon is a drawing that makes a satirical, witty, or humorous point. On 17 July 1924, the world's first society of cartoonists, the *Black and White Artists' Society*, was formed in Sydney.

25. A land of inventions. Australians are great inventors. Some of the things that they have invented over the years include the BlackBox on aeroplanes, lawn mowers with engines, smoke alarms, aspirin/aspirin, the pacemaker, penicillin, the Hills Hoist clothes line, the wine cask, the electric drill, the car radio, utility

cars (or Utes, and Australians call them), the bionic ear, dual flush toilets, the hardest to counterfeit bank notes technology, and long wearing contact lenses.

26. The wine cask (goon sack) is an Australian invention. So is the selfie.

27. Inventors of the fridge, kind of. While Australian scientists did NOT invent/discover the technology used to keep fridges cool (this award goes to French and German scientists), they were the first to see the practicable application of this technology and use it for commercial purposes. They used it to refrigerate ships so they could sell meat to England and to keep beer cold. It wasn't until about 20 years later that a company (Kelvinator, in the US) finally made a patent of the technology and to produce fridges for the household.

28. Hollywood. A number of popular Hollywood stars are Australian. They include, but are not limited to, Nicole Kidman, Cate Blanchett, Toni Collette, Errol Flynn, Paul Hogan, Mel Gibson, Hugh Jackman, Heath Ledger, Geoffrey Rush and Eric Bana. Many Hollywood movies were filmed in Australia, including the Matrix trilogy, Star Wars Episode II: Attack of the Clones, Star Wars Episode III: Revenge of the Sith, and X-Men Origins: Wolverine just to name a few.

29. Russel Crowe. He is not Australian by birth, he was born in New Zealand. He moved to Australia with his parents when he was 4 years old.

30. The first photos from the 1969 moon landing were beamed to the rest of the world from Honeysuckle Tracking Station, near Canberra.

31. Urban dwellers – Australia is one of the world's most urbanised countries, with about 70 per cent of the population living in the 10 largest cities.

32. Newspaper readership – Per capita, Australians read more newspapers than any other nation.

33. Australia's expenditure on arts products ranks among the highest in developed countries.

34. The average world population density is 117 people per square mile, that of the United States 76 and that of Macao is 69,000. Australia's is only 6.

35. Employment of Australians – 80% service sector 14% manufacturing 5% rural.

36. 2.3 percent of Australia's GDP is derived from agriculture.

37. 15 percent of Australia's GDP is derived from mining.

38. 02 percent of the Australian land mass is used by mines. More land is occupied by pubs.

39. For each person in Australia there are two sheep and over 16 rabbits, the latter introduced in 1859 by one enterprising man who brought 24 wild rabbits from England in an effort to remind him of home.

40. At the highpoint of the Bicentenary in 1988, 51% of Australians couldn't see any good reason for celebrating.

41. Approximately 1.35 trillion bottles of wine are produced by Australia.

42. Kangaroo meat can be purchased from the supermarket, butcher and available on restaurant menus as a leaner and healthier alternative to beef or lamb with a 1-2 percent fat content.

43. The largest cattle station in the world is Anna Creek Station in South Australia at over 34,000 square kilometers. It is even larger than Belgium.

44. Australia used to be a beer-drinking nation but its quaffing plunged to a 65-year low in 2010-2011 with only 4.23 litres consumed per person.

45. Surprisingly Australia is the most obese country in the world as of 2012 with a 26 percent obesity rate despite being a sport loving nation.

46. Ugg boots or as local call them 'very ugly boots' are an Australian design where a sheepskin has been turned inside out and made into a boot.

47. Despite having a convict colony history, Australia's homicide rate is 1.2 per 100,000 population compared to the 6.3 per 100,000 in the United States.

48. 80 percent of Australians believe Australia has a strong culture and identity characterised by being down to earth, mateship, honesty, sports and multiculturalism based on research organised by the Australia Day Council of NSW in 2008.

49. Australia is a relatively wealthy country with a high life expectancy.

50. Opals, opals, and more opals. Australia is the opal capital of the world. It produces 95% of the world's opal and 99% of the rare black opal. Cobber Pedy, a small outback town in South Australia is the main producer of opals, and is a popular tourist destination. Due to the extreme heat out there, many of the buildings are underground for insulation purposes.

51. Kalgoorlie, a remote town in the state of Western Australia is currently the world's largest producer of gold.

52. While Kalgoorlie may be the biggest producer of gold, it wasn't always the case. In Victoria, three towns (Ballarat, Bendigo and Maryborough) make a triangle that is referred to as the Golden Triangle. This area has produced more gold than any other area in the history of the world.

53. What do mining and pubs have in common? Not much really. Mining is a major industry in Australia, but pubs in Australia actually take up more land space than the mines do!

54. A nation of gamblers. Australia has the highest rate of gambling in the world. It is estimated that over 80% of Australian adults engage in some kind of gambling.

55. The Flying Doctors. Australia has a "flying doctors" service which provides emergency medical services to people who live in remote areas and are too far away from a hospital. Without this service many Australians living in outback Australia would surely die.

56. The average Aussie drinks 96 litres of beer per year.

57. 63% of Australians are overweight.

58. Australia is ranked second on the Human Development Index (based on life expectancy, income and education).

59. There are 60 designated wine regions in Australia.

60. Over 90% of Australia is dry, flat and arid. Almost three-quarters of the land cannot support agriculture in any form.



61. A desert area known as the 'outback' covers much of the land.
62. Australia is the driest inhabited continent on earth, the driest is Antarctica
63. With an average of 330 metres Australia is the lowest continent in the world.
64. The Australian Snowy Mountains receive more snowfall in a year than the Swiss Alps.
65. Australia is the only continent without an active volcano; now there's one of the interesting facts about Australia that they are all pretty happy about!
66. The only land locked state or territory in Australia is the Australian Capital Territory.
67. Tasmania has the cleanest air in the world.
68. The Great Barrier Reef has a mailbox. You can ferry out there and send a postcard, stamped with the only Great Barrier Reef stamp.
69. Australia has 10 deserts. The biggest such desert is the Great Victorian Desert. It is located in Western Australia and it covers 5% of the state. While this may not sound like much, Western Australia is 2,645,615 km<sup>2</sup>, meaning the desert is in fact 348,750 km<sup>2</sup>, making it just a little smaller than Germany and 1.4 times bigger than the UK!
70. Australia is the 6th biggest country in the world (the top 5, in this order, are Russia, Canada, China, United States, and Brazil). It is a grand total of 7,682,300 km<sup>2</sup> (2,966,200 miles<sup>2</sup>). That makes it about 32 times bigger than the UK, 22 times bigger than Germany, 12 times bigger than France, and a whopping 59 times bigger than Greece.
71. Australia is the smallest, flattest, and driest inhabited continent in the world. The only nation-continent of 20 million people in the world.
72. It has the world's 3rd largest ocean territory, spanning three oceans and covering around 12 million square kilometers.
73. It is the 6th largest country in the world, occupying an entire continent of some 7.6 million square kilometers.
74. Over 90% of Australia is dry, flat and arid. Almost three-quarters of the land cannot support agriculture in any form.
75. Vegetation covers nearly 7 million square kilometers or 91 percent of Australia.
76. The only nation-continent of 20 million people in the world.
77. More than 80 percent of Australians live within 100 kilometres of the coast making Australia one of the world's most urbanised coastal dwelling populations.
78. Australia is the world's 6th largest country by area.
79. Due to its large size and isolation from the rest of the world, Australia is sometimes known as the 'island continent'.
80. A desert area known as the 'outback' covers much of the land.
81. One of the interesting facts about Australia is that Australia is the biggest island and the smallest continent in the world.

82. Western Australia is a state of Australia. It is 2,645,615 km<sup>2</sup>, and if it was a country it would be the 10th biggest country in the world. France would easily fit inside Western Australia 4 times, Germany over 7 times, the UK almost 11 times and England over 20 times. It is home to 2.4 million people which gives it a population density of 0.94 people per km<sup>2</sup>.

83. Australia is the lowest and flattest continent in the world. Mount Kosciuszko is the highest point (2228 metres above sea level) and Lake Eyre is the lowest point (15 metres below sea level).

84. The land down under. Australia is located in the Southern Hemisphere. Water flushes/spirals in the opposite direction compared to water in the Northern Hemisphere. Summer is from December to February, meaning it is hot at Christmas time. All the stars are upside down compared to the stars in the Northern Hemisphere.

85. Termite mounds. Termite mounds found in northern Australia are regarded as the tallest non-human made constructions on earth.

86. Uluru (also known as Ayers Rock) it a big rock, in fact it is the biggest rock monolith in the world! It is 3.6 kilometres long, 1.9 kilometres wide, 9.4 kilometres around and 348 metres high.

87. A dry continent. Australia is the driest inhabited continent in the world. South Australia is the driest state in Australia. And in case you are wondering, they make very good red wine in South Australia.

88. It snows in Australia! This fact still amazes some people. But what is truly staggering is that during winter Australia has more snow than Switzerland.

89. Australia has 35,877 km of coastline and over 10,000 beaches.

90. A land of extremes. The hottest recorded temperature in Australia is 50.7 degree Celsius (1960, Oodnadatta, South Australia) and the lowest recorded temperature is minus 23 degree Celsius (Charlotte Pass, New South Wales)

91. Lot's of islands. Australia has a grand total of 8,222 islands in its maritime borders. But there are only 10 islands that are greater than 1,000 km<sup>2</sup> in size: Melville Island (NT), 5,786 km<sup>2</sup>; Kangaroo Island (SA), 4,416 km<sup>2</sup>; Groote Eylandt (NT), 2,285 km<sup>2</sup>; Bathurst Island (NT), 1,693 km<sup>2</sup>; Fraser Island (Qld), 1,653 km<sup>2</sup>; Flinders Island (Tas), 1,359 km<sup>2</sup>; King Island (Tas), 1,091 km<sup>2</sup>; and Mornington Island (Qld), 1 002 km<sup>2</sup>.

92. Hyams Beach in Jervis Bay (New South Wales) has the whitest sand on Earth according the the Guinness Book of Records.

93. Australia is as wide as the distance between London to Moscow.

94. The world's oldest fossil, which is about 3.4 billion years old, was found in Australia.

95. Before the arrival of humans, Australia was home to megafauna: three metre tall kangaroos, seven metre long goannas, horse-sized ducks, and a marsupial lion the size of a leopard.

96. The secret ballot was first used in Victoria and South Australia following the granting of responsible government. Other states introduced secret ballots

as follows: 1856 – Victoria & South Australia 1858 – New South Wales & Tasmania 1859 – Queensland 1893 – Western Australia. The secret ballot was referred to as '*kangaroo voting*'. World wide, secret voting is often referred to as the '*Australian ballot*'.

97. In 1932, Francis De Groot, a retired cavalry officer, managed to get himself selected as part of the honour guard at the opening of the Sydney Harbour Bridge. When the ribbon was about to be cut, he galloped forward on his horse and slashed the ribbon with his sword, declaring the bridge open in the name of 'the decent citizens of New South Wales'. The ribbon was then tied back together and the ceremony continued. De Groot was carried off to a mental hospital, declared insane and later fined for the replacement cost of one ribbon.

98. Independence for WA- In April 1933, 68% of West Australians voted in favour of seceding from the Commonwealth of Australia. However, they needed permission from the British Parliament before they could officially become a new country. Meanwhile, Australia's Federal Parliament was arguing that Britain should not interfere in Australian politics. The end result was that Britain never made a decision. Consequently, Western Australian remained part of the Commonwealth.

99. Until 1984, Australia's National anthem was "*God save the Queen/King.*"

100. Australia day – January 26, Australia day, is the anniversary of ships arriving in Sydney carrying a load of Convicts.

101. Australia was the 3rd country, after the US and Russia, to launch a satellite into orbit. It was for the British, using a 'Blue Streak' rocket

102. Australia was the second country in the world to give women the right to vote in 1902.

103. The wattle was adopted as the national floral emblem in 1912.

104. The first Australian Friendly Society with the motto of 'Advance Australia' was the Australian Natives' Association (ANA) formed in Victoria in 1871.

105. Debate continues today on the calls to change the Australian flag because of the prominence of the British Union Jack, which does not reflect contemporary Australian society.

106. While 1988 was named a 'Year of Mourning' for Aboriginals, it was also regarded as a celebration of survival where the Aboriginal community staged a 5 kilometre march for "Freedom, Justice and Hope" in Sydney.

107. Aboriginal leader, Lowitja O'Donoghue, a recipient of the Order of Australia in 1976 and Australian of the Year in 1984 delivered the first milestone national Australia Day address on 26 January 2000.

108. Former Prime Minister of Australia, Kevin Rudd's national apology to Indigenous Australians in 2007 is viewed by many as a major milestone in reconciliation.

109. The hold of the old White Australia Policy was broken by Gough Whitlam's Labor Government which adopted a broader approach to citizenship and opening migration to Asia and the Middle East.

110. It is estimated the humans have lived in Australia for around 45000 years.

111. It is thought that Aboriginals have called Australia home for between 40,000 and 80,000 years.

112. It is estimated that at the time of British settlement there was about 300,000 Aboriginal people who spoke around 250 languages.

113. British settlers aboard the 11 ships of the First Fleet arrived in Botany Bay in 1788 but moved north to Port Jackson (Sydney Cove) a few days later when they found the Botany Bay site unsuitable. They arrived at Port Jackson on the 26th January 1788 (now Australia Day).

114. The number of convicts transported to Australia was about 162,000; they were transported in 806 ships.

115. About 98-99% of the convicts sent here were from England, Wales, Ireland and Scotland but some were sent from other British colonies like Canada and India, while others came from New Zealand, Hong Kong the Caribbean and other countries.

116. A lot of soldiers were also transported here for crimes like mutiny and desertion.

117. The Transportation of British convicts to Australia ended in 1868.

118. Australian are generally law abiding people but one of our greatest legends is Ned Kelly, a bushranger, law breaker, killer and leader of the notorious Kelly gang of the late 1800's

119. Unusual and interesting facts about Australia include Australia's only armed rebellion, the "Eureka Stockade" took place in the Ballarat Goldfields in 1854. The goldfield workers (known as 'diggers') were opposed to the government miners' licences. The rebellion became a significant event in the reforming of unfair laws, the developing of democracy in Australia, and the formation of the Australian identity and a fundamental principle of Aussie 'mateship'. The Anzac soldiers of World War 1 went on to adopt the term 'diggers' and our soldiers have been known as 'diggers' since.

120. Burke and Wills were the first white explorers to cross Australia from South to North. They left Melbourne in August 1860 and reached the Gulf of Carpentaria in Queensland in February 1861. They both perished near Cooper's Creek on the return journey.

121. It is thought that Aboriginals have called Australia home for between 40,000 and 80,000 years.

122. It is estimated that at the time of British settlement there was about 300,000 Aboriginal people who spoke around 250 languages.

123. British settlers aboard the 11 ships of the First Fleet arrived in Botany Bay in 1788 but moved north to Port Jackson (Sydney Cove) a few days later when they found the Botany Bay site unsuitable. They arrived at Port Jackson on the 26th January 1788 (now Australia Day).

124. About 98-99% of the convicts sent here were from England, Wales, Ireland and Scotland but some were sent from other British colonies like Canada

and India, while others came from New Zealand, Hong Kong the Caribbean and other countries.

125. The Transportation of British convicts to Australia ended in 1868.

126. Australian are generally law abiding people but one of our greatest legends is Ned Kelly, a bushranger, law breaker, killer and leader of the notorious Kelly gang of the late 1800's.

127. Metric and the left side is the right side. Australia started using the metric system in 1969/70 and in Australia you drive on the left side of the road.

128. When the British first colonised Australia they used it as a penal/convict settlement. In total an estimated 160,000 convicts were sent from England to Australia, but many died on the boat ride over.

129. In 1892, a group of 200 Australians unhappy with the government tried to start an offshoot colony in Paraguay to be called 'New Australia'.

130. Australia was the second country in the world to allow women to vote (New Zealand was first).

131. In 1856, stonemasons took action to ensure a standard of 8-hour working days, which then became recognised worldwide.

132. Australia was one of the founding members of the United Nations.

133. Chinese explorers travelled to Australia long before Europeans arrived. As early as the 1400s, sailors and fisherman came to Australia for sea-cucumbers and to trade with Indigenous peoples.

134. The first European to visit Australia was Dutch explorer Willem Janszoon, in More Dutch explorers visited the country over the next hundred years, plotting maps and naming it 'New Holland'.

135. Captain James Cook first landed on Australia's east coast in 1770. In 1788, the British returned with eleven ships to establish a penal colony. Within days of The First Fleet's arrival and the raising of the British flag, two French ships arrived, just too late to claim Australia for France.

136. Burke and Wills were the first white explorers to cross Australia from South to North. They left Melbourne in August 1860 and reached the Gulf of Carpentaria in Queensland in February 1861. They both perished near Cooper's Creek on the return journey.

137. The first female Member of Parliament in Australia was Edith Cowan who was elected to the Western Australia Legislative Assembly in 1921.

138. Neville Bonner became Australia's first Aboriginal senator in 1971.

139. Australia Day is a celebration of diversity and tolerance in Australian society, embracing all ethnic backgrounds, racial differences and political viewpoints.

140. Over 200 different languages and dialects are spoken in Australia including 45 Indigenous languages. The most common non-English spoken languages are Italian, Greek, Cantonese, Arabic, Vietnamese and Mandarin.

141. '*Waltzing Matilda*' the title of Australia's most famous song, is German for 'carrying a backpack'.

142. A larrikin is a comical, roguish individual who is prone to rowdy and unruly behaviour. The term was coined from an Irish policeman in a Melbourne court, claiming the prisoner was "larkin about".

143. Australians refer to English people as Poms or Pome. This is an acronym for Prisoners of Mother England. May have originally been an abbreviation for pomegranate which is Convict rhyming slang for immigrant.

144. The name Australia comes from the Latin *Terra Australis Incognita* which means the *Unknown Southern Land*.

145. Australians may refer to Americans as 'Seppos'. This is an abbreviation for 'Septic Tank' which is rhyming slang for 'Yank'.

146. Australians may refer to fools, idiots and hopeless cases as *Drongos*. Drongo was a 1920's racehorse that showed promise but never won anything in 37 starts. In the 1940s, the term was applied to recruits of the Australian airforce.

147. Australian servicemen are referred to as Diggers. This term comes from miners on the Australian goldfields of the 1800's.

148. The name for the Australian marsupial Kangaroo came about when some of the first white settlers saw this strange animal hopping along and they asked the Aborigines what it was called. They replied with '*Kanguru*', which in the native language meant '*I don't know*'.

149. Moomba - The city of Melbourne has a cultural festival using the Aboriginal word *Moomba*. It seems the festival's initial organisers asked the local Aborigines to suggest a name, and were told that moomba means 'lets get together and have fun.' The grateful organisers subsequently used the name.

150. The name 'Australia' comes from the Latin word 'australis', meaning southern.

151. We call Australian's from Queensland "banana benders", and people from Western Australia "sandgroppers".

152. Australians sometimes refer to Australia as Oz and themselves as Aussies. They love to chop the end off words and put an "ie" or "o" on the end. Some quick examples include servo (service/petrol station), smoko (smoke break), bottle-o (bottle/alcohol shop), barbie (barbeque), sparkie (a nick name for an electrician), and even names are not sacred, with stuff like Paulie (Paul), Timbo (Tim), Nicko (Nick), etc.

153. The name 'Kylie' came from an Aboriginal hunting stick, similar to the boomerang.

154. Mungo man - In 1974, scientists discovered the *Mungo man* - a primate who was ritually buried 40-60,000 years ago. ANU's *John Curtin School of Medical Research* found that the skeleton's genetic material contained a small section of mitochondrial DNA. It was analysed and compared to the genetic material from nearly 3,500 people; including Neanderthals, Asians, ancient Aborigines, and present-day Aborigines. It was found that Mungo Man's DNA lacked a gene that was common to all the other samples. Consequently, unlike

every other known person on the planet, or unearthed skeleton, Mungo man can not be traced to humans that left Africa any time in the last 200,000 years.

155. Mungo Man's unique DNA has been used to challenge the 'out of Africa' theory of human evolution.

156. The first humans travelled across the sea from Indonesia about 70,000 years ago. These people are called '*Robust*' by archaeologists because of their heavy-boned physique.

157. 50, 000 years ago, the more slender '*Gracile*' people; the ancestors of Australian Aborigines, arrived in Australia. At the time of their settlement/invasion, the *Gracile* were the most technologically advanced people in the world.

158. Tasmanian Aborigine – The Tasmanian Aborigine was of a different race to those on the mainland with features more similar to Africans. No full bloods live today.

159. Convicts of African descent – Convicts comprised many different racial groups and many of these minority racial groups were very prominent in colonial society. Australia's first bushranger was a Convict of African descent. Another African Convict was arguably Sydney's first eccentric as he walked around in a top hat and tails.

160. Gold Rush – During the Gold rush of the 1850's, Australia received massive waves of migration from China, America, Canada, Germany, Italy, France, Ireland, Scotland, Wales, England. An Italian migrant named '*Raefello Carboni*' subsequently led the *Eureka Rebellion*.

161. People: 92% Caucasian descent, 7% Asian descent, 1% Aboriginal descent.

162. Post World War II – From 1945 through 1996, nearly 5.5 million immigrants settled in Australia.

163. Four out of 10 Australians are migrants or the first-generation children of migrants.

164. The largest Greek population in the world beside Athens in Greece can be found in Melbourne Victoria.

165. Today's Australia is very multicultural with Indigenous peoples and migrants from some 200 countries.

166. The world's highest proportion of migrant settlers in a developed nation with over 25% of Australians born in another country.

167. Australia's first small step to a fully multicultural Australia was the result of immigrants from Eastern Europe and the Mediterranean after 1945.

168. The indigenous people of Australia are Australian Aborigines and Torres Strait Islanders.

169. Australia is home to the longest fence in the world. The longest fence in the world, referred to as the Dingo Fence, runs for 5,531 kilometers through Queensland and South Australia, and was originally built to keep dingoes away from fertile land.

170. Why are the Kangaroo and Emu on the Australian coat of arms? Neither animal can walk backwards. They symbolise a nation always going forward.

171. There are four types of Boomerang. They are called the Hook, the Hunter, the Club and the V. Although all four were used in hunting and warfare, only the Hunter will return when thrown (thrown correctly that is, it is not easy to get a Hunter boomerang to return to you).

172. Gina Rinehart, Australia's richest woman, earns \$1 million every half hour, or \$598 every second.

173. Australia has the highest electricity prices in the world.

174. If you visited one new beach in Australia every day, it would take over 27 years to see them all.

175. Before 1902, it was illegal to swim at the beach during the day

176. In Australia, it is illegal to walk on the right-hand side of a footpath.

177. If all the sails of the Opera House roof were combined, they would create a perfect sphere. The architect was inspired while eating an orange.

178. Durack, Australia's biggest electorate, is larger in size than Mongolia.

179. The world's first compulsory seat belt law was put into place in Victoria in 1970.

180. Each year, Brisbane hosts the world championships of cockroach racing.

181. In 1992, an Australian gambling syndicate bought almost all the number combinations in a Virginia lottery, and won. They turned a \$5m purchase into a \$27m win.

182. An Australian man once tried to sell New Zealand on eBay

183. Bob Hawke, a beer drinking Prime Minister. In 1954 Bob Hawke made it into the Guinness Book of Records for drinking a Yard Glass (1.4 litres or 2.5 pints) of beer in 11 seconds. He later went on to become the Prime Minister of Australia.

184. Some shopping centres and restaurants play classical music in their car park to deter teenagers from loitering at night.

185. Another of the interesting facts about Australia is these days there are about 115 people in gaol (jail) in Australia per 100,000 of population. In the USA it is about 715, Russia is about 585, New Zealand is about 160, Japan is about 54 and Canada is about the same as Australia at 116.

186. The Sydney Harbour Bridge was opened in 1932 and is the widest steel arch bridge in the world.

187. The design for the Sydney Opera House was chosen after the New South Wales Government conducted a competition in the late 1950's. Danish Architect Jorn Utzon's vision was the winning design. Unfortunately in 1966 Jorn Utzon resigned from the project because of disagreements with the Government. The building was completed in 1973 and Queen Elizabeth II officially opened it in that year. Jorn Utzon died in 2008 without ever returning to Sydney to see in person the amazing Opera House he designed.



188. One of the unusual and interesting facts about Australia is about the Australian Prime Minister Harold Holt. Prime Minister Harold Holt disappeared while going for a swim at Cheviot Beach Victoria on the 17th December 1967. His disappearance has remained a mystery all these years.

189. Gough Whitlam is the only Australian Prime Minister to be dismissed from office. He was dismissed as Prime Minister by the then Governor General, Sir John Kerr in 1975.

190. United States architect Walter Burley Griffin won the competition in 1912 to design Australia's capital city of Canberra, Australian Capital Territory .

191. Australia changed to the metric system of measurement from 1970 onwards. Before the changeover to the metric system Australia used imperial units of measurement that were inherited from the British. The imperial system was phased out over the years following 1970 up until about 1988. In converting kilometres to miles the conversion goes approximately like this; 1 kilometre = 0.62 of a mile, 10 kilometres = 6.21 miles, 25 kilometres = 15.53, 50 kilometres = 31.07 miles, 100 kilometres = 62.14 miles and so on. Another one of the interesting facts about Australia is Australia has one of the lowest population densities in the world with an average of three people per square kilometre. The world average on land only is about 45 per square kilometre.

192. Quite a few of the interesting facts about Australia has to do with its unique and sometimes deadly wildlife. The Kangaroo and the Emu were chosen to feature on the Australian Coat of Arms because they are incapable of walking backwards and therefore symbolise a nation moving forward.

193. Imagine the fully welded rails of the Ghan train track weren't restrained properly: on a hot Outback desert day they would expand at 200km/hour and at the Darwin end they'd stick out 1.1 km into the ocean.

194. Star gazing: under ideal viewing conditions, like in the Australian Outback, the naked eye can detect about 5,780 stars.

195. Termite mounds are the tallest non-human constructions on earth.

196. A census taken in 1828 found that half the population of NSW were Convicts, and that former Convicts made up nearly half of the free population.

197. It is estimated that by the time transportation ended in 1868, 40 per cent of Australia's English-speaking population were of Convicts descent.

198. In 2007, it was estimated that 22 per cent of living Australians had a Convict ancestor.

199. Convicts were not sent to Australia for serious crimes. Serious crimes, such as murder, rape, or impersonating an Egyptian were given the death sentence in England.

200. Crimes punishable by transportation included recommending that politicians get paid, starting a union, stealing fish from a river or pond, embezzlement, receiving or buying stolen goods, setting fire to underwood, petty theft, or being suspected of supporting Irish terrorism.

201. In 1954, Bob Hawke was immortalised by the *Guinness Book of Records* for sculling 2.5 pints of beer in 11 seconds. Bob later became the Prime Minister of Australia.

202. Prime Minister Harold Holt went for a swim at Cheviot Beach, near Portsea on 17th December 1967, and was never seen again. The event has been referred to as 'the swim that needed no towel'.

203. Australia's first police force was a band of 12 of the most well behaved Convicts.

204. Swimming – In 1838 it was declared illegal to swim at public beaches during the day! This law was enforced until 1902.

205. Dropbears are an evil species of koala that fall from trees and attack humans. The evil strain of koala don't actually exist. The story was created to fool Americans.

206. Lost Prime Minister – In 1967, Harold Holt, the Prime Minister of Australia went for a swim at the beach and was never seen again. Theories about his disappearance include kidnapping by a Russian submarine, eaten by a shark or being carried away by the tide.

207. Bunyips haunt rivers, swamps, creeks and billabongs. Their main goal in life is to cause nocturnal terror by eating people or animals in their vicinity. They are renowned for their terrifying bellowing cries in the night and have been known to frighten Aborigines to the point where they would not approach any water source where a Bunyip might be waiting to devour them. Some scientists believe the Bunyip was a real animal, the *diprotodon*, extinct for some 20,000 years.

208. 20-30 thousand years ago, Australia was home to Megafauna; giant species of marsupials including a wombat the size of a rhino, meat eating kangaroos, kangaroos three metres tall and lizards 7 meters long. It is not known exactly what happened to them. One theory is that were hunted to extinction by Aborigines or that the Aborigines use of fire destroyed their habitat. Another theory is their habitat was destroyed by the progressive drying of Australia.

209. The Australian Kimberley is home to a mysterious form of rock art known as the *Bradshaws*. The art is dispersed in around 100 000 sites spread over 50 000 sq. km. Although the art's pigment can't be dated, a fossilised wasp nest covering one of the paintings has been dated at 17,000 + years old. This makes the art at least four times older than the pyramids.

210. In 1998, a huge engraving of a Aboriginal warrior appeared in the Australian outback. It was 4km long, held a throwing stick, was bearded. The markings appeared to have been made by a tractor pulling some sort of plough which created furrows 10m wide in the difficult terrain. To this day, the artist is a mystery.

211. The Australian Lyre Bird is the world's best imitator; able to mimic the calls of 15 different species of birds in their locality and string the calls into a melody. Also been known to mimic the sound mobile phones.

212. The echidna is such a unique animal that it is classified in a special class of mammals known as *monotremes*, which it shares only with the platypus. The echidna lays eggs like a duck but suckles its young in a pouch like a kangaroo. For no apparent reason, it may decide to conserve energy by dropping its body temperature to 4 degrees and remain at that temperature from 4 to 120 days. Lab experiments have shown that the echidna is more intelligent than a cat and it has been seen using its spikes, feet and beaks to climb up crevices like a mountaineer edging up a rock chimney.

213. The Fierce Snake or Inland Taipan has the most toxic venom of any snake. Maximum yield recorded (for one bite) is 110mg. That would probably be enough to kill over 100 people or 250,000 mice.

214. A 10kg Tasmanian Devil is able to exert the same biting pressure as a 40kg dog. It can also eat almost a third of its body weight in a single feeding.

215. A baby kangaroo at the time of its birth measures 2 centimetres.

216. Kangaroos need very little water to survive and are capable of going for months without drinking at all. When they do need water, they dig 'wells' for themselves; frequently going as deep as three or four feet. These 'kangaroo pits' are a common source of water for other animals living in the kangaroo's environment.

217. A kangaroo being chased by a dog may jump into a dam. If the dog gives chase, the kangaroo may turn towards the dog, then use its paws to push the dog's head underwater in order to drown it.

218. Emus and kangaroos cannot walk backwards, and are on the Australian coat of arms for that reason.

219. A monotreme is a animal that lays eggs and suckles its young. The world's only monotremes are the platypus and the echidna.

220. The male platypus has a poisonous spine that can kill a dog and inflict immense pain on a human.

221. When a specimen of the platypus was first sent to England, it was believed the Australians had played a joke by sewing the bill of a duck onto a rat.

222. Box Jelly fish - The box jellyfish is considered the world's most venomous marine creature. The box jellyfish has killed more people in Australia than stonefish, sharks and crocodiles combined.

223. The Sydney Funnelweb spider is considered the world's most deadly spider. It is the only spider that has killed people in less than 2 hours. Its fangs are powerful enough to bite through gloves and fingernails. The only animals without immunity to the funnelweb's venom are humans and monkeys.

224. The country contains an amazing ecosystem with unique flora and fauna including pristine rainforest, ancient rock formations and beautiful beaches.

225. Australia is the only place in the world where you can still find the lung fish which is a living fossil from the Triassic period 350 million years ago.

226. Vegetation covers nearly 7 million square kilometers or 91 percent of Australia.

227. Most of Australia's exotic flora and fauna cannot be found anywhere else in the world.

228. The highest mountain on mainland Australia is Mt Kosciuszko, standing 2228m (7310ft) above sea level.

229. The world's largest reef system, the Great Barrier Reef, is found off the north-eastern coast of Australia.

230. Australia has a range of different landscapes, including urban areas, mountain ranges, deserts and rain forests.

231. Australia is home to a variety of unique animals, including the koala, kangaroo, emu, kookaburra and platypus.

232. Although they usually keep to themselves, there are a range of dangerous snakes in Australia, such as the Brown Snake, Tiger Snake and Taipan.

233. Australia has over 750 different reptile species, more than any other country in the world.

234. There are 1500 species of Australian spiders.

235. If you read about our spiders you might not like this: the average person swallows three spiders a year.

236. We have over 6000 species of flies, about 4000 species of ants, and there are about 350 species of termites in Australia.

237. The combined mass of all termites in the world is more than ten times the mass of all people.

238. Termites are also called white ants, but they're not ants, in fact not even closely related to ants.

239. Australia has the world's largest population of wild camels with one hump.

240. The Tasmanian Devil does exist, and it has the jaw strength of a crocodile.

241. Sharks are immune to all known diseases.

242. There are more than 150 million sheep in Australia, and only some 20 million people.

243. The Great Barrier Reef is the largest organic construction on earth.

244. Sheep, sheep, and more sheep. There are about 100 million sheep in Australia, making it the country with the second largest sheep population (China is number one, with a staggering 150 million sheep). Australia produces most of the high grade wool used across the world.

245. There are lots of plants in Australia. Australia has approximately 25,000 known species of plants (Europe has approximately 17,500), but this number is still going up because new plants are still being discovered. It also has a number of plants that have been around since the days of the dinosaurs. They were thought to have been extinct for millions of years until they were re-discovered in Australia.

246. Big man eating crocodiles. Tropical northern Australia is home to the world's largest species of salt water crocodile, and they can grow as big as 6.7m (22 ft). Almost every year there is at least one fatal crocodile attack in Australia

247. Spiders! There are approximately 1,500 species of spiders in Australia. Some have very nasty venom, others have none.

248. There are two deadly spiders in Australia. The first is commonly known as the Red-back spider (the female has red on her back), and the second is known as the Sydney Funnel Web spider, which has the nasty title of being regarded as the most poisonous spider in the entire world. It is also regarded as one of the most aggressive spider in the world, but luckily it only lives in one isolated area around Sydney.

249. Deadly snakes. There are snakes in Australia. Lots of them are deadly. Can you guess how many of the top 25 most venomous snakes in the world come from Australia? If you guessed 10, then you should have doubled your guess. That's right, 20 of the top 25 most venomous snakes come from Australia. In fact, the first 11 are all from Australia. So watch out for snakes!

250. Too many camels. Australia has more humped camels than any other country in the world. There is an estimated 1.2 wild/feral camels in the Australia outback, causing great destruction to the fragile desert ecosystems.

251. The fragile land. Because Australia was isolated from the rest of the world for so long, it has no natural predators for introduced species (plant or animal). This means that an introduced species can cause massive damage. Some of the worst introduced species currently causing problems include camels, cane toads, foxes, rabbits, goats, pigs, buffalo, and feral cats.

252. Fast dragon flies. A dragon fly in Australia was recorded flying at a speed of 57 kilometres and hour (or 36 miles).

253. Australia has some 750 known species of reptiles.

254. The Great Barrier Reef is the longest reef and the largest organic construction in the world. It is about 2,010 kms long and is so big it can be seen from space.

255. More deadly animals. The stonefish is the most poisonous fish in the world, and is located mainly above the tropic of Capricorn off the coast of northern Australia. There is also the blue-ringed octopus, which can cause death to humans. Oh, did I mention there are two jellyfish that can cause death (the box jellyfish and Irukandji jellyfish)? Oh, then there is the the Cone Shell, which can also kill you. There are lots of deadly animals in Australia, including 20 of the top 25 most poisonous snakes!

256. The Platypus and Echidna. They are the only two mammals in the whole world that lay eggs. They are called monotremes.

257. Australia has the fastest growing trees in the world, the Eucalyptus, which can grow as much as 10 metres in a year when conditions are good.

258. The Box jellyfish has killed more people in Australia than stonefish, sharks and crocodiles combined.

259. 91% of the country is covered by native vegetation.

260. No native Australian animals have hooves.

261. Eucalyptus oil is highly flammable, meaning gum trees may explode if ignited, or in bushfires.

262. The male lyrebird, which is native to Australia, can mimic the calls of over 20 other birds. If that's not impressive enough, he can also perfectly imitate the sound of a camera, chainsaw and car alarm.

263. There have been no deaths in Australia from a spider bite since 1979.

264. Australia is home to six of the top ten deadliest snakes in the world. The Australian Fierce Snake which is found around Haddons corner (this is where South Australia, Queensland and the Northern Territory meet) is the most poisonous snake in the world; the venom from 1 bite is enough to kill about 100 people! But despite this it has never killed anyone probably because it lives in such an isolated region.

265. There are about 350 species of termites, 1,500 species of spider, 6,000 species of flies and 4,000 species of ants in Australia. –

266. The Sydney Funnel-web spider is considered the deadliest spider in the world.

267. The Box Jellyfish is considered the world's most venomous marine creature and have killed more people in Australia than stonefish, sharks and crocodiles combined.

268. One of the interesting facts about Australia that a lot of people may not know is the largest number of wild dromedary (they have the one hump) camels in the world are found right here.

269. The Australian platypus and echidna are the only mammals (monotremes) to lay eggs. –

270. The last Thylacine (Tasmanian tiger) died in 1936 at the zoo in the capital city of Hobart, Tasmania. Australia's tropical north or the top end is home to the world's largest saltwater crocodile.

271. More than 80 percent of Australians live within 100 kilometers of the coast making Australia one of the world's most urbanized coastal dwelling populations.

272. The only nation-continent of 20 million people in the world.

273. More than 80 percent of Australians live within 100 kilometres of the coast making Australia one of the world's most urbanised coastal dwelling populations.

274. As of 2012, Australia has an estimated population of over 22 million people.

275. The indigenous people of Australia are Australian Aborigines and Torres Strait Islanders.

276. Population density in Australia is usually calculated in km<sup>2</sup> per person, not people per km<sup>2</sup>.

277. Australians have 380,000 m<sup>2</sup> per person available. Yet well over 90% are cramming into our coastal cities

278. Australia may be one of the biggest countries in the world, but it is also has one of the lowest population density in the world. In fact there are only about 3.03 people per square kilometre. To put that into perspective, in the US there are 32.3, the UK has 262, Germany 226, and France has 118.

279. Western Australia is a big place with not many people. Western Australia is a state of Australia. It is 2,645,615 km<sup>2</sup>, and if it was a country it would be the 10th biggest country in the world. France would easily fit inside Western Australia 4 times, Germany over 7 times, the UK almost 11 times and England over 20 times. It is home to 2.4 million people which gives it a population density of 0.94 people per km<sup>2</sup>.

280. Australia is very sparsely populated: The UK has 248.25 persons per square kilometre, while Australia has only 2.66 persons per square kilometre.

281. The population density in Australia is generally calculated in square kilometres per person, not people per square kilometre as it is in other countries.

282. Europeans came to Australia about 200 years ago. Aboriginals had already been living here for over 40,000 years.

283. Many waves of migration have happened over the last two hundred years and as a result Australia is a very multicultural country. Today Australia includes people from over 130 countries. A significant minority are first or second generation migrants. The majority are of mixed ethnic origin. Soon, there will be more than one million people of Chinese origin living in Australia!

284. In 1977, Alan Jones scored a surprise victory in the Austrian Grand Prix. Initially officials were going to play the Austrian anthem but then realised that Australia and Austria were not the same country. Unfortunately, they didn't have the Australian anthem so instead a local played "Happy Birthday to You" on a trumpet.

285. Australian Football was invented by Sydney Tom Wills and Henry Harrison – both were both born in Sydney. Tom played the Aboriginal game of *Mangrook* as a child and it is believed the native game inspired the rules he initially proposed. The game then took hold in Victoria, and was largely rejected by Sydney.

286. In 1983, the yacht "Australia II" ended the Americans 132 year dominance of the *America's cup*

287. The American 4 X 100 meters freestyle relay team had never been defeated until the 2000 Olympics when they were beaten by the Australians.

288. Duncan Armstrong – At the 1988 Seoul Olympics, underdog Duncan Armstrong upstaged the great American Matt Biondi to win the 200m freestyle. (Australians like to beat Americans.) The win was made extra enjoyable when American's accused Armstrong of "surfing" the wave created by Biondi.

289. The Sydney Olympics were labelled the 'best ever games' by IOC president Juan Samaranch. What makes this a particularly sweet accolade for Australians is that they followed the Atlanta Olympics – staged by Americans.

290. A Sydney Australian football match was once stopped after fans smuggled a pig into the stadium, wrote the name of a big-boned player on the pig's side and then released it onto the ground.

291. Dawn Fraser is the only athlete to ever win gold in the same event at three consecutive Olympics. At the 1964 Olympics, *Dawn Fraser* marched in the opening ceremony and wore a custom made swimsuit. For these breaches of protocol, the *Australian Swimming Federation* banned her from competition for ten years.

292. Rod Laver is the only male tennis player to win the grand slam and he did it twice.

293. Jeff Thompson once bowled a ball that was calculated to be at least 160 kms per hour which makes him the fastest bowler of all time. He is reported to have said that the sound of the bowl hitting the batsmen skull was music to his ears.

294. When charging from their trenches, Diggers would yell "*Up their Cazaly*" in tribute to the ruckmen Roy Cazaly. "*Up there Cazaly*" was later made into a song that reached number one on the charts.

295. Susie Maroney was a swimmer who from time to time felt inclined to swim long distances – such as Cuba to Florida.

296. The day of the Melbourne Cup (a horse race) is a public holiday in Melbourne.

297. The sports capital of the world has 70 percent of its total population participating at least once a week in a particular recreational activity or sport.

298. Phar Lap was Australia's greatest race horse winning 37 of his 51 starts. After handicappers saddled him with enough weight to stop a train, his owner took him overseas to race in America. He easily won his first race but then died in mysterious circumstances.

299. It is believed that the Aboriginal game of Mangrook inspired the rules for Australian Football, while invented in Sydney became popular in Victoria

300. The sports capital of the world has 70 percent of its total population participating at least once a week in a particular recreational activity or sport.

301. Australia hosted the 1956 (Melbourne) and 2000 (Sydney) Summer Olympics.

302. The first official World Surfing Championship was in Sydney in 1964

303. Surf clothing. Popular surf clothing brands such as Quiksilver, Billabong, Roxi, and Rip Curl all come from Australia.

304. The horse race that stops the nation. Australia has a horse race which runs on the first Tuesday of November every year called the Melbourne Cup (unlike the Great Victorian desert, which is located in the state Western Australia and not in the state of Victoria, the Melbourne Cup is actually in Melbourne). It is dubbed "The race that stops the nation". Go to any pub on that Tuesday and it will be full. In fact, the day is a public holiday for all of Melbourne and parts of Victoria. \$90 million was wagered on the 2013 cup.



305. The largest-ever victory in an international football match was when Australia beat American Samoa 31-0 in 2001.

306. The Melbourne Cup is a horse race that was first run in 1861 and is still held every year on the first Tuesday in November. It is dubbed "the race that stops a nation".... The state of Victoria gets a public holiday for it and now there's talk about the rest of us having one too because pretty much wherever you are in Oz when that race runs your looking at a television or listening to the radio to ride your horse home with the jockey!

## NEW ZEALAND

1. While it is no longer the case, New Zealand was once governed as a part of the territory of New South Wales (later a part of Australia). When Australia federated in 1901, New Zealand was offered a place as one of their states. New Zealand refused and is its own country with no ties (other than economic and commonwealth) to Australia.

2. A kiwi is not a fruit – it is New Zealand's native flightless bird and a slang term for a New Zealander. Kiwis call the fruit "kiwifruit" – they are also known as Chinese Gooseberries.

3. New Zealand was the first major nation to have universal suffrage. In 1893 it became legal for all male and female citizens of New Zealand to vote.

4. New Zealand was first discovered by Europeans in 1642 when Dutch sailor Abel Tasman arrived. He left New Zealand after several of his crew were killed by Maoris, and it was not until 1769 that English Captain James Cook arrived and mapped the land.

5. Queen Elizabeth II is officially Queen of New Zealand. She is represented in New Zealand by a Governor General, who ratifies all laws put before him or her by the elected parliament of New Zealand.

6. New Zealand is one of only three countries that have two official (and of equal standing) national Anthems. The first is God Save the Queen (the English National Anthem) and the other is God Defend New Zealand. The other two countries with two anthems are Denmark and Canada which both have a Royal Anthem and a State anthem.

7. Another native bird of New Zealand (the Moa) was one of the largest birds in history – standing up to 3.6m (12 foot) tall and weighing 300kg. Unfortunately they were hunted to extinction by the Maoris by the end of the 1500s.

8. When the Europeans arrived in New Zealand, it was already inhabited by the Maori people – Eastern polynesian settlers who arrived some time between 800 and 1300. Oral tradition says that they came from a place named Hawaiki; its location is unknown. The very strong linguistic connection to Cook Island Maori might suggest that they originated from that region of the Pacific.

9. Another group of settlers (who most likely came from the same group as the original Maoris) settled on the Chatham Islands. They were called the Morioris and they were pacifists. In 1835, groups of Maoris moved to the

Chatham islands and wiped out nearly all of the Morioris – leaving only 100 by 1862. The last full-blooded Moriori (Tommy Solomon) died in 1933.

10. New Zealand was the first country to have its three top positions of power held simultaneously by women: The Prime Minister (Helen Clark), the Governor General (Dame Silvia Cartwright), and the Chief Justice (Sian Elias).

11. New Zealand has a strong hold on the international trade in sheep meat. There are presently around 9 sheep to every 1 human in New Zealand (the population of New Zealand is 4 million).

12. Wellington, the Capital City of New Zealand is the southernmost capital city in the world.

13. New Zealand was forced out of the ANZUS (Australia, New Zealand, United States) alliance in the 1980s when it outlawed nuclear arms and power. To this day, there are no nuclear power stations in New Zealand, and a change of law would be required before one could be built. New Zealand retains its military ties with the United Kingdom.

14. New Zealand has one of the most liberal media arenas in the world. Distinctly left wing versus right wing press is not as obvious there as in other nations.

15. New Zealand is a plastic nation – almost all personal financial transactions are made with a card – credit or otherwise. Most shops offer EFTPOS (similar to the UK Chip and Pin which appeared two years later) and cash is seen less and less. It is possible that New Zealand was the first nation to offer this system of payment (if someone can verify that I would appreciate it). The majority of taxis now allow you to pay without cash through this system.

16. New Zealand is a fairly liberal nation with homosexual marriage (Civil Union) being legal and prostitution, soliciting, and brothel keeping being legal. The driving age is 15, the consensual sex age is 16, and the drinking age is 18 (though minors accompanied by adults are allowed alcohol in restaurants).

17. Lake Taupo (one of New Zealand's most popular tourist destinations) was the source of the largest known eruption in the world in the last 70 thousand years. It had a Volcanic Explosivity Index of 8. It released over 530 cubic kilometers of magma.

18. New Zealand was the last major landmass to be populated (with the exception of the polar regions).

19. New Zealander and Nobel Prize Winner, Ernest Rutherford is known as the father of nuclear physics for his orbital theory of the atom.

20. Sir Edmund Hillary – the first man to reach the peak of Mount Everest was a New Zealander (born in Auckland) and his face is on the New Zealand \$5 bill.

21. The world's first commercial bungee jump was a 43 metre leap off the Kawarau Bridge in Queenstown in 1988.

22. New Zealanders love their cars! 2.5 million cars for 4 million people (including the kids) makes New Zealand's car ownership rate one of the highest in the world.

23. Although it is around the size of Japan, New Zealand's population is just over four million, making it one of the world's least populated countries.

24. In 1893, New Zealand became the first country to give women the right to vote.

25. Baron Ernest Rutherford, the first person in the world to split the atom in 1919, was also a New Zealander.

26. It's no wonder New Zealanders have always been ahead with regards to things like inventions and politics.... New Zealand is after all the very first country to greet each new day!

27. While Rugby remains the most popular spectator sport in New Zealand, golf is the most popular participation sport, with more golf courses in New Zealand per capita of population, than any other country in the world.

28. Auckland also has the largest number of boats per capita than any other city in the world.

29. New Zealand won the first ever Rugby World Cup, held in 1987.

30. New Zealand has won more Olympic gold medals per capita, than any other country.

31. The Hector's Dolphin, the world's smallest marine dolphin, which grows to a maximum length of 1.5 metres, is found nowhere else in the world but in New Zealand waters.

32. New Zealand is also home to the world's only flightless parrot, the Kakapo.

33. Dairy farmers produce a whopping 100 kg of butter and 65 kg of cheese each year, for each person who lives in New Zealand!

34. Notable New Zealand filmmakers include 'The Piano' director Jane Campion and Peter Jackson, who made King Kong and the 'Lord of the Rings' trilogy.

35. The most popular New Zealand films include 'Once were Warriors', 'The Whale Rider', 'The Piano' and the 'Lord of the Rings' trilogy.

36. Here's a really good reason to visit New Zealand – there are no snakes in the country!

37. There are also no nuclear power stations in New Zealand.

38. The Maori name for New Zealand is 'Aotearoa'. It means "the land of the long white cloud".

39. Another great reason to live in New Zealand if you love surfing and other watersports is that nowhere in New Zealand is more than 120 km from the coast.

40. The kea, a bird native to NZ, is known for pulling windscreen wipers off cars and eating the strips of rubber from windows.

41. The longest place name in the world is Taumatawhakatangihangakoauauotamateapokaiwhenuakitanatahu, a hill in Hawkes Bay.

42. No part of the country is more than 128km (79 miles) from the sea.

43. In the scene of Star Trek: First Contact, where we see Earth from space, Australia and Papua New Guinea are clearly visible but New Zealand is missing.

44. Wellington is the southernmost capital city in the world.
45. Only 5% of NZ's population is human- the rest are animals.
46. NZ is the least corrupt nation in the world (tied with Denmark), according to the Corruptions Perception Index.
47. New Zealand has more Scottish pipe bands per capita than any other country in the world.
48. Blue Lake, in Nelson Lakes National Park, has the clearest water in the world.
49. New Zealand is home to the world's smallest dolphin species.
50. New Zealand has three official languages: English, Māori and New Zealand Sign Language.
51. In 2008, Trip Advisor named Milford Sound (pictured below) the world's top travel destination, based on an international survey.
52. The lowest denomination in NZ currency is the 10 cent piece.
53. More people die in New Zealand each year playing lawn bowls than scuba diving.
54. NZ is home to more species of penguins than any other country.
55. In 1893, New Zealand became the first country to give women the right to vote.
56. Auckland is one of the most affordable cities in the world to live in.
57. One in three Auckland households own a boat.
58. The Māori name for NZ, Aoetaroa, means 'land of the long white cloud'.
59. In 2013, NZ legalised same-sex marriage.
60. Baldwin Street, in Dunedin, is the world's steepest street. The road has a gradient of 1 in 2.86 at its steepest section, a 38 per cent grade.
61. New Zealand is similar in size to the UK, but only has a population of about 4 million (compared to 63 million in the UK).
62. About one third of the country is protected national park.
63. NZ was voted the world's best country in 2007 and 2008 by Wanderlust magazine.
64. Pelorus Jack was a dolphin who guided ships through dangerous and rocky waters around NZ in the early 1900s.
65. There are only two countries in the world where drug companies are permitted to advertise to the public: New Zealand and USA.
66. Kiwi Nancy Wake was the Gestapo's most wanted person during World War II. She once killed a SS sentry with her bare hands.
67. More people live in Auckland than in the whole of the South Island.
68. The logo for the Royal New Zealand Air Force is a kiwi- a flightless bird.
69. In the Lord of the Rings films, the beer drunk on camera was a custom NZ brew called 'Sobering Thought'.
70. The filming of these movies pumped around \$200 million into the country's economy. The New Zealand government even created a Minister for Lord of the Rings, to ensure the most money could be made from the films.

71. In 1996, a man broke into a radio station in Wanganui and took the manager hostage, demanding that they play the Muppet song "Rainbow Connection".

72. Two NZ rescue dogs were taught to drive a car around a track, in order to prove the intelligence of shelter animals.

73. The Kiwi badminton team name was 'The Black Cocks', but after a year, had to change it due to complaints.

74. In 1990, the NZ prime minister appointed a National Wizard.

75. Rugby player Wayne Shelford got his scrotum ripped open mid-game in a bad tackle. He was taken off the field with one testicle LITERALLY hanging out, got stitched up on the bench and continued the game.

76. NZ high schools and universities are permitted to keep a pound of uranium or thorium for educational purposes. However, there is a \$1 million fine if it explodes.

77. There is a giant carnivorous snail living in the South Island.

78. From 1867 to 1927, the government planed ahead for shipwrecks by building supply-filled huts on remote islands.

79. There is a clock in Dunedin which has been running since 1864, despite never having been wound since it was made.

80. Gisborne airport has train tracks running across the middle of the runway. Quite often, trains and planes have to stop until one moves out of the way.

81. NZ had a 58% casualty rate in World War I.

82. Kiwifruit were originally called Chinese gooseberries.

83. Ninety Mile Beach is actually only 90 kilometres long.

84. Moa birds were native to NZ, but are now extinct. They were 12 feet tall and weighed about 230kg.

85. The man who pioneered plastic surgery, Harold Gillies, was a Kiwi.

86. As was Baron Ernest Rutherford, who was the first man to split an atom. He also discovered (and named) the proton.

87. The national sport of NZ is rugby union.

88. There are no nuclear power stations in New Zealand.

89. In 2008, Henry the tuatara became a father for the first time at the age of 111. (A tuatara is a reptile native to New Zealand.)

90. New Zealand is the only country with the right to put Hobbit-related images on its currency.

91. Three quarters of New Zealanders living overseas are in Australia.

92. 94% of all prisoners in NZ are male.

93. The only land mammals native to NZ are bats. The rest were introduced by Maoris and Europeans.

94. In 2007, the NZ courts banned a couple from naming their child 4Real. In the end they named him Superman.

95. New Zealand produces 100 kg of butter and 65 kg of cheese each year per person.

96. Earlier this year, after losing a poker bet, a New Zealand man legally changed his name to Full Metal Havok More Sexy N Intelligent Than Spock And All The Superheroes Combined With Frostnova. The 99-character name was almost denied because the legal limit is 100 characters.

97. NZ has banned all television advertising on Good Friday, Easter Sunday, ANZAC Day, and Christmas Day.

98. Niue, a self-governed island of NZ, has images of Pokemon on its legal tender coins. There is also a limited collection of coins with images from the Star Wars films.

99. There are more vending machines in Japan than there are people in New Zealand.

100. New Zealanders enjoy one of the world's highest life expectancy rates—82.3 years for females and 78.3 years for males.

### **3. Some Etiquette Tips**

#### **AUSTRALIA**

You will find that people in Australia are very open-minded and understanding when it comes to people visiting from other countries. Over one-fifth of Australians were born to immigrant parents, making the country somewhat of a melting pot. Because of this, Australians are generally accepting of different cultures visiting their country. Do keep the above etiquette guidelines in mind, and enjoy the exotic animals, barbecues, and the sights on your trip to Australia!

Those are just a few little guidelines and some etiquette hints on ones trip to Australia.

1. Carry a list of emergency phone numbers and your embassy contact information.

2. Keep your valuables in the safe deposit of your hotel room safely.

3. Change money from a recognised money changer such as a bank or at airport.

4. Use the seat belts while driving in Australia, which is mandatory. If you are cycling then you must wear a helmet.

5. Sit in the front with the taxi driver which is customary for men in Australia, but a woman travelling alone should sit in the back left passenger seat of the car.

6. Greet with a smile and a handshake. Shake hands with everyone present upon meeting and before leaving.

7. Allow women to offer their hands first. Women generally do not shake hands with other women.

8. Use titles, Mr., Mrs., and Miss when first introduced.

9. Australians generally move to a first-name basis quickly. Still, wait to use first names until invited to do so.

10. Academic or job-related titles are downplayed.

11. Feel comfortable being addressed by your first name, even right after meeting someone.

12. Expect a greeting such as "G'day" or "G'day mate!" "G'day, mate"(pronounced G'die mite) is a popular casual greeting, particularly between individuals who have already known each other.

13. Maintain personal space and keep an eye contact when speaking to an Australian which is important in their culture.

14. For business, men should wear conservative jackets and ties. During the summer months, jackets are often removed. Women should wear skirts and blouses or dresses.

15. Expect more casual attire to be worn even for business meetings in cities like Brisbane or other tropical areas. You will see that in some of those areas, men will wear shirts, ties, and a pair of Bermuda shorts.

16. Australians take punctuality seriously. If possible, arrive fifteen minutes early for a business meeting.

17. Always arrive on time or a few minutes early for a dinner.

18. The person who makes the invitation generally pays the bill in restaurants. However, it isn't unusual for friends to split the bill.

19. Personal relationships are important in the Australian business world. Connections are valued. An introduction by an established representative may be helpful in establishing a relationship with an Australian firm.

20. Australians will quickly get down to business. Communications will be direct, good-humored and to the point.

21. Australian businesspeople tend to be pragmatic, efficient and profit-oriented. They appreciate straight-forward, open presentations.

22. Negotiations proceed quickly. Bargaining is not customary. Proposals should be presented with acceptable terms. Leave some allowance for some give and take.

23. Australians will often negotiate major issues without over-emphasis on details. However, contracts are generally detailed and firm.

24. Home to nearly five million immigrants from 160 countries, Australia is rich in cultural diversity. Australians, or "Aussies," enjoy an easy-going lifestyle and are generally friendly and relaxed. Modesty and equality are valued.

25. Australians respect people with strong opinions, even if they don't agree.

26. Avoid discussions about the treatment of the aboriginal people.

27. It is not customary to exchange business gifts during initial meetings.

28. Stick with standard English, not Aussie terms.

29. Aussies dislike class distinctions. Don't comment on anyone's accent. Accents often distinguish social class.

30. Wear casual clothing if you're not going to a business function.

31. Always arrive on time or a few minutes early for a dinner.
32. The person who makes the invitation generally pays the bill in restaurants. However, it isn't unusual for friends to split the bill.
33. Learn some knowledge of major sports and how the local team is getting on if you want to associate with Australian males. Sport is supreme in Australia.
34. Bringing your own beer at a restaurant. This is often shorted to BYOG, or bring your own grog. Except for more upscale restaurants, bringing your own beer is acceptable and cheaper. You will likely just have to pay a corking fee.
35. Tip if you enjoyed the service, but a gratuity is usually included in your bill and tips are not expected.
36. Tipping is not the general custom in Australia, waiters, porters at airports and taxi drivers do not expect to be tipped.
37. Expect a barbecue ("barbie") if invited to someone's home for a meal. Barbecues, very informal "cook outs", are popular in Australia.
38. When invited to an Australian's home, bring a small gift (flowers, chocolates, or books about your home country or region) for your hosts.
39. Australia produces excellent wine. Taking wine would be like taking sand to the desert.
40. If invited to a barbecue in Australia, you'll find that they're a fun and popular social gathering. In Australia, people will typically bring their own beer or wine for their own consumption, or at very informal barbecues, you may even be asked to bring your own meat for the grill
41. Call your host ahead to see if you should bring any food.
42. The guest of honor is generally seated to the right of host.
43. Feel 'at home' when invited to an Australian house. Australian hospitality tends to be very informal, and you will be encouraged to serve yourself.
44. Indicate that you are full by putting your knife and fork parallel on your plate with the utensil handles facing right.
45. Keep your hands above the table and elbows off the table.
46. Offer to help with meal preparation and clean-up when being entertained in a home.
47. Make sure you wear waterproof sun cream to avoid sunburn when outdoors.

### ***Don't's in Australia***

1. Do not forget to carry photocopies of your identity and other essential documents wherever you go
2. Do not bring with you prohibited items, such as meat, packaged, dairy products or fresh fruits and vegetables.
3. Do not eat, drink and smoke on public transports, most stores and public buildings.
4. Do not blow your nose in public which is socially unacceptable.
5. Do not swim outside the red and yellow flags at beaches for your safety. These flags designate safe areas.



6. Do not swim in the ocean until you have checked the warnings posted on the beaches.

7. Do not hire any vehicle from unlicensed operators.

8. Do not be surprised by what they wear or not wear on the beaches.

9. Do not be offended being addressed by your first name. In Australia, first names are used both in personal greetings and business correspondence. Professional titles are not prominent in Australian business culture, and are sometimes dismissed as pretentious.

10. Australians dislike one-upmanship. Don't overplay qualifications, rank or titles.

11. Do not touch, pat or hug other men in public which is considered socially unacceptable.

12. Do not visit without appointment. Unannounced visits are not part of Australian culture; always make a call before you wish to meet the people.

13. Do not be late if invited to dinner, and don't be more than fifteen minutes late if invited to a barbecue or a big party.

14. Do not be surprised if you are asked to bring your own beer and meat for the grill when invited to a barbecue in Australia. Barbecues are a big part of Australian culture, people will typically bring their own beer or wine for their own consumption.

15. Do not put your elbows on the table when eating, and do indicate that you are full by putting your knife and fork parallel on your plate with the utensil handles facing right.

16. Do not sniff or blow your nose in public.

## **NEW ZEALAND**

**New Zealand has been described as having a "true" merit-based tipping culture.**

1. It is generally uncommon for locals (resident Kiwis) to tip except for very exceptional service.

2. It is not customary and not required, however, for exceptional service (particularly with Concierges or in restaurants and cafes) a tip is always appreciated. The amount is at the discretion of the tipper and would generally be in the range of 10% according to the value of the meal/services. Hospitality and service staff in New Zealand are often students or part-time workers and even professionals are not paid well comparative to other countries. Wait staff in cafes/restaurants etc do get paid a higher hourly rate than their North American counterparts.

3. It may be appropriate to leave an envelope with the manager to be shared amongst the staff if it is too difficult to pick one individual!

4. This would – if you really want to give a tip, probably be the best way to do things, as the locals do not tip, and most would prefer it was not adopted as a general custom – in New Zealand, you pay for the meal, you should not have to pay the staff as well!

5. On statutory holidays it is becoming common for restaurants, cafes etc to charge an additional service fee of normally around 10-15%. This is to cover the additional cost of employing staff on these days. This is in addition to the prices on the menu and signs will normally be posted stating that they will be charging this additional fee. However, this is NOT a tip/service charge that gets passed on to staff. It is an additional charge imposed by the owners to cover the increased wage rates they have to pay to staff on public holidays by law.

5. Hairdressers and food-delivery staff are not customarily tipped. Taxi drivers aren't generally tipped but they do appreciate it if you round the fare up to the nearest dollar so they don't have to look for change. Occasionally they round it DOWN, for the same reason!

### **Maori Etiquette**

6. If you are formally or informally visiting a Maori marae (meeting place), it is best to go accompanied by a member of the local iwi, or someone who knows the appropriate etiquette. You may be welcomed onto the marae by the hosts, typically by women of the tribe who sing a karanga (welcome song / invocation to the spirits), and it will be considered impolite if you don't know the requisite responses or what to do when coming onto the marae. That said, Manaakitanga – roughly kindness and hospitality is a core value of the Maori people, and they make large allowances for their foreign guests not knowing that they have breached a protocol.

7. The 'hongi' is the touching of noses and may be performed as a greeting or welcome – it holds the same intimacy and context as a hug. Generally the hongi will be initiated by a handshake, or perhaps a hand placed on a shoulder. The people will lean towards each other slowly, head held straight, and press their noses together for a few seconds. It can be an unnerving experience for the uninitiated, but is a sign of respect, affection and trust!

### **Some key points to remember:**

8. Generally, guests on a Marae should remove their shoes before entering any building on the Marae.

9. Do NOT sit on any surface on which food is prepared or eaten on a Marae – this is considered rude and unhygienic.

10. Younger people – especially in their teens and early twenties – should be polite and deferential to older Maori.

11. Many Maori are devout Christians and will say a blessing before each meal – do not start eating until the blessing has been said!

12. The word 'tapu' means 'sacred' or 'forbidden' or 'treasure' – avoid walking on land or touching items labelled tapu.

13. When you first arrive on the Marae – YOU, yourself, are tapu, as are all those visiting with you, and you remain so, until the greetings and speeches are over.

14. Once you have done the hongi – as above – you become 'noa' – blessed, and your tapu is removed. You can then chat, and eat, with your hosts or Tangata Whenua – the people of the land.

## **Etiquette in general**

14. Do your best not to get New Zealanders muddled with Australians, and remember that they are NOT part of the same country. New Zealanders tend to get rather upset if they are called an Australian. If you have made a genuine blunder however, you will be forgiven quickly.

15. Old fashioned good manners are valued in New Zealand. Remember to say please, thank you, excuse me, and so on. Ill mannered behaviour will not get you good service, or faster responses.

Many people thank the driver when they get off the bus, but that is not obligatory.

16. Strangers do not tend to greet each other in the streets in urban areas, but in smaller towns and villages it still happens.

17. Maori land rights are another touchy subject. For people from overseas, it is probably safest just to listen to a discussion, if one happens to be going on. If you do want to know about this, ask very gently and very carefully, as many people, regardless of their ethnicity, hold very strong views on the subject. Some Europeans feel victimised for the sins of their ancestors, others feel guilty for the sins of their ancestors, some Maori find the whole thing very embarrassing for their ethnic group, other Maori appear to feel the compensation should never end... and so on. Also note that some tribes have done much better than others, with the settlements paid, and/or investing the money afterwards, which is another difficult topic, and causes considerable envy for the ones who have done well, while some have trusted the wrong people and lost almost all their money, and therefore are pitied or ridiculed by others.

18. Another difficult topic – and this one is often fallen into by tourists – is border control and quarantine. New Zealanders can understand, that it can be very difficult for foreigners to comprehend why so much fuss is made about people who bring in a single apple. But the country's economy almost totally depends on what is grown – fruit, vegetables, timber, and so on, and the importation of pests and disease would be devastating. This is well known in both rural and urban areas of the country. If you get fined by quarantine, you are unlikely to get any sympathy whatever from the locals. Just put it down to experience.

19. Violent crime is rare, but does happen in New Zealand. When it does, it will be headline news from one end of the country to the other. Like most Western countries however, if you go looking for trouble – such as arguing in the pub on Friday night – then you will find it. Unfortunately, again as in most Western countries, women do need to take extra care – so go drinking with friends, and take a taxi home.

20. The Police do not carry guns as a general rule in New Zealand. When on patrol, they generally walk in pairs, and are armed with a taser, capsaicin spray, and a short baton. If you are lost, or need help, they will assist you. Tourists mostly end up on their bad side by buying drugs – a very bad idea in any country, and from driving too fast. The locals also tend to drive too fast, and

terrorise each other, and the tourists. If you are arrested, they must allow you to get in touch with your Embassy or High Commission (for Commonwealth countries), and help you to contact a lawyer. Most people are released on bail for minor offences, and summonsed to Court at a later date. Rest assured that the Police do have Glock pistols available when required, and that an Armed Offenders Squad is called in as needed.

21. New Zealanders tend to be quite reserved people, but are very friendly if given space and time, and treated politely. Being overly friendly and loud tends to unsettle them. New Zealand Europeans – likely influenced by the Manaakitanga of their Maori neighbours, tend to boil the jug and make hot drinks for their guests, almost before they have got through the front door. Food and drink are a very big part of hospitality, even if it is just a cup of tea and a bought chocolate biscuit.

22. You do not need to dress smartly, but you do need to dress neatly.

23. New Zealanders will try to tell you that they have an egalitarian society. This is not really true – socio-economic class rules here, as it does in many other countries. However, it is true that not seeing yourself as better than your neighbour, simply because you have more money, is important here. Social class is not usually discussed – except you might say "they have no class" – when you really mean that someone has no manners at all – this is seen as a major breach of social etiquette in New Zealand. So you might see yourself as better than your neighbour because you behave properly, but it is not a topic to be discussed except between people who know each other very, very, well.

24. If you are invited to a New Zealanders home – which is quite possible, due to hospitality being important, then bring some chocolates or a bottle of wine. Use your table manners – fork in the left hand, knife in the right, as in Europe. If you eat American style, your hosts will do their best not to raise their eyebrows. Food is often lined up along the bench when guests come, so they can serve themselves the amount they wish. When you have finished eating, the utensils go diagonally across the plate, handles to the left. In Maori homes, the food will often be blessed first, and some Europeans do this too, if they attend church regularly, or if it is a special occasion.

25. When shopping – bargaining is not the culture. Pay the price marked on the item. New Zealanders only bargain when they are spending VERY large amounts of money, such as when they a car or a house. But they don't call it bargaining, they call it an offer – and a counter offer, backwards and forwards, until the house is sold. However, if you are spending \$500 or more in a shop, it is quite acceptable to negotiate a discount, IF one has not already been offered. Politeness and courtesy are always valued in New Zealand, but it is particularly important when negotiating for a better price – as is graciously accepting the seller's decision.

26. New Zealanders are generally laid back when it comes to dining. Most bars and restaurants require tidy dress, but very few require suits and ties.

27. Some restaurants are “BYO”. This is an acronym for “Bring Your Own” – meaning it is acceptable to bring your own wine (and occasionally beer). Generally a small corking fee is charged.

28. As a tourist you may wish to visit and take photos of Maori landmarks or buildings. This is generally acceptable, as long as you first consult with the community and elders associated with the landmark or building.

***Always remember:***

29. Many Maori sites are Tapu (sacred). Areas such as burial grounds are particularly Tapu and not to be touched.

30. It is not acceptable to sit on surfaces used for eating or food preparation.

31. Food is not consumed inside the meeting house (Wharenuī).

32. Footwear is always removed before entering the meeting house.

33. Marae (meeting grounds) are not tourist attractions – they are a vital and extremely sacred part of Maori life. Always ask permission before entering a marae.

***Marae Protocol***

34. Another great option whilst in New Zealand is to partake in an organised Marae visit. Here you will experience a traditional welcome (powhiri) and learn about Maori protocols, culture and mythology.

***A marae visit usually follows this structure:***

**Powhiri (Formal Welcome)**

35. The formal welcome begins with a wero (challenge). During the wero a host warrior will challenge the guests (manuhiri). Carrying a spear (taiaha), the warrior will lay down a token for the guests to pick up – indicating they come in peace.

36. A group of host kuia (women) then perform a karanga (chant) of welcome. Women from the group of guests in turn respond as they move onto the marae.

**Whaikorero (Speeches of Welcome)**

37. Once inside the wharenuī (meeting house), mihi (greetings) and whaikorero (speeches) are made. Waiata (songs) may also be sung.

38. After greeting the hosts with a hongi (traditional touching of noses) the guests will then present a koha (gift) to the hosts.

39. After the formal greetings kai (food) is shared.

40. Restaurant workers do not work only for tips in New Zealand, so do not feel obliged to leave a tip when paying your check. If the service was excellent, leaving a 10% gratuity is more than generous and your waiter or waitress will certainly appreciate it.

41. Tipping taxi drivers in New Zealand is not a common practice. If you attempt to tip your driver, it may even be refused. It is common to leave your change for the driver, if for no other reason than making the paying process easier. If you insist on tipping the driver, 10% or less is reasonable, but do not be surprised if they refuse to accept your tip.

42. Tipping is customary at hotels in New Zealand, so tipping \$1-\$2 per bag carried and \$1-\$5 for room/maid service is viewed as a nice gesture. If the concierge does you a favor or provides you with excellent service, tipping \$10-\$15 is more than acceptable.<sup>43</sup>

Tipping tour guides in New Zealand is common as their services are aimed at tourists. While gratuities are not necessary, if you feel your tour guide did an exceptional job, tipping a few dollars will likely not be refused.

44. Don't feel pressured to leave a tip when at a spa in New Zealand, but feel free to tip if you feel you received outstanding service. Leaving 5-10% is considered generous.

## **NEW ZEALAND BUSINESS ETIQUETTE**

### ***New Zealand Appearance***

45. When conducting business in New Zealand, you want to dress conservatively and tending toward a more formal look.

46. Men should wear darker colored suits with a conservative tie. To maintain formality, a white shirt would be worn.

47. Women should wear a suit, a dress, or skirt and blouse with a jacket. The wardrobe should incorporate classic styles and colors (navy and gray).

48. Umbrellas and raincoats are necessary most of the year because of the climate and rainfall. The climate is temperate, not tropical. A medium weight wool gabardine would be a good choice of fabric for your basic wardrobe.

49. When not involved in business meetings and activities, your wardrobe may be casual. To maintain a professional, though casual look, keep your clothing classic in neutral colors (navy, gray, camel, ivory, and white). Make sure your casual shoes are properly maintained.

50. Do not use the "V for victory" sign while in this country.

### ***New Zealand Behavior***

51. Always be on time or early for all appointments. Punctuality is part of the culture. "Fashionably late" is not an option in this country as most social events start on time.

52. Maintain a reserved, formal demeanor, especially when first meeting someone. Take your lead to become more relaxed by following the behavior of your New Zealand hosts.

53. Normal business hours are Monday – Friday 8:30am-5:00pm and Saturday 9:00am-12:30pm.

54. Talking is minimal while you are eating a meal. The conversation will occur before and after your meal. Dinners are reserved for social interactions only, therefore not business is discussed at these occasions. Lunch is used for business conversations.

55. Boisterous behaviour is always inappropriate, even when you are drinking. Pace yourself to maintain the proper reserved and polite behaviour.

56. Afternoon tea is between 3:00 – 4:00pm.

57. Tea is between 6:00 – 8:00pm, and an evening meal is served.

58. Supper is a snack served much later in the evening,

59. A tip may be refused, as tipping is rare.

60. Entertaining is frequently done in a person's home. A small thank you gift of flowers, chocolate, or whiskey may be taken to the host and/or hostess.

61. Cover your mouth if you must yawn, and do not chew gum or toothpicks in public.

62. Ask permission before you attempt to photograph someone.

### **New Zealand Communications**

63. The official language is English.

64. When meeting someone, and when leaving, use a firm handshake with good eye contact. Good eye contact means looking into the other person's eyes when shaking hands, not looking down at your hand. The eye contact is maintained during the handshake. You are not staring at the other person, but showing genuine interest in meeting or seeing the person.

65. Men generally wait for a woman to be the first to extend her hand for a handshake. Women do shake other women's hands. Use your same firm handshake with good eye contact.

66. When you are meeting someone, say "How do you do?" A more relaxed greeting, such as "Hello", is reserved for the meetings after you've had the opportunity to get to know the person.

67. The people are reserved, but always very warm and polite when you meet them.

68. Address a person using his/her title, or Mr., Mrs., Miss plus the full name.

69. Honesty is the best policy. Don't hype your product or service, and don't be a braggart.

70. Do not allow your voice to get loud. Maintain a reserved manner.

71. Politics, sports, and weather are good conversational topics, and may be hotly debated. In order to be a good conversationalist, stay current and informed on critical topics. One in particular is New Zealand's "nuclear free" zone.

72. Avoid confusing or comparing New Zealand with Australia, as they are two distinct countries. If you are not familiar with New Zealand, spend time before your trip to learn about the history and culture.

## 4. SLANG WORDS AND PHRASES

### AUSTRALIA

#### A

**Ace!** : Excellent! Very good!

**Aerial pingpong** : Australian Rules football

**Amber fluid** : beer

**Ambo** : ambulance, ambulance driver

**Arvo** : afternoon

**Aussie (pron. Ozzie)** : Australian

**Aussie salute** : brushing away flies with the hand

**Avos** : avocados

#### B

**Back of Bourke** : a very long way away

**Banana bender** : a person from Queensland

**Barbie** : barbecue (noun)

**Barrack** : to cheer on (football team etc.)

**Bathers** : swimming costume

**Battler** : someone working hard and only just making a living

**Beaut, beauty** : great, fantastic

**Big Smoke** : a big city, especially Sydney or Melbourne

**Bikkie** : biscuit (**also** "it cost big bikkies" – it was expensive)

**Bingle** : motor vehicle accident

**Bities** : biting insects

**Bizzo** : business ("mind your own bizzo")

**Black Stump, beyond the** : a long way away, the back of nowhere

**Bludger** : lazy person, layabout, somebody who always relies on other people to do things or lend him things

**Bluey** : heavy wool or felt jacket worn by mining and construction workers.

**Bluey** : bluebottle jellyfish

**Bodgy** : of inferior quality

**Bog standard** : basic, unadorned, without accessories (a bog standard car, telephone etc.)

**Bogged** : Stuck in mud, deep sand (a vehicle).

**Boozer** : a pub

**Bottle shop** : liquor shop

**Bottler** : something excellent

**Bowl of rice, not my** : not my cup of tea; I don't like it

**Brekkie** : breakfast

**Brickie** : bricklayer

**Brisvegas** : Brisbane, state capital of Queensland

**Brizzie** : Brisbane, state capital of Queensland

**Bull bar** : stout bar fixed to the front of a vehicle to protect it against hitting kangaroos (also roo bar)

**Bush** : the hinterland, the Outback, anywhere that isn't in town

**Bush telly** : campfire

**Bushie** : someone who lives in the Bush

**Bushranger** : highwayman, outlaw

**BYO** : unlicensed restaurant where you have to **Bring Your Own** grog, also similar party or barbecue

#### C

**Cane toad** : a person from Queensland

**Captain Cook** : look (noun) ("let's have a Captain Cook")

**Chewie** : chewing gum

**Cleanskin** : Bottle of wine without a label. Usually bought in bulk by companies who then add their



own personalised label and use the wine as e.g. gifts to clients

**Coathanger** : Sydney Harbour bridge

**Cobber** : friend

**Cockie** : farmer (Farmers were called cockies in the early days of European settlement because, like the birds of the same name, they made their homes on the edges of permanent waterholes)

**Coldie** : a beer

**Compo** : Workers' Compensation pay

**Conch (adj. conchy)** : a conscientious person. Somebody who would rather work or study than go out and enjoy him/herself.

**Corker** : something excellent. A good stroke in cricket might be described as a 'corker of a shot'

**Corroboree** : an aboriginal dance festival

**Counter lunch/Countery** : pub lunch

**Crow eater** : a person from South Australia

**Cubby house** : Small, usually timber, house in the garden used as a children's plaything.

**Cut lunch** : sandwiches

**Cut lunch commando** : army reservist

## D

**Daks** : trousers

**Damper** : bread made from flour and water

**Dead horse** : Tomato sauce

**Digger** : a soldier

**Divvy van** : Police vehicle used for transporting criminals. Named after the protective 'division' between the driver and the villains.

**Docket** : a bill, receipt

**Doco** : documentary

**Dog's eye** : meat pie

**Down Under** : Australia and New Zealand

**Durry** : tobacco, cigarette

**Dux** : top of the class (n.); to be top of the class (v.) – "She duxed four of her subjects".

## E

**Earbashing** : nagging, non-stop chatter

**Ekka** : the Brisbane Exhibition, an annual show

**Esky** : large insulated food/drink container for picnics, barbecues etc.

**Exy** : expensive

## F

**Fair go** : a chance ("give a bloke a fair go")

**Fairy floss** : candy floss, cotton candy

**Fisho** : fishmonger

**Footy** : Australian Rules football

**Fremantle Doctor** : the cooling afternoon breeze that arrives in Perth from the direction of Freeo

**Freeo** : Fremantle in Western Australia

## G

**G'Day** : hello!

**Gabba** : Woolloongabba – the Brisbane cricket ground

**Garbo, garbologist** : municipal garbage collector

**Good oil** : useful information, a good idea, the truth

**Greenie** : environmentalist

**Grinning like a shot fox** : very happy, smugly satisfied

**Grog** : liquor, beer ("bring your own grog, you bludger")

**Gyno** : gynaecologist

## H

**Handle** : beer glass with a handle

**Holy dooley!** : an exclamation of surprise = "Good heavens!", "My goodness!" "Good grief!" or similar

**Hooroo** : goodbye

**Hotel** : often just a pub

**Hottie** : hot water bottle

**I**

**Icy pole, ice block** : popsicle, lollypop

**J**

**Jackaroo** : a male trainee station manager or station hand (a station is a big farm/grazing property)

**Jillaroo** : a female trainee station manager or station hand

**Journo** : journalist

**Jug** : electric kettle

**Jumbuck** : sheep

**K**

**Kindie** : kindergarten

**Knock** : to criticise

**Knocker** : somebody who criticizes

**L**

**Lippy** : lipstick

**Lollies** : sweets, candy

**Long paddock** : the side of the road where livestock is grazed during droughts

**Longneck** : 750ml bottle of beer in South Australia

**Lucky Country, The** : Australia

**M**

**Maccas (pron. "mackers")** : McDonald's (the hamburger place)

**Mallee bull, as fit as a** : very fit and strong. The Mallee is very arid

beef country in Victoria/South Australia.

**Mate** : buddy, friend

**Mexican** : a person from south of the Queensland or New South Wales border

**Middy** : 285 ml beer glass in New South Wales

**Milk bar** : corner shop that sells takeaway food

**Milko** : milkman

**Mozzie** : mosquito

**Mystery bag** : a sausage

**N**

**Nasho** : National Service (compulsory military service)

**Never Never** : the Outback, centre of Australia

**Nipper** : young surf lifesaver

**No drama** : same as 'no worries'

**Nut out** : hammer out or work out (an agreement, say)

**O**

**O.S.** : overseas ("he's gone O.S.")

**Offsider** : an assistant, helper

**Oldies** : parents – "I'll have to ask my oldies"

**Op shop** : opportunity shop, thrift store, place where second hand goods are sold.

**Outback** : interior of Australia

**Oz** : Australia!

**P**

**Pint** : large glass of beer (esp. in South Australia)

**Pokies** : poker machines, fruit machines, gambling slot machines

**Polly** : politician

**Pom, pommy, pommie** : an Englishman

**Port** : suitcase (portmanteau)

**Postie** : postman, mailman  
**Pot** : 285 ml beer glass in Queensland and Victoria

**Q**  
**Quid, make a** : earn a living – "are you making a quid?"

**R**  
**Rage** : party  
**Rage on** : to continue partying – "we raged on until 3am"  
**Rapt** : pleased, delighted  
**Reffo** : refugee  
**Rellie or relo** : family relative  
**Road train** : big truck with many trailers  
**Roadie** : a beer you buy to take away with you

**S**  
**Salute, Aussie** : brushing flies away  
**Salvos, the** : Salvation Army, bless them  
**Sandgroper** : a person from Western Australia  
**Shoot through** : to leave  
**Skite** : boast, brag  
**Slab** : a carton of 24 bottles or cans of beer  
**Smoko** : smoke or coffee break  
**Sprung** : caught doing something wrong  
**Station** : a big farm/grazing property  
**Strides** : trousers  
**Strine** : Australian slang and pronunciation  
**Stubby** : a 375ml. beer bottle  
**Sunbake** : sunbathe  
**Sunnies** : sunglasses  
**Surfies** : people who go surfing – usually more often than they go to work!

**T**  
**Tall poppies** : successful people  
**Tall poppy syndrome** : the tendency to criticize successful people  
**Tallie** : 750ml bottle of beer  
**Tea** : supper  
**Togs** : swim suit  
**Too right!** : definitely!  
**Top End** : far north of Australia  
**Trackies** : track suit  
**Truckie** : truck driver  
**Tucker** : food  
**Tucker-bag** : food bag  
**Two up** : gambling game played by spinning two coins simultaneously

**U**  
**Ugg boots** : Australian sheepskin boots worn by surfers since at least the 1960s to keep warm while out of the water. Also worn by airmen during WW1 and WW2 because of the need to maintain warmth in non-pressurized planes at high altitudes.  
**Ugh** : ugly. hence Ugg boots  
**Uni** : university  
**Unit** : flat, apartment  
**Up oneself** : have a high opinion of oneself – "he's really up himself"  
**Ute** : utility vehicle, pickup truck

**V**  
**Vedgies** : vegetables  
**Vee dub** : Volkswagen  
**Veg out** : relax in front of the TV (like a vegetable)  
**Vejjo** : vegetarian  
**Vinnie's** : St. Vincent De Paul's (charity thrift stores and hostels)

**W**  
**Waggin' school** : playing truant

**Walkabout** : a walk in the Outback by Aborigines that lasts for an indefinite amount of time

**Walkabout, it's gone** : it's lost, can't be found

**Weekend warrior** : army reservist

**White pointers** : topless (female) sunbathers

**Woop Woop** : invented name for any small unimportant town – "he lives in Woop Woop"

## X

**XXXX** : pronounced Four X, brand of beer made in Queensland

## Y

**Yewy** : u-turn in traffic ("chuck a yewy at the next traffic lights")

## Z

**Zack** : sixpence (5 cents) – "it isn't worth a zack", "he hasn't got a zack"

## NEW ZEALAND (Kiwi)

### A

**A & P Show**: usually a 3 or 4 day event where farmers strut their stuff and win prizes for best cow, largest onion, best pikelet etc. Often has sideshows for the townies, with ferris wheels, dodgems and such like. (A&P = Agricultural & Pastoral)

**Angus**: someone with an anger problem

**Arse**: rear end, butt

### B

**Banger**: sausage

**Bach**: small holiday home, pronounced "batch"

**Beaut**: great; good fun; "that'll be beaut mate"

**Bit of a dag**: hard case; comedian; joker

**Blow me down**: expression of surprise, as in; "Well! Blow me down, I didn't know that."

**Bludge**: to sponge off others; as in "dole bludger"

**Box of budgies**: cheerful, happy, very good

**Boy-racer**: Young hoon in fast car with unbelievably loud stereo!

**Brekkie**: Short for 'breakfast'

**Bugalugs**: a bit like "mate" as in "how's it going bugalugs"

**Bugger all**: not much, very little; as in "I know bugger all"

**Bugged**: exhausted

**Bun-fight**: social gathering with food

**Bun in the oven**: pregnant

### C

**Capsicum**: green pepper

**Chocka block**: crowded/busy

**Chook**: chicken

**Chrissy**: Christmas

**Chuffed**: pleased; as in "he was dead chuffed"

**Colly wobbles**: a feeling of nausea usually associated with nervousness; as in "bungee jumping gave me a dose of the colly wobbles"

**Corker**: very good

**Courgette**: zucchini

**Crib:** small holiday home  
**Crikey dick!:** gosh! wow!  
**Cuppa:** cuppa tea, cuppa coffee, cuppa milo

**Cuz:** as in male or female cousin

## D

**Dairy:** convenience store, corner store, or mini supermarket.

**Dag:** hard case; joker; comedian, as in "Joe Blow's a bit of a dag isn't he?" "A bit of a dag mate! – He's the whole sheep's arse!" (Perhaps you have to be a Kiwi to appreciate that one)

**Doing the ton:** Driving really, really fast!

## E

**Eh:** pronounced as you would the letter "a" and often used at the end of sentences when expecting a response to a statement – it is not spoken as a question. i.e. "This would be a better gift eh", instead of saying "Do you think this would be a better gift"? Using it this way has become an everyday part of our conversation.

## F

**Flicks:** movies, picture theatre

**Flog:** steal, nick

## G

**Gawk / gawking:** stare at; take a look at. As in "What are you gawking at!?" or "Take a gawk at this!"

**Gimme:** abbreviation for "give me..."

**Gizza:** abbreviation for "give us a..."

**Going bush:** become reclusive.

**Good on ya, mate!:** congratulations, well done

**Gumboots:** rubber boots, wellingtons, wellies

**Gummies:** gumboots

## H

**Hangi:** a traditional Maori meal cooked over the course of the day in pits in the earth resulting in a very fresh, moist and tasty style of food

**Hard yakka:** hard work, associated with labouring

**Hokey pokey:** 'sea foam' candy

**Home 'n hosed:** safe, completed successfully

**Hoon:** usually associated with young adults, fast cars, loud stereos and alcohol

**Hooray:** the Kiwi "Goodbye"

**Hosing down:** raining heavily

**Hungus:** someone who eats too much

**Hunky dory:** or honky dory: everything's fine, as in "my life is hunky dory"

## I

**Ice block:** popsicle

## J

**Jandal:** thongs, flip-flops

**Judder bar:** speed bump

## K

**Kia ora:** Hello in Maori

**Kiwi:** New Zealander

**Kick the bucket:** die, cark it

## L

**L&P:** fizzy soda water, Lemon & Paeroa (L&P); originally lemon flavoured spring water from the town of Paeroa, but this is no longer the case.

**Lolly:** candy

**Long-drop:** outhouse, outdoor loo, shithouse (blushing as I type that)

**Loose metal:** gravel road

## M

**Macca's :** McDonald's

**Maori:** indigenous people of New Zealand.

**Metal road:** a country road (usually) with a gravel or shingle surface (see also loose metal)

**Morris club:** a very exclusive group or club of New Zealand males who call each other "Morris".

## N

**Naff off:** get lost!

**Nana:** female grandparent

**Nandy:** male grandparent

## P

**Pack a sad:** become morose, ill-humoured, moody.

**Pakeha:** non-Maori person

**Pike out:** to give up when the going gets tough

**Pikelet:** small pancake often served with jam and whipped cream

**Pinky:** little finger

**Pinky bar:** a chocolate-covered marshmallow confection

**Piss:** beer, as in "get on the piss"\*

**Pissing down:** raining heavily

**Plod:** friendly term for local policeman

**Push bike:** bicycle

**Pushing up daisies:** dead and buried

## R

**Rack off:** go away (angry)

**Rark up:** give somebody a good telling off

**Rattle your dags:** hurry up; get a move on.

**Rellies:** family, relatives

## S

**Sarnie:** sandwich

**Scull:** drink beer rapidly

**Scarfie:** university student, particularly from Universities of the South Island

**Sealed road:** paved road

**Shandy:** drink made with lemonade and beer

**Skint:** short of money

**Smoko:** break, rest period

**Snarky:** mixture of sarcastic and nasty

**Snotty:** snooty, ill-humoured, packing a sad

**Sparkie:** electrician

**Sparrow fart:** very early in the morning – the crack of dawn.

**Sprog:** a child

**Strapped for cash:** short of money

**Stroppy:** a fighter; easily provoked to anger; fiercely protective

**Stubby:** small bottle of beer

**Suck the kumura:** to die or otherwise cease

**sunday driver:** Driving really, really slow

**Sweet-as:** a term people say instead of "cool" or "awesome". ("That car over there is sweet-as!")

## T

**Ta:** Thanks

**Tata:** goodbye, usually when speaking to a child

**Take-aways:** New Zealand term for "take-outs" or food "to go".

**Tiki tour:** roundabout way to get somewhere; scenic tour

**Togs:** swimsuit, bathing suit

**Trots:** horse racing with a buggy

**Two sammies short of a picnic:** used to describe a person who is a "bit thick".

## V

**Valet:** a person who cleans vehicles...  
NOT parks them!

**Verge:** grassy area on the side of the  
road, bern

**Vegemite:** spread for toast or bread.

## W

**Wally:** clown, loser

**Wet blanket:** Someone who spoils the  
fun of others; someone who  
doesn't get into the "swing" of  
things, particularly at a social  
occasion.

**Wellies:** gumboots

**Wharfie:** stevedore

**Whinge:** complain

**Wobbly** (pack a wobbly): become  
angry, get snotty

**Wonky:** crooked

**Wop-wops:** out of the way location

## Y

**Yonks:** forever, a long time ago, ages;  
as in "I haven't seen them in  
yonks".

**Yarn:** spin a "tall story", tell a joke

**Yack:** general conversation held  
between friends; as in "have a  
yack".

**Yoo-hoo:** Hello, I'm here. Can I come  
in?

## SOURCE MATERIAL

### AUSTRALIA

<http://www.australia.gov.au/about-australia/our-government/australian-government>  
[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Languages\\_of\\_Australia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Languages_of_Australia)  
<http://www.racismnoway.com.au/about-racism/population/index-Diversit-2.html>  
<http://www.abs.gov.au/ausstats/abs>  
<http://www.about-australia.com/facts/australia-demographics/>  
<http://profile.id.com.au/australia/language>  
[http://www.dfat.gov.au/facts/flora\\_and\\_fauna.html](http://www.dfat.gov.au/facts/flora_and_fauna.html)  
[http://www.skwirk.com/p-c\\_s-16\\_u-307\\_t-752\\_c-2824/flora-and-fauna/nsw/flora-and-fauna/australia-s-physical-environment/physical-characteristics-of-australia](http://www.skwirk.com/p-c_s-16_u-307_t-752_c-2824/flora-and-fauna/nsw/flora-and-fauna/australia-s-physical-environment/physical-characteristics-of-australia)  
<http://www.australia.gov.au/about-australia/australian-story/austn-flora>  
<http://www.koalanet.com.au/australian-fauna.html>  
[http://www.westernaustralia.com/en/About\\_Western\\_Australia/WA\\_Flora\\_and\\_Fauna/Pages/Western\\_Australian\\_Flora\\_Fauna.aspx](http://www.westernaustralia.com/en/About_Western_Australia/WA_Flora_and_Fauna/Pages/Western_Australian_Flora_Fauna.aspx)  
<http://www.australia.com/about/key-facts/weather.aspx>  
<http://www.australian-information-stories.com/climate-of-australia.html>  
<http://www.australian-information-stories.com/ned-kelly.html>  
<http://australian-animals.net/>  
<http://www.australia.com/about/culture-history/history.aspx>  
<http://www.nationsonline.org/oneworld/History/Australia-history.htm>  
<http://www.heritage.org/index/country/australia>  
[http://www.economywatch.com/world\\_economy/australia](http://www.economywatch.com/world_economy/australia)  
<http://www.ga.gov.au/scientific-topics/geographic-information/land-tenure>  
<http://publicholidays.com.au/>  
<http://www.australia.com/explore/things-to-do/australian-adventure/nat-australian-sport.aspx>  
<http://moyaosvita.com.ua/geografija/geografichna-istoriya-avstrali>  
<http://australia.at.ua/index/0-43>  
<http://geograf.at.ua/index/0-58>  
[http://www.geo-asset.com/load/istorii\\_o\\_zemle/avstralija/mistami\\_avstraliji/3-1-0-210](http://www.geo-asset.com/load/istorii_o_zemle/avstralija/mistami_avstraliji/3-1-0-210)  
<http://buklib.net/books/33947/>  
<http://www.es-education.com.au/australia/sports/>  
[http://www3.imperial.ac.uk/newsandeventspggrp/imperialcollege/newssummary/news\\_23-9-2011-10-41-8](http://www3.imperial.ac.uk/newsandeventspggrp/imperialcollege/newssummary/news_23-9-2011-10-41-8)  
[http://www.cdu.edu.au/thenortherninstitute/documents/publications/Brief2009037outback\\_australia\\_and\\_the\\_NT.pdf](http://www.cdu.edu.au/thenortherninstitute/documents/publications/Brief2009037outback_australia_and_the_NT.pdf)  
<http://www.environment.nsw.gov.au/bioregions/SydneyBasin-Climate.htm> <http://grist.org>



<http://www.bom.gov.au/nsw/canberra/climate.shtml>  
<http://www.erdekesvilag.hu/a-nagy-korallzatony/>  
<http://web.archive.org/web/20071001045912/>  
[http://www.ga.gov.au/media/releases/2002/1013133456\\_20385.jsp](http://www.ga.gov.au/media/releases/2002/1013133456_20385.jsp)  
<http://www.hungariancentre.org.au/>  
<http://www.bibl.u-szeged.hu/ha/emigracio/ausztralia.html>  
<http://nemzetismeret.hu/>  
<http://www.dailymail.co.uk/travel/article-1172672/Melbourne-cricket-culture-Australias-capital-class.html>  
<http://cseaustralia.com.au/home/ausztralia/teruletek/13/a>  
<http://kanadavilaga.com/2014/08/20/a-kanadai-es-ausztraliai-varosokban-a-legjobb-elni/>  
<http://ausztralia-net.gportal.hu/gindex.php?pg=31507533>  
<http://www.theguardian.com/world/live/2014/nov/16/g20-brisbane-day-two-kicks-off-with-climate-change-in-spotlight-live>  
<http://www.news.com.au/national/abbott-government-orders-bombproof-mercedes-to-protect-leaders-at-g20-summit-in-brisbane/story-fncynjr2-1227051984040>  
<http://nol.hu/kulfold/putyin-a-g20-sok-celkeresztjeben-1498761>  
<http://www.refugeecouncil.org.au/about-us-2/purpose-aims-and-goals/>  
<http://www.refugeecouncil.org.au/about-us-2/our-history/>  
<http://www.studybrisbane.com.au/>  
<http://www.studyinaustralia.gov.au/global/why-australia>  
<http://www.studyinaustralia.gov.au/global/australian-education>  
<http://www.wineaustralia.com/en/Winefacts%20Landing.aspx>  
<http://www.pittwateronlinenews.com/vp-day-2013-avalon-beach-rsl-commemorative-service.php>  
<http://www.ww2australia.gov.au/vevp/>  
[https://www.awm.gov.au/encyclopedia/vp\\_day/](https://www.awm.gov.au/encyclopedia/vp_day/)  
<http://www.surfindustralia.com/statistics.php>  
[http://www.mfa.gov.hu/kulkepviselet/AU/hu/Bilateralis/tud\\_kult\\_kapcs.htm?printable=true](http://www.mfa.gov.hu/kulkepviselet/AU/hu/Bilateralis/tud_kult_kapcs.htm?printable=true)  
[http://www.iranykulfold.hu/blog/ausztralia-minden\\_ami\\_erdekelhet/234](http://www.iranykulfold.hu/blog/ausztralia-minden_ami_erdekelhet/234)  
<http://urbanplayer.hu/kult/betonba-furodott-fekete-haz-jelkepezi-a-nyugati-kultura-es-ausztralia-kapcsolatat/>  
[http://www.iranykulfold.hu/blog/ausztralia-minden\\_ami\\_erdekelhet/234](http://www.iranykulfold.hu/blog/ausztralia-minden_ami_erdekelhet/234)  
[http://www.iranykulfold.hu/blog/ausztralia-minden\\_ami\\_erdekelhet/234](http://www.iranykulfold.hu/blog/ausztralia-minden_ami_erdekelhet/234)  
<http://www.convictcreations.com/culture/facts.htm>  
<http://www.allianceabroad.com/interesting-facts-about-australia>  
<http://www.convictcreations.com/culture/facts.htm>  
<http://www.weekendnotes.com/interesting-facts-about-australia>  
<http://www.sciencekids.co.nz/sciencefacts/countries/australia.html>  
<http://www.downundr.com/facts/australia/all/.html>  
<http://www.vayama.com/etiquette/australia/>

[http://iloveaustralia.hu/ausztralia/ausztralia\\_bemutata](http://iloveaustralia.hu/ausztralia/ausztralia_bemutata)  
<http://www.lib.uni-corvinus.hu/content/boldogok-ausztralok-oecd-better-life-index-2013>  
<http://www.dougsrepublic.com/australia/PDF/aussieslang.pdf>  
<http://www.australian-information-stories.com/interesting-facts-about-australia.html>

## NEW ZEALAND

[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New\\_Zealand](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_Zealand)  
[www.newzealand.com/int/](http://www.newzealand.com/int/)  
[www.immigration.govt.nz/](http://www.immigration.govt.nz/)  
[wikitravel.org/en/New\\_Zealand](http://wikitravel.org/en/New_Zealand)  
[www.lonelyplanet.com/new-zealand](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/new-zealand)  
<https://www.govt.nz/>  
[www.nzherald.co.nz/](http://www.nzherald.co.nz/)  
[www.dia.govt.nz/Services-Citizenship-General](http://www.dia.govt.nz/Services-Citizenship-General)  
[glossary.immigration.govt.nz/Nationality.htm](http://glossary.immigration.govt.nz/Nationality.htm)  
[www.nzembassy.com/.../new-zealanders.../new-zealanders](http://www.nzembassy.com/.../new-zealanders.../new-zealanders)  
<http://www.nationsencyclopedia.com/Asia-and-Oceania/New-Zealand->  
<https://www.englishclub.com/.../world-countries...>  
[www.teara.govt.nz/en/society/page](http://www.teara.govt.nz/en/society/page)  
[www.stats.govt.nz](http://www.stats.govt.nz)  
[www.newzealand.com](http://www.newzealand.com) › ... › Arts & culture  
[www.kwintessential.co.uk/.../new-zealand.html](http://www.kwintessential.co.uk/.../new-zealand.html)  
[www.everyculture.com](http://www.everyculture.com) › Ma-Ni  
[www.boppoly.ac.nz](http://www.boppoly.ac.nz)  
[www.lovenewzealand.net.nz/maori/](http://www.lovenewzealand.net.nz/maori/)  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Geography\\_of\\_New\\_Zealand](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Geography_of_New_Zealand)  
[www.teara.govt.nz/en/natural](http://www.teara.govt.nz/en/natural)  
[www.nzgeographic.co.nz/](http://www.nzgeographic.co.nz/)  
[www.whitireia.ac.nz](http://www.whitireia.ac.nz)  
[geography.about.com](http://geography.about.com) › ... › New Zealand Maps  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Category:National\\_symbols\\_of\\_New\\_Zealand](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Category:National_symbols_of_New_Zealand)  
[www.worldatlas.com/.../newzealand/nzsymbols](http://www.worldatlas.com/.../newzealand/nzsymbols)  
[www.teara.govt.nz/en/new-zealand](http://www.teara.govt.nz/en/new-zealand)  
[www.mountainjade.co.nz/.../traditional-maori-symbols](http://www.mountainjade.co.nz/.../traditional-maori-symbols)  
[www.123independenceday.com/newzealand/na](http://www.123independenceday.com/newzealand/na)  
[www.nzhistory.net.nz/.../flags-of-new-zealand](http://www.nzhistory.net.nz/.../flags-of-new-zealand)  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Sport\\_in\\_New\\_Zealand](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Sport_in_New_Zealand)  
[www.nzherald.co.nz/sport/news/headlines.cfm?](http://www.nzherald.co.nz/sport/news/headlines.cfm?)  
[www.stuff.co.nz/sport](http://www.stuff.co.nz/sport)  
<https://www.tvnz.co.nz/one-news/sport>  
[www.sportnz.org.nz/](http://www.sportnz.org.nz/)

<https://careers.sportnz.org.nz/>  
[www.education-newzealand.org/sports/](http://www.education-newzealand.org/sports/)  
[www.flightcentre.com.au/holidays/new-zealand](http://www.flightcentre.com.au/holidays/new-zealand)  
<https://www.thomascook.com/holidays/...new-z...>  
[www.discovernewzealand.com/](http://www.discovernewzealand.com/) [justnzholidays.com/](http://justnzholidays.com/)  
[www.kuoni.co.uk/new-zealand](http://www.kuoni.co.uk/new-zealand)  
[employment.govt.nz/.../holidaysandleave/publi](http://employment.govt.nz/.../holidaysandleave/publi)  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Economy\\_of\\_New\\_..](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Economy_of_New_..)  
[www.heritage.org/index/country/newzealand](http://www.heritage.org/index/country/newzealand)  
[www.treasury.govt.nz](http://www.treasury.govt.nz) › Economy  
[www.nzherald.co.nz/economy/news/headlines.c](http://www.nzherald.co.nz/economy/news/headlines.c)  
[history-nz.org/](http://history-nz.org/)  
[www.nzhistory.net.nz/](http://www.nzhistory.net.nz/)  
[www.newzealand.com/int/history/](http://www.newzealand.com/int/history/)  
[www.teara.govt.nz/en/history](http://www.teara.govt.nz/en/history)  
<https://www.newzealandnow.govt.nz/...nz/histo..>  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Climate\\_of\\_New\\_Ze...](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Climate_of_New_Ze...)  
<https://www.niwa.co.nz/.../climate/overview>  
[www.weather-and-climate.com/average-monthl..](http://www.weather-and-climate.com/average-monthl..)  
[www.mfe.govt.nz/climate.../how-climate-chang..](http://www.mfe.govt.nz/climate.../how-climate-chang..)  
<https://www.climatechange.govt.nz/>  
[www.fourcorners.co.nz/new-zealand/seasons-a..](http://www.fourcorners.co.nz/new-zealand/seasons-a..)  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Education\\_in\\_New\\_...](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Education_in_New_...)  
[www.queenstownnz.co.nz/information/Seasons/](http://www.queenstownnz.co.nz/information/Seasons/)  
[www.newzealand.com/.../new-zealand-flora-an..](http://www.newzealand.com/.../new-zealand-flora-an..)  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Biodiversity\\_of\\_Ne...](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Biodiversity_of_Ne...)  
[www.teara.govt.nz/.../native-plants-and-animals...](http://www.teara.govt.nz/.../native-plants-and-animals...)  
[www.doc.govt.nz/nature/](http://www.doc.govt.nz/nature/)  
[www.forestandbird.org.nz/.../native-plants-and-..](http://www.forestandbird.org.nz/.../native-plants-and-..)  
[www.nationsencyclopedia.com/.../New-Zealand](http://www.nationsencyclopedia.com/.../New-Zealand)  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Demographics\\_of\\_N..](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Demographics_of_N..)  
[www.stats.govt.nz/.../dem-trends-landing-page..](http://www.stats.govt.nz/.../dem-trends-landing-page..)  
[www.businessimmigrationnz.com/default.asp?...](http://www.businessimmigrationnz.com/default.asp?...)  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Languages\\_of\\_New...](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Languages_of_New...)  
[www.languageschool.co.nz/](http://www.languageschool.co.nz/)  
[www.studyinnewzealand.com/](http://www.studyinnewzealand.com/)  
[www.education-newzealand.org/](http://www.education-newzealand.org/)  
[www.education.govt.nz/home/our-new-website/](http://www.education.govt.nz/home/our-new-website/)  
[www.topuniversities.com/.../new-zealand/guide](http://www.topuniversities.com/.../new-zealand/guide)  
[www.universitiesnz.ac.nz/nz-university-system](http://www.universitiesnz.ac.nz/nz-university-system)  
[www.universitiesnz.ac.nz/](http://www.universitiesnz.ac.nz/)  
<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wellington>  
[www.wellingtonnz.com/](http://www.wellingtonnz.com/)  
[wellington.govt.nz/](http://wellington.govt.nz/)

[www.newzealand.com](http://www.newzealand.com) › ... › North Island  
[www.wellingtonfl.gov/](http://www.wellingtonfl.gov/)  
[www.studyinwellington.com/](http://www.studyinwellington.com/)  
[www.cecwellington.ac.nz/](http://www.cecwellington.ac.nz/)  
[www.wellingtonnz.com/...wellington/education...](http://www.wellingtonnz.com/...wellington/education...)  
[learning.wellingtoncollege.org.uk/](http://learning.wellingtoncollege.org.uk/)  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Politics\\_of\\_New\\_Ze...](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Politics_of_New_Ze...)  
[www.teara.govt.nz/en/political-values/page-1](http://www.teara.govt.nz/en/political-values/page-1)  
[www.parliament.nz/en-nz/about.../our-system](http://www.parliament.nz/en-nz/about.../our-system)  
<https://www.govt.nz/.../government-in-new-zea...>  
[www.nzhistory.net.nz/politics/milestones](http://www.nzhistory.net.nz/politics/milestones)  
<https://www.newzealandnow.govt.nz/...nz/stabil.>  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Constitution\\_of\\_Ne...](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Constitution_of_Ne...)  
<https://gg.govt.nz/role/constofnz.htm>  
[www.indexnz.com/.../Non-Governmental-Orga..](http://www.indexnz.com/.../Non-Governmental-Orga..)  
<https://www.aid.govt.nz/.../non-government-or...>  
[en.wikipedia.org/.../Category:Non-government..](http://en.wikipedia.org/.../Category:Non-government..)  
[https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Religion\\_in\\_New\\_Z...](https://en.wikipedia.org/.../Religion_in_New_Z...)  
[www.teara.govt.nz/en/society/page-7](http://www.teara.govt.nz/en/society/page-7)  
[www.teara.govt.nz/en/diverse-religions/page-1](http://www.teara.govt.nz/en/diverse-religions/page-1)  
[www.stuff.co.nz/.../Census-points-to-non-religi...](http://www.stuff.co.nz/.../Census-points-to-non-religi...)  
<http://www.erdekesvilag.hu/a-nyolcadik-csoda-az-uj-zelandi-milford-sound/>  
[https://www.met.hu/ismerettar/erdekessegek\\_tanulmanyok/20110815\\_r](https://www.met.hu/ismerettar/erdekessegek_tanulmanyok/20110815_r)  
endkivuli\_tel\_Uj-Zelandon/  
<http://bevandorlas.co.nz/novenyek-allatok/>  
<http://batarzsoltbotond-azenvilagom.blogspot.com/2013/10/az-allatok->  
vilagnapjara-uj-zeland.html  
<http://www.magyaronline.net/ismertetok.phpiid=5>  
[http://danubeinstitute.blog.hu/2016/03/02/ujzeland\\_igy\\_politizalnak\\_a\\_vi](http://danubeinstitute.blog.hu/2016/03/02/ujzeland_igy_politizalnak_a_vi)  
lag\_tulfelen  
<https://vilagiskolai.wordpress.com/2016/03/16/kihivasok-uj-zelandon/>  
<http://www.kajak.hu/hirek/szabadido/746>  
<http://eloben.hu/kulfold/2016-03-24/nemet-mondtak-az-uj-zelandiak-az->  
uj-zaszlora  
<http://ujkor.hu/content/anzac-day-az-ausztral-nemzeti-unnep>

---

Підписано до друку 24.11.2016.

Формат 60x84/16. Гарнітура Cambria. Облік.-вид. арк. 30,5.

Замовлення 29-м

Видавництво «Гражда»

Свідоцтво про державну реєстрацію видавців, виготівників  
і розповсюджувачів видавничої продукції.

Серія 3т № 22 від 1 вересня 2005 р.

88000, м. Ужгород, вул. Орлина, 1, т./факс (0312) 61-51-81